A Dictionary of Basic Japanese Grammar

Second Edition

日本語基本文法辞典 | 改訂第2版

Seiichi Makino and Michio Tsutsui

the japan times PUBLISHING

本電子書籍は、書籍のデータを電子化したため、電子書籍にはそぐわない表現や、不要な情報を含んでいる場合があります。また著作権処理の都合上、一部データが差し替えられていることがありますので、ご了承ください。

本書は、2025年8月5日に発行された『日本語基本文法辞典［改訂第2版］』第1刷を電子化したものです。
本電子書籍の全部または一部を無断で複写（コピー）あるいは、送信・配信することを禁じます。

A Dictionary of Basic Japanese Grammar [Second Edition]

A Dictionary of Basic Japanese Grammar

Second Edition

日本語基本文法辞典 | 改訂第2版

Seiichi Makino and MichioTsutsui

the japan times PUBLISHING

A Dictionary of Basic Japanese Grammar
日本語基本文法辞典

1986 年 3 月 20 日　初版発行（上製）
1989 年 3 月 20 日　初版発行（並製）
2025 年 8 月 5 日　改訂第 2 版発行

著　者　牧野成一・筒井通雄
発行者　伊藤秀樹
発行所　株式会社 ジャパンタイムズ出版
〒 102-0082 東京都千代田区一番町 2-2　一番町第二 TG ビル 2F
ISBN978-4-7890-1909-5

Copyright © 1986, 1989 and 2025 by Seiichi Makino and Michio Tsutsui

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

First cloth-bound edition: March 1986
First paperback edition: March 1989
Second edition: August 2025

Typesetting: guild
English copyreading: Jon McGovern
Proofreading: Tomoko Horiuchi
Cover art: Akihiro Kurata

Published by The Japan Times Publishing, Ltd.
2F Ichibancho Daini TG Bldg., 2-2 Ichibancho, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 102-0082, Japan
https://jtpublishing.co.jp/

ISBN978-4-7890-1909-5

Preface to the Second Edition

The hardcover edition of this book was first published in 1986, followed by the paperback edition in 1989. Since then, it has gained many readers year after year, with total copies in circulation reaching 310,000 as of May 2025. We would like to express our sincere gratitude to all those who have used this book.

Since its initial publication, a great deal of knowledge has accumulated in the fields of Japanese linguistics and Japanese language pedagogy. Although we had long felt the need to publish a revised edition that reflects these new insights, various circumstances prevented us from starting the work. We finally began the revision process in 2018, but due to various events, the work did not progress as smoothly as we had hoped. We are therefore truly pleased that the revised edition has at last come to fruition.

This revision addresses several key areas. First, we significantly supplemented parts where the explanations in the original edition were insufficient. We also rewrote unclear explanations to make them easier to understand and corrected inaccurate descriptions. Example sentences that were outdated or lacked clarity were revised. In addition, we removed entries that are now rarely used and added over ten new items such as *da*, *naru*, and Question word + *ka*. Some sections of the Characteristics of Japanese Grammar and Appendixes were also extensively revised. On a finer level, we adjusted some terms and symbols that were less appropriate, keeping in mind consistency with the Intermediate and Advanced volumes, and making sure the changes would not cause confusion.

In revising this book, we drew upon many recent findings in Japanese grammar and language pedagogy. We would like to thank the researchers and educators who shared these insights. We are also grateful to our colleagues and students who posed numerous questions, giving us the opportunity to consider various grammatical issues more deeply.

Finally, we wish to express our heartfelt thanks to Ms. Chiaki Sekido of The Japan Times Publishing, who offered a vast amount of valuable feedback from the perspectives of both editor and user. Without her support, this edition would not have taken its present form.

This revised edition was undertaken by Tsutsui alone, with the full agreement of Professor Seiichi Makino, the coauthor of the original edition. Nevertheless, we speak as one voice in presenting this updated work, and hope it will continue to serve as a useful resource for learners and teachers of Japanese.

July 2025

Michio Tsutsui

Preface

(First Editon)

This is a dictionary of basic Japanese grammar designed primarily for first and second year Japanese students and for teachers of Japanese. After having examined major textbooks being used in Japan and the United States we have chosen what we believe to be basic grammatical items. Our descriptions and explanations have incorporated the recent findings in Japanese linguistics which we felt were of practical significance.

We have spent three years and a half preparing this dictionary. Each of us initially prepared half of the original draft: approximately 200 entries. Upon completion of the first draft of the dictionary (i.e., Entries, Appendixes, Characteristics of Japanese Grammar, and Grammatical Terms), we closely examined, discussed and improved our individual drafts. Therefore, every part of this dictionary has virtually been written by both of us.

Naturally we owe a great deal to our predecessors whose works are listed in the references. Our heart-felt thanks go to them, although we could not acknowledge them individually in each entry where we used their insightful explanations. We would also like to acknowledge many profitable discussions with our colleagues at the University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign and at the Summer Japanese School of Middlebury College, Middlebury, Vermont. For fear of omission, we would rather not attempt a comprehensive listing of names. Even so we would like to mention four individuals whose technical assistance has made it possible to publish this dictionary: First, Mr. Burr Nelson of the University of Illinois and Mrs. Sharon Tsutsui, who have edited our English and provided us with valuable comments and suggestions from the user's viewpoint; also, Mr. Mamoru Yoshizawa, who has patiently and conscientiously assisted with the proofreading; and, last but not least Mr. Masayuki Ishida of The Japan Times, who has done such conscientious editing: he has been a perfect midwife for the birth of our progeny and our special thanks go to him.

Spring 1986

Seiichi Makino
Michio Tsutsui

Table of Contents

Preface to the Second Edition 5
Preface (First Edition) 6
To the Reader 8
List of Abbreviations 10
List of Symbols 11
Grammatical Terms 12
Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 25
1. Word Order and Basic Sentence Structures 25
2. Topic 31
3. Ellipsis 34
4. Personal Pronouns 39
5. Passive 43
6. *Keigo*: Extra-polite Expressions 46
7. Sound Symbolisms 58
8. Viewpoint 67
• • •
Main Entries ..... 71 ~ 742
• • •
Appendixes 743
1. Basic Conjugations 744
2. Semantic Classification of Verbs 750
3. Pairs of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs 752
4. Connection Forms of Important Expressions 755
5. Numerals and Counters 762
6. *Ko-so-a-do*: Japanese Demonstratives 768
• • •
Grammar Index 771
English Index 773
Japanese Index 781
References 788

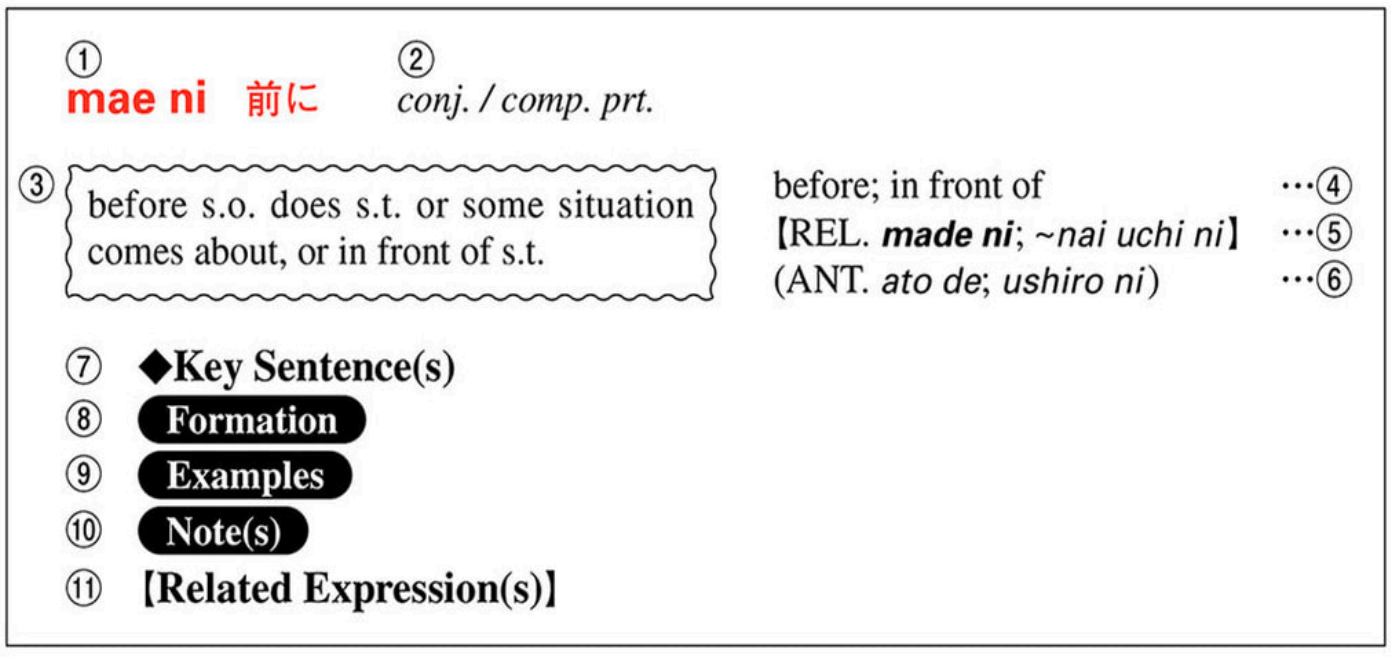
To the Reader

This dictionary consists of the following parts:

A. *Grammatical Terms* contains brief explanations or informal definitions of the important grammatical terms used in this book.

B. *Characteristics of Japanese Grammar* introduces the major characteristics of Japanese grammar and the important concepts involved. Topics in this section are referred to in some entries from the *Main Entries* section in order to provide the reader with broader perspectives on those entries.

C. *Main Entries* constitutes the core of this book. Each entry is organized as follows:



① **Entry name:** Each entry is given in romanized spelling followed by its Japanese notation. Entries are alphabetically ordered based on their romanized spellings.

② **Part of speech:** Each entry is followed by its part of speech.

③ **Meaning/Function:** The core meaning or main function of the entry is given in the box below the entry name.

④ **English counterpart(s):** English expressions equivalent to the entry are given to the right of the box.

⑤ **List of related expressions:** Items that are related semantically to the entry are listed as 【REL. *aaa*; *bbb*; ***ccc***; ***ddd***】. Expressions in non-bold type like *aaa* and *bbb* are explained in the entry under **【Related Expression(s)】**⑪. Expressions in bold type like ***ccc*** and ***ddd*** are explained in those entries' **【Related Expression(s)】**.

⑥ **Antonym:** When the entry has an antonym, it is provided as in (ANT. xxx).

⑦ **Key Sentence(s):** Key sentences present basic sentence patterns in frames according to sentence structure. The recurrent elements are printed in red and the elements that commonly occur with them are in bold.

⑧ **Formation:** The word formation rules or connection forms for each item are provided with simple examples. The recurrent elements are printed in red.

⑨ **Examples:** Additional example sentences show how the item is used in a variety of situations and contexts.

⑩ **Note(s):** Notes contain important points concerning the use of the item.

⑪ **Related Expression(s):** Expressions that are semantically close to the entry are compared and their differences are explained.

D. *Appendixes* contain information such as tables of verb/adjective conjugations, a list of connection rules for important expressions and a list of counters.

E. *Indexes* contain three indexes: the grammar index, the English index and the Japanese index.

List of Abbreviations

Adj. = adjective
Adj(*i*) = *i*-adjective
Adj(*i*)stem = stem of an *i*-adjective (e.g., *taka* of *takai* "expensive")
Adj(*i*)*te* = *te*-form of an *i*-adjective (e.g., *takakute* "expensive and ~")
Adj(*na*) = *na*-adjective (⇒ **Grammatical Terms**: *Na*-adjective)
Adv. = adverb
Aff. = affirmative
ANT. = antonym
Aux. = auxiliary
Comp. prt. = compound particle
Conj. = conjunction
Gr. = group
Irr. = irregular
KS = Key Sentence
N = noun
Neg. = negative
Nom. = nominalizer
NP = noun phrase
Phr. = phrase
Pref. = prefix
Prt. = particle
Q-word = question word (e.g., *nani* "what," *doko* "where," *dare* "who")
REL. = Related Expression(s)
S = sentence
Splain = sentence that ends with a predicate in the plain form
S.o. = someone
S.t. = something
Str.= structure
Suf. = suffix
V = verb
Vcond = conditional stem of a Gr. 1 verb (e.g., *hanase* of *hanaseba* "if s.o. talks")
Vplain = plain form of a verb (e.g., *hanasu* "talk," *hanashita* "talked")
V*masu* = *masu*-stem of a verb (e.g., *hanashi* of *hanashimasu* "talk")
VN = stem of a *suru*-verb (e.g., *benkyō* of *benkyō-suru*)
Vneg = plain negative stem of a Gr. 1 verb (e.g., *hanasa* of *hanasanai* "s.o. doesn't talk")
VP = verb phrase
Vstem = stem of a Gr. 2 verb (e.g., *tabe* of *taberu* "eat")
V*te* = *te*-form of a verb (e.g., *hanashite* "talk and ~," *tabete* "eat and ~")
Vvol = plain volitional form of a verb (e.g., *hanasō* "let's talk," *tabeyō* "let's eat")

List of Symbols

⇒ = reference to another entry

× = ungrammatical or unacceptable (i.e., no native speaker would find it appropriate to use the phrases/sentences marked with ×.) × is also used to indicated a wrong English translation.

?? = very unnatural

? = a little unnatural

{ A / B } C = AC or BC (e.g., { *takai* / *takakatta* } *darō* = *takai darō* or *takakatta darō*)

ø = zero (i.e., nothing is used where ø occurs. For example, Adj(*na*) { ø / *datta* } *kamoshirenai* means either Adj(*na*) *kamoshirenai* or Adj(*na*) *datta kamoshirenai*.)

Grammatical Terms

The following are brief explanations or informal definitions of important grammatical terms used in this dictionary.

Active Sentence A sentence that describes an action from the agent's point of view. In active sentences, the subject is the agent. Sentences (a) and (b) below are an active and a passive sentence, respectively. (cf. Passive Sentence)

(a) 先生はジョンをしかった。
Sensei wa Jon o shikatta.
(The teacher scolded John.)

(b) ジョンは先生にしかられた。
Jon wa sensei ni shikarareta.
(John was scolded by the teacher.)

Agent One who initiates and/or completes an action or an event. The agent is not always in the subject position. Compare the positions of the agent *sensei* in (a) and (b).

(a) **先生**はマーサをほめた。
***Sensei** wa Māsa o hometa.*
(The teacher praised Martha.)

(b) マーサは**先生**にほめられた。
*Māsa wa **sensei** ni homerareta.*
(Martha was praised by the teacher.)

Appositive Clause A clause that modifies a noun (or noun phrase) and explains *what* the modified noun is. In (a), for example, *Sandora ga Tomu ni atta* "Sandra met Tom" is an appositive clause, and it is what *jijitsu* "the fact" refers to.

(a) 私は**サンドラがトムに会った**事実を知っている。
*Watashi wa **Sandora ga Tomu ni atta** jijitsu o shitte iru.*
(I know the fact that Sandra met Tom.)

Auxiliary A sentence element that is attached to verbs, adjectives, nouns, etc. and adds an additional meaning to the sentence and/or indicates a tense, a politeness level, etc. Auxiliaries conjugate, but are dependent elements, i.e., cannot be used alone. The bold-faced words are examples of auxiliaries.

(a) アンは今晩のパーティーに来ない｛**かもしれない / かもしれません**｝。
An wa konban no pātī ni konai {***kamoshirenai / kamoshiremasen***}.
(Anne may not come to tonight's party.)

(b) これはブラウンさんの家｛**です / でした / だ / だった**｝。
Kore wa Buraun-san no uchi {***desu / deshita / da / datta***}.
(This {is [polite] / used to be [polite] / is [plain] / used to be [plain]} Brown-san's house.)

Auxiliary Adjective An adjective that is attached to a verb or another adjective and adds an additional meaning to it. There are auxiliary *i*-adjectives and auxiliary *na*-adjectives. The bold-faced words in the following sentences are examples of auxiliary adjectives.

(a) 私はライアンにパーティーに来て**ほしい**。[auxiliary *i*-adjective]
Watashi wa Raian ni pātī ni kite ***hoshii.***
(I want Ryan to come to the party.)

(b) この辞書は使い**やすい**。[auxiliary *i*-adjective]
*Kono jisho wa tsukai-****yasui.***
(This dictionary is easy to use.)

(c) 私はすしが食べ**たい**。[auxiliary *i*-adjective]
*Watashi wa sushi ga tabe-****tai.***
(I want to eat sushi.)

(d) ベスはカナダの大学を出た**らしい**。[auxiliary *i*-adjective]
Besu wa Kanada no daigaku o deta ***rashii.***
({It seems / I heard} that Beth graduated from a Canadian university.)

(e) 絵美は忙しい**ようだ**。[auxiliary *na*-adjective]
Emi wa isogashii ***yō*** *da.*
(It looks like Emi is busy.)

(f) このケーキはおいし**そうだ**。[auxiliary *na*-adjective]
*Kono kēki wa oishi-****sō*** *da.*
(This cake looks delicious.)

Auxiliary Verb A verb that is attached to another verb or an adjective and adds an additional meaning to it. The bold-faced words in the following sentences are examples of auxiliary verbs.

(a) ビルは今シャワーを浴びて**いる**。
Biru wa ima shawā o abite ***iru.***
(Bill is taking a shower now.)

(b) 窓が開けて**ある**。
*Mado ga akete **aru**.*
(The window has been opened.)

(c) 僕はもう宿題をして**しまった**。
*Boku wa mō shukudai o shite **shimatta**.*
(I have already done my homework.)

(d) 私は友達にお金を貸して**あげた**。
*Watashi wa tomodachi ni o-kane o kashite **ageta**.*
(I lent money to my friend.)

(e) あっ、雨が降って**きた**！
*Ah, ame ga futte **kita**!*
(Oh, it's started to rain!)

(f) この腕時計は高**すぎる**。
*Kono ude-dokei wa taka-**sugiru**.*
(This watch is too expensive.)

(g) ジョージはスポーツカーを欲し**がった**。
*Jōji wa supōtsukā o hoshi-**gatta**.*
(George wanted a sports car. (lit., George showed signs of wanting a sports car.))

Compound Particle A sentence element that consists of more than one word but functions like a single particle. For example, the compound particle *to shite wa* consists of the particle *to*, the *te*-form of *suru* and the particle *wa*, but it is used like a single particle to mean "for."

(a) このアパートは東京のアパート**としては**安い。
*Kono apāto wa Tōkyō no apāto **to shite wa** yasui.*
(This apartment is inexpensive for an apartment in Tokyo.)

Coordinate Conjunction A conjunction that combines two sentences without subordinating one to the other. A typical coordinate conjunction is *ga* "but."

(a) 毎日走っていますが、ちっともやせません。
*Mai-nichi hashitte imasu **ga**, chittomo yasemasen.*
(I run every day, but I can't (lit., don't) lose weight at all.)

Direct Object The direct object of a verb is the direct recipient of the action represented by the verb.

(a) 山口先生は**その学生**をほめた。
*Yamaguchi-sensei wa **sono gakusei** o hometa.*
(Prof. Yamaguchi praised that student.)

(b) 私は**ワイン**を飲んだ。
*Watashi wa **wain** o nonda.*
(I drank wine.)

(c) 私は**プレゼント**を開けた。
*Watashi wa **purezento** o aketa.*
(I opened the present.)

Although direct objects are marked by the particle *o*, what is marked by *o* is not always a direct object, as shown in (d)–(f). (⇒ ***o***^{2}; ***o***^{3}; ***o***^{4})

(d) カイルは公園**を**散歩した。
*Kairu wa kōen **o** sanpo-shita.*
(Kyle took a walk in the park.)

(e) ローレンはこの春、大学**を**卒業した。
*Rōren wa kono haru, daigaku **o** sotsugyō-shita.*
(Lauran graduated from college this spring.)

(f) 両親は真次の大学入学**を**喜んだ。
*Ryōshin wa Shinji no daigaku-nyūgaku **o** yorokonda.*
(Shinji's parents were delighted with his entering college.)

Group 1 Verb (*U*-verb) A verb that conjugates as the table below shows. That is, the sound that follows the stem of this type of verbs (e.g., *kak*, *hanas*, *i*) changes in five different ways depending on the form. Because the dictionary forms of this type of verbs always end with the [u] sound, they are also called "*u*-verbs." As shown in the rightmost column, the Group 1 verbs that contain the [wa] sound before the negative ending *nai* do not maintain the [w] sound before the [i], [u], [e] and [o] sounds because the [wi], [wu], [we], [wo] do not exist in contemporary Japanese.

Plain non-past negative form	書**か**ない *kaka**a**nai*	話**さ**ない *hanasa**a**nai*	言**わ**ない *i**wa**nai*
Polite non-past affirmative form	書**き**ます *kaki**i**masu*	話**し**ます *hanashi**i**masu*	言**い**ます *i**i**masu*
Plain affirmative form (= Dictionary form)	書**く** (write) *kak**u***	話**す** (speak) *hanas**u***	言**う** (say) *i**u***

Imperative form	書け *kak**e***	話せ *hanas**e***	言え ***ie***
Volitional form	書こう *kak**oo*** (= *kakō*)	話そう *hanas**oo*** (= *hanasō*)	言おう ***ioo*** (= *iō*)

Group 2 Verb (*Ru*-verb) A verb that conjugates as the table below shows. That is, this type of verb contains a stem that ends with either the [i] or [e] sound. Because the dictionary forms of this type of verbs always end with the [ru] sound, they are also called "*ru*-verbs."

Plain non-past negative form	起きない *ok**i**nai*	食べない *tab**e**nai*
Polite non-past affirmative form	起きます *ok**i**masu*	食べます *tab**e**masu*
Plain affirmative form (= Dictionary form)	起きる (get up) *ok**i**ru*	食べる (eat) *tab**e**ru*
Imperative form	起きろ *ok**i**ro*	食べろ *tab**e**ro*
Volitional form	起きよう *ok**i**yō*	食べよう *tab**e**yō*

Note that the verbs whose dictionary forms end with the [ru] sound are not always Group 2 verbs. For example, *keru* "kick" ends with the [ru] sound, but it is a Group 1 verb. That is, its plain non-past negative from is *keranai*, not *kenai*, its polite non-past affirmative form is *kerimasu*, not *kemasu*, and so on.

***I*-adjective** An adjective whose non-past prenominal form ends with *i*, as in (a). (cf. *Na*-adjective)

(a)	高い本 ***takai** hon* (an expensive book)	強い人 ***tsuyoi** hito* (a strong person)

I-adjectives conjugate as follows.

	Plain form		Polite form	
	Affirmative	Negative	Affirmative	Negative
Non-past	高い* *taka**i***	高くない *taka**kunai***	高いです *taka**idesu***	高くないです *taka**kunaidesu***
Past	高かった *taka**katta***	高くなかった *taka**kunakatta***	高かったです *taka**kattadesu***	高くなかったです *taka**kunakattadesu***

*The plain non-past affirmative form is also the dictionary form.

Imperative Form A conjugated verb form that indicates a command, as in *hanase* "talk," *tabero* "eat," *shiro* "do" or *koi* "come."

Intransitive Verb A verb that does not require a direct object. Intransitive verbs typically indicate movement (e.g., *iku* "go," *kuru* "come," *aruku* "walk," *hashiru* "run," *tobu* "fly," *noru* "get onto"), spontaneous change (e.g., *naru* "become," *kawaru* "change," *tokeru* "melt," *fukuramu* "swell," *hajimaru* "begin"), human emotion (e.g., *yorokobu* "rejoice," *kanashimu* "feel sad"), and birth/death (e.g., *umareru* "be born," *shinu* "die"). (cf. Transitive Verb)

(⇒ **Appendix 3**. Pairs of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs)

Listener The person who receives a spoken or written message. In this dictionary the term "listener" is used in a broader sense to mean the person to whom the speaker or the writer communicates.

Momentary Verb A verb that represents a momentary action that either occurs once, as in (a), or can be repeated continuously, as in (b).

(a) 始まる (begin) *hajimaru*　やめる (stop s.t.) *yameru*　倒れる (fall down) *taoreru*
死ぬ (die) *shinu*　似る (resemble) *niru*　結婚する (get married) *kekkon-suru*
知る (get to know; learn) *shiru*

(b) ける (kick) *keru*　跳ぶ (jump) *tobu*　たたく (hit; tap; clap) *tataku*
もむ (knead; massage) *momu*

With the auxiliary verb *iru* (= *iru*[2]), the momentary verbs in (a) express a resultant state after an action was taken, and those in (b) usually express a repeated action.
(⇒ **Appendix 2**. Semantic Classification of Verbs)

***Na*-adjective** An adjective that accompanies *na* when it modifies a noun, as in (a). (cf. *I*-adjective)

(a) 静かな公園	元気な人
shizuka ***na*** *kōen*	*genki* ***na*** *hito*
(a quiet park)	(a healthy person)

Na-adjectives themselves do not conjugate. Tenses and politeness levels are indicated by the auxiliary *da* and its conjugated forms as shown below:

	Plain form		Polite form	
	Affirmative	Negative	Affirmative	Negative
Non-past	静かだ *shizuka* ***da***	静かじゃない *shizuka* ***ja nai***	静かです *shizuka* ***desu***	静かじゃないです *shizuka* ***ja naidesu***
Past	静かだった *shizuka* ***datta***	静かじゃ なかった *shizuka* ***ja*** ***nakatta***	静かでした *shizuka* ***deshita***	静かじゃ なかったです *shizuka* ***ja*** ***nakattadesu***

There is a view that *na*-adjectives conjugate, considering *da* part of the adjective. In this view, the *da* in *na*-adjectives and the *da* that occurs after nouns are considered different elements. This dictionary, however, does not take this view because many phenomena can be explained cleanly if we assume that the *na*-adjective does not include *da*. (⇒ ***da***)

Nominalizer A sentence element that makes a phrase or sentence into a noun phrase or clause. There are two nominalizers *no* and *koto*. In general, *no* is used when the speaker can directly perceive or empathize with what is nominalized, while *koto* is used when the speaker does not feel close to what is nominalized or when he/she talks about it objectively. (⇒ ***no***[3]; ***koto***[2])

(a)

Noun Phrase/Clause		Particle	Predicate
Phrase/Sentence	Nominalizer		
日本語を教える *Nihongo o oshieru*	の / こと ***no*** / ***koto***	は *wa*	難しい。 *muzukashii.*
(Teaching Japanese is difficult.)			

Nominalized phrases and sentences can be used in any position where an ordinary noun can be used.

Passive Sentence A sentence that describes someone's action from the viewpoint of someone else who is affected by that action. (a) and (b) are passive sentences. (cf. Active Sentence) (⇒ ***~rareru***[1])

(a) 私は母にしかられた。
Watashi wa haha ni shikarareta.
(I was scolded by my mother.)

(b) 友也は真美に日記を読まれた。
Tomoya wa Mami ni nikki o yomareta.
(Mami read Tomoya's diary, which annoyed Tomoya.)

Potential Form A verb form that expresses competence in the sense of "can do s.t." (a) provides examples. (⇒ ***~rareru***[2])

(a) 話せる (can talk) *hanaseru*
来られる (can come) *korareru*
食べられる (can eat) *taberareru*
できる (can do) *dekiru*

Predicate The part of a sentence that indicates a statement about the subject. The core of the predicate consists of either a verb, an *i*-adjective or a *na*-adjective/noun followed by *da* (or another conjugated form of *da*). Adverbs, direct objects, adverbial phrases, noun-modifiers, and sentence-ending elements may also be contained. In (a)–(d), the parts in the bold-face type are predicates.

(a) 松本さんは**よく映画を見ます**。
Matsumoto-san wa ***yoku eiga o mimasu.***
(Matsumoto-san sees movies often.)

(b) 私の家は**スミスさんのより新しい**。
Watashi no ie wa ***Sumisu-san no yori atarashii.***
(My house is newer than Smith-san's.)

(c) このアプリは**とても便利だ**。
Kono apuri wa ***totemo benri da.***
(This app is very useful.)

(d) ウィリアムは**日本語の学生です**。
Wiriamu wa ***nihongo no gakusei desu.***
(William is a student of the Japanese language.)

Prenominal Form The form that modifies a noun. The bold-faced forms in (a)–(c) are examples of prenominal forms.

(a) 私が｛会う / 会った｝人
watashi ga ｛***au*** / ***atta***｝ *hito*
(the person I ｛am going to meet / met｝)

(b) ｛楽しい / 楽しかった｝時
｛***tanoshii*** / ***tanoshikatta***｝ *toki*
(a fun time / a time that was fun)

(c) ｛きれいな / きれいだった｝川
｛***kirei na*** / ***kirei datta***｝ *kawa*
(a clean river / a river that used to be clean)

Question Word (Q-word) A word that corresponds to English words such as *who*, *what*, *where*, *which*, *when*, *why* and *how*. (a) provides some examples. ("Q-word" is used for "question word" except in entry names.) (cf. Wh-question)

(a) だれ (who)	何 (what)	どこ (where)	いつ (when)
dare	*nani / nan*	*doko*	*itsu*
どう (how)	どうして / なぜ (how come / why)		
dō	*dōshite / naze*		

Nani or *nan* can make compound nouns with other words, as in (b).

(b) 何年 (what year)	何語 (what language)
nan-nen	*nani-go*
何回 (how many times)	何曜日 (what day of the week)
nan-kai	*nan-yōbi*

In Japanese, question words do not have to be placed in the sentence-initial position, as in (c) and (d).

(c) 昨日のパーティーには**だれ**が来ましたか。
Kinō no pātī ni wa ***dare*** *ga kimashita ka.*
(Who came to yesterday's party?)

(d) 日本では**何**をしましたか。
Nihon de wa ***nani*** *o shimashita ka.*
(What did you do in Japan?)

Stative Verb A verb that represents a state of something or someone, as in (a). (⇒ **Appendix 2**. Semantic Classification of Verbs)

(a) ある (exist (of inanimate things)) *aru*　　いる (exist (of animate things)) *iru*

要る (need) *iru*　　できる (can do) *dekiru*　　見える (can be seen; be visible) *mieru*

Subject An element of a sentence that indicates the agent of an action in active sentences, as in (a), someone/something to whom/which something happens, as in (b) and (c), or someone/something that is in some state, as in (d) and (e). In Japanese, the subject is usually marked by the particle *ga* unless it is presented as the sentence topic, in which case it is marked by the particle *wa*, as in (b) and (e). (⇒ ***ga***[1]; ***wa***)

(a) フレッドが私のケーキを食べた。
Fureddo *ga watashi no kēki o tabeta.*
(Fred ate my cake.)

(b) 私はフレッドにケーキを食べられた。
Watashi *wa Fureddo ni kēki o taberareta.*
(I was affected by Fred's eating my cake.)

(c) 車が壊れた。
Kuruma *ga kowareta.*
(The car broke down.)

(d) 空が青い。
Sora *ga aoi.*
(The sky is blue.)

(e) ソフィーは親切だ。
Sofī *wa shinsetsu da.*
(Sophie is kind.)

Subordinate Clause A clause that is not independent from the main clause. For this reason, subordinate clauses are also called "dependent clauses." There are four types of subordinate clauses: (1) those that modify nouns, as in (a), (2) those that are used with nominalizers, as in (b), (3) those that are used with conjunctions, as in (c), and (4) those that are used with the quotative marker *to*, as in (d). The conjunctions that are used with subordinate clauses are called "subordinate conjunctions." *Node* "because," *kara* "because," *noni* "in spite of the fact that," *ba* "if" are examples of subordinate conjunctions.

(a) 直人は**私が貸した**本をなくしてしまった。
*Naoto wa **watashi ga kashita** hon o nakushite shimatta.*
(Naoto lost the book I'd lent him.)

(b) **敬語を正しく使う**のは難しい。
***Keigo o tadashiku tsukau** no wa muzukashii.*
(It is difficult to use honorific language properly.)

(c) マットは**頭が痛かった**ので学校を休んだ。
*Matto wa **atama ga itakatta** node gakkō o yasunda.*
(Matt was absent from school because he had a headache.)

(d) 学生は**テストが難しすぎた**と言った。
*Gakusei wa **tesuto ga muzukashi-sugita** to itta.*
(The students said that the test was too difficult.)

Transitive Verb A verb that requires a direct object. It usually indicates an action that acts upon someone or something. Typical transitive verbs include *tsukuru* "make," *yomu* "read," *kaku* "write," *kiku* "hear" or "listen," *miru* "see" or "watch," *miseru* "show," *ageru* "give," *kaesu* "return" and *oshieru* "teach." (cf. Intransitive Verb) (⇒ **Appendix 3**. Pairs of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs)

Some situations that are described using transitive verbs in English are described using intransitive verbs or adjectives in Japanese, as in (a)–(g).

(a) 私は今お金が**いる**。
*Watashi wa ima o-kane ga **iru**.*
(I need money now.)

(b) デービスさんは中国語が**分かる**。
*Dēbisu-san wa chūgokugo ga **wakaru**.*
(Davis-san understands Chinese.)

(c) 姉はフランス語が少し**できる**。
*Ane wa furansugo ga sukoshi **dekiru**.*
(My elder sister can speak French a little.)

(d) ここから富士山が**見えます**よ。
*Koko kara Fujisan ga **miemasu** yo.*
(We can see Mt. Fuji from here.)

(e) 私はもっと家族と過ごす時間が**欲しい**。
*Watashi wa motto kazoku to sugosu jikan ga **hoshii**.*
(I want more time to spend with my family.)

(f) リサは東京でお父さんに**会った**。
*Risa wa Tōkyō de o-tōsan ni **atta**.*
(Lisa met her father in Tokyo.)

(g) 私たちは京都から新幹線に**乗りました**。
Watashi-tachi wa Kyōto kara shinkansen ni ***norimashita.***
(We took the Shinkansen train from Kyoto.)

Volitional Sentence A sentence in which the speaker expresses his/her will. One way to express the speaker's will is using the volitional form of a verb, as in (a). (⇒ ***~mashō***; ***~yō***)

(a) 私が部長に｛**話そう / 話しましょう**｝。
Watashi ga buchō ni｛***hanasō / hanashimashō***｝.
(*I* will talk to the department chief.)

Wh-question A question that asks for information about who, what, where, which, when, why and/or how using such question words as *dare*, *nani* and *doko*, as in (a)–(g). (cf. Question Word; Yes-No Question)

(a) **だれ**がピクニックに来ましたか。
Dare *ga pikunikku ni kimashita ka.*
(Who came to the picnic?)

(b) **何**を食べたいですか。
Nani *o tabe-taidesu ka.*
(What would you like to eat?)

(c) **どこ**に行きましょうか。
Doko *ni ikimashō ka.*
(Where shall we go?)

(d) **いつ**大阪へ帰りますか。
Itsu *Ōsaka e kaerimasu ka.*
(When are you going back to Osaka?)

(e) **どうして**買わないんですか。
Dōshite *kawanai n desu ka.*
(How come you don't buy it?)

(f) 美術館へは**どう**行ったらいいですか。
Bijutsukan e wa ***dō*** *ittara iidesu ka.*
(How can I get to the art museum?)

(g) **何**時に会いましょうか。
Nan*-ji ni aimashō ka.*
(At what time shall we meet?)

Yes-No Question A question that can be answered by *hai* "yes" or *īe* "no." In (a) and (b), Speaker A's sentences are yes-no questions. (cf. Wh-question)

(a) A: 上田さんは来ましたか。
Ueda-san wa kimashita ka.
(Did Ueda-san come?)

B: はい、来ました。
Hai, kimashita.
(Yes, he did.)

(b) A: 鈴木さんは学生ですか。
Suzuki-san wa gakusei desu ka.
(Is Suzuki-san a student?)

B: いいえ、学生じゃないです。
Ie, gakusei ja naidesu.
(No, he isn't.)

Characteristics of Japanese Grammar

1. Word Order and Basic Sentence Structures

A. Word order

Japanese is typologically classified as an *SOV* (Subject + Object + Verb) language, whereas English is classified as *SVO*. This is because in general, Japanese sentences end with a verb, an *i*-adjective or X *Da*, where X is a non-conjugational word, such as a noun and a *na*-adjective, and *Da* represents the auxiliary *da* or its variations (e.g., *desu*, *datta*, etc.). The order of the other sentence elements is relatively free except that the topic noun or phrase normally comes in the sentence-initial position. (1) provides an example.

(1)

Topic (subject)		Time		Location		Person Involved		Verb
ジェフ *Jefu*	は *wa*	1時 *ichi-ji*	に *ni*	図書館 *toshokan*	で *de*	エイミー *Eimī*	と *to*	会う。 *au.*
(Jeff is going to meet Amy in the library at one.)								

In (1), in which the subject is presented as the topic, the topic and the verb normally occur in the sentence-initial position and sentence-final position, respectively, but the order of the time, the location and the person involved can be changed. When a direct object is involved, it usually comes right before the verb, as in (2).

(2)

Topic (subject)		Location		Direct Object		Verb (transitive)
サラ *Sara*	は *wa*	キッチン *kitchin*	で *de*	パスタ *pasuta*	を *o*	作っている。 *tsukutte iru.*
(Sarah is making pasta in the kitchen.)						

The word order principle for Japanese is *the modifier precedes what is modified*. (3) and (4) present examples in which nouns are modified by other elements.

(3)

Adjective	Noun
新しい *atarashii*	車 *kuruma*
(a new car)	

(4)

Relative Clause	Noun
サラが作った *Sara ga tsukutta*	パスタ *pasuta*
(the pasta Sarah made)	

Adverbs precede the verbs and adjectives they modify, as in (5) and (6).

(5)

Adverb	Adjective
とても *totemo*	速い *hayai*
(very fast)	

(6)

Adverb	Verb
ゆっくり *yukkuri*	話す *hanasu*
(speak slowly)	

Subordinate clauses precede the main clauses they modify, as in (7).

(7)

Subordinate Clause		Main Clause
Sentence	Conjunction	
お金がない *O-kane ga nai*	ので *node*	旅行に行けない。 *ryokō ni ikenai.*
(I cannot travel because I don't have money.)		

Function words, such as particles, auxiliaries, conjunctions and nominalizers, follow content words (e.g., nouns, verbs, adjectives, etc.) and sentences, as in (8)–(12).

(8)

Noun	Particle
ジェームズ *Jēmuzu*	は *wa*
(James) [topic]	
ジェームズ *Jēmuzu*	が *ga*
(James) [subject]	
ジェームズ *Jēmuzu*	も *mo*
(James also)	
ジェームズ *Jēmuzu*	に *ni*
(to / by / from James)	

(9)

Sentence	Particle
パーティーに行きます *Pātī ni ikimasu*	か。 *ka.*
(Are you going to the party?)	
パーティーに行きます *Pātī ni ikimasu*	ね。 *ne.*
(You're going to the party, aren't you?)	

(10)

Sentence	Auxiliary
真は学校をやめる *Makoto wa gakkō o yameru*	そうだ。 *sō da.*
(I heard that Makoto is going to quit school.)	
真は学校をやめる *Makoto wa gakkō o yameru*	かもしれない。 *kamoshirenai.*
(Makoto might quit school.)	
真は学校をやめる *Makoto wa gakkō o yameru*	みたいだ。 *mitai da.*
(It looks like Makoto is going to quit school.)	

(11)

Sentence	Conjunction
日本へ行く *Nihon e iku*	が *ga*
(I'm going to Japan, but)	
日本へ行く *Nihon e iku*	から *kara*
(because I'm going to Japan)	
日本へ行く *Nihon e iku*	なら *nara*
(if I go to Japan)	

(12)

Nominalized Noun Phrase	
Verb Phrase / Sentence	Nominalizer
音楽を聞く *ongaku o kiku*	の *no*
(listening to music)	
コナーが結婚する *Konā ga kekkon-suru*	こと *koto*
(that Connor is going to marry)	

B. Basic sentence structures

There are three basic sentence structures in Japanese, as shown in (13)–(15).

(13) X *wa* Y (*da*), where Y is Adj or N

a.

Topic (subject)		Adj(*i*)
あの映画 *Ano eiga*	**は** ***wa***	つまらない。 *tsumaranai.*
(That movie is boring.)		

b.

Topic (subject)		Adj(*na*)	
このアプリ *Kono apuri*	**は** ***wa***	便利 *benri*	だ。 ***da.***
(This app is useful.)			

c.

Topic (subject)		Noun	
ケン *Ken*	**は** ***wa***	1年生 *ichi-nensei*	だ。 ***da.***
(Ken is a freshman.)			

(14) X *wa* Y *ga* Z (*da*), where Z is Adj or V

a.

Topic (subject)		Noun		Adj(*na*)	
ジュリー *Jurī*	**は** ***wa***	テニス *tenisu*	**が** ***ga***	上手 *jōzu*	だ。 ***da.***
(Julie is good at tennis.)					

b.

Topic (subject)		Noun		Adj(*i*)
象 *Zō*	**は** ***wa***	鼻 *hana*	**が** ***ga***	長い。 *nagai.*
(An elephant has a long trunk.)				

c.

Topic (subject)		Noun		Verb
私 *Watashi*	**は** ***wa***	ロシア語 *roshiago*	**が** ***ga***	分かる。 *wakaru.*
(I understand Russian.)				

(15) X *wa* (Adv) $N_1 + Prt_1$ $(N_2 + Prt_2)$ $(N_3 + Prt_3)$ ⋯ V

a.

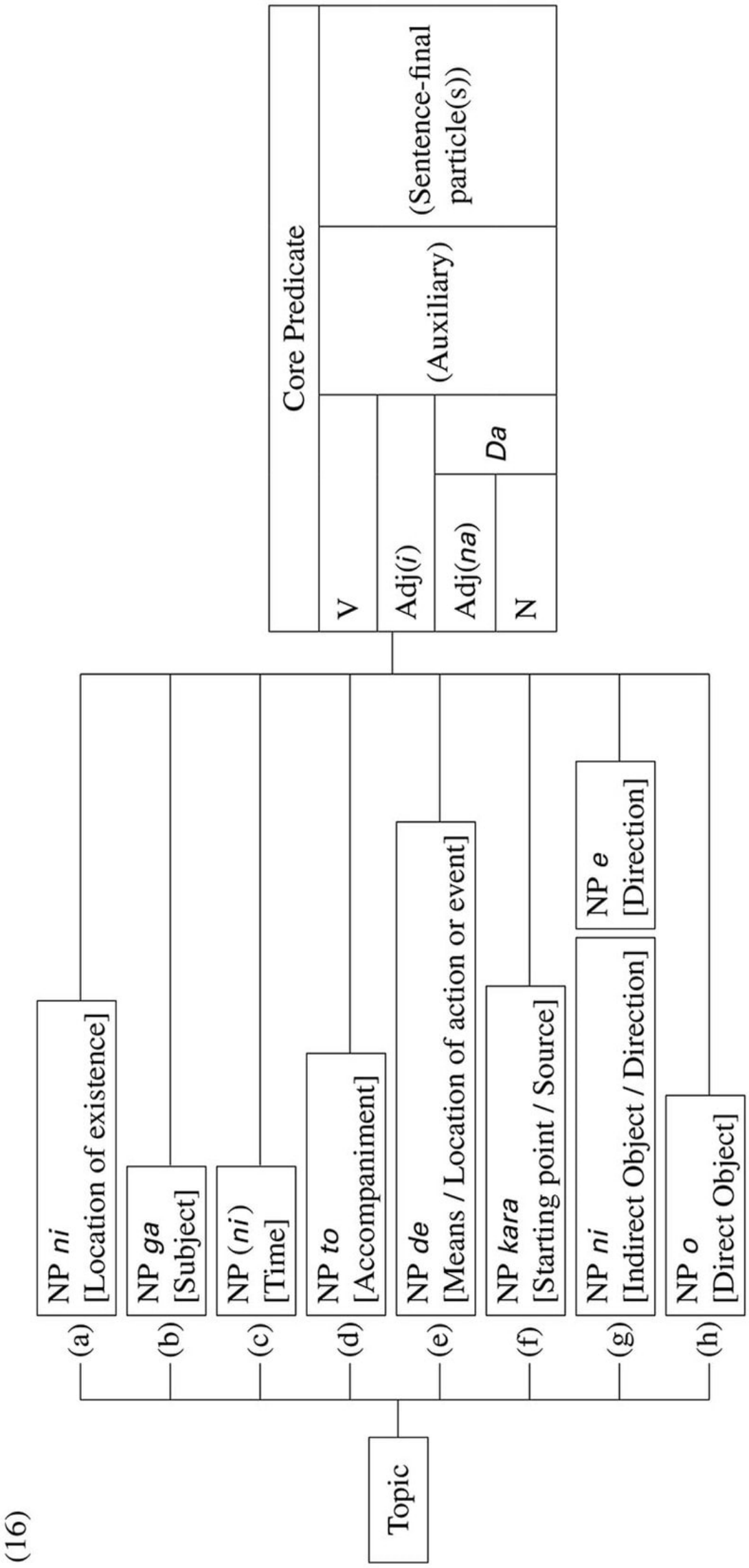
Topic (subject)		Adverb	Noun	Particle	Verb
ケイト *Keito*	**は** ***wa***	時々 *tokidoki*	ジム *jimu*	に *ni*	行く。 *iku.*
(Kate sometimes goes to the gym.)					

b.

Topic (subject)		Noun	Particle	Noun	Particle	Verb
サラ *Sara*	**は** ***wa***	キッチン *kitchin*	で *de*	パスタ *pasuta*	を *o*	作っている。 *tsukutte iru.*
(Sarah is making pasta in the kitchen.)						

(16) on the next page demonstrates a general structure of Japanese sentences. Here, (a)–(h) show the common sequence of NP + Prts. That is, in many cases, (a) occurs before (b), (b) occurs before (c), and so on. Any one of (a)–(h) can be marked by *wa*. When *wa* marks them, *ga* and *o* always drop, and *ni* and *e* sometimes drop. The other particles remain and occur before *wa* (e.g., X *to wa*, Y *de wa*). The element marked by *wa* comes in the sentence-initial position, and the core predicate comes in the sentence-final position.

(16)


Topic
(a) NP *ni* [Location of existence]
(b) NP *ga* [Subject]
(c) NP (*ni*) [Time]
(d) NP *to* [Accompaniment]
(e) NP *de* [Means / Location of action or event]
(f) NP *kara* [Starting point / Source]
(g) NP *ni* [Indirect Object / Direction]
(h) NP *o* [Direct Object]
NP *e* [Direction]
Core Predicate
V
Adj(*i*)
Adj(*na*)
N
Da
(Auxiliary)
(Sentence-final particle(s))

2. Topic

Topic is a key concept in understanding Japanese. Roughly speaking, the topic of a sentence is what the sentence is about. For example, in (1), the topic is Cathy and the rest of the sentence provides information about Cathy.

(1) キャシーは私のルームメートです。
Kyashī wa watashi no rūmumēto desu.
(Cathy is my roommate. (lit., Speaking of Cathy, she is my roommate.))

Topics are presented using various topic-marking devices in Japanese. Among these, *wa* is the most frequently used marker. (For topic markers, see Grammar Index: Topic.)

When a topic is presented, it must be something both the speaker and the listener can identify from their knowledge. In many cases, what is presented as a topic is someone or something that has been mentioned in a previous discourse, someone or something the speaker and the listener perceive through their five senses at the moment of speech, or someone or something that the speaker and the listener know. (2) provides examples.

(2) a. [X (*wa*) is mentioned in the preceding sentence.]
昔々、一人のおじいさんが住んでいました。**おじいさんは**とても貧乏でした。
Mukashi-mukashi, hitori no o-jīsan ga sunde imashita. ***O-jīsan wa*** *totemo binbō deshita.*
(Once upon a time, there lived an old man. The old man was very poor.)

b. [The speaker and the listener are looking at the object that X (*wa*) refers to.]
これは私のスマホです。
Kore wa *watashi no sumaho desu.*
(This is my smartphone.)

c. [The speaker and the listener know who X (*wa*) refers to.]
古田さんは医者です。
Furuta-san wa *isha desu.*
(Furuta-san is a doctor.)

d. [The speaker and the listener know what X (*wa*) is.]
イルカはほ乳類です。
Iruka wa *honyūrui desu.*
(Dolphins are mammals.)

In general, any N + Prt can be topicalized using *wa*, although N *ga* (i.e., subject) is the most frequently topicalized element. When topicalized with *wa*, the particles

ga and *o* drop, the directional *ni*, the locational *ni*, and *e* may drop, and the other case particles, including the indirect object marker *ni*, *de*, *to*, *kara* and *made*, do not drop, as in (3).

(3) a. ウィルソンさん**は**週末京都へ行きました。
*Wiruson-san **wa** shūmatsu Kyōto e ikimashita.*
(Wilson-san went to Kyoto over the weekend.)

b. その映画**は**もう見ました。
*Sono eiga **wa** mō mimashita.*
(I already saw that movie.)

c. 広島(**へ / に**)**は**まだ行ったことがない。
*Hiroshima (**e / ni**) **wa** mada itta koto ga nai.*
(I haven't been to Hiroshima yet.)

d. この町(**に**)**は**いいレストランがあまりない。
*Kono machi (**ni**) **wa** ii resutoran ga amari nai.*
(There are not many good restaurants in this town.)

e. 真理**には**本をあげた。
*Mari **ni wa** hon o ageta.*
(I gave a book to Mari.)

f. この大学**では**いろいろな外国語が勉強できます。
*Kono daigaku **de wa** iroiro na gaikokugo ga benkyō-dekimasu.*
(You can study various foreign languages at this university.)

g. カレン**とは**一度テニスをしたことがあります。
*Karen **to wa** ichi-do tenisu o shita koto ga arimasu.*
(I have played tennis with Karen once.)

h. 中国**からは**ワンさんが来た。
*Chūgoku **kara wa** Wan-san ga kita.*
(Wang-san came from China.)

In discourse, once a topic is established, it does not need to be repeated. To see this point, let us consider the following passage that consists of four sentences (4a)–(4d).

(4) a. **健太は**まだアメリカに行ったことがない。
***Kenta wa** mada Amerika ni itta koto ga nai.*
(Kenta has not been to America yet.)

b. いつも行きたいと思っているが、お金がないから行けない。
Itsumo iki-tai to omotte iru ga, o-kane ga nai kara ikenai.
(He always thinks he wants to go, but since he has no money, he cannot go.)

c. **お父さんは**働いてお金をためなさいと言う。
O-tōsan wa *hataraite o-kane o tame-nasai to iu.*
(His father tells him to work and save money.)

d. でも、**健太は**お父さんにお金を出してほしいのだ。
Demo, ***Kenta wa*** *o-tōsan ni o-kane o dashite hoshii no da.*
(However, Kenta wants his father to give him money.)

Here, (4a) introduces a topic, *Kenta*. Since (4b) is a statement about *Kenta* and *Kenta* has already been established as the topic, *Kenta wa* does not have to be repeated here. (4c), however, presents a new topic, *o-tōsan*. Since this topic is still in effect when the topic returns to *Kenta* in (4d), *Kenta wa* has to be reintroduced.

3. Ellipsis

In language it is universally observed that strategies exist to minimize the effort of conveying messages. Common strategies of this type include ellipsis, contraction, abbreviation and the use of pronouns. Of these, ellipsis (i.e., the omission of words) is the most efficient and occurs frequently in Japanese.

Generally speaking, elements that can be understood from the context and/or from the situation can be omitted in Japanese unless ellipsis makes the sentence ungrammatical. For example, in (1), B does not repeat *Satomi wa* and *sono mise de* because they can be understood.

(1) A: 里美はその店で何を買いましたか。
Satomi wa sono mise de nani o kaimashita ka.
(What did Satomi buy at the store?)

B: スカーフを買いました。
Sukāfu o kaimashita.
(She bought a scarf.)

Kaimashita, however, cannot be omitted in normal conversation even though it can be understood here. This is because Japanese sentences (or clauses) must end with a word that indicates a tense and politeness level information (i.e, a verb, an *i*-adjective, or *da* or its variation), and without *kaimashita*, this sentence becomes ungrammatical. (In very casual conversation, B might reply "*sukāfu*" in answer to A's question, but an answer of this sort is considered abrupt.)

The following are some general rules of ellipsis in Japanese.

(A) If X is the topic of a sentence (often marked by *wa*) and is also the topic of the sentence that follows, it is omitted in the second sentence. (See (4) in 2. Topic.)

(B) In question-and-answer discourse, if an element X is shared in the question and the answer, X is usually omitted in the answer unless it is the core predicate (e.g., sentence-final verbs, adjectives, nouns followed by *da*) as in (2) and (3). (See (16) in 1. Word Order and Basic Sentence Structures for "core predicate.")

(2) A: ジョナサンはパーティーに来ましたか。
Jonasan wa pātī ni kimashita ka.
(Did Jonathan come to the party?)

B: はい、来ました。
Hai, kimashita.
(Yes, he did.)

(3) A: ボニーは学生ですか。
Bonī wa gakusei desu ka.
(Is Bonnie a student?)

B: はい、{そうです / 学生です}。(*Sō desu* is more commonly used rather than repeating the same noun.)
Hai, {*sō desu / gakusei desu*}*.*
(Yes, she is.)

(C) If (a) the referent of X is something very close to the speaker and the listener, (b) X can be understood from the context and/or the situation, and (c) X is not under focus or a contrastive element, X can be omitted, as in (4)–(6). (The parenthesized portions are the words that can be omitted.)

(4) A: (あなたは) 何を飲みますか。
(Anata wa) nani o nomimasu ka.
(What would you like to drink? (lit., What will you drink?))

B: (私は) ビールにします。
(Watashi wa) bīru ni shimasu.
(I'll have beer.)

(5) A: (私たちは) 行きましょうか。
(Watashi-tachi wa) ikimashō ka.
(Shall we go?)

B: いや、(私たちは) やめましょう。
Iya, (watashi-tachi wa) yamemashō.
(No, let's not.)

(6) A: (これは / それは) 何ですか。
(Kore wa / Sore wa) nan desu ka.
(What are these / those?)

B: (それは / これは) 日本のお菓子です。
(Sore wa / Kore wa) Nihon no o-kashi desu.
(Those / These are Japanese sweets.)

(A)–(C) primarily concern the ellipsis of nouns and the particles attached to them. However, ellipsis in Japanese is not limited to such elements. The following are some general rules regarding the ellipsis of particles in conversation.

(D) If the referent of X in X *wa* is psychologically close to the speaker and the listener, *wa* tends to drop unless X is under focus, as in (7).

(7) a. わたくし(は)山田と申します。
Watakushi (wa) Yamada to mōshimasu.
(I am Yamada. (lit., I call myself Yamada.))

b. 山田さん(は)、今、何年生ですか。
Yamada-san (wa), ima, nan-nensei desu ka.
(What year (in school) are you in now, Yamada-san?)

c. この本(は)おもしろいよ。
Kono hon (wa) omoshiroi yo.
(This book is interesting.)

d. あの人(は)だれですか。
Ano hito (wa) dare desu ka.
(Who is that person?)

(E) The direct object marker *o* is often omitted unless the direct object is under focus, as in (8). (*O* drops more frequently in questions.)

(8) a. 何(を)飲みますか。
Nani (o) nomimasu ka.
(What would you like to drink?)

b. じゃ、それ(を)もらいます。
Ja, sore (o) moraimasu.
(Then, I'll take it.)

c. 今晩電話(を)ください。
Konban denwa (o) kudasai.
(Please give me a call tonight.)

(F) In conversation between intimate individuals, the subject marker *ga* may be omitted if the sentence conveys information that is expected by the listener or that is very closely related to the listener, as in (9).

(9) a. あ、電車(が)来た。
A, densha (ga) kita.
(Oh, here comes the train.)

b. みなさん、お食事(が)できました。
Minasan, o-shokuji (ga) dekimashita.
(Folks, the meal is ready now.)

c. さっき野田さんから電話(が)あったよ。
Sakki Noda-san kara denwa (ga) atta yo.
(There was a phone call from Noda-san a while ago.)

Rules (A)–(F) concern the ellipsis of elements of simple sentences or clauses. There are, however, cases in which entire clauses are omitted. (G) is a general rule regarding this sentential ellipsis.

(G) If the message conveyed by a main clause can be understood from the context and/or the situation, the main clause can be deleted as in (10)–(12).

(10) A: 昨日パーティーに来なかったね。
Kinō pātī ni konakatta ne.
(You didn't come to the party yesterday.)

B: うん、ちょっと忙しかったから(行けなかった)。
Un, chotto isogashikatta kara (ikenakatta).
(Yeah, (I couldn't come) because I was busy.)

(11) 池田先生に聞いたら(どうですか)?
Ikeda-sensei ni kiitara (dō desu ka)?
(Why don't you ask Prof. Ikeda? (lit., (How will it be) if you ask Prof. Ikeda?))

(12) お茶がはいりましたけど(いかがですか)?
O-cha ga hairimashita kedo (ikaga desu ka)?
(Tea is ready now, but (would you like some?))

Ellipsis also takes place for psychological reasons. For example, the speaker may omit a part of a sentence because he/she considers it rude to say it, because he/she feels uncomfortable saying it, or because he/she does not know how to say it, etc., as in (13)–(15).

(13) A: 今晩映画に行きませんか。
Konban eiga ni ikimasen ka.
(Would you like to go to a movie tonight?)

B: すみません、今晩はちょっと(都合が悪いです)。
Sumimasen, konban wa chotto (tsugō ga waruidesu).
(lit., I'm sorry. Tonight is a little (inconvenient).)

(14) 先生、相談したいことがあるんですが(、時間をいただけませんか)。
Sensei, sōdan-shi-tai koto ga aru n desu ga (, jikan o itadakemasen ka).
(Professor, I'd like to consult with you about something. (Could you spare some time for me?))

(15) A: お母さんはお元気ですか。
O-kāsan wa o-genki desu ka.
(How's your mother? (lit., Is your mother well?))

B: あの、母は去年亡くなりました。
Ano, haha wa kyonen nakunarimashita.
(Uh, my mother passed away last year.)

A: あ、それはどうも……
A, sore wa dōmo...
(Oh, that is... (very sad to hear).)

Note that sentences with ellipsis are sometimes ambiguous in isolation. For example, in (16) and (17), the (a) sentences and the (b) sentences are identical with ellipsis. They are interpreted correctly only if they are in proper contexts and/or situations.

(16) a. ぼくは千佳子はあまり好きじゃない。しかし、(ぼくは)**夏美は好きだ**。
Boku wa Chikako wa amari suki ja nai. Shikashi, (boku wa) ***Natsumi wa suki da.***
(I don't like Chikako very much, but I like Natsumi.)

b. ぼくは千佳子はあまり好きじゃない。しかし、**夏美は**(千佳子が)**好きだ**。
Boku wa Chikako wa amari suki ja nai. Shikashi, ***Natsumi wa*** *(Chikako ga)* ***suki da.***
(I don't like Chikako very much, but Natsumi likes her.)

(17) a. 私はいい人を見つけたので、さっそく**石田さんに**(その人に)**会ってもらった**。
Watashi wa ii hito o mitsuketa node, sassoku ***Ishida-san ni*** *(sono hito ni)* ***atte moratta.***
(I found a good person, so I asked Ishida-san to see him right away.)

b. 私はいい人を見つけたので、さっそく(その人に)**石田さんに会ってもらった**。
Watashi wa ii hito o mitsuketa node, sassoku (sono hito ni) ***Ishida-san ni atte moratta.***
(I found a good person, so I asked him to see Ishida-san right away.)

4. Personal Pronouns

Japanese personal pronouns have several characteristics that are not observed in English. First, there is more than one pronoun for the first and second person, as listed below.

Singular

Levels of Formality	First Person "I"	Second Person "You"
Very Formal	わたくし *watakushi*	
Formal	わたし *watashi*	あなた *anata*
Informal	ぼく　あたし *boku*　*atashi* (male)　(female)	きみ *kimi* (used by male)
Very Informal	おれ *ore* (male)	お前　あんた *omae*　*anta* (used by male)

Plural

Levels of Formality	First Person "We"	Second Person "You"
Very Formal	わたくしども *watakushi-**domo***	
Formal	わたくしたち *watakushi-**tachi*** わたしたち *watashi-**tachi***	あなたがた *anata-**gata***
Informal	ぼくたち　あたしたち *boku-**tachi***　*atashi-**tachi*** (male)　(female) ぼくら *boku-**ra*** (male)	きみたち　あなたたち *kimi-**tachi***　*anata-**tachi*** (used by male) きみら *kimi-**ra*** (used by male)
Very Informal	おれたち　あたしら *ore-**tachi***　*atashi-**ra*** (male)　(female)	おまえたち　あんたたち *omae-**tachi***　*anta-**tachi*** (used by male) おまえら　あんたら *omae-**ra***　*anta-**ra*** (used by male)

Note that the use of *anata* is limited because it sounds rude in many situations, particularly when the listener is older or higher in status than the speaker. For this reason, in most cases, *anata* is not said, as in (1), or the name of the listener (i.e., *Tanaka-san*, *Jon-san*, etc.), the occupation or title of the listener (e.g., *sensei* "teacher" or "professor," *kachō* "section chief," etc.) and the appropriate kinship term (e.g., *o-tōsan* "father," *nēsan* "elder sister," etc.) are used instead of *anata*, as in (2).

(1) a. [At a party]
すみません。日本の方ですか。
Sumimasen. Nihon no kata desu ka.
(Excuse me. Are *you* Japanese?)

b. [At a bar]
何を飲みますか。
Nani o nomimasu ka.
(What will *you* drink?)

(2) a. 西川さんの専攻は何ですか。
***Nishikawa-san** no senkō wa nan desu ka.*
(What is *your* major, Nishikawa-san?)

b. 先生はパーティーにいらっしゃいますか。
***Sensei** wa pātī ni irasshaimasu ka.*
(Will *you* go to the party, Professor?)

c. お父さんも歌わない？
***O-tōsan** mo utawanai?*
(Would *you* like to sing, too, Dad?)

Kinship terms and occupational terms such as *sensei* are also used to refer to the speaker himself/herself. (See 8. Viewpoint.)

Second, in Japanese there are no third-person pronouns that correspond to *he*, *she* and *they* in English. *Kare* "he," *kanojo* "she," *kare-ra* "they (male)" and *kanojo-ra* "they (female)" are third-person pronouns, but they are not used as commonly as *he*, *she* and *they* are in English. In fact, *kare* and *kanojo* are often used to refer to someone's boyfriend and girlfriend, respectively, as in (3).

(3) a. 良太は**彼女**がいるらしい。
*Ryōta wa **kanojo** ga iru rashii.*
(It looks like Ryota has a girlfriend.)

b. 私の**彼**はレストランのシェフなんです。
*Watashi no **kare** wa resutoran no shefu na n desu.*
(My boyfriend is a restaurant chef.)

Instead of *kare*, *kanojo*, etc., expressions like *ano hito* "that person" and *sono sensei* "that teacher" are more commonly used as a third-person pronoun, as in (4).

(4) a. [After being asked by the listener if he/she should tell a certain person about something]
それは**あの人**には話さないほうがいいでしょう。
*Sore wa **ano hito** ni wa hanasanai hō ga ii deshō.*
(Probably you'd better not tell *him/her* about it.)

b. [After hearing that the listener has a new teacher]
その先生はきびしいですか。
***Sono sensei** wa kibishiidesu ka.*
(Is *he/she* strict?)

Third, because Japanese is a highly context-dependent language and information recoverable from the context and/or the situation is basically not said, and in addition, because sentences are grammatical without explicit subjects, personal pronouns are often absent where they are required in English, as in (5) and (6).

(5) A: (あなたは)明日のパーティーに行きますか。
(Anata wa) ashita no pātī ni ikimasu ka.
(Are you going to tomorrow's party?)

B: はい、(私は)行きます。
Hai, (watashi wa) ikimasu.
(Yes, I am.)

(6) a. 由里子は去年イタリアに行った。ø イタリア語が勉強したかったのだ。
Yuriko wa kyonen Itaria ni itta. ø Itariago ga benkyō-shi-takatta no da.
(Yuriko went to Italy last year. *She* wanted to study Italian.)

b. 大内さんは 10 年前に買った車にまだ乗っている。
Ōuchi-san wa jū-nen mae ni katta kuruma ni mada notte iru.
(Ouchi-san is still driving the car that *he* bought ten years ago.)

c. A: ディックは昨日クラスに来ましたか。
Dikku wa kinō kurasu ni kimashita ka.
(Did Dick come to class yesterday?)

B: ええ、ø 来ましたよ。
Ee, ø kimashita yo.
(Yes, *he* did.)

d. A: 野村さんたち、遅いねえ。
Nomura-san-tachi, osoi nē.
(Nomura-san and the others are late, aren't they?)

B: ø 忘れているんじゃないかしら。
ø *Wasurete iru n ja nai kashira.*
(I wonder if *they* have forgotten (about our meeting).)

Fourth, Japanese personal pronouns can be freely modified by adjectives and relative clauses, as in (7), which indicates that they have a characteristic of regular nouns.

(7) a. 音楽が好きな**私**は一日中音楽を聞いている。
Ongaku ga suki na ***watashi*** *wa ichi-nichi-jū ongaku o kiite iru.*
(Because I like music, I listen to it all day long. (lit., I, who like music, is listening to music all day long.))

b. 若い**あなた**にはまだ分からないでしょう。
Wakai ***anata*** *ni wa mada wakaranai deshō.*
(You are too young to understand it. (lit., Young you probably won't understand it yet.))

5. Passive

The concept of passive in Japanese, which is called *ukemi* (受身)(lit., body which receives something), is considerably different from its English counterpart. The Japanese passive contains two elements: an event (i.e., an action by someone/something) and a person or thing that is affected by that event. For example, if someone runs away and it affects someone else, that action can be expressed by the passive construction. Or, if someone smokes and it affects someone else, that can be a passive situation. The sentences in (1) describe the above situations.

(1) a. 杉田さんは奥さんに逃げ**られた**。
*Sugita-san wa okusan ni nige**rareta**.*
(Sugita-san's wife ran away from him (and he suffered).)

b. 恵美子は浩一にメールを読ま**れた**。
*Emiko wa Kōichi ni mēru o yoma**reta**.*
(Koichi read Emiko's emails (and she was annoyed).)

The common characteristic of the Japanese passive is that the event is not under the control of the person affected by it. For example, Sugita-san in (1a) has no control over his wife's abandoning him and Emiko in (1b) has no control over Koichi's reading her emails.

Passive situations are expressed in various ways according to the situation. The most common way is to use the passive forms of verbs, as in (1a) and (1b).

(⇒ ***~rareru***[1])

Notice here that neither (1a) nor (1b) can be expressed using the English passive construction "*be* + past participle." This type of construction, however, is frequently found in Japanese and is called "indirect passive." In most indirect passive sentences, the person who is affected by an event is negatively affected, as in (1a) and (1b). However, in rare situations, the person can be positively affected, as in (2).

(2) 香奈は大好きな歌手に横に座ら**れて**うれしそうだ。
*Kana wa dai-suki na kashu ni yoko ni suwara**rete** ureshi-sō da.*
(Having a singer she is crazy about sit beside her, Kana looks happy.)

In indirect passive sentences the verbs usually represent volitional actions. For example, the following sentences, in which the verbs do not represent volitional actions, are unacceptable.

(3) a. × 私は石に頭に落ち**られた**。
× *Watashi wa ishi ni atama ni ochi**rareta**.*
(*Intended meaning*: A rock fell on my head and I suffered.)

b. × エドは交差点のまん中で車に止まら**れた**。
× *Edo wa kōsaten no mannaka de kuruma ni tomara**reta**.*
(*Intended meaning*: Ed's car stalled in the middåle of an intersection, and he had trouble.)

There are, however, a handful of exceptions, as seen in (4).

(4) 私は雨に降ら**れた**。
*Watashi wa ame ni fura**reta**.*
(I was rained on.)

The passive forms of verbs can also express what is called "direct passive." (5) presents examples.

(5) a. フレッドはダンになぐら**れた**。
*Fureddo wa Dan ni nagura**reta**.*
(Fred was hit by Dan.)

b. この絵は 19 世紀に描か**れた**。
*Kono e wa jūkyū-seiki ni kaka**reta**.*
(This picture was painted in the nineteenth century.)

c. 酒は米から作ら**れる**。
*Sake wa kome kara tsukura**reru**.*
(Sake is made from rice.)

Direct passive sentences are used when the speaker describes the situation from the viewpoint of the direct object (i.e., the receiver of the action), as in (5a), when the speaker wants to avoid mentioning the agent for some reason, as in (5b), or when it is unnecessary or impossible to mention the agent, as in (5c).

The essential difference between direct passive and indirect passive is that in direct passive sentences, a person/thing is *directly* affected by an event (i.e., a person/thing is the direct receiver of someone's/something's action), while in indirect passive sentences, the effect of an event on a person is indirect (i.e., a person is not the direct receiver of someone's/something's action), as seen in (1), (2) and (4). Also note that direct passive sentences have passive equivalents in English, which is not the case with indirect passive sentences.

When a passive sentence is used, whether it is a direct passive sentence or an indirect passive sentence, it is about the person who or the thing that is affected by the event, and when what is affected is human, the sentence takes the viewpoint of that person rather than that of the agent of the event. (See 8. Viewpoint.)

Some passive situations are also expressed by the verb *morau* "get," as in (6).

(6) a. マーガレットはポールにイヤリングを**もらった**。
*Māgaretto wa Pōru ni iyaringu o **moratta**.*
(Margaret got a pair of earrings from Paul.)

b. ジェニーはスティーブにアパートに来て**もらった**。
*Jenī wa Sutību ni apāto ni kite **moratta**.*
(Jenny had Steve come to her apartment.)

c. 私は父にノートパソコンを買って**もらった**。
*Watashi wa chichi ni nōto-pasokon o katte **moratta**.*
(I had my father buy me a laptop.)

Unlike passive sentences with *rareru*, when *morau* is used, the event normally affects the person *positively*. In this case, also, the speaker's viewpoint is that of the person affected by the event. (⇒ ***morau***[1]; ***morau***[2])

Naru "become" can also express some passive situations. Compare the following pairs of sentences with *suru* "do" and *naru*.

(7) a. 山口さんはマレーシアに行くことに**した**。
*Yamaguchi-san wa Marēshia ni iku koto ni **shita**.*
(Yamaguchi-san has decided to go to Malaysia.)

b. 山口さんはマレーシアに行くことに**なった**。
*Yamaguchi-san wa Marēshia ni iku koto ni **natta**.*
(It's been decided that Yamaguchi-san is going to Malaysia.)

(8) a. 学校はフレッドを停学に**した**。
*Gakkō wa Fureddo o teigaku ni **shita**.*
(The school suspended Fred.)

b. フレッドは停学に**なった**。
*Fureddo wa teigaku ni **natta**.*
(Fred was suspended from school.)

Here, again, the viewpoint in the (b) sentences is that of the person affected by the event, and the agent of the event is not the speaker's main concern.
(⇒ ~ ***koto ni naru***; ***naru***)

6. *Keigo*: Extra-polite Expressions

Basically, there are three levels of politeness in Japanese: casual, polite and extra-polite. The casual level is used when one talks to someone very intimate, such as family members and close friends. The polite level is used when one talks to someone to whom one wants to be polite, e.g., one's teachers, bosses, seniors, and people one does not know well. The extra-polite level is used when one talks to someone to whom one wants to be very polite, e.g., one's customers, important guests, and someone one respects. For the casual level, plain forms (= informal forms) are used (see Appendix 1. Basic Conjugations), and for the polite level, polite forms (i.e., forms that end with *masu*, *desu*, and their variations) are used. For the extra-polite level, special expressions called "*keigo*" are used. (1)–(3) compare the three levels of expressions.

(1) Casual speech

a. A: 明日のパーティーに**行く**？
*Ashita no pātī ni **iku**?*
(Going to tomorrow's party?)

B: うん、**行く**。
*Un, **iku**.*
(Yeah, I am.)

b. A: ゴルフ、**する**？
*Gorufu, **suru**?*
(You play golf?)

B: {いや / ううん}、**しない**。
*{Iya / Uun}, **shinai**.*
(Nope, I don't.)

(2) Polite speech

a. A: 明日のパーティーに**行きます**か。
*Ashita no pātī ni **ikimasu** ka.*
(Are you going to tomorrow's party?)

B: はい、**行きます**。
*Hai, **ikimasu**.*
(Yes, I am.)

b. A: ゴルフを**します**か。
*Gorufu o **shimasu** ka.*
(Do you play golf?)

B: いいえ、しません。
Īe, ***shimasen.***
(No, I don't.)

(3) Extra-polite speech (*keigo*)

a. A: 明日のパーティーにいらっしゃいますか。
Ashita no pātī ni ***irasshaimasu*** *ka.*
(Are you going to tomorrow's party?)

B: はい、参ります。
Hai, ***mairimasu.***
(Yes, I am.)

b. A: ゴルフをなさいますか。
Gorufu o ***nasaimasu*** *ka.*
(Do you play golf?)

B: いいえ、いたしません。
Īe, ***itashimasen.***
(No, I don't.)

Keigo is categorized into the following three major groups.

A. Honorific polite expressions: Used when the speaker talks about the action or state of someone to whom he/she wants to show respect.
B. Humble polite expressions: Used when the speaker humbly talks about his/her own action that involves someone to whom he/she wants to show respect.
C. Courteous polite expressions: Used when the speaker talks very politely about something or his/her own action that does not involve someone to whom he/she wants to show respect.

The three types of *keigo* above are expressed using certain grammar structures and special verbs. Each type is explained one by one below.

A. Honorific polite expressions

When the speaker talks about the action or state of someone to whom he/she wants to show respect, honorific polite expressions are used. A-1 explains honorific expressions for verbs, covering (a) special honorific verbs and (b) honorific verb forms for other verbs, while A-2 describes honorific expressions for adjectives and *da*.

A-1. Verbs

Certain verbs have corresponding special verbs, which are listed in a. *Special honorific verbs*. Honorific verb forms that are used for other verbs are provided in b. *Honorific verb forms*.

a. *Special honorific verbs*

Ordinary Verb	Special Honorific Verb
する (do) *suru*	なさる (Gr. 1) *nasaru*
いる / 来る / 行く (be/come/go) *iru / kuru / iku*	いらっしゃる (Gr. 1) おいでになる (Gr. 1) *irassharu / oide ni naru*
食べる / 飲む (eat/drink) *taberu / nomu*	召し上がる (Gr. 1) *meshiagaru*
言う (say) *iu*	おっしゃる (Gr. 1) *ossharu*
くれる (give (to me)) *kureru*	くださる (Gr. 1) *kudasaru*
見る (see) *miru*	ご覧になる (Gr. 1) *goran ni naru*
知っている (know) *shitte iru*	ご存知だ* *go-zonji da*
着る (wear) *kiru*	お召しになる (Gr. 1) *o-meshi ni naru*
死ぬ (die) *shinu*	おなくなりになる (Gr. 1) *o-nakunari ni naru*
V*te* いる V*te iru*	V*te* いらっしゃる (Gr. 1) V*te irassharu*

**Go-zonji da* consists of the polite prefix *go*, the *masu*-stem of *zonjiru* "know" and *da*. Thus, the negative form is *go-zonji janai*, the past affirmative form is *go-zonji datta*, the *te*-form is *go-zonji de*, and the polite form is *go-zonji desu*.

For *suru*-verbs, such as *denwa-suru* "make a call" and *kenkyū-suru* "do research," VN-*nasaru* is used. *o/go*-VN-*nasaru* is even more polite. (⇒ ***o ~ ni naru***)

(4) a. アンダーソン先生はその会議には**いらっしゃいません**。
*Andāson-sensei wa sono kaigi ni wa **irasshaimasen**.*
(Prof. Anderson is not going to attend that conference.)

b. この映画はもう**ご覧になりましたか**。
*Kono eiga wa mō **goran ni narimashita** ka.*
(Have you already watched this movie?)

c. 村井先生を**ご存知ですか**。
*Murai-sensei o **go-zonji desu** ka.*
(Do you know Prof. Murai?)

d. 石田先生は仏教の歴史を**研究なさいました**。
*Ishida-sensei wa bukkyō no rekishi o **kenkyū-nasaimashita**.*
(Prof. Ishida studied the history of Buddhism.)

e. 今井先生は今、学生と話し**ていらっしゃいます**。
*Imai-sensei wa ima, gakusei to hanashi**te irasshaimasu**.*
(Prof. Imai is talking with a student now.)

The following honorific verbs are Gr. 1 verbs, but are irregular in their conjugations of polite and imperative forms. For example, the polite affirmative form of *nasaru* is not *nasarimasu* but *nasaimasu*. Likewise, the imperative form of *nasaru* is not *nasare* but *nasai*.

Plain		Polite		Imperative
Affirmative (=Dictionary form)	Negative	Affirmative	Negative	
なさる *nasaru*	なさらない *nasaranai*	なさいます *nasaimasu*	なさいません *nasaimasen*	なさい *nasai*
いらっしゃる *irassharu*	いらっしゃらない *irassharanai*	いらっしゃいます *irasshaimasu*	いらっしゃいません *irasshaimasen*	いらっしゃい *irasshai*
おっしゃる *ossharu*	おっしゃらない *ossharanai*	おっしゃいます *osshaimasu*	おっしゃいません *osshaimasen*	おっしゃい *osshai*
くださる *kudasaru*	くださらない *kudasaranai*	ください ます *kudasaimasu*	ください ません *kudasaimasen*	ください *kudasai*

b. *Honorific verb forms*

For verbs without corresponding special honorific verbs, as introduced above, there are three honorific forms as follows.

	Formation	Example
O ~ ni naru form	お Vmasu になる *o-Vmasu ni naru*	話す (talk) → お話しになる *hanasu* *o-hanashi ni naru*
O ~ da form	お Vmasu だ *o-Vmasu da*	読む (read) → お読みだ *yomu* *o-yomi da*
Passive forms	Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg れる Vneg *reru* Gr. 2 verbs: Vstemられる Vstem *rareru*	話す (talk) → 話される *hanasu* ***hanasareru*** 教える (teach) → 教えられる *oshieru* ***oshierareru***

(5) *O ~ ni naru* form

a. 発表の時、コンピュータを**お使いになりますか**。
*Happyō no toki, konpyūta o **o-tsukai ni narimasu** ka.*
(Are you going to use a computer when you give your presentation?)

b. 浅田先生は今、学生と**お会いになっています**。
*Asada-sensei wa ima, gakusei to **o-ai ni natte imasu.***
(Prof. Asada is meeting with a student now.)

Among the three honorific verb forms above, the *o ~ ni naru* form is the most polite. This form cannot be used with the verbs that have corresponding special honorific verbs (see (a) in A-1) except for *nomu* "drink." (⇒ ***o ~ ni naru***)

(6) *O ~ da* form

a. 安田先生は今、文法の本を**お書きだ**。
*Yasuda-sensei wa ima, bunpō no hon o **o-kaki da.***
(Prof. Yasuda is writing a grammar book now.)

b. ロバーツ先生は今から**お出かけです**。
*Robātsu-sensei wa ima kara **o-dekake desu.***
(Prof. Roberts is going out now.)

In (6), the final *da* and *desu* themselves do not indicate whether the action is in progress or a future one. This is determined from the context. While the *o ~ da* form is commonly used in daily conversation, the use of this form is limited to a relatively small set of verbs, including *kaeru* "return home," *matsu* "wait," *modoru* "return home," *motsu* "possess," *sagasu* "look for," *tomaru* "stay (at a hotel)," *yasumu* "take a day off," etc. (⇒ ***o ~ ni naru***: Related Expression I)

(7) Passive forms

a. 中野先生はもう**帰られました**。
*Nakano-sensei wa mō **kaeraremashita**.*
(Prof. Nakano has left (his office) already. / Prof. Nakano has returned home already.)

b. ヨーロッパにはよく**行かれますか**。
*Yōroppa ni wa yoku **ikaremasu** ka.*
(Do you often go to Europe?)

The honorific passive forms can also be used with verbs that have corresponding special honorific verbs. For example, in (7b), *iku* has the honorific verb *irassharu*, but the passive form *ikareru* can also be used as an honorific expression.

(⇒ ~***rareru***[1]: Note 12)

A-2. Adjectives and nouns

Besides verbs, *i*-adjectives and *na*-adjectives/nouns with *Da* also have corresponding honorific forms.

	Formation	Example
I-adjectives	おAdj(*i*) *o*-Adj(*i*)	強い (s.o. is strong) *tsuyoi* → お強い ***o**-tsuyoi*
Na-adjectives + *da*	お Adj(*na*) { だ / でいらっしゃる } *o*-Adj(*na*) { *da* / *de irassharu* } ご Adj(*na*) { だ / でいらっしゃる } *go*-Adj(*na*) { *da* / *de irassharu* }	元気だ (s.o. is healthy) *genki da* → お元気 { だ / でいらっしゃる } ***o**-genki* { ***da** / **de irassharu*** } 立派だ (s.o. is admirable) *rippa da* → ご立派 { だ / でいらっしゃる } ***go**-rippa* { ***da** / **de irassharu*** }
Nouns + *da*	Noun でいらっしゃる Noun *de irassharu*	学長だ (s.o. is a university president) *gakuchō da* → 学長でいらっしゃる *gakuchō **de irassharu***

(8) *I*-adjectives

a. 山村先生はまだ**お若い**です。
*Yamamura-sensei wa mada **o-wakai**desu.*
(Prof. Yamamura is still young.)

b. グッドマン先生は歌舞伎に**お詳しい**。
*Guddoman-sensei wa kabuki ni **o-kuwashii.***
(Prof. Goodman is knowledgeable about kabuki.)

(9) *Na*-adjectives + *da*

a. 村上先生はテニスが**お上手**｛**です** / **でいらっしゃいます**｝。
*Murakami-sensei wa tenisu ga **o-jōzu**｛**desu** / **de irasshaimasu**｝.*
(Prof. Murakami is good at tennis.)

b. 交通事故がありましたが、ベーカーさんは**ご無事**｛**でした** / **でいらっしゃいました**｝。
*Kōtsūjiko ga arimashita ga, Bēkā-san wa **go-buji**｛**deshita** / **de irasshaimashita**｝.*
(There was a traffic accident, but Baker-san was safe.)

(10) Nouns + *da*

a. 上野先生はこの学会の**会員でいらっしゃる**。
*Ueno-sensei wa kono gakkai no **kaiin de irassharu.***
(Prof. Ueno is a member of this academic society.)

b. 大村先生もその本の**共著者でいらっしゃいます**。
*Ōmura-sensei mo sono hon no **kyōchosha de irasshaimasu.***
(Prof. Omura is also a co-author of that book.)

B. Humble polite expressions

Only verbs have humble polite forms. There are two types of humble polite forms: special humble verbs and humble verb forms.

a. *Special humble verbs*

Ordinary Verb	Special Humble Verb
もらう (receive; get) *morau*	いただく (Gr. 1) *itadaku*
あげる (give) *ageru*	さしあげる (Gr. 2) *sashiageru*
会う (meet) *au*	お目にかかる (Gr. 1) *o-me ni kakaru*

きく / 行く / 来る (ask/go/come) *kiku / iku / kuru*	うかがう (Gr. 1) *ukagau*
借りる (borrow) *kariru*	拝借する (Irr.) *haishaku-suru*
する *suru*	いたす (Gr. 1) *itasu*

For *suru*-verbs, such as *denwa-suru* "make a call" and *setsumei-suru* "explain," *o/go*-VN-*suru* or, more politely, *o/go*-VN-*itasu* is used. (⇒ ***o ~ suru***)

(11) a. 橋本先生には学会で一度**お目にかかりました**。
*Hashimoto-sensei ni wa gakkai de ichi-do **o-me ni kakarimashita**.*
(I met Prof. Hashimoto once at a conference.)

b. それについては明日、田中先生に**うかがいます**。
*Sore ni tsuite wa ashita Tanaka-sensei ni **ukagaimasu**.*
(I'll ask Prof. Tanaka about that tomorrow.)

c. ちょっとこのペンを**拝借してもよろしいですか**。
*Chotto kono pen o **haishaku-shitemo** yoroshiidesu ka.*
(May I borrow this pen for a moment?)

d. 明日また**お電話いたします**。
*Ashita mata **o-denwa-itashimasu**.*
(I'll call you again tomorrow.)

b. *Humble verb forms*

Formation	Example
おV*masu* {する / いたす} *o*-V*masu*-{*suru / itasu*}	話す (talk) → お話し {する / いたす} *hanasu* → ***o*-*hanashi*-{*suru / itasu*}**

This verb form can be used for some verbs that have special humble verbs (e.g., *o-ai-suru/itasu* for *au* "meet," *o-kari-suru/itasu* for *kariru* "borrow").

(12) a. 発表で使ったスライドをメールで**お送り**{**します / いたします**}。
*Happyō de tsukatta suraido o mēru de **o-okuri-**{**shimasu / itashimasu**}.*
(I'll send you the slides I used for my presentation via email.)

b. 会議の時間と場所は秘書が後ほど**お知らせ｛します / いたします｝**。
Kaigi no jikan to basho wa hisho ga nochihodo ***o-shirase-｛shima-su / itashimasu｝.***
(My secretary will let you know the time and location for the meeting later.)

(⇒ ***o ~ suru***)

C. Courteous polite expressions

The expressions introduced here are commonly used by people working for high-end retail stores, restaurants, hotels, Japanese inns, and such when they talk to their customers and guests.

C-1. Special courteous verbs

Ordinary Verb	Special Courteous Verb
する (do) *suru*	いたす (Gr. 1) *itasu*
いる (be) *iru*	おる (Gr. 1) *oru*
来る / 行く (come/go) *kuru / iku*	参る (Gr. 1) *mairu*
食べる / 飲む (eat/drink) *taberu / nomu*	いただく (Gr. 1) *itadaku*
言う (say) *iu*	申す (Gr. 1) *mōsu*
見る (see) *miru*	拝見する (Irr.) *haiken suru*
知っている (know) *shitte iru*	存じている (Gr. 2) *zonjite iru*
ある (be; exist) *aru*	ございます* *gozaimasu*
V*te* いる *iru*	V*te* おります* (Gr. 1) *orimasu*

*This is a polite form. The plain fom is rarely used.

(13) a. ヤングと**申します**。よろしくお願いします。
*Yangu to **mōshimasu**. Yoroshiku o-negai shimasu.*
(I am Young. (lit., I call myself Young.) Very nice to meet you.)

b. A: 飲み物は何がいいですか。
Nomimono wa nani ga iidesu ka.
(What kind of drink would you like?)

B: 私はワインを**いただきます**。
*Watashi wa wain o **itadakimasu**.*
(I'll have wine, please.)

c. [At a restaurant]
A: ポルトガルのワインはありますか。
Porutogaru no wain wa arimasu ka.
(Do you have Portuguese wine? (lit., Is there Portuguese wine?))

B: はい、**ございます**。
*Hai, **gozaimasu**.*
(Yes, we do (lit., there is).)

d. タクシーが**参りました**。
*Takushī ga **mairimashita**.*
(Your taxi is here (lit., has come).)

(14) a. 今は東京に**住んでおります**。
*Ima wa Tōkyō ni **sunde orimasu**.*
(I live in Tokyo now.)

b. 車は**持っておりません**。
*Kuruma wa **motte orimasen**.*
(I don't have a car.)

c. A: この映画を知っていますか。
Kono eiga o shitte imasu ka.
(Do you know this movie?)

B1: はい、よく存じて{います / おります}。
*Hai, yoku **zonjite**{**imasu** / **orimasu**}.*
(Yes, I know it well.)

B2: いいえ、存じません。
*Īe, **zonjimasen**.*
(No, I don't.)

There is no formulaic courteous verb form like the honorific and humble verb forms.

C-2. Adjectives and nouns

	Formation	Example
I-adjectives	おAdj(*i*) です *o*-Adj(*i*) *desu*	高い (expensive) *takai* → お高いです ***o*-takai*desu***
Na-adjectives + *da*	おAdj(*na*) { です / でございます } *o*-Adj(*na*) { *desu* / *de gozaimasu* }	手頃です (reasonable; affordable) *tegoro desu* → お手頃 { です / でございます } ***o*-tegoro { *desu* / *de gozaimasu* }**
	Adj(*na*) でございます Adj(*na*) *de gozaimasu*	にぎやかです (lively) *nigiyaka desu* → にぎやかでございます *nigiyaka* ***de gozaimasu***
Nouns + *da*	Noun でございます Noun *de gozaimasu*	来月です (s.t. is next week) *raigetsu desu* → 来月でございます *raigetsu* ***de gozaimasu***

(15) *I*-adjectives

a. [At a store]
こちらのほうが**お安いです**。
Kochira no hō ga ***o-yasuidesu***.
(This one is less expensive.)

b. 毎日、**お暑いですね**。
Mai-nichi, ***o-atsuidesu*** *ne.*
(It's hot every day, isn't it?)

(16) *Na*-adjectives + *da*

a. [At a store]
こちらのほうが**お得** { です / でございます }。
Kochira no hō ga ***o-toku*** { ***desu*** / ***de gozaimasu*** }.
(This one is more of a bargain.)

b. [At a hotel front desk]
このお寺は大変**有名でございます**。
Kono o-tera wa taihen ***yūmei de gozaimasu***.
(This temple is very famous.)

(17) Nouns + *da*

a. [At a hotel front desk]
美術館は本日**休館でございます。**
Bijutsukan wa honjitsu ***kyūkan de gozaimasu.***
(The art museum is closed today.)

b. [At a store]
こちらは**日本製でございます。**
Kochira wa ***nihon-sei de gozaimasu.***
(This one is made in Japan.)

7. Sound Symbolisms

Japanese is abundant in phonomimes (= onomatopoeia or phonetic representations of actual sounds), phenomimes (phonetic representations of the states of someone/something or the ways someone does something or something happens) and psychomimes (phonetic representations of psychological states). In what follows, the term "sound symbolisms" is used to refer to these expressions collectively.

All languages have phonomimes, such as the English *bang*, *click*, *thud*, *bow-wow* and *meow*. However, while English phonomimes are normally considered children's language and are not fully integrated into adult language, Japanese phonomimes, as well as phenomimes and psychomimes, are an indispensable part of the basic vocabulary of any adult speaker. Such expressions are not only highly effective but also almost indispensable in describing actions, emotions, sensations, etc. accurately or vividly. Therefore, it is important for students of Japanese to learn frequently used sound symbolisms in a relatively early stage of their language study.

Most Japanese sound symbolisms carry multiple meanings. The examples in this section provide only part of the meanings of the given sound symbolisms.

A. Phonetic structures

There are several types of phonetic structures in Japanese sound symbolisms. Because the purpose of this section is to present typical sound structures of sound symbolisms, the meanings of the examples here are not provided. Most of the examples are presented with context and meanings in the later sections, i.e., B. Syntactic structures and C. Meanings. (Sound symbolisms are written sometimes in hiragana and sometimes in katakana.)

Type 1: One syllable followed by an *n*, an *i* or a glottal stop

(1) a. ぱん　　しん　　しゅん
pan　　*shin*　　*shun*
b. ぐい　　ひょい　　ぽい
gui　　*hyoi*　　*poi*
c. さっ　　そっ　　はっ
sat　　*sot*　　*hat*

Variations of Type 1: One syllable with a long vowel (In many cases, the syllables are followed by an *n* or a glottal stop.)

(2) a. ワー　　ザー　　ピー　　ジャー
wā　　*zā*　　*pī*　　*jā*

b. バーン	ポーン	チーン	
bān	*pōn*	*chīn*	
c. そうっ	スーッ	パーッ	
sōt	*sūt*	*pāt*	

Type 2: Two syllables followed by an *n*, a *ri* or a glottal stop.

(3) a. ポキン	バタン	ごろん	どしん	
pokin	*batan*	*goron*	*doshin*	
b. ポキリ	バタリ	ごろり	きらり	
pokiri	*batari*	*gorori*	*kirari*	
c. ポキッ	バタッ	ごろっ	きらっ	
pokit	*batat*	*gorot*	*kirat*	

Type 3: Repetition of two syllables (This is the most common pattern.)

(4) ワンワン	がたがた	ころころ	ぴかぴか	
wanwan	*gatagata*	*korokoro*	*pikapika*	

This type has variations in which the first syllable of the second half is different from the first syllable of the first half, as in (5).

(5) ドタバタ	ガタゴト	ペチャクチャ	
dotabata	*gatagoto*	*pechakucha*	

Type 4: Two syllables with a glottal stop or an *n* in between and a *ri* at the end (This type does not occur in phonomimes.)

(6) ゆっくり	うっとり	こっそり	
yukkuri	*uttori*	*kossori*	
(7) しんみり	しょんぼり	うんざり	
shinmiri	*shonbori*	*unzari*	

B. Syntactic structures

Sound symbolisms are used in various syntactic structures. Common structures are as follows.

(A) Type 1 / Type 2 + *to* + Verb

(8) a. ぐいとロープを引く	(jerk the rope)
*gui **to** rōpu o hiku*	
b. さっと変わる	(change suddenly)
*sat **to** kawaru*	

c. そうっと部屋に入る (sneak into the room)
*sōt **to** heya ni hairu*

d. バタンとドアを閉める (slam the door)
*batan **to** doa o shimeru*

(B) Type 1 + *to suru* (⇒ ***suru***[6])

(9) a. しんとする (become quiet)
shin to suru

b. はっとする (be startled)
hat to suru

(C) Type 3 / Type 4 + (*to*) + Verb (*To* can be used, but it is usually absent.)

(10) a. ワンワン(と)鳴く (bow-wow)
*wanwan (**to**) naku*

b. きっぱり(と)断る (refuse flatly)
*kippari (**to**) kotowaru*

c. しんみり(と)話す (talk quietly)
*shinmiri (**to**) hanasu*

(D) Type 3 + *ni* + Verb

(11) a. ぴかぴかにする (polish something thoroughly)
*pikapika **ni** suru*

b. くたくたに疲れる (be exhausted)
*kutakuta **ni** tsukareru*

c. よれよれになる (become worn out)
*yoreyore **ni** naru*

(E) Type 3 / Type 4 + *suru* (Not all Type 4 words can be used in this structure.)
(⇒ ***suru***[6])

(12) a. いらいらする (get irritated)
*iraira **suru***

b. さっぱりする (feel refreshed)
*sappari **suru***

c. うんざりする (get fed up)
*unzari **suru***

(F) The first half of Type 3 + *tsuku* (*Tsuku* is a Gr. 1 auxiliary verb. Expressions with this pattern always mean something negative.)

(13) a. ふらふら → ふらつく (be wobbly)
furafura *fura-**tsuku***
b. むかむか → むかつく (be angry)
mukamuka *muka-**tsuku***
c. べとべと → べとつく (be sticky)
betobeto *beto-**tsuku***

(G) Type 3 + *no* + Noun

(14) a. ぴかぴかの床 (shiny floor)
*pikapika **no** yuka*
b. がたがたの道 (bumpy road)
*gatagata **no** michi*
c. よれよれのコート (worn-out coat)
*yoreyore **no** kōto*

(H) Noun *wa* Type 3 *da*

(15) a. この道はがたがただ。 (This road is bumpy.)
*Kono michi **wa** gatagata **da**.*
b. 私はふらふらだった。 (I was exhausted.)
*Watashi **wa** furafura **datta**.*

(I) Type 1 / Type 2 / Type 3 *to iu* Noun (In this case, sound symbolisms are actual sounds (i.e., phonomimes), and they are usually put in quotation marks.)

(16) a.「キャー」という悲鳴 (a scream (lit., a screaming sound of *"kyā"*))
*"kyā" **to iu** himei*
b.「どしん」という音 (a thump (lit., the sound of *"doshin"*))
*"doshin" **to iu** oto*
c.「ワンワン」という鳴き声 (bow-wow (lit., a barking sound of *"wanwan"*))
*"wanwan" **to iu** nakigoe*

C. Meanings

The general meanings that some sounds in sound symbolisms represent are summarized below.

(A) Voiceless and voiced plosive and fricative consonants
Voiceless plosive and fricative consonants often represent lightness, a small amount or fineness, whereas voiced plosive and fricative consonants tend to represent heaviness, a large amount or coarseness. (Note that it is not always the case that voiceless versions have voiced versions, and vice versa.)

(17) a. ころころ(転がる) ([a small object] (rolls))
***ko**ro**ko**ro (korogaru)*
a'. ごろごろ(転がる) ([a heavy object] (rolls))
***go**ro**go**ro (korogaru)*

b. トントン(たたく) ((knock on something) lightly)
***to**n**to**n (tataku)*
b'. ドンドン(たたく) ((knock on something) hard)
***do**n**do**n (tataku)*

c. ポタポタ(落ちる) ([a small amount of liquid] (drips))
***po**ta**po**ta (ochiru)*
c'. ボタボタ(落ちる) ([a large amount of liquid] (drips))
***bo**ta**bo**ta (ochiru)*

d. さらさら(の表面) (a smooth (surface))
***sa**ra**sa**ra no (hyōmen)*
d'. ざらざら(の表面) (a rough (surface))
***za**ra**za**ra no (hyōmen)*

(B) Velar consonant [k]
The [k] sound represents hardness, sharpness, crispness, decisiveness, etc.

(18) a. かちかち(に凍る) ((freeze) hard)
***ka**chi**ka**chi (ni kōru)*
b. くっきり(見える) ((can see) clearly)
***kuk**i**k**i**ri (mieru)*
c. きっぱり(断る) ((refuse) flatly)
***ki**ppari (kotowaru)*

(C) Dental fricative consonant [sh]
The [sh] sound often represents quietness.

(19) a. しとしと(降る) ((rain) quietly)
***shi**to**shi**to (furu)*
b. しんみり(話す) ((talk) quietly)
***shi**nmiri (hanasu)*
c. しょんぼり(する) ((be) despondent)
***sho**nbori (suru)*
d. しん(とする) ((become) quiet)
***shi**n (to suru)*
e. しゅん(とする) ((be) dispirited)
***shu**n (to suru)*

(D) Voiceless bilabial plosive [p]
The [p] sound represents popping or breaking sounds of hard and light objects, suddenness,vigorousness, and many other states.

(20) a. (風船が) ぱん (と割れる) ((a balloon) pops)
(fūsen ga) ***pa****n (to wareru)*
b. (木の枝が) ポキン (と折れる) ((a tree branch) snaps)
(ki no eda ga) ***po****kin (to oreru)*
c. ぱっ (と消える) ((disappear) suddenly)
pa*t (to kieru)*
d. ぴん (とくる) (hit one in one's mind)
pi*n (to kuru)*
e. ぽっくり (死ぬ) ((die) suddenly)
po*kkuri (shinu)*
f. ぴんぴん (している) ((be) full of energy)
pinpi*n (shite iru)*

(E) Nasal consonant [n]
The [ni], [nu] and [ne] sounds often represents stickiness or sliminess.

(21) a. にちゃにちゃ (する) ((be) sticky)
ni*cha****ni****cha (suru)*
b. ぬるぬる (する) ((be) slimy and slippery)
nu*ru****nu****ru (suru)*
c. ねばねば (する) ((be) sticky)
ne*ba****ne****ba (suru)*
d. ねちねち (する) ((be) sticky)
ne*chi****ne****chi (suru)*

(F) Liquid consonant [r]
The [r] sound often represents fluidity, smoothness or slipperiness. It mostly occurs in the second syllable of Type 2 words, as in (22), and in the second and fourth syllables of Type 3 words, as in (23).

(22) a. すらっ (としている) ((be) slender)
*su****ra****t (to shite iru)*
b. つるっ (としている) ((be) smooth)
*tsu****ru****t (to shite iru)*

(23) a. さらさら (流れる) ((flow) smoothly)
*sa****ra****sa****ra** (nagareru)*
b. くるくる (まわる) ((turn) round and round)
*ku****ru****ku****ru** (mawaru)*

c. すらすら(答える) ((answer) smoothly)
sura*sura *(kotaeru)
d. つるつる(している) ((be) slippery)
tsuru*tsuru *(shite iru)
e. ぬるぬる(している) ((be) slimy)
nuru*nuru *(shite iru)

(G) Semi-vowel [y]
The [yo] sound commonly represents unstableness and worn-outness, and the [yu] sound often represents slowness.

(24) a. **よ**ろ**よ**ろ(歩く) (hobble)
yo*ro*yo*ro *(aruku)
b. **よ**た**よ**た(する) (stagger)
yo*ta*yo*ta *(suru)
c. **よ**ぼ**よ**ぼ(になる) ((become) old and frail)
yo*bo*yo*bo *(ni naru)
d. **よ**れ**よ**れ(になる) ((become) worn out)
yo*re*yo*re *(ni naru)
e. **ゆ**ら**ゆ**ら(ゆれる) ((sway) slowly)
yu*ra*yu*ra *(yureru)
f. **ゆ**っくり(話す) ((speak) slowly)
yu*kkuri *(hanasu)
g. **ゆ**ったり(する) (relax oneself; (be) spacious)
yu*ttari *(suru)

(H) Back high vowel [u]
The word-initial [u] sound often represents someone's state of mind.

(25) a. **う**き**う**き(する) ((be) buoyant)
u*ki*u*ki *(suru)
b. **う**ず**う**ず(する) (itch (for action))
u*zu*u*zu *(suru)
c. **う**と**う**と(する) (doze off)
u*to*u*to *(suru)
d. **う**っかり(する) ((be) careless)
u*kkari *(suru)
e. **う**っとり(する) ((be) enchanted)
u*ttori *(suru)
f. **う**んざり(する) ((be) fed up)
u*nzari *(suru)

(I) Back vowel [o]
The word-initial [o] sound usually represents someone's uncontrolled state of mind.

(26) a. おどおど(している) ((be) timid)
***o**do**o**do (shite iru)*
b. おろおろ(する) ((be) quite at a loss)
***o**roo**o**ro (suru)*
c. おたおた(する) ((be) at a loss what to do)
***o**ta**o**ta (suru)*

When the sound [o] occurs after consonants, it often represents inconspicuous behaviors or slowness in movements.

(27) a. こっそり(人と会う) ((meet someone) secretly)
***koss**o**r**i (hito to au)*
b. そっ(と部屋を出る) ((leave the room) quietly)
***so**t (to heya o deru)*
c. そろそろ(歩く) ((walk) slowly and carefully)
***sorosoro** (aruku)*
d. のろのろ(運転する) ((drive) at a snail's pace)
***noronoro** (unten-suru)*

(J) Front vowel [e]
When the [e] sound occurs after consonants, it tends to represent vulgarness.

(28) a. へらへら(笑う) ((laugh) foolishly)
***he**ra**he**ra (warau)*
b. てらてら(光る) (something greasy (shines))
***te**ra**te**ra (hikaru)*
c. ゲラゲラ(笑う) ((laugh) loudly)
***ge**ra**ge**ra (warau)*

As shown in the table below, there are several pairs of synonymous words that carry contrastive meanings according to the initial sounds. That is, the words that begin with the [k] sound are commonly used when the speaker describes something intangible or describes situations more objectively, while the words that begins with the [n] and [m] sounds are commonly used when the speaker describes something tangible or describes situations more subjectively. (For more about each expression, see the descriptions in the main entries.) Although this is not a phenomenon of sound symbolisms in a strict sense, it might be worth knowing as a phenomenon that indicates the relation between certain sounds and the meanings they represent.

Velar ([k])	Nasals ([n] and [m])	
から (because) ***k**ara*	ので (because) ***n**ode*	(⇒ ***kara***[3]; ***node***)
けれども (although) ***k**eredomo*	のに (although) ***n**oni*	(⇒ ***keredomo***; ***noni***)
こと (nominalizer) ***k**oto*	の (nominalizer) ***n**o*	(⇒ ***koto***[2]; ***no***[3])
こと (an intangible thing) ***k**oto*	もの (a tangible thing) ***m**ono*	(⇒ ***koto***[1])

8. Viewpoint

When we describe an event that involves a person, we usually do so from that person's viewpoint, and when an event involves more than one person, we usually take the viewpoint of one of them in describing the event. For example, (1a) and (1b) both describe the same event, but (1a) describes it from Tom's viewpoint and (1b) from Alice's point of view.

(1) a. Tom met Alice yesterday.
b. Alice met Tom yesterday.

There are several principles and rules concerning viewpoints. In the following, (A)–(D) are universal principles. Japanese-specific rules are provided in (E)–(I).

Universal principles:

(A) Within a single sentence, the viewpoint should be consistent.

(B) The speaker usually describes an event from his/her own viewpoint rather than from others' when he/she is involved in the event.

(C) It is easier for the speaker to take the viewpoint of the person in the subject position of a sentence than that of a person in other positions. (See (1).)

(D) When a sentence includes the structure A's B (e.g., John's wife), the speaker is taking A's viewpoint rather than B's.

Japanese-sepcific rules:

(E) The following giving/receiving verbs require the viewpoints shown in (2).

(2) a. やる / あげる / さしあげる (to give = the giver's viewpoint)
yaru ageru sashiageru
b. くれる / くださる (to give = the receiver's viewpoint)
kureru kudasaru
c. もらう / いただく (to get/receive = the receiver's viewpoint)
morau itadaku

(E), together with (A) and (B), explains the unacceptability of the sentences in (3). (⇒ ***ageru***[1]; ***ageru***[2]; ***kureru***[1]; ***kureru***[2]; ***morau***[1]; ***morau***[2])

(3) a. 健吾は**私に**ワインを{くれた / ×あげた}。
*Kengo wa **watashi ni** wain o{**kureta** / × **ageta**}.*
(Kengo gave me some wine.)

b. 私は剛にチョコレートを{あげた / ×くれた}。
Watashi wa *Tsuyoshi ni chokorēto o* {***ageta*** / × ***kureta***}.
(I gave Tsuyoshi some chocolates.)

c. ×久美は**私に**バラの花を**もらった**。
× *Kumi wa* ***watashi ni*** *bara no hana o* ***moratta.***
(*Intended meaning*: Kumi received roses from me.)

(F) The passive construction, whether direct or indirect, requires the viewpoint of the referent of the subject. (See (C).)

(F), together with (A) and (B), explains the unnaturalness of sentences in (4). (⇒ ***~rareru***[1])

(4) a. ×和美は**私にほめられた**。
× *Kazumi wa* ***watashi ni homerareta.***
(*Intended meaning*: Kazumi was praised by me.)

b. ×佳奈は**私に**秘密の手紙を**読まれた**。
× *Kana wa* ***watashi ni*** *himitsu no tegami o* ***yomareta.***
(*Intended meaning*: Kana had her secret letter read by me.)

(G) When the verb *kuru* "come" is used, the speaker's viewpoint is somewhere close to the arrival point. When *kuru* is used as an auxiliary verb, the viewpoint is the point *to* which an action is directed or a change proceeds.

On the other hand, when the verb *iku* "go" is used, the speaker's viewpoint is somewhere close to the departure point. When *iku* is used as an auxiliary verb, the viewpoint is the point *from* which an action is directed or a change proceeds.

(G) explains the unacceptability of the sentences in (5) and (6) under the given conditions. (⇒ ***iku***[1]; ***iku***[2]; ***kuru***[1]; ***kuru***[2])

(5) a. [The speaker is in Japan]
私は来年アメリカに{**行きます** / ×**来ます**}。
Watashi wa rainen Amerika ni {***ikimasu*** / × ***kimasu***}.
(I will go to America next year.)

b. [The speaker is in America]
私は去年アメリカに{**来ました** / ×**行きました**}。
Watashi wa kyonen Amerika ni {***kimashita*** / × ***ikimashita***}.
(I came to America last year.』

(6) a. 私はどろぼうに襲いかかって{**いった** / × **きた**}。
*Watashi wa dorobō ni osoikakatte{**itta** / × **kita**}.*
(I went to attack the robber.)

b. どろぼうは私に襲いかかって{**きた** / × **いった**}。
*Dorobō wa watashi ni osoikakatte{**kita** / × **itta**}.*
(The robber came to attack me.)

(H) In conversations between family members, the speaker commonly takes the viewpoint of a young member and uses a kinship term to refer to himself/herself (i.e., the first person), as in (7).

(7) a. [From a father to his child]
お父さんに見せてごらん。
***O-tōsan** ni misete goran.*
(Let me see it.)

b. [From an elder brother to his younger sister]
それは**兄さん**が手伝ってあげよう。
*Sore wa **nīsan** ga tetsudatte ageyō.*
(I'll help you with that.)

Kinship terms are also used to refer to the listener (i.e., the second person), as in (8).

(8) [A mother talks to her daughter Natsumi from the viewpoint of the daughter's younger brother Jun]
お姉ちゃん、純に貸してあげなさい。
***O-nēchan**, Jun ni kashite age-nasai.*
(Natsumi (lit., Elder sister), let Jun have it.)

It is also common for parents to use *o-tōsan* "father" and *o-kāsan* "mother" to refer to their spouses when they talk to their spouses even without their children's presence, as in (9), after this practice has established.

(9) [At a restaurant, from a father to his wife]
お母さんは何にする？
***O-kāsan** wa nani ni suru?*
(What will you have?)

Note that because the viewpoint taken by the speaker is always from a younger member of the family, *otōto* "younger brother" and *imōto* "younger sister" are never used to refer to the speaker or the listener. Note also that the use of sibling terms as in (7) and (8) are only common when the person whose viewpoint is taken is still very young.

Similar practices can be observed when teachers talk to their young students (usually 6th graders or younger). In this case, teachers use ***sensei*** "teacher" to refer to themselves, as in (10).

(10) だれかがいじめたらすぐ**先生**に言いなさい。
*Dare-ka ga ijimetara sugu **sensei** ni ii-nasai.*
(If someone bullies you, tell me immediately.)

(I) In some situations, a reflexive pronoun *jibun* "self" is used when the speaker empathizes with someone and describes the situation from that person's viewpoint. (⇒ ***jibun***)

For example, in (11), in which *jibun* is used to refer to Mami, the speaker is empathetic with Mami and describes the situation from her viewpoint. If the speaker uses an ordinary pronoun *kanojo* "she" or "her" instead of *jibun*, the sentence sounds more neutral in terms of the viewpoint.

(11) 真美は正人が{**自分** / **彼女**}を愛していると信じていた。
*Mami wa Masato ga{**jibun** / **kanojo**}o aishite iru to shinjite ita.*
(Mami believed that Masato loved her.)

Note that *jibun* is not acceptable in (12). This is because the sentence involves the speaker, and at the same time, he/she takes Mami's viewpoint, which causes a conflict of viewpoint. (See (A) and (C).)

(12) 真美は今でも私が{×**自分** / **彼女**}を愛していると信じている。
*Mami wa ima demo watashi ga{×**jibun** / **kanojo**}o aishite iru to shinjite iru.*
(Mami believes that I still love her.)

A Dictionary of Basic Japanese Grammar

Second Edition

Main Entries

ageru[1] あげる[1] *v. (Gr. 2)*

S.o. gives s.t. to a person who is not the speaker or s.o. with whom the speaker empathizes.

give
【REL. ***kureru***[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Indirect Object		Direct Object		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	美紀 *Miki*	に *ni*	花 *hana*	を *o*	あげた / あげました。 *ageta / agemashita.*
(I gave Miki flowers.)						

Examples

(a) 大野さんは山本さんにメープルシロップをあげた。
Ōno-san wa Yamamoto-san ni mēpuru-shiroppu o ageta.
(Ohno-san gave Yamamoto-san a bottle of maple syrup.)

(b) A: アビーさんに何をあげましたか。
Abī-san ni nani o agemashita ka.
(What did you give to Abbie-san?)

B: スカーフをあげました。
Sukāfu o agemashita.
(I gave her a scarf.)

(c) 去年のクリスマスはお金がなかったので、だれにもプレゼントをあげなかった。
Kyonen no kurisumasu wa o-kane ga nakatta node, dare ni mo purezento o agenakatta.
(I didn't give a present to anyone last Christmas because I didn't have money.)

Notes

1. *Ageru* is one of a set of giving and receiving verbs; the meaning is "give." However, *ageru* cannot be used when the indirect object (i.e., the receiver) is the first person (i.e., *I* or *we*) or a person with whom the speaker empathizes (usually a member of the speaker's in-group). Thus, (1a) and (1b) are ungrammatical.

(1) a. ×春香は**私に**本を**あげた**。
× *Haruka wa* ***watashi ni*** *hon o* ***ageta****.*
(*Intended meaning*: Haruka gave me a book.)

A

b. ×春香は**私の息子に**本を**あげた**。
× *Haruka wa* ***watashi no musuko ni*** *hon o* ***ageta.***
(*Intended meaning*: Haruka gave my son a book.)

The reason for this is as follows: *Ageru* requires the giver's point of view when describing an event. When an event involves the first person or a person the speaker empathizes with, however, the event is normally described from that person's point of view. Therefore, if the first person or a person the speaker empathizes with is a recipient in *ageru* sentences, a viewpoint conflict arises, making the sentences ungrammatical. The grammatical sentences for (1a) and (1b) are (2a) and (2b), respectively.

(⇒ ***kureru***[1]; **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 8**. Viewpoint)

(2) a. 春香は**私に**本を**くれた**。
Haruka wa ***watashi ni*** *hon o* ***kureta.***

b. 春香は**私の息子に**本を**くれた**。
Haruka wa ***watashi no musuko ni*** *hon o* ***kureta.***

2. The humble polite version of *ageru* is *sashiageru*, as in (3).

(3) 私は先生に本を**さしあげました**。
Watashi wa sensei ni hon o ***sashiagemashita.***
(I gave my teacher a book.)

3. Another version of *ageru* is *yaru*, which is used when the giver is in a higher position than the recipient and the recipient is very close to the giver. Although the use of *yaru* is becoming rare in present-day Japanese, it is still used in some situations, as in (4).

(4) a. 私は弟にスケートボードを**やった**。
Watashi wa otōto ni sukētobōdo o ***yatta.***
(I gave my little brother a skateboard.)

b. めぐみはネコにミルクを**やりました**。
Megumi wa neko ni miruku o ***yarimashita.***
(Megumi gave milk to the cat.)

ageru[2] **あげる**[2] *aux. v. (Gr. 2)*

S.o. does s.t. as a favor for a person who is not the speaker or s.o. with whom the speaker empathizes.

do s.t. for s.o.; do s.o. a favor by doing s.t.

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Indirect Object		Direct Object		V*te*	
		Favor Recipient					
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	修司さん *Shūji-san*	に *ni*	ネクタイ *nekutai*	を *o*	買って ***katte***	あげた / あげました。 *ageta* / *agemashita*.
(I bought a tie for Shuji-san.)							

(B)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		V*te*	
		Favor Recipient			
僕 *Boku*	は *wa*	美里さん *Misato-san*	を *o*	なぐさめて ***nagusamete***	あげた / あげました。 *ageta* / *agemashita*.
(I consoled Misato-san.)					

(C)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object				V*te*	
		Favor Recipient					
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	孝也さん *Takaya-san*	の *no*	Tシャツ *tī-shatsu*	を *o*	洗濯して ***sentaku-shite***	あげた / あげました。 *ageta* / *agemashita*.
(I washed Takaya-san's T-shirt for him.)							

(D)

Topic (subject)		Favor Recipient		Direct Object	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	病気のジェームズさん *byōki no Jēmuzu-san*	のために *no tame ni*	買い物 *kaimono*	を *o*
V*te*					
して ***shite***		あげた / あげました。 *ageta* / *agemashita*.			
(I shopped for James-san, who was ill.)					

A

76 *ageru*[2]

Formation

V*te* あげる
ageru

話してあげる (talk for s.o.'s sake)
hanashite ageru

開けてあげる (open s.t. for s.o.'s sake)
akete ageru

Examples

(a) 金井さんはルイスさんに自転車を貸してあげた。
Kanai-san wa Ruisu-san ni jitensha o kashite ageta.
(Kanai-san lent his bicycle to Lewis-san.)

(b) A: 母の日にお母さんに何をしてあげましたか。
Haha no hi ni o-kāsan ni nani o shite agemashita ka.
(What did you do for your mother on Mother's Day?)

B: 母の大好きなケーキを作ってあげました。
Haha no dai-suki na kēki o tsukutte agemashita.
(I made her favorite cake for her.)

(c) 私たちはジェーンさんをはげましてあげた。
Watashi-tachi wa Jēn-san o hagemashite ageta.
(We cheered up Jane-san.)

(d) 私はケントさんの持ち物を新しいアパートに運んであげました。
Watashi wa Kento-san no mochimono o atarashii apāto ni hakonde agemashita.
(I carried Kent-san's belongings to his new apartment.)

(e) 私はエリックさんのためにいい不動産屋を探してあげた。
Watashi wa Erikku-san no tame ni ii fudōsan-ya o sagashite ageta.
(I looked for a good real estate agent for Eric-san (to help him out).)

Notes

1. *Ageru* is used as an auxiliary verb with the *te*-form of verbs. The meaning of V*te ageru* is "do s.t. for s.o." or "do s.o. a favor by doing s.t." The restriction that applies to *ageru*[1] also applies to *ageru*[2]. Namely, sentences with V*te ageru* are descriptions from the viewpoint of the benefactor (i.e., the person in subject position); therefore, the indirect object must not be the first person or a person the speaker empathizes with. Thus, (1a) and (1b) are ungrammatical.
(⇒ ***ageru***[1]: Note 1)

(1) a. ×里香は**私に**日本語を教えて**あげた**。
×*Rika wa* ***watashi ni*** *nihongo o oshiete* ***ageta.***
(*Intended meaning*: Rika taught me Japanese.)

b. ×テリーは**私の娘に**アイスクリームを買って**あげた**。
×*Terī wa* ***watashi no musume ni*** *aisukurīmu o katte* ***ageta.***
(*Intended meaning*: Terry bought ice cream for my daughter.)

The grammatical sentences for (1a) and (1b) are (2a) and (2b), respectively.
(⇒ ***kureru***[2])

(2) a. 里香は**私に**日本語を教えて**くれた**。
Rika wa ***watashi ni*** *nihongo o oshiete* ***kureta.***

b. テリーは**私の娘に**アイスクリームを買って**くれた**。
Terī wa ***watashi no musume ni*** *aisukurīmu o katte* ***kureta.***

2. There are four sentence patterns in terms of the marker of the benefit recipient.

(A) X *ni*: The benefit recipient is marked by *ni* when something is transferred to the benefit recipient as the result of the benefactor's action, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a). The benefit recipient is also marked by *ni* when the type of favor the benefit recipient receives is unknown, as in Ex.(b)-A.

(B) X *o*: The benefit recipient is marked by *o* when the benefit recipient is the direct object of the benefactor's action, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c). The following sentences are ungrammatical.

(3) a. ×僕は美里さん**に**なぐさめてあげました。(cf. KS(B))
×*Boku wa Misato-san* ***ni*** *nagusamete agemashita.*

b. ×私たちはジェーンさん**に**はげましてあげた。(cf. Ex.(c))
×*Watashi-tachi wa Jēn-san* ***ni*** *hagemashite ageta.*

(C) X *no*: The benefit recipient is marked by *no* when the benefactor acts on the benefit recipient's belonging, as in KS(C) and Ex.(d).

(D) X *no tame ni*: In other cases, the benefit recipient is marked by *no tame ni* "for the sake of," as in KS(D) and Ex.(e). The following sentences are ungrammatical.

(4) a. ×私は病気のジェームズさん**に**買い物をしてあげた。(cf. KS(D))
×*Watashi wa byōki no Jēmuzu-san* ***ni*** *kaimono o shite ageta.*

b. ×私はエリックさん**に**いい不動産屋を探してあげた。(cf. Ex.(e))
×*Watashi wa Erikku-san* ***ni*** *ii fudōsan-ya o sagashite ageta.*

3. The humble polite version of V*te ageru* is V*te sashiageru*. (5) provides an example.

(5) 私は先生にピアノを弾いてさしあげました。
Watashi wa sensei ni piano o hiite ***sashiagemashita.***
(I played the piano for my teacher.)

4. When the listener is the benefit recipient, the use of V*te ageru/sashiageru* is usually avoided because telling the listener explicitly that something was or will be done for the sake of the listener is considered to be rude. For example, when the speaker offers to help the listener with his/her bag, (6a) is not appropriate. The appropriate forms are in (6b).

(6) a. ×そのカバンを持って{あげましょう / さしあげましょう}か。
× *Sono kaban o motte* {***agemashō*** / ***sashiagemashō***} *ka.*
(Shall I carry that bag for you?)

b. そのカバンを{持ちましょう / お持ちしましょう}か。
Sono kaban o {***mochimashō*** / ***o-mochi shimashō***} *ka.*
(Shall I carry that bag?)

5. When the benefactor is in a higher position than the recipient or when they are of equal status and very close to each other, V*te yaru* may be used instead of V*te ageru*. (7) provides examples.

(7) a. 私は子供にサッカーボールを買ってやった。
Watashi wa kodomo ni sakkābōru o katte ***yatta.***
(I bought my child a soccer ball.)

b. 孝也はネコを病院に連れて行ってやった。
Takaya wa neko o byōin ni tsureteitte ***yatta.***
(Takaya took his cat to the veterinarian (lit., the hospital).)

aida (ni)　間(に)　*n.*

a dependent noun that indicates the space between two temporal or physical points

during (the time when); while
【REL. *nagara*; ***uchi ni***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause				Main Clause
	V*te*			
私がご飯を *Watashi ga gohan o*	食べて ***tabete***	いる *iru*	間、 *aida,*	ルームメートはずっとゲームをしていた / いました。 *rūmumēto wa zutto gēmu o shite ita / imashita.*
(While I was eating my meal, my roommate was playing games the whole time.)				

(B)

Subordinate Clause					Main Clause
	V*te*				
ルームメートが *Rūmumēto ga*	出かけて ***dekakete***	いる *iru*	間 *aida*	に *ni*	リビングの掃除をした / しました。 *ribingu no sōji o shita / shimashita.*
(While my roommate was out, I cleaned our living room.)					

Formation

(i) V*te* いる間(に)
iru aida (ni)

話している間(に) (while s.o. is talking)
hanashite iru aida (ni)

(ii) V (stative) 間(に)
aida (ni)

ある間(に) (while there is s.t. somewhere)
aru aida (ni)

(iii) Adj(*i*) 間(に)
aida (ni)

安い間(に) (while s.t. is cheap)
yasui aida (ni)

(iv) Adj(*na*) な間(に)
na aida (ni)

静かな間(に) (while s.t. is quiet)
shizuka na aida (ni)

A

80 *aida (ni)*

(v) Nの間(に)
no aida (ni)

夏休みの間(に) (during summer vacation)
natsu-yasumi no aida (ni)

Examples

(a) ルイスさんは日本にいる間、英語を教えていた。
Ruisu-san wa Nihon ni iru aida, eigo o oshiete ita.
(Lewis-san was teaching English (throughout the time) while he was in Japan.)

(b) 子供たちが宿題をしている間、私は晩ご飯を作っていました。
Kodomo-tachi ga shukudai o shite iru aida, watashi wa ban-gohan o tsukutte imashita.
(I was fixing a dinner (throughout the time) while my children were doing their homework.)

(c) 高橋さんはアメリカにいる間にゴルフを覚えた。
Takahashi-san wa Amerika ni iru aida ni gorufu o oboeta.
(Takahashi-san learned golf while he was in America.)

(d) 中川さんのお母さんは、中川さんがパリに留学している間に病気になりました。
Nakagawa-san no o-kāsan wa, Nakagawa-san ga Pari ni ryūgaku-shite iru aida ni byōki ni narimashita.
(Nakagawa-san's mother became ill while he was studying in Paris.)

(e) 久美子はたいてい子供が家にいない間に買い物をする。
Kumiko wa taitei kodomo ga ie ni inai aida ni kaimono o suru.
(Kumiko usually shops while her children are not at home.)

(f) 長い間、母に電話していません。
Nagai aida, haha ni denwa-shite imasen.
(I haven't called my mother for a long time.)

(g) 元気な間にアフリカを旅行したい。
Genki na aida ni Afurika o ryokō-shi-tai.
(I want to travel in Africa while I'm in good health.)

(h) 夏休みの間、レストランでアルバイトをしました。
Natsu-yasumi no aida, resutoran de arubaito o shimashita.
(I worked part-time at a restaurant during summer vacation.)

(i) 夏休みの間に彼女ができました。
Natsu-yasumi no aida ni kanojo ga dekimashita.
(I found a girlfriend during summer vacation.)

Notes

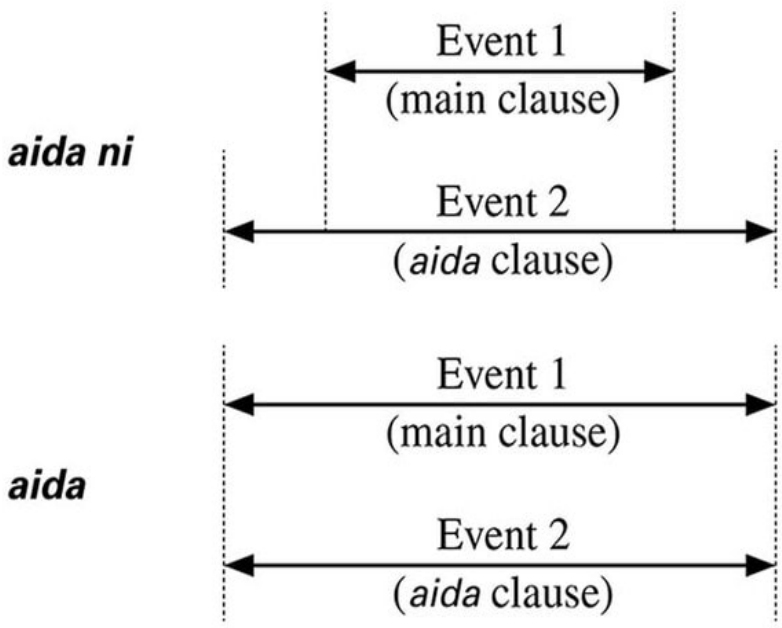
1. The subjects for the *aida* clause (= subordinate clause) and the main clause can be different as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(b), (d) and (e), or can be the same as in Exs.(a) and (c). When the subjects are different, the subject of the *aida* clause is marked by *ga*, not *wa*.

2. The verb form before *aida (ni)* is normally either V*te iru* (plain, non-past), as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(b) and (d), or Vplain·non-past, as in Exs.(a), (c) and (e), regardless of the tense of the main clause. When Vplain·non-past is used, the verb should be a stative verb, such as *iru* "(an animate thing) exist," *aru* "(an inanimate thing) exist" and *dekiru* "can do."

3. *Aida*, if followed by the time particle *ni*, indicates that the time span of an event identified by the main clause falls within the time span of an event identified by the *aida* clause, as in KS(B) and Exs.(c)–(e). On the other hand, *aida* without *ni*, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b), indicates that the two events are assumed to cover the same span of time. Thus, if the main verb is a momentary verb, *aida ni* should be used. The following sentence, therefore, is ungrammatical.

   (1) ×中川さんがパリに留学している**間**、お母さんが病気になった。
   ×*Nakagawa-san ga Pari ni ryūgaku-shite iru* ***aida****, o-kāsan ga byōki ni natta.*
   (lit., Nakagawa-san's mother became ill (throughout the time) while he was studying in Paris.)

   The difference between *aida ni* and *aida* can be diagrammed as follows:



4. *Aida* can also be used to mean "space between" or "relationship," as in (6) and (7).

(6) 日本とアメリカ(と)**の間**には海しかありません。
*Nihon **to** Amerika (**to**) **no aida ni** wa umi shika arimasen.*
(There is only ocean between Japan and America.)

(7) 小山と僕(と)**の間**は決して悪くない。
*Koyama **to** boku (**to**) **no aida** wa kesshite warukunai.*
(The relationship between Koyama and me is not bad at all.)

【Related Expression】

Nagara also means "while," but it has different restrictions and conveys a different meaning. First, *nagara* can be used only when the subject of the main clause and that of the subordinate clause (i.e., the *nagara* clause) are the same, as in [1].

[1] 私がご飯を{**食べている間** / ×**食べながら**}、ルームメートはずっとゲームをしていました。(= KS(A))
*Watashi ga gohan o{**tabete iru aida** / ×**tabe nagara**}, rūmumēto wa zutto gēmu o shite imashita.*
(While I was eating my meal, my roommate was playing games the whole time.)

Second, the verb in the *nagara* clause must be an action verb. Thus, in [2], *nagara* cannot be used.

[2] ルイスさんは日本に{**いる間** / ×**いながら**}、英語を教えていた。(= Ex.(a))
*Ruisu-san wa Nihon ni{**iru aida** / ×**i nagara**}, eigo o oshiete ita.*
(Lewis-san was teaching English (throughout the time) while he was in Japan.)

Third, when the verb of the subordinate clause is an action verb, the V*te iru* form must be used before *aida*, while *nagara* requires V*masu* before it, as in [3].

[3] ルームメートは昼ご飯を{**食べている間** / ×**食べる間** / **食べながら** / ×**食べていながら**}、ゲームをしていました。
*Rūmumēto wa hiru-gohan o{**tabete iru aida** / ×**taberu aida** / **tabe nagara** / ×**tabete i nagara**}, gēmu o shite imashita.*
(My roommate was playing games while eating his lunch.)

Fourth, an *aida* sentence and its corresponding *nagara* sentence are different in terms of the focal information. In [3], for example, the *aida* sentence usually focuses on the action in the main clause, while the *nagara* sentence usually focuses on the action stated in the *nagara* clause, which is not the primary action but an accompanying secondary action. (⇒ ***nagara***)

amari あまり *adv.*

The degree of s.t. is not great. — (not) very much; (not) very

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			Predicate (negative)
このアプリ *Kono apuri*	は *wa*	あまり *amari*	よくない / よくないです。 *yokunai / yokunaidesu.*
(This app is not very good.)			

Examples

(a) このすしはあまりおいしくない。
Kono sushi wa amari oishikunai.
(This sushi is not very tasty.)

(b) 寺田さんはあまり食べない。
Terada-san wa amari tabenai.
(Terada-san does not eat much.)

(c) 私はあまり速く走れません。
Watashi wa amari hayaku hashiremasen.
(I cannot run very fast.)

Notes

1. The adverb *amari* usually occurs in negative sentences and means "not very (much)." *Amari* is one of a group of adverbs that co-occur with the negative forms of predicates. (1) provides those adverbs.

   (1) *zenzen* "(not) at all"; *mettani* "rarely; seldom"; *kesshite* "never; by no means"; *sappari* "(not) at all"; *sukoshimo* "(not) a bit; (not) at all"; *chittomo* "(not) a bit; (not) at all"

2. *Anmari* is a phonological variant of *amari* and usually used in conversation.

3. In limited situations, *amari* can also be used in affirmative sentences. In this case, it means "very; too" with a negative implication. (2) provides examples.

   (2) a. スコットが**あまり**失礼なことを言うのでサリーは怒って帰ってしまった。
   *Sukotto ga **amari** shitsurei na koto o iu node Sarī wa okotte kaette shimatta.*
   (Since Scott was very rude (lit., said very rude things), Sally got mad and went home.)

A

b. **あまり**心配すると体に悪いですよ。
Amari *shinpai-suru to karada ni waruidesu yo.*
(It's not good for you to worry too much. (lit., It's not good for your body if you worry too much.))

c. 井上さんは**あまり**酒を飲んだので病気になってしまった。
Inoue-san wa ***amari*** *sake o nonda node byōki ni natte shimatta.*
(Inoue-san drank too much and ended up being ill.)

d. それは**あんまり**です。
Sore wa ***anmari*** *desu.*
(You're (lit., That's) too cruel.)

aru[1] **ある**[1] *v. (Gr. 1)*

An inanimate thing exists.

be; exist; have
【REL. *iru*[1]; *motte iru*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (location)		Subject		Quantifier	
この町 *Kono machi*	(に) は *(ni) wa*	大学 *daigaku*	が *ga*	3つ *mit-tsu*	ある / あります。 *aru / arimasu.*
(There are three universities in this town. (lit., In this town are three universities.))					

(B)

Topic (subject)		Noun (location)		
エッフェル塔 *Efferutō*	は *wa*	パリ *Pari*	に *ni*	ある / あります。 *aru / arimasu.*
(The Eiffel Tower is in Paris.)				

(C)

Topic (subject)			Noun (possession)		
あの歌手 *Ano kashu*	は *wa*	とても *totemo*	人気 *ninki*	が *ga*	ある / あります。 *aru / arimasu.*
(That singer is very popular (lit., has much popularity).)					

(D)

	Noun (location)		Subject (event)		
今週末 *Konshūmatsu*	キャンパス *kyanpasu*	で *de*	ロックコンサート *rokku-konsāto*	が *ga*	ある / あります。 *aru / arimasu.*
(There is a rock concert on campus this weekend.)					

Examples

(a) 私のうち(に)はテレビが３台ある。
Watashi no uchi (ni) wa terebi ga san-dai aru.
(There are three TV sets in my house.)

(b) 和田さんのうち(に)はクーラーがない。
Wada-san no uchi (ni) wa kūrā ga nai.
(There is no air conditioner at Wada-san's.)

(c) デトロイトはミシガン州にあります。
Detoroito wa Mishigan-shū ni arimasu.
(Detroit is in the State of Michigan.)

(d) 私は今クレジットカードがないのでネットで買い物ができない。
Watashi wa ima kurejitto-kādo ga nai node netto de kaimono ga dekinai.
(Because I don't have a credit card now, I cannot shop online.)

(e) 今晩スタジアムでサッカーの試合があります。
Konban sutajiamu de sakkā no shiai ga arimasu.
(There is a soccer game at the stadium tonight.)

Notes

1. Basically, *aru* expresses the existence or possession of inanimate things, including abstract things such as events and problems. Thus, (1) is ungrammatical.

   (1) ×この町には**日本人がある**。
   × *Kono machi ni wa **nihonjin** ga **aru**.*
   (*Intended meaning*: There are Japanese in this town.)

   For animate things, *iru*[1] is used. (⇒ ***iru***[1])

A

2. The plain negative form of *aru* is not *aranai* but *nai*. *Nai* conjugates like *i*-adjectives; i.e., the past form is *nakatta* and the *te*-form is *nakute*.

3. Quantifiers (i.e., Number + Counter or other expressions that represent an amount or a number) are usually placed after the subject marker as in KS(A) and Ex.(a). The following sentences are ungrammatical.

(2) a. ×この町には**大学３つが**あります。(cf. KS(A))
×*Kono machi ni wa* ***daigaku mit-tsu ga*** *arimasu.*

b. ×私のうちには**テレビ３台が**ある。(cf. Ex.(a))
×*Watashi no uchi ni wa* ***terebi san-dai ga*** *aru.*

Although not as common (particularly in formal written language), quantifiers also occur right before the subject, as in (3).

(3) a. この町には**３つ大学が**あります。(cf. KS(A))
Kono machi ni wa ***mit-tsu daigaku ga*** *arimasu.*

b. 私のうちには**３台テレビが**ある。(cf. Ex.(a))
Watashi no uchi ni wa ***san-dai terebi ga*** *aru.*

4. *Aru* occurs in several sentence patterns. The KS(A) pattern is used when a location is presented as a topic. In this case, what exists is under focus, and the location marker *ni* is optional. The KS(B) pattern is used when something that exists is presented as a topic. In this case, where it exists is under focus. Compare the two patterns in (4).

(4) A: 早稲田大学はどこにありますか。
Waseda Daigaku wa doko ni arimasu ka.
(Where is Waseda University?)

B: 早稲田大学は東京にあります。
Waseda Daigaku wa Tōkyō ni arimasu.
(Waseda University is in Tokyo.)

A: 東京には他にも大学がありますか。
Tōkyō ni wa hoka ni mo daigaku ga arimasu ka.
(Are there also other universities in Tokyo?)

B: はい、東京には大学がたくさんあります。
Hai, Tōkyō ni wa daigaku ga takusan arimasu.
(Yes, there are many universities in Tokyo.)

5. The KS(C) pattern is used to express possession. In this case, the particle *ni* cannot be used, as in (5).

(5) a. あの歌手{ø / ×に}はとても人気がある。(= KS(C))
*Ano kashu{ø / × **ni**} wa totemo ninki ga aru.*

b. 私{ø / ×に}は今クレジットカードがない。(cf. Ex.(d))
*Watashi{ø / × **ni**} wa ima kurejitto-kādo ga nai.*

6. The KS(D) pattern is used when there is an event such as a party and a concert. In this case, the particle *de* is used to mark the location. *Ni* is ungrammatical, as in (6). (⇒ ***de***[1]; ***ni***[6])

(6) 今日サムのうち{で / ×に}パーティーがある。
*Kyō Samu no uchi{**de** / × **ni**} pātī ga aru.*
(There is a party at Sam's today.)

【Related Expressions】

I. *Iru*[1] is also used to express existence. However, *iru*[1] is used only for animate objects. (⇒ ***iru***[1])

II. *Motte iru*, which is the *te*-form of *motsu* "hold" followed by the auxiliary verb *iru* can also express possession, as in [1].

[1] a. アーロンはいい車を**持っている**。
*Āron wa ii kuruma o **motte iru.***
(Aaron has a good car.)

b. 私はスマホを**持っていない**。
*Watashi wa sumaho o **motte inai.***
(I don't have a smartphone.)

However, *motte iru* can be used only when the possessor is animate and the possessed thing is inanimate and tangible. Thus, the following sentences are not grammatical.

[2] a. ×この車はカーナビを**持っている**。
× *Kono kuruma wa kānabi o **motte iru.***
(*Intended meaning*: This car has a car navigation system.)

b. ×アーロンは妹を**持っている**。
× *Āron wa imōto o **motte iru.***
(*Intended meaning*: Aaron has a younger sister.)

c. ×あの歌手はアジアでとても人気を**持っている**。
× *Ano kashu wa Ajia de totemo ninki o **motte iru.***
(*Intended meaning*: That singer has great popularity in Asia.)

Organizations and groups of people such as academic institutions, companies and sports teams can also be possessors in sentences with *motte iru*, as in [3].

A

88 *aru*[1] / *aru*[2]

[3] この大学はいい図書館を**持っている**。
*Kono daigaku wa ii toshokan o **motte iru.***
(This university has a good library.)

aru[2] ある[2] *aux. v. (Gr. 1)*

S.o. did something to X and the state of X caused by that action remains unchanged.

have been done; be done
【REL. *iru*[2]; ~ *oku*】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			V*te*	
パーティーの飲み物 *Pātī no nomimono*	は *wa*	もう *mō*	買って ***katte***	ある / あります。 *aru / arimasu.*
(Drinks for the party have already been bought.)				

Formation

V*te* ある
aru

話してある (has been told)
hanashite aru

閉めてある (has been closed)
shimete aru

Examples

(a) それはもうショーンに話してあります。
Sore wa mō Shōn ni hanashite arimasu.
(It's been told to Sean already.)

(b) 窓が開けてある。
Mado ga akete aru.
(The window {has been / is} open.)

(c) 会議時間が変わったことはもう参加者に伝えてあります。
Kaigi jikan ga kawatta koto wa mō sankasha ni tsutaete arimasu.
(It has already been informed to the participants that the meeting time was changed.)

Notes

1. *Aru* is used with V*te* as an auxiliary verb. Two points are indicated by the V*te aru* expression:

   (i) Someone did something to X. (Thus, V*te* is usually a transitive verb.)
   (ii) The state of X caused by the action remains unchanged.

   X is most frequently marked by the topic marker *wa* or the subject marker *ga*. However, when the action on X is under focus rather than its state, X is likely to be marked by the direct object marker *o*, as in (1).

   (1) 部屋が暑いので窓**を**開けてあります。
   *Heya ga atsui node mado **o** akete arimasu.*
   (The room is hot, so we're keeping the windows open.)

   In fact, in some situations, *ga* is odd. For example, in (2), the focus is on the speaker's telling her parents about the existence of someone she loves and not on the state of the fact that she has someone she loves. In this case, *o* is use rather than *ga*.

   (2) 両親にはもう好きな人がいること{**を** / ??**が**}話してある。
   *Ryōshin ni wa mō suki na hito ga iru koto{**o** / ??**ga**} hanashite aru.*
   (I have already told my parents that I have someone I love.)

2. V*te aru* implies that the action was taken intentionally in preparation for something. For example, in KS, the speaker (or someone else) bought some drinks to serve for a party, and in Ex.(a), the speaker (or someone else) told Sean about something so that Sean is as informed as others when they meet.

3. The agent is usually omitted because that information is unimportant, unknown or obvious.

【Related Expressions】

I. Although, V*te aru* and V*te iru* both express a state of something/someone, their implications are different. [1] and [2] illustrate the difference of the two expressions.

   [1] 窓が開けて**ある**。(= Ex.(b))
   *Mado ga akete **aru**.*
   (The window {has been / is} open.)

A

[2] 窓が開いている。
Mado ga aite ***iru.***
(The window is open.)

[1] means that someone opened the window and the state of the window caused by that action remains unchanged, i.e., open. On the other hand, [2] simply means that the window is open. Because *aite* is the *te*-form of the intransitive verb *aku* "(something) opens," the sentence doesn't imply that someone opened it. (⇒ ***iru***²)

II. V*te oku* is similar to V*te aru* in that both expressions involve an action performed intentionally in preparation for something. However, the meanings of these two expressions are significantly different. [3] and [4] illustrate the differences. (⇒ ~ ***oku***)

[3] パーティーの飲み物はもう買って**あります**。(= KS)
Pātī no nomimono wa mō katte ***arimasu.***
(Drinks for the party have already been bought.)

[4] 私はパーティーの飲み物を買って**おきました**。
Watashi wa pātī no nomimono o katte ***okimashita.***
(I bought some drinks for the party in advance.)

First, the V*te aru* sentence in [3] describes a state of something (in this case, the state of drinks), while the V*te oku* sentence in [4] describes someone's action (in this case, the speaker's buying some drinks). Thus, the subject in [3], which is also the topic, is something whose state is described, while the subject in [4], which is also the topic, is the actor of the action.

Second, in [3], the actor is not mentioned and is unknown from this sentence, whereas in [4], that the actor is the speaker is explicitly mentioned. In fact, in the V*te aru* sentence, the actor is commonly unsaid because it is irrelevant, unimportant or unknown, but in the V*te oku* sentence, the actor is essential information.

ato de 後で *comp. prt. / conj.*

A state or action takes place at a time after another state or action has taken place.

after
【REL. *kara*[2]】
(ANT. *mae ni*)

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun (event)			
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	**授業** ***jugyō***	の *no*	後で *ato de*	図書館に行った / 行きました。 *toshokan ni itta / ikimashita.*
(I went to the library after class.)					

(B)

Topic (subject)		Subordinate Clause			Predicate
			Vplain·past		
メイソンさん *Meison-san*	は *wa*	旅行から *ryokō kara*	**帰った** ***kaetta***	後で *ato de*	病気になった / なりました。 *byōki ni natta / narimashita.*
(Mason-san became ill after he returned from his trip.)					

Formation

(i) N の後で
no ato de

卒業の後で (after graduation)
sotsugyō no ato de

(ii) Vplain·past 後で
ato de

話した後で (after s.o. has/had talked)
hanashita ato de

Examples

(a) 講演の後でレセプションがあります。皆さん、どうぞ参加してください。
Kōen no ato de resepushon ga arimasu. Minasan, dōzo sanka-shite kudasai.
(There is a reception after the lecture. Everybody, please join.)

A

(b) 歌舞伎を見た後で友達に感想を聞かれました。
Kabuki o mita ato de tomodachi ni kansō o kikaremashita.
(After watching a kabuki play, I was asked by my friend what I thought about it.)

(c) 家に帰った後でコンビニで買い物するのを忘れたことを思い出した。
Ie ni kaetta ato de konbini de kaimono-suru no o wasureta koto o omoi-dashita.
(After returning home, I remembered that I'd forgotten to shop at the convenience store.)

(d) 友達が帰った後で、みんなが話していた動画をチェックした。
Tomodachi ga kaetta ato de, minna ga hanashite ita dōga o chekku-shita.
(After my friends had left, I checked the video they were talking about.)

Notes

1. Either "N *no*" or a clause precedes *ato de*. When "N *no*" is used, N represents an event, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a).

2. When a clause precedes *ato de*, the verb before *ato de* is always in the past tense, as in KS(B) and Exs.(b)–(d). This is because in Japanese, when a sentence contains a subordinate clause, the tense of the subordinate clause is determined by whether or not the action/event represented in the subordidate clause completes before that in the main clause. Specifically, if the action/event represented in the subordinate clause completes before that in the main clause, the past tense is used for the subordinate clause; otherwise, the non-past tense is used.

3. Vplain·past *ato de* simply indicates the sequence of two actions or events. This construction cannot be used when the first action/event triggers the second one, as in (1).

(1) ×古いミルクを飲んだ**後で**おなかをこわした。
×*Furui miruku o nonda **ato de** onaka o kowashita.*
(lit., I got an upset stomach after drinking old milk.)

The sentence in (2) is also unacceptable unless Takagi-san's suffering from the liver problem has nothing to do with his stopping drinking.

(2) ??高木さんは肝臓を悪くした**後で**お酒をやめた。
??*Takagi-san wa kanzō o waruku shi**ta ato de** o-sake o yameta.*
(*Intended meaning*: Takagi-san quit drinking after damaging his liver.)

Acceptable forms of (1) and (2) are (3) and (4), respectively.

(3) 古いミルクを飲んで**で**おなかをこわした。
*Furui miruku o non**de** onaka o kowashita.*
(I got an upset stomach from drinking old milk. (lit., I drank old milk and got an upset stomach.))

(4) 高木さんは肝臓を悪くしてお酒をやめた。
*Takagi-san wa kanzō o waruku shi**te** o-sake o yameta.*
(Takagi-san damaged his liver and quit drinking.)

4. If the subject of the *ato de* clause and that of the main clause are not the same, the subject of the *ato de* clause is marked by *ga*, as in Ex.(d).

5. The *de* after *ato* is optional except when ~ *ato de* is under focus, in which case, *de* is not omitted, as in (5).

(5) A: いつテニスをしますか。
Itsu tenisu o shimasu ka.
(When do you play tennis?)
B: たいてい授業の後{で / ×ø}します。
*Taitei jugyō no ato{**de** / ×ø} shimasu.*
(I usually play it after class.)

[Related Expression]

Vplain·past *ato de* and V*te kara* are similar in meaning, but there are situations in which they cannot be used interchangeably. First, when an event triggers someone's action, V*te kara* can be used, but Vplain·past *ato de* cannot, as in [1] and [2].

[1] 高木さんは肝臓を悪く{してから / ??した後で}お酒をやめた。(cf. (2))
*Takagi-san wa kanzō o waruku{shi**te kara** / ??shi**ta ato de**} o-sake o yameta.*
(Takagi-san quit drinking after damaging his liver.)

[2] 浩平は大学入試に失敗{してから / ??した後で}猛勉強を始めた。
*Kōhei wa daigaku-nyūshi ni shippai-{shi**te kara** / ??shi**ta ato de**} mōbenkyō o hajimeta.*
(Kohei began to study furiously after flunking the university entrance exam.)

Second, V*te kara* can be used to refer to a period since the time indicated by the V*te kara* clause, while Vplain·past *ato de* refers to a point in time after the time indicated by the Vplain·past *ato de* clause. Thus, in [3]–[5], V*te kara* is acceptable, but Vplain·past *ato de* is not. (⇒ ***kara***[2])

[3] 日本へ{来てから / ×来た後で}何年になりますか。
*Nihon e{ki**te kara** / × ki**ta ato de**} nan-nen ni narimasu ka.*
(For how many years have you been in Japan? (lit., How many years have passed since you came to Japan?))

A

[4] ヨガを｛始めてから / ×始めた後で｝病気になったことがない。
*Yoga o｛ hajime**te kara** / × hajime**ta ato de**｝ byōki ni natta koto ga nai.*
(I haven't been ill since I began yoga.)

[5] 夜に大きな事故を｛起こしてから / ×起こした後で｝、夜は車を運転していない。
*Yoru ni ōkina jiko o｛ okoshi**te kara** / × okoshi**ta ato de**｝, yoru wa kuruma o unten-shite inai.*
(I haven't driven a car at night since I caused a serious traffic accident at one night.)

ba ば *conj.*

B

a conjunction that indicates that the preceding clause expresses the condition under which the proposition represented by the main clause holds true

if
【REL. ***tara***】

◆ Key Sentence

Subordinate Clause (condition)	Main Clause
この薬を飲めば ***Kono kusuri o nomeba***	すぐによくなる / なります。 *sugu ni yoku naru / narimasu.*
(You'll get well soon if you take this medicine.)	

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vcond ば
ba

話せば (if s.o. talks)
hanaseba

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem れば
reba

食べれば (if s.o. eats)
tabereba

(iii) Irr. verbs: 来る → 来れば (if s.o. comes)
kuru *kureba*

する → すれば (if s.o. does)
suru *sureba*

(iv) Adj(*i*): Adj(*i*)stem ければ
kereba

高ければ (if s.t. is expensive)
takakereba

(v) Adj(*na*): Adj(*na*) { なら(ば) / であれば }
{ *nara(ba)* / *de areba* }

静か { なら(ば) / であれば } (if s.t. is quiet)
shizuka { *nara(ba)* / *de areba* }

B

(vi) N: N{なら(ば) / であれば}
{*nara(ba)* / *de areba*}

先生{なら(ば) / であれば} (if s.o. is a teacher)
sensei{*nara(ba)* / *de areba*}

(vii) Negative ending (〜ない): 〜なければ
(~nai) *nakereba*

行かなければ (if s.o. doesn't go)
ikanakereba

高くなければ (if s.t. is not expensive)
takakunakereba

静か{で / じゃ}なければ (if s.t. is not quiet)
shizuka{*de* / *ja*} *nakereba*

学生{で / じゃ}なければ (if s.o. is not a student)
gakusei{*de* / *ja*} *nakereba*

Examples

(a) 吉村さんのメールアドレスは、松本さんに聞けば分かると思います。
Yoshimura-san no mēru-adoresu wa, Matsumoto-san ni kikeba wakaru to omoimasu.
(I think we can get Yoshimura-san's email address if we ask Matsumoto-san.)

(b) その町は車で行けば 30 分で行ける。
Sono machi wa kuruma de ikeba sanjup-pun de ikeru.
(You can get to that town in thirty minutes if you go by car.)

(c) 安ければ買います。
Yasukereba kaimasu.
(I'll buy it if it's cheap.)

(d) 時間があれば京都へも行きたい。
Jikan ga areba Kyōto e mo iki-tai.
(If I have time, I want to go to Kyoto, too.)

(e) 質問があればいつでも私の研究室に来なさい。
Shitsumon ga areba itsu demo watashi no kenkyū-shitsu ni ki-nasai.
(If you have a question, come to my office anytime.)

(f) この仕事はできれば今日中にやってください。
Kono shigoto wa dekireba kyōjū ni yatte kudasai.
(If you can, please finish this assignment by the end of today.)

(g) あまり高くなければその辞書を買ったらどうですか。
Amari takakunakereba sono jisho o kattara dō desu ka.
(Why don't you buy the dictionary if it's not very expensive?)

Notes

1. "S_1 *ba* S_2" basically expresses a general conditional relationship between the two propositions represented by S_1 and S_2. S_1 represents a condition and S_2 a proposition that holds or will hold true under the condition.

2. The conditional form of *da* after nouns, *na*-adjectives, etc. is *naraba*, but the final *ba* usually drops in contemporary Japanese.

3. The conditional form of the negative ending *nai* (e.g., *ika<u>nai</u>*, *takaku<u>nai</u>*, *shizuka ja <u>nai</u>*, *gakusei ja <u>nai</u>*) is *nakereba*.

4. S_2 can express the speaker's volition or desire if S_1 represents a state, as in Exs.(c) and (d). However, if S_1 represents an action, S_2 can express the speaker's volition but not his/her desire, as in (1) and (2). (⇒ ***nara***)

   (1) テッドが行けば、私も行く。
   *Teddo ga ike**ba**, watashi mo iku.*
   (If Ted goes, I'll go, too.)

   (2) テッドが{× 行けば / 行く**なら**}、私も行きたい。
   *Teddo ga{× ike**ba** / iku **nara**}, watashi mo iki-tai.*
   (If Ted goes, I want to go, too.)

5. S_2 can be a command, a request or a suggestion if S_1 represents a state, as in Exs.(e), (f) and (g). However, if S_1 represents an action, *ba* is ungrammatical, as in (3) and (4). (⇒ ***tara***)

   (3) 小森さんが{× 来れば / 来**たら**}{知らせなさい / 知らせてください}。
   *Komori-san ga{× kure**ba** / ki**tara**}{shirase-nasai / shirasete kudasai}.*
   (If Komori-san comes in,{let me know / please let me know}.)

   (4) 日本へ{× 行けば / 行っ**たら**}旅館に泊まったらどうですか。
   *Nihon e{× ike**ba** / it**tara**} ryokan ni tomattara dō desu ka.*
   (If you go to Japan, why don't you stay at a Japanese style inn?)

6. If the event in S_1 will occur without fail, S_2 cannot represent a controllable action. Thus, the sentences in (5) are acceptable, but those in (6) are not.

   (5) a. この学期が終われば少し暇ができます。
   *Kono gakki ga oware**ba** sukoshi hima ga dekimasu.*
   (I'll have some free time once this term is over.)

   b. 冬になればこのあたりは雪で真っ白になる。
   *Fuyu ni nare**ba** kono atari wa yuki de masshiro ni naru.*
   (When winter comes around, this area becomes all white with snow.)

B

(6) a. この学期が{×終われ**ば** / 終わっ**たら**}一緒に旅行しましょう。
*Kono gakki ga{× oware**ba** / owat**tara**} issho ni ryokō-shimashō.*
(Let's go on a trip together after this term.)

b. 冬に{×なれ**ば** / なっ**たら**}カナダへスキーに行きたい。
*Fuyu ni{× nare**ba** / nat**tara**} Kanada e sukī ni iki-tai.*
(When winter comes around, I'd like to go to Canada to ski.)

c. 6時に{×なれ**ば** / なっ**たら**}クーラーを止めてください。
*Roku-ji ni{× nare**ba** / nat**tara**} kūrā o tomete kudasai.*
(Please turn off the air conditioner at six.)

7. S_1 can express a counterfactual condition, as in (7).

(7) もう少し漢字が少なければ読めると思うんですが……。
*Mō sukoshi kanji ga sukunakere**ba** yomeru to omou n desu ga....*
(I think I'd be able to read it if there were fewer kanji, but....)

8. S_1 cannot be a single factual action or event in the past as in (8). (⇒ ***tara***)

(8) a. 日本へ{×行け**ば** / 行っ**たら**}日本語が上手になった。
*Nihon e{× ike**ba** / it**tara**} nihongo ga jōzu ni natta.*
(My Japanese improved (lit., I became good at Japanese) when I went to Japan.)

b. 戦争が{×始まれ**ば** / 始まっ**たら**}ものの値段が上がった。
*Sensō ga{× hajimare**ba** / hajimat**tara**} mono no nedan ga agatta.*
(When the war broke out, the prices of products went up.)

However, S_1 can represent a state in the past if the whole sentence expresses a counterfactual or habitual action, as in (9) and (10).

(9) もっと安ければ買いました。[counterfactual]
*Motto yasukere**ba** kaimashita.*
(I would have bought it if it had been much cheaper.)

(10) 昔はみんな時間があれば本を読んだものだ。[past habit]
*Mukashi wa minna jikan ga are**ba** hon o yonda mono da.*
(In old days people used to read when they had time.)

9. "S_1 *ba* S_2" does not express more than a conditional relationship; therefore, this construction cannot be used, for example, when the speaker wants to suggest something with a conditional sentence. For example, (11) cannot be used to warn the listener not to approach the cage. This sentence is acceptable only when it means, as a mere conditional statement, that one is in danger under the condition that one gets close to the cage.

(11) ??そのおりに近づけば危ないですよ。
??*Sono ori ni chikazuke**ba** abunaidesu yo.*
(*Intended meaning*: It is dangerous if you get close to the cage.)

B

In order to suggest that one should not approach the cage, *to* or *tara* is used instead of *ba*, as in (12).

(12) そのおりに｛近づくと / 近づいたら｝危ないですよ。
*Sono ori ni ｛chikazuku **to** / chikazui**tara**｝abunaidesu yo.*
(It is dangerous if you get close to the cage.)

10. There are some idiomatic expressions that involve the "S_1 *ba* S_2" construction.
(⇒ ***~ba yokatta***; ***~nakereba naranai***; ***~ to ieba***)

bakari ばかり *prt.*

a particle that indicates the only thing or state that exists or the only action s.o. takes

only; just; be ready to do s.t.; have just done s.t.; just did s.t.; be just doing s.t.; about
【REL. ***hodo***; ***shika***; ***~ tokoro da***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Vplain・non-past		
デザート *Dezāto*	は *wa*	食べる ***taberu***	ばかり *bakari*	になっている / います。 *ni natte iru / imasu.*
(The dessert is ready to eat. (lit., The only thing left to do with the dessert is to eat it.))				

(B)

Topic (subject)		V*te*		
友子 *Tomoko*	は *wa*	遊んで ***asonde***	ばかり *bakari*	いる / います。 *iru / imasu.*
(Tomoko is doing nothing but playing. (lit., The only thing Tomoko is doing is playing.))				

B

(C)

Topic (subject)			Vplain・past		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	昼ご飯を *hiru-gohan o*	**食べた** ***tabeta***	ばかり *bakari*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(I have just eaten my lunch. (lit., I had my lunch and haven't done anything else since then.))					

(D)

Topic (subject)		Noun		
デニス *Denisu*	は *wa*	**ビール** ***bīru***	ばかり *bakari*	飲んでいる / います。 *nonde iru / imasu.*
(Dennis is drinking only beer.)				

Formation

(i) Vplain·non-past ばかり
bakari

話すばかり (be ready to talk)
hanasu bakari

(ii) V*te* ばかり
bakari

話してばかり (be just talking)
hanashite bakari

(iii) Vplain·past ばかり
bakari

話したばかり (have just talked)
hanashita bakari

(iv) N ばかり
bakari

先生ばかり (only teachers)
sensei bakari

(v) N + Prt ばかり
bakari

学生にばかり (only to students)
gakusei ni bakari

B

Examples

(a) このレポートはあと結論を書くばかりだ。
Kono repōto wa ato ketsuron o kaku bakari da.
(The only thing left to do with this report is to write a conclusion.)

(b) 芽衣は泣いてばかりいて何も話そうとしない。
Mei wa naite bakari ite nani mo hanasō to shinai.
(Mei is just crying and won't talk about anything.)

(c) 松山さんは今シカゴに着いたばかりです。
Matsuyama-san wa ima Shikago ni tsuita bakari desu.
(Matsuyama-san has just arrived in Chicago now.)

(d) この寮に住んでいるのは男子学生ばかりだ。
Kono ryō ni sunde iru no wa danshi-gakusei bakari da.
(The students who are living in this dorm are all boys.)

(e) フィッシャー先生はニコルとばかり話している。
Fisshā-sensei wa Nikoru to bakari hanashite iru.
(Prof. Fisher is talking only with Nicole.)

Notes

1. The basic idea that *bakari* expresses is that there is nothing except what is stated. When Vplain·non-past precedes *bakari*, the whole expression means that there is nothing left to do (to complete something) but what is stated by the verb, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a). In some contexts, Vplain·non-past *bakari* means that someone does nothing but what is stated, as in (1).

   (1) 彼は笑う**ばかり**で何も説明してくれない。
   *Kare wa warau **bakari** de nani mo setsumei-shite kurenai.*
   (He just laughs and doesn't explain anything to me.)

2. When *bakari* is preceded by V*te* and followed by *iru*, the whole expression means someone is doing nothing but what is stated with V*te*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b).

3. When Vplain·past precedes *bakari*, the whole expression means that there has been almost no time for anything to happen since what is stated took place, i.e., something has just happened, or someone has just done something. KS(C) and Ex.(c) are examples of this use.

4. When *bakari* follows a noun, it means "only." When *bakari* follows "N *ga*" or "N *o*," *ga* or *o* drops. In KS(D), for example, *o* dropped. The directional *ni* (= ni^7) and *e* may be either deleted or retained. The particles ni^1–ni^6, *to*, *de*, *kara* and *made* do not drop when they are followed by *bakari*, as in Ex.(e).

B

5. When *bakari* follows a quantifier, it means "about," as in (2).

(2) 私はひと月**ばかり**パリにいました。
*Watashi wa hito-tsuki **bakari** Pari ni imashita.*
(I was in Paris for about a month.)

~ba yokatta ～ばよかった *phr.*

a phrase that expresses the speaker's regret

I wish ~ had done s.t.
【REL. *~te yokatta*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause (condition)		Main Clause
	V (*ba*-conditional)	
先に先生に *Saki ni sensei ni*	聞けば ***kike**ba*	よかった / よかったです。 *yokatta / yokattadesu.*
(I wish I had asked my teacher first.)		

(B)

Subordinate Clause (condition)		Main Clause
	V (*ba*-conditional·negative)	
パーティーに *Pātī ni*	来なければ ***konakere**ba*	よかった / よかったです。 *yokatta / yokattadesu.*
(I wish I hadn't come to the party.)		

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vcond ばよかった
ba yokatta

話せばよかった (I wish s.o. had talked)
hanaseba yokatta

B

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem ればよかった
reba yokatta

食べればよかった (I wish s.o. had eaten)
tabereba yokatta

(iii) Irr. verbs: 来る → 来ればよかった (I wish s.o. had come)
kuru *kureba yokatta*

する → すればよかった (I wish s.o. had done)
suru *sureba yokatta*

(iv) Negative forms: ～なければよかった
nakereba yokatta

行かなければよかった (I wish s.o. hadn't gone)
ikanakereaba yokatta

Examples

(a) あの本を読めばよかったです。
Ano hon o yomeba yokattadesu.
(I wish I had read that book.)

(b) ああ、もっと英語を勉強しておけばよかった。
Ā, motto eigo o benkyō-shite okeba yokatta.
(Oh, I wish I had studied English harder!)

(c) あの肉を食べなければよかった。
Ano niku o tabenakereba yokatta.
(I wish I hadn't eaten that meat.)

(d) ウェルズさんも日本に行ければよかったです。
Weruzu-san mo Nihon ni ikereba yokattadesu.
(I wish Wells-san could have gone to Japan, too.)

Notes

1. *~ba yokatta*, which consists of a *ba*-conditional clause and *yokatta* "was good," is an idiomatic expression meaning "I wish ~ had done s.t. (or had been in some state)." It literally means "It would have been good if ~ had done s.t. (or ~ had been in some state)."

2. When there is no subject in a *ba* clause, the first person is the implicit subject, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c).

3. "S.o. (other than the first person) wishes ~ had done s.t." can be expressed using this phrase followed by *to omotte iru* "(a third person) thinks that ~," as in (1). (⇒ ~ ***to omou***)

B

(1) ケビンは、大学の時、日本に留学すればよかった**と思っている**。
Kebin wa, daigaku no toki, Nihon ni ryūgaku-sureba yokatta ***to omotte iru.***
(Kevin wishes he had gone to Japan to study when he was at college. (lit., Kevin thinks that it would have been good if he had gone to Japan to study when he was at college.))

4. In many cases, the *ba yokatta* construction is used with an action verb, but non-action verbs can also be used, as in (2).

(2) 日本旅行はとても楽しかった。もっと時間が**あれば**よかった。そして、もっと日本語が上手に**話せれば**よかった。
Nihon-ryokō wa totemo tanoshikatta. Motto jikan ga ***areba*** *yokatta. Soshite, motto nihongo ga jōzu ni* ***hanasereba*** *yokatta.*
(My trip to Japan was a lot of fun. I wish I had had more time (there). And, I wish I could have spoken Japanese better.)

[Related Expression]

While *~ba yokatta* expresses a counterfactual action or state in the past, *~te yokatta* expresses a factual action or state in the past, as in [1] and [2].

[1] あの本を読んで**よかった**。(cf. Ex.(a))
*Ano hon o yon****de yokatta****.*
(I'm glad I read that book. (lit., It was good that I read that book.))

[2] 日本旅行はとても楽しかった。時間が十分あって**よかった**。そして、日本語が話せて**よかった**。(cf. (2))
*Nihon-ryokō wa totemo tanoshikatta. Jikan ga jūbun att****e yokatta****. Soshite, nihongo ga hanas****ete yokatta****.*
(My trip to Japan was a lot of fun. It was good that I had plenty of time and that I could speak Japanese.)

da だ *aux.*

an auxiliary that is attached to a non-conjugational word to indicate the tense and the politeness level

D

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Predicate	
	Adj(*na*)	
今、公園の桜が *Ima, kōen no sakura ga*	きれい ***kirei***	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(The cherry blossoms in the park are beautiful now.)		

(B)

	Predicate	
	Noun	
あれは *Are wa*	サッカー場 ***sakkā-jō***	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(That is a soccer stadium.)		

(C)

	Predicate		
	Noun	Prt	
会議は *Kaigi wa*	10時 ***jū-ji***	から ***kara***	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(The meeting starts at ten (lit., is from ten).)			

Formation

(i) Adj(*na*) { だ / です }
{ *da / desu* }

静か { だ / です } (s.t. is quiet)
shizuka { *da / desu* }

(ii) N { だ / です }
{ *da / desu* }

先生{だ / です}　(s.o is a teacher)
sensei{ *da* / *desu* }

(iii) N + Prt{だ / です}
{ *da* / *desu* }

D

7時まで{だ / です}　(s.t. is till seven o'clock)
shichi-ji made{ *da* / *desu* }

Examples

(a) 村井さんはカラオケが好きだ。
Murai-san wa karaoke ga suki da.
(Murai-san likes karaoke.)

(b) 私の出身は京都です。
Watashi no shusshin wa Kyōto desu.
(I'm from Kyoto. (lit., My birthplace is Kyoto.))

(c) この店のセールは今日までです。
Kono mise no sēru wa kyō made desu.
(The store's sale ends today (lit., is up to today).)

(d) A: 昨日のデートはどうだった？
Kinō no dēto wa dō datta?
(How did your date go yesterday?)

B: 最悪だった。
Saiaku datta.
(It was a disaster (lit., the worst).)

(e) このレストランは安くておいしいからいつもいっぱいだ。
Kono resutoran wa yasukute oishii kara itsumo ippai da.
(This restaurant serves reasonable and tasty foods, so it's always crowded.)

(f) 朝から何も食べていないのでおなかがぺこぺこです。
Asa kara nani mo tabete inai node onaka ga pekopeko desu.
(I haven't had anything since morning, so I'm starved.)

Notes

1. *Da* and its conjugated forms are attached to words and phrases that do not conjugate, and indicates the tense and the politeness level when they are used as the predicate. *Da* conjugates as in the chart on the next page.

   The forms with *ja*, the contracted form of *de wa*, are more colloquial than the forms with *de wa.* For the polite negative forms, the *~naidesu/nakattadesu* version is more common than the *~arimasen/arimasendeshita* version in conversational Japanese.

	Non-past		Past		*Te*-form
	Aff.	Neg.	Aff.	Neg.	
Plain	だ *da*	{では / じゃ}ない {*de wa / ja*} *nai*	だった *datta*	{では / じゃ}なかった {*de wa / ja*} *nakatta*	で *de*
Polite	です *desu*	{では / じゃ}ないです {*de wa / ja*} *naidesu* {では / じゃ}ありません {*de wa / ja*} *arimasen*	でした *deshita*	{では / じゃ}なかったです {*de wa / ja*} *nakattadesu* {では / じゃ}ありませんでした {*de wa / ja*} *arimasendeshita*	

D

2. *Da* and its conjugated forms are attached to the following types of words and phrases:

(A) Nouns, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b), and nominal nouns, as in (1)

(1) a. 夏休みにヨーロッパを旅行する**つもりだ**。
Natsu-yasumi ni Yōroppa o ryokō-suru ***tsumori da.***
(I'm planning to travel in Europe during summer vacation.)

b. 会議には田口さんも出席する**はずです**。
Kaigi ni wa Taguchi-san mo shusseki-suru ***hazu desu.***
(I expect Taguchi-san will also attend the meeting.)

(B) Nouns with case particles (e.g., *kara*, *made*, *de*, *to*), as in KS(C) and Ex.(c)

(C) *Na*-adjectives, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), and auxiliary *na*-adjectives, as in (2)

(2) a. このラーメンは辛**そうだ**。
*Kono rāmen wa kara-****sō da.***
(This ramen looks spicy.)

b. ピーターは来ない**みたいです**。
Pītā wa konai ***mitai desu.***
(It looks like Peter won't show up.)

(D) *No*-adjectives (i.e., adjectives that require *no* to modify nouns), as in Ex.(d)-B and (3)

(3) a. このレストランは**一流です**。
Kono resutoran wa ***ichiryū desu.***
(This restaurant is a top-rated one.)

b. 今日のライブは**最高だった**。
Kyō no raibu wa ***saikō datta.***
(Today's live concert was superb.)

(E) Quantifiers, as in Ex.(e) and (4)

(4) a. それについて私が知っていることはこれで**全部です**。
*Sore ni tsuite watashi ga shitte iru koto wa kore de **zenbu desu**.*
(This is all I know about it.)

D

b. 私たちのバンドのメンバーは**４人だ**。
*Watashi-tachi no bando no menbā wa **yo-nin da**.*
(There are four members in our band.)

(F) Adverbs, as in Ex.(d)-A and (5)

(5) a. こんな経験は**初めてだ**。
*Konna keiken wa **hajimete da**.*
(I haven't had such an experience before. (lit., Such an experience is for the first time.))

b. レポートの締め切りは**もうすぐだ**。
*Repōto no shimekiri wa **mō sugu da**.*
(The deadline for the term paper is close.)

(G) Phenomimes, as in Ex.(f) and (6)

(6) a. のどが**からからだ**。
*Nodo ga **karakara da**.*
(I'm very thirsty.)

b. このチームは**ばらばらだ**。
*Kono chīmu wa **barabara da**.*
(This team is not organized at all.)

(⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 7**. Sound Symbolisms)

(H) Conjunctions, as in (7)

(7) テストが悪かった。前の日に勉強しなかった**からだ**。
*Tesuto ga warukatta. Mae no hi ni benkyō-shinakatta **kara da**.*
(I didn't do well with my test. It's because I didn't study for it the day before.)

(I) Nominalizers, as in (8)

(8) a. 私の趣味は絵を描く**ことです**。
*Watashi no shumi wa e o kaku **koto desu**.*
(My hobby is to paint pictures.)

b. ジルは元気がない。たぶん疲れている**のだ**。
*Jiru wa genki ga nai. Tabun tsukarete iru **no da**.*
(Jill looks down. Probably she's tired.)

In (8), *no da* is a sentence-final expression, which is etymologically derived from the nominalizer *no* (= *no*[3]) and *da*. (⇒ ~ ***no da***)

3. Any complete sentences in Japanese contain information that indicates the tense and the politeness level in the predicate of the main clause. Verbs and *i*-adjectives carry the tense and politeness level information in the conjugation parts, while non-conjugational words are used with *da* or one of its conjugated forms to indicate the tense and politeness level, as shown in Note 2. However, in some situations, *da* is omitted or replaced by *no* or *na*. This is because the tense and the politeness level are indicated in other parts of the sentences, such as the auxiliaries and the main clauses. When a clause does not contain *da* or when *na* or *no* is present in place of *da*, the clause receives the default interpretation in terms of the tense and the politeness level, that is, the tense is non-past and the politeness level is plain. *Da* is omitted or replaced by *no* or *na* in the following situations.

(A) *Da* before auxiliaries and other sentence-final expressions: In this case, the tense and the politeness level are indicated by the auxiliaries or the other sentence-final expressions.

(9) a. 村松さんは旅行が好き ø {らしい / みたいだ / そうだ}。
Muramatsu-san wa ryokō ga suki ø {***rashii*** / ***mitai da*** / ***-sō da***}.
({It seems that / It appears that / It looks like} Muramatsu-san likes traveling.)

b. あの人の出身は大阪 ø {だろう / にちがいない / かもしれない}。
Ano hito no shusshin wa Ōsaka ø {***darō*** / ***ni chigai nai*** / ***kamoshirenai***}.
(He {is probably / must be / might be} from Osaka.)

In some situations, *no* or *na* occurs in place of *da*, as in (10).

(10) a. これはクレジットカードの番号**の**ようだ。
Kore wa kurejitto-kādo no bangō ***no*** *yō da.*
(It looks like this is the number of a credit card.)

b. 私の専攻はビジネス**な**んです。
Watashi no senkō wa bijinesu ***na*** *n desu.*
(My major is business.)

In (10 a), *no* occurs because *yō* is etymologically a noun. In (10 b), on the other hand, *na* occurs. It seems that this is in order to avoid the consecutive *no*'s. (⇒ ~ ***no da***; ***node***; ***noni***)

Note that *da* must be present before *sō da*[1], as in (11), because the sentence before *sō da* is a kind of quotation, which represents what someone said.

(11) 健の趣味は山登り｛**だ** / ×ø｝そうだ。
*Ken no shumi wa yama-nobori｛**da** / ×ø｝sō da.*
(I heard that Ken's hobby is mountain climbing.)

D

(B) *Da* in noun-modification clauses: In this case, *na* or *no* replaces *da*. The tense and the politeness level of the clause are indicated by the predicate of the main clause.

(12) a. 子供たちが好き**な**料理
*kodomo-tachi ga suki **na** ryōri*
(the dishes my children like/liked)

b. 旅行が趣味**の**人
*ryokō ga shumi **no** hito*
(people whose hobby is/was traveling)

c. 兄が大学生**の**時
*ani ga daigakusei **no** toki*
(the time when my elder brother is/was a university student)

d. 両親が元気**な**間
*ryōshin ga genki **na** aida*
(while my parents are/were healthy)

(C) *Da* in subordinate clauses: In this case, *da* either drops or is replaced by *na* or *no*. The tense and the politeness level of the clause are indicated by the predicate of the main clause.

(13) a. 専攻がコンピュータ工学ø なら仕事探しには困らないでしょう。
Senkō ga konpyūta-kōgaku ø nara shigoto-sagashi ni wa koma-ranai deshō.
(If your major is computer engineering, I guess you won't have trouble finding a job.)

b. 家がアパート**な**のでピアノを練習するのが｛難しい / 難しかった｝。
*Ie ga apāto **na** node piano o renshū-suru no ga｛muzukashii / muzukashikatta｝.*
(Because I live/lived in an apartment, it is/was difficult to practice the piano.)

c. 子供が病気**の**ため家族旅行は｛できません / できませんでした｝。
*Kodomo ga byōki **no** tame kazoku-ryokō wa｛dekimasen / dekimasendeshita｝.*
(Because our child is/was ill, we cannot/couldn't take a family trip.)

As in (14), *da* must be present before the conjunction *to* (= *to*[4]) even though the *to* clause is a subordinate clause.

(14) 説明が日本語{だ / ×ø}と多くの人が読めない。
*Setsumei ga nihongo{**da** / ×ø}**to** ōku no hito ga yomenai.*
(If the explanation is given in Japanese, many people cannot read it.)

This is because if *da* is absent, *to* can be interpreted as the accompaniment particle (= *to*[2]), as in (15).

(15) 木村先生が私たちの先生{だ / ×ø}と困る。
*Kimura-sensei ga watashi-tachi no sensei{**da** / ×ø}**to** komaru.*
(We'll be in trouble if Prof. Kimura is our teacher. (*The meaning when da is absent*: Prof. Kimura will be in trouble with our teacher.))

Da is necessary before the coordinate conjunctions, such as *ga*, *kedo* and *shi*, as in (16). This is because the clauses with these conjunctions are not subordinate clauses, and they have to contain the tense and politeness level information in them.

(16) a. 明日は祝日{だ / ×ø}{が / けど}、仕事に行かなければならない。
*Ashita wa shukujitsu{**da** / ×ø}{**ga** / **kedo**}, shigoto ni ikana-kereba naranai.*
(Tomorrow is a holiday, but I have to go to work.)

b. 私たちは学生{だ / ×ø}しお金もないので、まだ結婚はできない。
*Watashi-tachi wa gakusei{**da** / ×ø}**shi** o-kane mo nai node, mada kekkon wa dekinai.*
(We are students, and in addition, we don't have money, so we cannot marry yet.)

Da must be present before the conjunction *kara*, as in (17).

(17) 啓太はまだ中学生{だ / ×ø}から車を運転できません。
*Keita wa mada chūgakusei{**da** / ×ø}**kara** kuruma o unten-dekimasen.*
(Keita is still a junior high student, so he cannot drive a car.)

This phenomenon, along with the fact that the polite form can be used before *kara* if the main clause is in the polite form, as in (18), indicates that the "subordinateness" of *kara* is not as high as other subordinate conjunctions.

(18) お金が{ない / ありません}からまだ結婚できません。
*O-kane ga{nai / arimasen}**kara** mada kekkon-dekimasen.*
(Because we don't have money, we cannot marry yet.)

Note that under normal circumstances, the predicates in subordinate clauses are in the plain forms regardless of whether the main clauses are in the

polite forms or the plain forms, because the main clauses take the role of indicating the politeness level of the entire sentences.

(D) *Da* in main clauses: The *da* in main clauses often drops in casual conversations, news and journal articles, and proverbs.

(19) Casual conversations

a. 私、友美ø。よろしくね。
Watashi, Tomomi ø. Yoroshiku ne.
(I'm Tomomi. Nice to meet you.)

b. これ、私が描いた絵ø。
Kore, watashi ga kaita e ø.
(This is a picture I drew.)

(20) News and journal articles

a. 今日の東京は雨ø。
Kyō no Tōkyō wa ame ø.
(In Tokyo it'll be rainy today.)

b. 各地の震度は次の通りø。
Kakuchi no shindo wa tsugi no tōri ø.
(The levels of the earthquake in different cities are as follows.)

(21) Proverbs

a. 負けるが勝ちø。
Makeru ga kachi ø.
(Losing is winning.)

b. 口は災いのもとø。
Kuchi wa wazawai no moto ø.
(The mouth is a source of trouble.)

In the above situations, the most abbreviated forms are desired; thus, *da* drops. From the default interpretation rule in Note 3, the tense and the politeness level of these sentences are interpreted as non-past and plain, respectively.

4. The conjugated forms of *da* (i.e., *desu*, *de wa arimasen*, *datta*, *ja nakatta*, etc.) are always present because without them, the intended tense and politeness level cannot be expressed.

5. When the context is clear, *da* and *desu* are used instead of the intended verb phrases, as in (22)–(24). By using *da/desu*, the sentences maintain the full-fledged sentence forms even with the minimum use of words.

(22) A: コンサートは何時から始まりますか。
Konsāto wa nan-ji kara hajimarimasu ka.
(When does the concert begin?)

B: ６時から**です**。(＝６時から始まります。)
*Roku-ji kara **desu**. (= Roku-ji kara hajimarimasu.)*
(Six o'clock. (= It begins at six o'clock.))

D

(23) A: トイレはどこにありますか。
Toire wa doko ni arimasu ka.
(Where can I find a restroom? (lit., Where is a restroom?))

B: ２階**です**。(＝２階にあります。)
*Ni-kai **desu**. (= Ni-kai ni arimasu.)*
(On the second floor. (= There's one on the second floor.))

(24) A: もう昼ご飯、食べた？
Mō hiru-gohan, tabeta?
(Have you eaten lunch yet?)

B: いや、まだ**だ**。(＝いや、まだ食べていない。)
*Iya, mada **da**. (= Iya, mada tabete inai.)*
(No, not yet. (= No, I haven't eaten it yet.))

6. *Da* cannot be used with the question marker *ka* or when the sentence is pronounced with rising intonation, as in (25).

(25) a. 次のミーティングは来週{ø / ×**だ**}**か**。
*Tsugi no mītingu wa raishū{ø / ×**da**}**ka**.*
(Is the next meeting next week?)

b. 次のミーティングは来週{ø / ×**だ**}？
*Tsugi no mītingu wa raishū{ø / ×**da**}?*
(Is the next meeting next week?)

Note that the conjugated forms other than *da* can be with *ka*, as in (26).

(26) a. 次のミーティングは来週**ですか**。
*Tsugi no mītingu wa raishū **desu ka**.*
(Is the next meeting next week?)

b. 前のミーティングは２月**だったか**。
*Mae no mītingu wa ni-gatsu **datta ka**.*
(Was the last meeting in February?)

c. 前のミーティングは２月**だった**？
*Mae no mītingu wa ni-gatsu **datta**?*
(Was the last meeting in February?)

Note, however, that *da ka* can occur in embedded questions, as in (27).

(27) 次のミーティングが来週{ø / **だ**}**か**よく覚えていない。
Tsugi no mītingu ga raishū{ø / ***da***}***ka yoku oboete inai.***
(I can't quite remember (lit., I don't remember well) if the next meeting is next week.)

D

From the above phenomena, it seems that the *da* in main clauses has the function of expressing an assertive tone. The fact that *da* cannot be used in (25) is probably because the assertive tone *da* expresses contradicts with the question marker *ka* or rising intonation. The fact that *da ka* can be used in (27) is probably because the assertive tone is lost in embedded questions.

7. *Da* and its conjugated forms are commonly considered to be a copula and to carry the meaning of "be." However, this view is questionable because *da* does not appear in various grammatical constructions as noted in Note 3; nevertheless, the meaning "be" is maintained in those constructions. In addition, *da* does not occur with *i*-adjectives while *desu* does, as in (28).

(28) この本は{おもしろい / ×おもしろい**だ** / おもしろい**です**}。
Kono hon wa{*omoshiroi* / × *omoshiroi* ***da*** / *omoshiroi****desu***}.
(This book is interesting.)

If we maintain that *da* is a copula and *desu* is the polite form of *da*, we cannot explain why *da* cannot be used in (28).

Note that either *da* or *desu* is necessary with *na*-adjectives, as in (29).

(29) このアパートは静か{×ø / **だ** / **です**}。
Kono apāto wa shizuka{× ø / ***da*** / ***desu***}.
(This apartment is quiet.)

A critical difference between (28) and (29) is that in (28), the *i*-adjective *omoshiroi* itself carries the tense and politeness level information, while in (29), the *na*-adjective *shizuka* itself doesn't carry such information. If we assume that *da* and its conjugated forms are the auxiliary to convey the tense and politeness level information rather than a copula, the presence and absence of *da* in (28) and (29), as well as many other phenomena including those discussed in Notes 2 and 3, can be explained without employing any ad-hoc rules.

dake だけ *prt.*

no more than

only; just; alone; merely; that's all
【REL. ***shika***】

D

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subject		
ベイリーさん ***Beirī-san***	だけ（が） *dake (ga)*	講演の後で質問した / しました。 *kōen no ato de shitsumon-shita / shimashita.*
(Only Bailey-san asked a question after the lecture.)		

(B)

	Quantifier		
私は日本へ *Watashi wa Nihon e*	一度 ***ichi-do***	だけ *dake*	行った / 行きました。 *itta / ikimashita.*
(I went to Japan only once.)			

(C)

	Vplain		
亜紀さんとは *Aki-san to wa*	デートした ***dēto-shita***	だけ *dake*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(I just dated Aki-san, that's all.)			

(D)

	Adj(*i*)plain		
この家は *Kono ie wa*	大きい ***ōkii***	だけ *dake*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(This house is big, that's all.)			

(E)

	Adjective Phrase				
		Adj(*na*)			
このケーキは *Kono kēki wa*	色が *iro ga*	きれい ***kirei***	な ***na***	だけ *dake*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(This cake has pretty colors, that's all.)					

D

Formation

(i) N だけ｛(が) / (を)｝
dake ｛*(ga) / (o)*｝

先生だけ｛(が) / (を)｝ (the teacher alone (subject / direct object))
sensei dake ｛*(ga) / (o)*｝

(ii) N｛だけに / にだけ｝; N｛だけで / でだけ｝
｛*dake ni / ni dake*｝ ｛*dake de / de dake*｝

先生｛だけに / にだけ｝ (only to the teacher)
sensei ｛*dake ni / ni dake*｝

(iii) N｛へ / と / から / まで｝だけ
｛*e / to / kara / made*｝ *dake*

日本へだけ (only to Japan)
Nihon e dake

(iv) Quantifier だけ
dake

一人だけ (only one person)
hitori dake

(v) ｛Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain｝だけ｛だ / です｝
dake ｛*da / desu*｝

｛話す / 話した｝だけ｛だ / です｝ (s.o.｛will talk / talks / talked｝, that's all)
｛*hanasu / hanashita*｝ *dake* ｛*da / desu*｝

｛安い / 安かった｝だけ｛だ / です｝ (s.t. is/was cheap, that's all)
｛*yasui / yasukatta*｝ *dake* ｛*da / desu*｝

(vi) Adj(*na*)｛な / だった｝だけ｛だ / です｝
｛*na / datta*｝ *dake* ｛*da / desu*｝

静か｛な / だった｝だけ｛だ / です｝ (s.t. is/was quiet, that's all)
shizuka ｛*na / datta*｝ *dake* ｛*da / desu*｝

Examples

(a) 日本からは佐藤さんだけ(が)その会議に出ました。
Nihon kara wa Satō-san dake (ga) sono kaigi ni demashita.
(Only Sato-san attended that conference from Japan.)

(b) おみやげにコーヒー豆だけ(を)買った。
O-miyage ni kōhī-mame dake (o) katta.
(I only bought (lit., bought only) some coffee beans as a souvenir.)

(c) 好きな人がいることを母{にだけ / だけに}話した。
Suki na hito ga iru koto o haha{ni dake / dake ni}hanashita.
(I told only my mother that I have someone I love.)

(d) あの先生には一度だけ会いました。
Ano sensei ni wa ichi-do dake aimashita.
(I met that teacher only once.)

(e) 朝はコーヒーを１杯飲むだけです。
Asa wa kōhī o ip-pai nomu dake desu.
(In the morning I just drink a cup of coffee, that's all.)

(f) この本は高いだけであまり役に立たない。
Kono hon wa takai dake de amari yaku ni tatanai.
(This book is just expensive and is not very useful.)

(g) テニスは好きなだけで上手じゃないです。
Tenisu wa suki na dake de jōzu ja naidesu.
(I just like tennis, and I'm not good at it.)

(h) その問題ができたのはエリカだけだった。
Sono mondai ga dekita no wa Erika dake datta.
(Only Erika could solve the problem. (lit., The one who could solve the problem was only Erika.))

(i) それは学生だけのパーティーだった。
Sore wa gakusei dake no pātī datta.
(It was a party for students only.)

(j) できるだけゆっくり話してください。
Dekiru dake yukkuri hanashite kudasai.
(Please speak as slowly as possible.)

Notes

1. When *dake* is attached to a noun with a case particle (e.g., *ga*, *o*, *ni*, *de*, etc.), where *dake* occurs changes depending on the particle.

(A) When *dake* is attached to N *ga/o*, *ga* and *o* usually drop. *Ga* and *o* appear when N *ga/o* is emphasized, in which case, *dake* occurs before *ga* or *o*.

(B) When *dake* is attached to N *ni/de*, *dake* occurs either before or after *ni* and *de*. While N *ni dake* and N *dake ni* mean the same thing, as in Ex.(c), N *de dake* and N *dake de* are significantly different in meaning, as in (1).

(1) a. 私はそれを日本語**でだけ**説明できる。
*Watashi wa sore o nihongo **de dake** setsumei-dekiru.*
(I can explain it only in Japanese (and cannot explain it in any other languages).)

b. 私はそれを日本語**だけで**説明できる。
*Watashi wa sore o nihongo **dake de** setsumei-dekiru.*
(I can explain it only in Japanese (without using any other languages).)

D

(C) When *dake* is attached to N *e/to/kara/made*, *dake* usually occurs after *e*, *to*, *kara* and *made*. N *dake e*, N *dake to*, etc. are awkward or unnatural.

2. In the use of *dake* as in KS(B), amount adverbs like *sukoshi* and *chotto* can also be used in the Quantifier position.

(2) 肉はめったに食べませんが、今日は**少しだけ**チキンを食べました。
*Niku wa metta ni tabemasen ga, kyō wa **sukoshi dake** chikin o tabemashita.*
(I seldom eat meat, but today I had a little bit of chicken.)

3. In the constructions { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } *dake da* and Adj(*na*) { *na / datta* } *dake da*, as in KSs(C)–(E), *dake* modifies the preceding verb/adjective or verb/adjective phrase and means "~, that's all."

Compare (3a) and (3b) below:

(3) a. 魚**だけ**(を)食べた。
*Sakana **dake** (o) tabeta.*
(I ate only fish.)

b. 魚を食べた**だけ**だ。
*Sakana o tabeta **dake** da.*
(I ate fish, that's all.)

In (3a) *dake* modifies only the preceding noun *sakana* "fish," while in (3b) *dake* modifies the preceding verb phrase *sakana o tabeta* "I ate fish."

4. In some contexts, *dake* means "as (much) as ~" or "to the extext that ~." Ex.(j) is an example of this use. (4) provides additional examples.

(4) a. その作曲家の情報を集められる**だけ**集めた。
*Sono sakkyokuka no jōhō o atsumerareru **dake** atsumeta.*
(I gathered as much information on the composer as I could.)

b. 食べたい**だけ**食べてください。
*Tabe-tai **dake** tabete kudasai.*
(Please eat as much as you'd like to.)

c. スーツケースに入る**だけ**のおみやげを詰め込んだ。
*Sūtsukēsu ni hairu **dake** no o-miyage o tsumekonda.*
(I packed the suitcase with as many souvenirs as it could contain.)

d. あれ**だけ**言ったのに、ビリーはまた宿題を忘れた。
*Are **dake** itta noni, Birī wa mata shukudai o wasureta.*
(Despite the fact that I told Billy (not to forget his homework) that many times, he forgot it again.)

~ dake de (wa) naku (~ mo) ～だけで(は)なく(～も) *phr.*

not only X but also Y, where X and Y are a noun, a verb, or an adjective

not only ~ but also
【REL. *bakari de (wa) naku*】

D

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vplain		
マイク *Maiku*	は *wa*	ゲームを *gēmu o*	する ***suru***	だけで(は)なく *dake de (wa) naku*	自分でも作る / 作ります。 *jibun de mo tsukuru / tsukurimasu.*
(Mike not only plays games, but also creates them on his own.)					

(B)

Topic (subject)			Adj(*i*)plain		
上村さん *Uemura-san*	は *wa*	頭が *atama ga*	いい ***ii***	だけで(は)なく *dake de (wa) naku*	よく努力(も)する / します。 *yoku doryoku (mo) suru / shimasu.*
(Uemura-san is not just smart; he works hard, too.)					

(C)

Topic (subject)		Adj(*na*)			
このいす *Kono isu*	は *wa*	きれい ***kirei***	な *na*	だけで(は)なく *dake de (wa) naku*	とても座りやすい(です)。 *totemo suwari-yasui (desu).*
(This chair is not only beautiful but it is also easy to sit in.)					

(D)

Noun		Noun		
学生 ***Gakusei***	だけで(は)なく *dake de (wa) naku*	先生 ***sensei***	も *mo*	その集会に参加した / しました。 *sono shūkai ni sanka-shita / shimashita.*
(Not only students but also teachers joined the rally.)				

D

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } だけで(は)なく
dake de (wa) naku

{ 話す / 話した } だけで(は)なく
(s.o. not only { will speak / speaks / spoke } ~)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *dake de (wa) naku*

{ 高い / 高かった } だけで(は)なく (s.t. is/was not only expensive ~)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *dake de (wa) naku*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } だけで(は)なく
{ *na / datta* } *dake de (wa) naku*

静か { な / だった } だけで(は)なく (s.t. is/was not only quiet ~)
shizuka { *na / datta* } *dake de (wa) naku*

(iii) N だけで(は)なく
dake de (wa) naku

ジョンだけで(は)なく (not only John)
Jon dake de (wa) naku

Examples

(a) 佐野さんはピアノを弾くだけでなく作曲もします。
Sano-san wa piano o hiku dake de naku sakkyoku mo shimasu.
(Sano-san not only plays the piano but also composes music.)

(b) ライトさんは日本へ行ったことがあるだけではなく、住んだこともある。
Raito-san wa Nihon e itta koto ga aru dake de wa naku, sunda koto mo aru.
(Wright-san has not only been to Japan, but has also lived there.)

(c) このアパートは狭いだけでなく大変不便です。
Kono apāto wa semai dake de naku taihen fuben desu.
(This apartment is not only small but it is also very incovenient.)

(d) さおりは頭がよかっただけでなく、人にも親切でした。
Saori wa atama ga yokatta dake de naku, hito ni mo shinsetsu deshita.
(Saori was not only bright but was also kind to people.)

(e) この自転車は丈夫なだけではなく、とても軽いので人気がある。
Kono jitensha wa jōbu na dake de wa naku, totemo karui node ninki ga aru.
(This bicycle is popular because it is not only durable but is also very light.)

(f) このすし屋は日本人だけでなく外国人もよく来ます。
Kono sushi-ya wa nihonjin dake de naku gaikokujin mo yoku kimasu.
(Many foreigners come to this sushi restaurant as well as Japanese people.

(lit., Not only Japanese people but also foreigners come to this sushi restaurant often.))

(g) ケリーさんは日本語だけでなく中国語も話せます。
Kerī-san wa nihongo dake de naku chūgokugo mo hanasemasu.
(Kelly-san can speak not only Japanese but also Chinese.)

(h) 中村さんはアメリカやヨーロッパだけではなく、東南アジアにもよく出張する。
Nakamura-san wa Amerika ya Yōroppa dake de wa naku, Tōnan-ajia ni mo yoku shutchō-suru.
(Nakamura-san often takes business trips not only to America and Europe but also to Southeast Asia.)

D

Notes

1. *Wa* in *dake de wa naku* usually drops in spoken language, while in written language the presence of *wa* is more natural.

2. In the "N *dake de (wa) naku* N *mo*" construction, the two nouns can be followed by various particles. The first particle of the two can be dropped, as in (1) and (2).

   (1) 友達(**から**)だけではなく先生**から**もカードが来ました。
   *Tomodachi (**kara**) dake de wa naku sensei **kara** mo kādo ga kimashita.*
   (Cards came not only from my friends but also from my teacher.)

   (2) 友達(**に**)だけではなく先生**に**もカードを書きました。
   *Tomodachi (**ni**) dake de wa naku sensei **ni** mo kādo o kakimashita.*
   (I wrote cards not only to my friends, but also to my teacher.)

[Related Expression]

In the majority of cases, *dake de (wa) naku* can be replaced by *bakari de (wa) naku*. However, *bakari de (wa) naku* is a written language expression and is rather unnatural in spoken language, as in [1]. (⇒ ***bakari***)

[1] [Teacher to students]
明日までに10課{**だけ** / ??**ばかり**}でなく11課も勉強しておきなさい。
*Ashita made ni juk-ka{**dake** / ??**bakari**} de naku jūik-ka mo benkyō-shite oki-nasai.*
(Study not only Lesson 10 but also Lesson 11 by tomorrow.)

～ darō ～だろう *aux.*

D

an auxiliary that indicates the speaker's supposition or conjecture that is not based on certain information or knowledge

probably; I guess; must
【REL. ~ ***kamoshirenai***; ~ ***ni chigai nai***; *ne*; ~ ***yō da***[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Splain*	
アンダーソンさんは日本へ行く ***Andāson-san wa Nihon e iku***	だろう / でしょう。 *darō / deshō.*
(Anderson-san will probably go to Japan.)	

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N drops.

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } だろう
darō

{ 話す / 話した } だろう (s.o. { will probably talk / probably talked })
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *darō*

{ 高い / 高かった } だろう (s.t. is/was probably expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *darō*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { ø / だった } だろう
{ ø / *datta* } *darō*

静か { ø / だった } だろう (s.t. is/was probably quiet)
shizuka { ø / *datta* } *darō*

先生 { ø / だった } だろう (s.o. is/was probably a teacher)
sensei { ø / *datta* } *darō*

Examples

(a) ハリーは今忙しいから来られないだろう。
Harī wa ima isogashii kara korarenai darō.
(Harry is busy now, so he probably can't come.)

(b) あのアパートは高いでしょう。
Ano apāto wa takai deshō.
(That apartment is probably expensive.)

(c) 真里子は奨学金がもらえてうれしかっただろう。
Mariko wa shōgakukin ga moraete ureshikatta darō.
(Having received a scholarship, Mariko must have been happy.)

(d) ロジャーはスポーツが得意です。きっとスキーも上手でしょう。
Rojā wa supōtsu ga tokui desu. Kitto skī mo jōzu deshō.
(Roger is good at sports. He must be good at skiing, too.)

(e) あの人はこの学校の先生じゃないだろう。
Ano hito wa kono gakkō no sensei ja nai darō.
(I guess that person is not a teacher at this school.)

D

Notes

1. *Darō* is a plain form; the polite form is *deshō*. In spoken language, *darō* is primarily used by male speakers when they talk to a close person whose status is not higher than the speaker. In other situations, *deshō* is commonly used. In written language, *darō* is used primarily in newspaper/magazine articles, books for adults, academic papers, etc., while *deshō* is used primarily in letters, emails, books for children, etc. Generally speaking, polite forms, including *deshō*, set an intimate tone in written language.

2. Probability adverbs such as *tabun*, *osoraku* and *kitto* are sometimes used with *darō/deshō*. The speaker's conjecture sounds more certain with *tabun* or *osoraku*, and even more certain with *kitto*.

   (1) アンダーソンさんは{**たぶん / おそらく**}日本へ行くだろう。
   *Andāson-san wa{**tabun / osoraku**}Nihon e iku darō.*
   (Anderson-san will most probably go to Japan.)

   (2) ハワードさんは**きっと**さびしかっただろう。
   *Hawādo-san wa **kitto** sabishikatta darō.*
   (Howard-san must have been lonely.)

3. *Darō/deshō* cannot be used for the speaker's own action, as in (3).

   (3) a. ×私は来年日本に行く{**だろう / でしょう**}。
   × *Watashi wa rainen Nihon ni iku{**darō / deshō**}.*
   (*Intended meaning*: I'll probably go to Japan next year.)

   b. ??昔のことでよく覚えていないが、その町には２年間住んだ**だろう**。
   ??*Mukashi no koto de yoku oboete inai ga, sono machi ni wa ni-nen-kan sunda **darō**.*
   (*Intended meaning*: It was a long time ago and I don't remember well, but I probably lived in that town for two years.)

In order to express the idea of the English translation in (3), *tabun ~ to omou* can be used, as in (4). (⇒ ~ ***to omou***)

(4) a. 私はたぶん来年日本に行くと{思う / 思います}。
Watashi wa tabun rainen Nihon ni iku ***to*** {***omou*** / ***omoimasu***}.
(I think I'll probably go to Japan next year.)

D

b. 昔のことでよく覚えていないが、その町にはたぶん２年間住んだと思う。
Mukashi no koto de yoku oboete inai ga, sono machi ni wa ***tabun*** *ninenkan sunda* ***to omou.***
(It was a long time ago and I don't remember well, but I think I probably lived in that town for two years.)

4. In some situations, *darō* and *deshō* are used even when the speaker is certain that what he/she is going to say is the case or true. In this case, they are used for the purpose of avoiding an assertive tone, which could sound rude to the listener. *Darō* and *deshō* are also used to state an opinion softly and to make a suggestion indirectly, as in (5).

(5) a. その計画はうまく行かないでしょう。
Sono keikaku wa umaku ikanai ***deshō.***
(That plan probably won't go well.)

b. 今は日本に行かないほうがいいでしょう。
Ima wa Nihon ni ikanai hō ga ii ***deshō.***
(It's probably not a good idea to go to Japan now.)

5. *Darō/deshō* with the question marker *ka* makes questions softer or less direct. Compare (6a) and (6b).

(6) a. この車は大丈夫ですか。
Kono kuruma wa daijōbu ***desu ka.***
(Is this car all right?)

b. この車は大丈夫でしょうか。
Kono kuruma wa daijōbu ***deshō ka.***
(I wonder if this car is all right.)

6. "S *darō/deshō*" with rising intonation is used to elicit the listener's confirmation or to ask for the listener's agreement.

(7) a. 今晩のパーティーに行くだろう？ [confirmation]
Konban no pātī ni iku ***darō?***
(You're going to tonight's party, too, aren't you?)

b. これ、きれいでしょう？ [asking for agreement]
Kore, kirei ***deshō?***
(Isn't this pretty?)

【Related Expression】

Like "S *darō/deshō*" with rising intonation, the sentence-final particle *ne* with rising intonation is also used to elicit the listener's confirmation or agreement. The difference between the two is that "S *darō/deshō*" is softer or less direct than "S *ne*." Compare [1a] and [1b]. (⇒ ***ne***)

D

[1] a. 前野さんもコンサートに行くでしょう？
*Maeno-san mo konsāto ni iku **deshō**?*
(Maeno-san is going to the concert, too, right? / You're going to the concert, too, right, Maeno-san?)

b. 前野さんもコンサートに行きますね？
*Maeno-san mo konsāto ni ikimasu **ne**?*
(Maeno-san is going to the concert, too, isn't he? / You're going to the concert, too, aren't you, Maeno-san?)

～ dasu ～出す *aux. v. (Gr. 1)*

S.t. begins to happen or s.o. begins to do something involuntarily.

begin to do s.t.; start to do.s.t.
【REL. ~ *hajimeru*】
(ANT. ~ *owaru*)

◆ Key Sentence

Subject		Vmasu	
ロボット *Robotto*	が *ga*	動き ***ugoki***	出した / 出しました。 *-dashita / dashimashita.*
(The robot started to move.)			

Formation

Vmasu 出す
-dasu

話し出す (s.o. starts to talk)
hanashi-dasu

食べ出す (s.o. starts to eat)
tabe-dasu

Examples

(a) 急に雨が降り出した。
Kyū ni ame ga furi-dashita.
(Suddenly it began to rain.)

(b) 雷が鳴り出した。
Kaminari ga nari-dashita.
(It began to thunder.)

(c) 仕事を始めようとしたら赤ちゃんが泣き出した。
Shigoto o hajimeyō to shitara akachan ga naki-dashita.
(The baby began to cry when I tried to start my work.)

(d) ナタリーは１歳になって初めて歩き出しました。
Natarī wa is-sai ni natte hajimete aruki-dashimashita.
(Natalie started to walk only after she became a year old.)

Notes

1. *Dasu* can be used as an auxiliary verb to mean "begin to ~." This expression is usually used for events, as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b), or involuntary actions, as in Exs.(c) and (d). For this reason, *dasu* is rather unnatural, particularly when the subject is the first person, without a context that indicates that the action is involuntary, as in (1).

   (1) {学生たち / ??私たち}は校歌を歌い出した。
   {***Gakusei-tachi*** / ??***Watashi-tachi***} *wa kōka o utai-dashita.*
   ({The students / We} began to sing their/our school song.)

   However, (2) is natural even with the first person subject because the context indicates that the action is involuntary.

   (2) 私たちはだれからともなく校歌を歌い出した。
   Watashi-tachi wa dare kara to mo naku kōka o utai-dashita.
   (We spontaneously (lit., not knowing who began) began to sing our school song.)

2. When *dasu* is used to indicate a point in time, it can be used with the first person subject, as in (3).

   (3) 私たちがパーティーの料理を作り出した時、マイケルたちが来た。
   Watashi-tachi ga pātī no ryōri o tsukuri-dashita toki, Maikeru-tachi ga kita.
   (When we started cooking dishes for the party, Michael and his friends came.)

3. *Dasu* is often used when an event/action started abruptly, as in Ex.(a). (4) provides another example of this kind.

(4) 川口さんは机に座るとすぐにそのレポートを書き出した。
Kawaguchi-san wa tsukue ni suwaru to sugu ni sono repōto o kaki-dashita.
(Kawaguchi-san began to write the report soon after she sat at her desk.)

D

4. The *dasu* in the following words is not an auxiliary verb. Rather, it is an element of the compound verbs that indicates the meaning of "out."

(5) 思い出す (remember, i.e., think and pull out a piece
omoi-dasu of information from one's memory)

持ち出す (take out)	引き出す (draw; pull out)	押し出す (push out)
mochi-dasu	*hiki-dasu*	*oshi-dasu*
運び出す (carry out)	掘り出す (dig out)	飛び出す (jump out)
hakobi-dasu	*hori-dasu*	*tobi-dasu*

【Related Expression】

Dasu and *hajimeru* are similar in meaning, but they are different in that *dasu* indicates an involuntary beginning while *hajimeru* carries no such implication. Thus, in [1], *hajimeru* is natural, but *dasu* is not. (⇒ ***hajimeru***)

[1] そろそろパーティーの料理を{作り**始めましょう** / ×作り**出しましょう**}。
*Sorosoro pātī no ryōri o{ tsukuri-**hajimemashō** / × tsukuri-**dashi-mashō**}.*
(Let's start cooking dishes for the party now.)

de[1] **で**[1] *prt.*

a particle that indicates location other than that of existence

at; in; on
【REL. ***ni***[4]; ***ni***[6]; ***o***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

D

Topic (subject)		Noun (location)		Verb Phrase (non-existential)
私たち *Watashi-tachi*	は *wa*	**カフェ** ***kafe***	で *de*	コーヒーを飲んだ / 飲みました。 *kōhī o nonda / nomimashita.*
(We drank coffee at a café.)				

(B)

		Noun (location)		Verb Phrase (existential)		
				Noun (event)		
今晩 *Konban*	この *kono*	**公園** ***kōen***	で *de*	ロックコンサート *rokku-konsāto*	が *ga*	ある / あります。 *aru / arimasu.*
(There is a rock concert in this park tonight.)						

Examples

(a) 真紀は書店で働いています。
Maki wa shoten de hataraite imasu.
(Maki is working at a bookstore.)

(b) ヘレンは初めて舞台で歌った。
Heren wa hajimete butai de utatta.
(Helen sang on the stage for the first time.)

(c) 昨日この部屋でプライス先生の講演があった。
Kinō kono heya de Puraisu-sensei no kōen ga atta.
(We had Prof. Price's lecture in this room yesterday.)

Notes

1. *De*[1] cannot be used to indicate location of existence. However, when the existential verb *aru* "(inanimate things) exist" is used for an event, *de* is used rather than *ni*, as in KS(B). (⇒ ***ni***[6]; ***aru***[1])

   (1) 今晩この公園{で / ×に}ロックコンサートがある。(= KS(B))
   *Konban kono kōen{**de** / × **ni**} rokku-konsāto ga aru.*
   (There is a rock concert in this park tonight.)

2. *De*[1] can also be used with an adjective / noun predicate, as in (2) and (3). In this case, *de* is usually followed by *wa* to indicate that this element is a contrastive element. (⇒ ***wa***)

(2) 西岡さんは日本**では**元気でした。
*Nishioka-san wa Nihon **de wa** genki deshita.*
(Nishioka-san was fine in Japan.)

(3) 12 月はオーストラリア**では**夏だ。
*Jūni-gatsu wa Ōsutoraria **de wa** natsu da.*
(In Australia it is summer in December.)

D

de[2]　で[2]　*prt.*

a particle that indicates a means to do something

by; from; for; in; on; using; with
【REL. ~ *o tsukatte*】

◆ Key Sentence

	Noun (means)		
宮本さんは毎日 *Miyamoto-san wa mai-nichi*	**バス** ***basu***	で *de*	会社へ行く / 行きます。 *kaisha e iku / ikimasu.*
(Miyamoto-san goes to his company by bus every day.)			

Examples

(a) 日本人はたいていはしでご飯を食べます。
Nihonjin wa taitei hashi de gohan o tabemasu.
(Japanese people usually eat meals with chopsticks.)

(b) 私たちは日本語で話した。
Watashi-tachi wa nihongo de hanashita.
(We talked in Japanese.)

(c) 私はその映画をテレビで見ました。
Watashi wa sono eiga o terebi de mimashita.
(I watched the movie on TV.)

(d) 豆腐は大豆で作ります。
Tōfu wa daizu de tsukurimasu.
(We make tofu from soybeans.)

(e) ラリーはこのいすを 10 ドルで買った。
Rarī wa kono isu o jū-doru de katta.
(Larry bought this chair for ten dollars.)

(f) ベッツィーはそのレポートを１日で書いたそうだ。
Bettsī wa sono repōto o ichi-nichi de kaita sō da.
(I heard that Betsy wrote the report in one day.)

D Notes

1. In general, *de*² indicates something that is used when someone does something. Typically, it indicates a means or an instrument to perform an action, as in KS and Exs.(a)–(c), materials from which something is made, as in Ex.(d), and money or time spent for doing something, as in Exs.(e) and (f).

2. Since *de* also indicates reason and cause, the phrase *nan de*, which consists of *nan* "what" and *de*, is ambiguous: one meaning is "by means of what (= how)" and the other is "for what reason (= why)." Thus, (1) can be interpreted in two ways. (⇒ ***de***³)

(1) 本田さんは**何で**大阪へ行くんですか。
*Honda-san wa **nan de** Ōsaka e iku n desu ka.*
(How/Why is Honda-san going to Osaka?)

In order to disambiguate (1), *nani de*, the original form of *nan de*, can be used, as in (2).

(2) 本田さんは**何**(なに)**で**大阪へ行くんですか。
*Honda-san wa **nani de** Ōsaka e iku n desu ka.*
(How (lit., In what way) is Honda-san going to Osaka?)

Dō yatte "in what way (lit., by doing what way)" or *naze* "why" can also be used to avoid ambiguity, as in (3) and (4).

(3) 本田さんは**どうやって**大阪へ行くんですか。
*Honda-san wa **dō yatte** Ōsaka e iku n desu ka.*
(How is Honda-san going to Osaka?)

(4) 本田さんは**なぜ**大阪へ行くんですか。
*Honda-san wa **naze** Ōsaka e iku n desu ka.*
(Why is Honda-san going to Osaka?)

[Related Expression]

*De*² can be rephrased using the phrase ~ *o tsukatte* "by using ~," as in [1].

[1] 私たちはタクシー{**で** / **を使って**}来ました。
*Watashi-tachi wa takushī{**de** / **o tsukatte**} kimashita.*
(We came by taxi.)

Note, however, that *de*² cannot be used when the prededing noun refers to a human being, as in [2].

[2] 私は子供{**を使って** / ×**で**}家具を動かした。
Watashi wa kodomo {***o tsukatte*** / ×***de***} *kagu o ugokashita.*
(I moved the furniture with the help of my children (lit., using my children.))

D

de[3] で[3] *prt.*

a particle that indicates a cause or a reason

because of; due to
【REL. *kara*[3]; ***node***】

◆ Key Sentence

	Noun (cause)		
アレックスは *Arekkusu wa*	**病気** ***byōki***	で *de*	日本語の授業を休んだ / 休みました。 *nihongo no jugyō o yasunda / yasumimashita.*
(Alex missed the Japanese class due to illness.)			

Examples

(a) 父は交通事故で入院しました。
Chichi wa kōtsūjiko de nyūin-shimashita.
(My father was hospitalized due to a traffic accident.)

(b) 大雨で橋が壊れた。
Ōame de hashi ga kowareta.
(The heavy rain destroyed the bridge. (lit., The bridge broke down because of the heavy rain.))

(c) ゆうべは残業でとても疲れた。
Yūbe wa zangyō de totemo tsukareta.
(Because of the overtime work, I got very tired last evening.)

(d) 明日は期末試験で大変です。
Ashita wa kimatsu-shiken de taihen desu.
(It's going to be tough tomorrow because there is a final exam (lit., because of a final exam).)

Notes

1. When *de* is used to indicate a cause or a reason, the predicate represents an event or an inevitable situation.

D

2. In some cases, *de*[3] is very close to the *te*-form of *desu*. For example, KS can be considered to be the result of connecting the following two sentences using the *te*-form of *desu*, which means "be ~ and."

(1) a. アレックスは病気でした。
Arekkusu wa byōki deshita.
(Alex was ill.)

b. アレックスは日本語の授業を休みました。
Arekkusu wa nihongo no jugyō o yasumimashita.
(Alex missed the Japanese class.)

[Related Expression]

Kara[3] and *node* also indicate a cause or a reason. However, *kara*[3] and *node* are conjuctions and are attached to a clause, while *de*[3] is a particle and is attached to a noun. *Kara*[3] and *node* cannot be attached to a noun, as in [1]. (⇒ ***kara***[3]; ***node***)

[1] アレックスは病気{で / ×から / ×ので}日本語の授業を休んだ。(= KS)
Arekkusu wa byōki {***de*** / ×***kara*** / ×***node***} *nihongo no jugyō o yasunda.*
(Alex missed the Japanese class due to illness.)

de[4] **で**[4] *prt.*

a particle that indicates the time when s.t. ends or the most recent day, week, etc. of a certain period

at; on; in
【REL. *ni*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Noun (time)		
春学期 *Haru-gakki*	は *wa*	**５月10日** ***go-gatsu tō-ka***	で *de*	終わる / 終わります。 *owaru / owarimasu.*
(The spring term ends on May 10.)				

D

Examples

(a) このコンサートは10時で終わります。
Kono konsāto wa jū-ji de owarimasu.
(This concert will be over at ten o'clock.)

(b) 私のパスポートは６月で切れる。
Watashi no pasupōto wa roku-gatsu de kireru.
(My passport expires in June.)

(c) アメリカに来てから今日で３年になる。
Amerika ni kite kara kyō de san-nen ni naru.
(Today marks three years since I came to America.)

Notes

1. X *de*[4] indicates that something lasts for a period of time up to X. When the predicate verb means "end," "expire," or the like, X refers to the time of ending, expiration, etc., as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b). In Ex.(c), on the other hand, X refers to the last day of the indicated period.

2. When X in X *de* refers to a duration of time, as in (1), it is *de*[2] (the *de* of means) rather than *de*[4] (the *de* of ending time). (⇒ ***de***[2])

   (1) 藤原さんは１週間でそのレポートを書いた。
   *Fujiwara-san wa is-shūkan **de** sono repōto o kaita.*
   (Fujiwara-san wrote the report in a week (lit., using a week).)

[Related Expression]

When the predicate verb means "end," "expire," or the like, as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b), *ni*[1] can be used in place of *de*[4], as in [1]. (⇒ ***ni***[1])

[1] 春学期は５月10日｛で / に｝終わる。(cf. KS)
*Haru-gakki wa go-gatsu tō-ka｛**de** / **ni**｝owaru.*
(The spring term ends on May 10.)

De carries the nuance that the spring term lasts up to May 10, while *ni* simply indicates the time when the spring term ends.

★ Semantic Derivations of *De*

D

de (using s.t.)

<Means> *de*[2]
私たちは英語で話した。
*Watashi-tachi wa eigo **de** hanashita.*
(We talked in English.)

<Instrument> *de*[2]
デーブは車でシカゴへ行った。
*Dēbu wa kuruma **de** Shikago e itta.*
(Dave went to Chicago by car.)

<Material> *de*[2]
私は毛糸でくつ下を編んだ。
*Watashi wa keito **de** kutsushita o anda.*
(I knit socks with wool.)

<Location of action/event> *de*[1]
久美はいつも図書館で勉強する。
*Kumi wa itsumo toshokan **de** benkyō-suru.*
(Kumi always studies at the library.)

<Cause> *de*[3]
その家は台風で壊れた。
*Sono ie wa taifū **de** kowareta.*
(That house collapsed due to the typhoon.)

<Reason> *de*[3]
僕は試験でパーティーに行けなかった。
*Boku wa shiken **de** pātī ni ikenakatta.*
(I couldn't go to the party because of the exam.)

<Required time> *de*[2]
藤原さんは３日でこのレポートを書いた。
*Fujiwara-san wa mik-ka **de** kono repōto o kaita.*
(Fujiwara-san wrote this report in three days.)

<Ending time> *de*[4]
仕事は５時で終わります。
*Shigoto wa go-ji **de** owarimasu.*
(My work ends at five o'clock.)

<Required cost> *de*[2]
私はこの本を10ドルで買った。
*Watashi wa kono hon o jū-doru **de** katta.*
(I bought this book for ten dollars.)

demo でも *prt.*

the *te*-form of *desu* plus *mo* "even" → even

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subject		Predicate
先生 ***Sensei***	でも *demo*	間違う / 間違います。 *machigau / machigaimasu.*
(Even a teacher makes a mistake.)		

(B)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		Verb
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	危険な仕事 ***kiken na shigoto***	でも *demo*	する / します。 *suru / shimasu.*
(I will even take a dangerous job.)				

(C)

Noun	Prt		
ここ ***Koko***	から ***kara***	でも *demo*	富士山が見える / 見えます。 *Fujisan ga mieru / miemasu.*
(You can see Mt. Fuji even from here.)			

Formation

D

(i) N でも
demo

先生が [subject] → 先生でも (even a teacher)
sensei ga *sensei demo*

先生を [direct object] → 先生でも (even a teacher)
sensei o *sensei demo*

(ii) N + Prt でも
demo

先生とでも (even with a teacher)
sensei to demo

東京からでも (even from Tokyo)
Tōkyō kara demo

Examples

(a) 子供でもそんなことは分かりますよ。
Kodomo demo sonna koto wa wakarimasu yo.
(Even a child can understand that sort of thing.)

(b) ハイエナは腐った肉でも食べる。
Haiena wa kusatta niku demo taberu.
(Hyenas even eat rotten meat.)

(c) このパンは家(で)でも簡単に作れる。
Kono pan wa ie (de) demo kantan ni tsukureru.
(You can make this bread easily even at home.)

(d) 今からでも遅くないので、運動を始めたらどうですか。
Ima kara demo osokunai node, undō o hajimetara dō desu ka.
(It's not too late to start even now (lit., even from now), so why don't you start doing exercises?)

Notes

1. The particles *wa*, *ga* and *o* do not occur with *demo*, as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (b). The particles *de*, *e* and *ni* as the location/direction/time marker are optional before *demo*, as in Ex.(c), (1) and (2).

   (1) 必要なら外国(へ / に)でも行きます。
   *Hitsuyō nara gaikoku (**e** / **ni**) **demo** ikimasu.*
   (If necessary, I even go overseas.)

(2) 私たちは夜中(に)**でも**仕事をする。
*Watashi-tachi wa yonaka (**ni**) **demo** shigoto o suru.*
(We work even in the middle of the night.)

The particles *to*, *kara*, *made* and *ni* with the functions other than those mentioned above do not drop before *demo*, as in Ex.(d), (3) and (4).

D

(3) 私の娘は言葉が分からない人**とでも**すぐ友達になれる。
*Watashi no musume wa kotoba ga wakaranai hito **to demo** sugu tomodachi ni nareru.*
(My daughter can quickly make friends even with people she cannot converse with (lit., whose language is not comprehensible to her).)

(4) 田中先生は学生**にでも**丁寧に話す。
*Tanaka-sensei wa gakusei **ni demo** teinei ni hanasu.*
(Prof. Tanaka talks politely even to students.)

2. Question words followed by *demo* yields the following meanings:

だれでも	*dare **demo***	(no matter who it is; anyone)
何でも	*nan **demo***	(no matter what it is; anything)
いつでも	*itsu **demo***	(no matter when; any time)
どこでも	*doko **demo***	(no matter where it is; any place)
どれでも	*dore **demo***	(no matter which it is)
どんな Noun でも	*donna* Noun ***demo***	(no matter what kind of ~ it is; any kind of ~)

(5) あの図書館は**だれでも**入れます。
*Ano toshokan wa **dare demo** hairemasu.*
(Anyone can enter that library.)

(6) A: ミーティングはいつがいいですか。
Mītingu wa itsu ga iidesu ka.
(When is good (for you) to have a meeting?)

B: **いつでも**いいですよ。
***Itsu demo** iidesu yo.*
(Any time will be fine.)

(7) **どんな**仕事**でも**やります。
***Donna** shigoto **demo** yarimasu.*
(I'll do any kind of work.)

3. "N_1 *demo* N_2 *demo*" means "whether N_1 or N_2" or "both N_1 and N_2," as in (8) and (9).

(8) あの人は魚**でも**肉**でも**(何でも)食べます。
*Ano hito wa sakana **demo** niku **demo** (nan demo) tabemasu.*
(He eats anything, whether it be fish or meat.)

D

(9) この部屋から**でも**隣の部屋から**でも**海が見えます。
*Kono heya kara **demo** tonari no heya kara **demo** umi ga miemasu.*
(You can see the ocean from both this room and the next room.)

4. In some contexts, "N *demo*" means "~ or something," as in (10).

(10) コーヒー**でも**いかがですか。
*Kōhī **demo** ikaga desu ka.*
(Would you like coffee? (lit., How about coffee or something?))
In this case, *demo* does not mean "even." Here, *demo* is used to make the offer less direct.

dō どう *adv.*

an interrogative adverb that asks about the state of s.o./s.t. or the way of performing a cognitive activity — how

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		
新しいアパート *Atarashii apāto*	は *wa*	どう？ / どうですか。 *dō? / dō desu ka.*
(How's your new apartment?)		

(B)

Topic (direct object)			
この漢字 *Kono kanji*	は *wa*	どう *dō*	読む？/ 読みますか。 *yomu? / yomimasu ka.*
(How do you read this kanji?)			

D

Examples

(a) 仕事はどうですか。
Shigoto wa dō desu ka.
(How's your work?)

(b) この文をどう訳したらいいですか。
Kono bun o dō yakushitara iidesu ka.
(How should I translate this sentence?)

(c) コーヒーはどうですか。
Kōhī wa dō desu ka.
(Would you like coffee? / How about coffee?)

(d) A: パーティーはいつがいい？
Pātī wa itsu ga ii?
(When is good to have a party?)

B: 土曜日はどう？
Doyōbi wa dō?
(How about Saturday?)

Notes

1. The polite version of *dō* is *ikaga*. In casual speech *desu ka* is omitted after *dō* or *ikaga*.

   (1) お母さんは{いかが？/いかがですか。}
   O-kāsan wa {***ikaga?*** / ***ikaga desu ka.***}
   (How's your mother?)

   (2) 最近、仕事は{どう？/どうですか。}
   Saikin, shigoto wa {***dō?*** / ***dō desu ka.***}
   (How's your work these days?)

2. *Dō* and *ikaga* are also used to offer or suggest something, as in Exs.(c) and (d). In this case, *dō* or *ikaga* are asking about the state of the listener's mind regarding the offer or suggestion rather than about the state of what is being offered or suggested.

3. *Dō* is also used to ask the way of performing a cognitive activity such as interpretation, translation and thinking, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b). In this case, *ikaga* is not used.

4. *Omou* "think" and *suru* "do" are often used with *dō* to mean "what do you think?" and "what will you do? / what shall we do? / etc.," respectively. Note that in English *what* is used rather than *how*. (3)–(5) provide examples.

(3) 日本で仕事を探そうと思っているんですが、どう思いますか。
Nihon de shigoto o sagasō to omotte iru n desu ga, ***dō omoimasu*** *ka.*
(I'm thinking of looking for a job in Japan. What do you think?)

D

(4) [Looking at the listener with one of his hands in a bandage]
どうしたんですか。
Dō shita *n desu ka.*
(What happened? (lit., What did you do?))

(5) ミーティングをする部屋がありません。どうしましょうか。
Mītingu o suru heya ga arimasen. ***Dō shimashō*** *ka.*
(There's no room available for our meeting. What shall we do?)

5. *Dō* cannot be used to ask about a physical way of doing something. In this case, *dō yatte* "lit., by doing how" is used, as in (6).

(6) a. {どうやって / ×どう}英語を勉強しましたか。
{***Dō yatte*** / × ***Dō***} *eigo o benkyō-shimashita ka.*
(How did you study English?)

b. {どうやって / ×どう}ここまで来たの？
{***Dō yatte*** / × ***Dō***} *koko made kita no?*
(How did you come here (lit., up to this place)?)

6. *Dō shite* "lit., by doing what" can be used to ask the reason for something or the cause of something, as in (7) and (8).

(7) どうして日本語を勉強しているんですか。
Dō shite *nihongo o benkyō-shite iru n desu ka.*
(Why are you studying Japanese?)

(8) この木はどうして枯れたんですか。
Kono ki wa ***dō shite*** *kareta n desu ka.*
(Why did this tree die?)

e へ　　*prt.*

a particle that indicates the direction toward which s.o./s.t. moves

to; toward
【REL. *made*; *ni*[4]; *ni*[7]】

E

◆ Key Sentence

	Noun (direction)		
先週 *Senshū*	**京都** ***Kyōto***	へ *e*	行った / 行きました。 *itta / ikimashita.*
(I went to Kyoto last week.)			

Examples

(a) 私はいつも札幌のうちへ飛行機で帰ります。
Watashi wa itsumo Sapporo no uchi e hikōki de kaerimasu.
(I always go back home to Sapporo by plane.)

(b) 地震だったので急いで外へ出た。
Jishin datta node isoide soto e deta.
(It was an earthquake, so I quickly went outside.)

(c) 父へメールを出したが、まだ返事が来ない。
Chichi e mēru o dashita ga, mada henji ga konai.
(I sent an email to my father, but his reply hasn't come yet.)

【Related Expressions】

I. The particles *e*, *ni*[4](direct contact) and *ni*[7](direction) are used almost interchangeably except that only *e* is acceptable when *no* follows the particle, as in [3], because the combination of *ni* and *no* is ungrammatical. (⇒ ***ni***[4]; ***ni***[7])

[1] a. 机の上{に / へ}座った。
Tsukue no ue {***ni*** / ***e***} *suwatta.*
(I sat on the table.)

b. 黒板{に / へ}名前を書いた。
Kokuban {***ni*** / ***e***} *namae o kaita.*
(I wrote my name on the blackboard.)

[2] a. 先週京都{に / へ}行った。(= KS)
Senshū Kyōto {***ni*** / ***e***} *itta.*
(I went to Kyoto last week.)

b. 東京{に / へ}12時に着いた。
Tōkyō{***ni*** / ***e***} *jūni-ji ni tsuita.*
(I arrived in Tokyo at 12:00 o'clock.)

c. お風呂{に / へ}入った。
O-furo{***ni*** / ***e***} *haitta.*
(I took a bath. (lit., I got into a bath.))

E

[3] ニューヨーク{へ / ×に}の便はもうありません。
Nyūyōku{***e*** / ×***ni***} *no bin wa mō arimasen.*
(There isn't any flight to New York anymore.)

II. *Made*, *e* and *ni*[7] are used in similar contexts, but what comes under focus differs depending on the particle. That is, when "X *made*" is used, the course up to X is under focus, while when "X *e/ni*[7]" is used, the direction or the point of arrival is under focus. Thus, in [4], *e* and *ni*[7] are natural, but *made* is not. On the other hand, in [5], *made* is more natural than *e* and *ni*[7]. Similarly, in [6], *made* is natural but *e* and *ni*[7] are not. (*ni*[7] is also ungrammatical because of the combination of *ni* and *no*.) (⇒ ***made***; ***ni***[7])

[4] 東京{へ / に / ×まで}12時に着いた。(= [2b])
Tōkyō{***e*** / ***ni*** / ×***made***} *jūni-ji ni tsuita.*
(I arrived in Tokyo at 12:00 o'clock.)

[5] はるばる東京{まで / ?へ / ?に}来た。
Harubaru Tōkyō{***made*** / ?***e*** / ?***ni***} *kita.*
(I came all the way to Tokyo.)

[6] ここ{まで / ×へ / ×に}の道は悪かったでしょう。
Koko{***made*** / ×***e*** / ×***ni***} *no michi wa warukatta deshō.*
(Your way here must have been rough.)

ga[1] **が**[1] *prt.*

a particle that indicates the subject of a sentence

【REL. *wa*】

◆ Key Sentence

Subject		Predicate
雨 ***Ame***	が *ga*	降っている / います。 *futte iru / imasu.*
(It's raining. (lit., Rain is falling.))		

G

Examples

(a) この体育館にはプールがあります。
Kono taiikukan ni wa pūru ga arimasu.
(There is a pool in this gym.)

(b) あ、ワシが飛んでいる！
A, washi ga tonde iru!
(Look, an eagle is flying!)

(c) A: このレストランは何がおいしいですか。
Kono resutoran wa nani ga oishiidesu ka.
(What is good in this restaurant?)

B: パスタがおいしいです。
Pasuta ga oishiidesu.
(Pastas are good.)

Notes

1. *Ga* marks the subject of a sentence when the information expressed by the subject is first introduced in a discourse. The subject is an element of a sentence that indicates the agent of an action, someone/something that is in some state, etc. (⇒ **Grammatical Terms**: Subject)

2. Since an unknown thing/person cannot be presented as a topic, question words such as *nani* "what," *dare* "who" and *doko* "what place" cannot be marked by *wa*, as in Ex.(c)-A. (1) provides another example. (⇒ ***wa***)

   (1) 今晩だれ{**が** / ×**は**}来ますか。
   *Konban dare{**ga** / ×**wa**} kimasu ka.*
   (Who is coming tonight?)

3. Indefinite pronouns such as *nani-ka* "something" and *dare-ka* "someone," and *doko-ka* "some place" cannot be a topic, either; therefore, they cannot be marked by *wa*, as in (2). (⇒ **Question word *ka***)

(2) a. 何か{**が** / ×**は**}間違っています。
*Nani-ka{**ga** / ×**wa**} machigatte imasu.*
(Something is wrong.)

b. 困った時はだれか{**が** / ×**は**}助けてくれるでしょう。
*Komatta toki wa dare-ka{**ga** / ×**wa**} tasukete kureru deshō.*
(Someone will probably help you when you're in trouble.)

G

4. When the subject of a sentence is under focus, it is marked by *ga*. For example, in Ex.(c)-B, *pasuta* "pastas" is marked by *ga* because *pasuta* is the information under focus (i.e., this information is what the speaker is asking for. (3)-B provides another example.

(3) A: だれか{(**が**) / ×**は**}引っ越しを手伝ってくれますか。
*Dare-ka{(**ga**) / ×**wa**} hikkoshi o tetsudatte kuremasu ka.*
(Is someone going to help you with your move?)

B: はい、林さん{**が** / ×**は**}手伝ってくれます。
*Hai, Hayashi-san{**ga** / ×**wa**} tetsudatte kuremasu.*
(Yes, Hayashi-san is going to help me.)

Note that in (3)-A, *ga* is optional. (⇒ **Question word *ka***)

5. When X *ga* is in contrast with another element, *ga* is replaced by *wa*. Compare (4a) and (4b).

(4) a. この商店街には本屋**が**あります。
*Kono shōtengai ni wa hon-ya **ga** arimasu.*
(There is a bookstore in this shopping street.)

b. この商店街には本屋**は**ありますが、スーパー**は**ありません。
*Kono shōtengai ni wa hon-ya **wa** arimasu ga, sūpā **wa** arimasen.*
(There is a bookstore in this shopping street, but there is no supermarket.)

6. The subject in subordinate clauses is marked by *ga* unless it is a contrastive element, as seen in (5).

(5) a. 私はデビー{**が** / ×**は**}フランスへ行くことを知らなかった。
*Watashi wa Debī{**ga** / ×**wa**} Furansu e iku koto o shiranakatta.*
(I didn't know that Debbie was going to France.)

b. グレッグは、僕{**が** / ×**は**}アパートを出た時、まだ寝ていた。
*Gureggu wa, boku{**ga** / ×**wa**} apāto o deta toki, mada nete ita.*
(Greg was still in bed when I left my apartment.)

c. 私{**が** / ×**は**}昨日見た映画はドイツの映画だった。
Watashi{***ga*** / ×***wa***}*kinō mita eiga wa Doitsu no eiga datta.*
(The movie I saw yesterday was a German film.)

Note that topics are not presented in subordinate clauses.

7. In relative clauses, the subject may be marked by *no*, as in (6).
(⇒ **Relative clause**: Note 4)

(6) 私{**の** / **が**}昨日見た映画はドイツの映画だった。
Watashi{***no*** / ***ga***}*kinō mita eiga wa Doitsu no eiga datta.*
(The movie I saw yesterday was a German film.)

G

8. Some sentences involve the ~ *wa* ~ *ga* construction. In this case, the second noun is marked by *ga* unless it is a contrastive element. (7) provides some examples. (⇒ ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

(7) a. 僕はスポーツカー**が**欲しい。
*Boku wa supōtsukā **ga** hoshii.*
(I want a sports car. (lit., To me, a sports car is desirable.))

b. 加奈はスペイン語**が**分かる。
*Kana wa supeingo **ga** wakaru.*
(Kana understands Spanish. (lit., To Kana, Spanish is understandable.))

c. 父はジャズ**が**好きです。
*Chichi wa jazu **ga** suki desu.*
(My father likes jazz.)

d. ケイは足**が**長い。
*Kei wa ashi **ga** nagai.*
(Kay has long legs. (lit., Talking about Kay, her legs are long.))

9. Important rules concerning *ga* are as follows:

(i) *Ga* marks the subject when it is newly introduced in a discourse.
(ii) *Wa* replaces *ga* when the subject is a topic or a contrastive element.
(iii) Question words are always marked by *ga* when they are the subject of a sentence.
(iv) Indefinite pronouns (e.g., *nani-ka*, *dare-ka*, *doko-ka*) are marked by *ga* when they are the subject of a sentence. (In some situations, *ga* drops after indefinite pronouns.)
(v) If the subject of a sentence is under focus, it is marked by *ga*.
(vi) In subordinate clauses the subject is marked by *ga* unless it is a contrastive element.
(vii) The second noun of the "~ *wa* ~ *ga*" structure is marked by *ga* unless it is a contrastive element.

[Related Expression]

The topic marker *wa* is often confused with the subject marker *ga* (= *ga*[1]) because *wa* often marks the subject of a sentence. However, the functions of these two particles are fundamentally different. Some important points regarding *wa* and *ga*[1] are summarized below:

(i) *Ga*[1] marks the subject of a sentence, which is a grammatical element of the sentence while *wa* marks the topic of a sentence, which is an element of the discourse that contains of the sentence. The topic of a sentence is often the subject of the sentence, but can be an element other than the subject.

(ii) *Wa* is also used to mark a contrastive element, which is an extended use of topic marking.

(iii) When *wa* is attached to a subject (X) to indicate that X is the topic (or a contrastive element), it supersedes *ga*[1]; thus, *ga*[1] does not appear with *wa*.

(iv) When "X *wa*" is used, the speaker assumes that the referent of X is known to the listener, whereas when "X *ga*" is used, this is not the case. (For this reason, *wa* and *ga*[1] are sometimes called an "old information marker" and a "new information marker," respectively.)

[1], which is a typical opening in folktales, illustrates the last point in (iv).

[1] 昔々一人のおじいさん**が**住んでいました。おじいさん**は**とても貧乏でした。
*Mukashi-mukashi hitori no o-jīsan **ga** sunde imashita. O-jīsan **wa** totemo binbō deshita.*
(Once upon a time there lived an old man. He (lit., *the* old man) was very poor.)

Here, *o-jīsan* "old man" is the subject of both the first and second sentences, but the *o-jīsan* in the first sentence appears for the first time in the discourse. Because of this, the referent of this *o-jīsan* is not yet known to the listener; thus, it is marked by *ga*. On the other hand, the referent of the *o-jīsan* in the second sentence is already known to the listener and hence it is marked by *wa*.

(⇒ ***wa***; **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 2**. Topic)

ga² が² *conj.*

a conjunction that combines two sentences that do not depend on each other in meaning

but
【REL. *daga*; *dakedo*; *demo*; *keredomo*; *shikashi*】

◆ Key Sentence

Sentence 1		Sentence 2
ジェイソンはクラスに来た / 来ました *Jeison wa kurasu ni kita / kimashita*	が、 *ga,*	ジュリアは来なかった / 来ませんでした。 *Juria wa konakatta / kimasendeshita.*
(Jason came to the class, but Julia didn't (come).)		

Formation

(i) S_1 (polite) が、S_2 (polite)
ga

直樹は泳ぎましたが、浩は泳ぎませんでした。
Naoki wa oyogimashita ga, Hiroshi wa oyogimasendeshita.
(Naoki swam, but Hiroshi didn't (swim).)

(ii) S_1 (plain) が、S_2 (plain)
ga

私は外国語は得意だが、数学は苦手だ。
Watashi wa gaikokugo wa tokui da ga, sūgaku wa nigate da.
(I am strong at foreign languages, but not good at math.)

Examples

(a) 私はお茶は飲みますが、コーヒーは飲みません。
Watashi wa o-cha wa nomimasu ga, kōhī wa nomimasen.
(I drink tea, but don't drink coffee.)

(b) 旅行をしたいが、お金がない。
Ryokō o shi-tai ga, o-kane ga nai.
(I want to travel, but I don't have money.)

Notes

1. *Ga*², like *but* in English, combines two sentences that express contrastive ideas. (This is why *ga*² is referred to as a "disjunctive" conjunction.) However, this

conjunction is much weaker than *but* in that it is sometimes used simply to combine two sentences for stylistic reasons even if those two sentences do not represent contrastive ideas. For example, the *ga* in (1) is used simply as a transition word to connect two sentences.

(1) a. このアプリは私もよく使いますが、とても便利です。
*Kono apuri wa watashi mo yoku tsukaimasu **ga**, totemo benri desu.*
(I use this app often, too. It's very convenient.)

G

b. 石川さんは私のうちにも時々来ますが、おもしろい人ですね。
*Ishikawa-san wa watashi no uchi ni mo tokidoki kimasu **ga**, omoshiroi hito desu ne.*
(Ishikawa-san sometimes comes to my place, too. He is an interesting person, isn't he?)

2. *Ga*² is commonly used to present an introductory statement (= S_1) before asking a question, asking a favor, extending an invitation, etc. in S_2, as in (2).

(2) a. ムーアと申しますが、大山課長はいらっしゃいますか。
*Mūa to mōshimasu **ga**, Ōyama-kachō wa irasshaimasu ka.*
(I'm Moore. Is Section Chief Oyama in?)

b. みそ汁を作ったんですが、味をみてもらえますか。
*Misoshiru o tsukutta n desu **ga**, aji o mite moraemasu ka.*
(I made miso soup. Could you check the taste?)

c. 週末、パーティーをするんですが、来ませんか。
*Shūmatsu, pātī o suru n desu **ga**, kimasen ka.*
(We'll have a party this weekend. Wouldn't you like to come?)

3. When "S_1 *ga*, S_2" expresses contrastive ideas, the contrastive *wa* typically appears in S_1 and S_2, as in KS and Ex.(a). (⇒ ***wa***)

4. *Ga*² makes a sentence unit with the preceding sentence, not with the following sentence. Thus, it is wrong to place a comma before *ga* or to start a sentence with *ga*, as in (3) and (4).

(3) ×ジェイソンは来た、がジュリアは来なかった。
×*Jeison wa kita, **ga** Juria wa konakatta.*
(*Intended meaning*: Jason came, but Julia didn't come.)

(4) ×ジェイソンは来た。がジュリアは来なかった。
×*Jeison wa kita. **Ga** Juria wa konakatta.*
(*Intended meaning*: Jason came. But Julia didn't come.)

5. S_1 and S_2 in "S_1 *ga*, S_2" must be in the same form whether polite or plain because they are both independent clauses. (5) and (6), in which two different forms are mixed, are both stylistically awkward.

(5) ??直樹は泳ぎましたが、浩は泳がなかった。
?? *Naoki wa **oyogimashita** ga, Hiroshi wa **oyoganakatta**.*
(*Intended meaning*: Naoki swam but Hiroshi didn't (swim).)

(6) ?直樹は泳いだが、浩は泳ぎませんでした。
? *Naoki wa **oyoida** ga, Hiroshi wa **oyogimasendeshita**.*
(Naoki swam but Hiroshi didn't (swim).)

6. S_2 in "S_1 *ga*, S_2" is often omitted when it is understandable from the context and/or the situation, or when the speaker doesn't want to say it for some reason (e.g., the speaker is uncertain; it would be too direct, impolite, embarrassing, etc.). (7)–(9) provide examples.

(7) 大丈夫だと思いますが……
*Daijōbu da to omoimasu **ga**...*
(I think it's all right, but...)

(8) マイケルはよく勉強するんですが……
*Maikeru wa yoku benkyō-suru n desu **ga**...*
(Michael studies hard, but...)

(9) A: 今井課長はいらっしゃいますか。
Imai-kachō wa irasshaimasu ka.
(Is Section Chief Imai available?)

B: 今井は今、外出していますが……
*Imai wa ima, gaishutsu-shite imasu **ga**...*
(Imai is out now, but...)

7. The speaker tends to end sentences with *ga*[2] when he/she wants the listener to perform an action. In this case, *ga*[2] is usually used with *n desu*, as in (10). (⇒ ~ ***no da***)

(10) a. ちょっと聞きたいことがあるんですが。
*Chotto kiki-tai koto ga aru **n desu ga**.*
(I have a question to ask you.)

b. お願いがあるんですが。
*O-negai ga aru **n desu ga**.*
(I have a favor to ask of you.)

c. コピー機の調子が悪いんですが。
*Kopīki no chōshi ga warui **n desu ga**.*
(The copier is not working right. (Could you take a look?))

[Related Expressions]

I. *Daga*, *dakedo*, *demo* and *shikashi* express the same idea as *ga*. However, these conjunctions must occur at the beginning of a sentence, as in [1]. (See Note 4.)

[1] a. S_1。｛だが / だけど / でも / しかし｝、S_2。
S_1.｛*Daga* / *Dakedo* / *Demo* / *Shikashi*｝, S_2.

b. ×S_1｛だが / だけど / でも / しかし｝、S_2。
×S_1｛*daga* / *dakedo* / *demo* / *shikashi*｝, S_2.

In addition, *daga*, *dakedo*, *demo* and *shikashi* mean "but"; therefore, they cannot be used in the situations mentioned in Notes 1, 2, 6 and 7.

II. *Keredomo* and its variations (e.g., *keredo*, *kedo*) are similar to *ga* in meaning, and they can be used in the situations explained in Notes 1, 2, 6 and 7 as well. However, these conjunctions share more of the characteristics of subordinate conjunctions than the characteristics of coordinate conjunctions like *ga* in that in "S_1 *keredomo* S_2," plain forms are commonly used in S_1 regardless of the form of S_2. This fact indicates that the meaning of *keredomo* and its variations is closer to "although" than to "but."

Another difference between *keredomo* and *ga* is that *keredomo* can be used either after a sentence or at the beginning of a sentence, while *ga* can be used only after a sentence. (⇒ ***keredomo***)

～ garu　～がる　　*aux v. (Gr. 1)*

a person other than the speaker shows signs of being in a psychological or physiological state

show signs of

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		Adj(*i*)stem	
森さん *Mori-san*	は *wa*	スポーツカー *supōtsukā*	を *o*	**欲し** ***hoshi***	がっている / います。 *-gatte iru / imasu.*
(Mori-san wants a sports car. (lit., Mori-san is showing signs of wanting a sports car.))					

(B)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		V*masu*	Stem of *tai*	
ビリー *Birī*	は *wa*	ハンバーガー *hanbāgā*	を *o*	食べ ***tabe***	た *-ta*	がった / がりました。 *-gatta / garimashita.*
(Billy wanted to eat a hamburger. (lit., Billy showed signs of wanting to eat a hamburger.))						

Formation

(i) Adj(*i*)stemがる
-garu

うれしがる (s.o. shows signs of being happy)
ureshi-garu

(ii) Adj(*na*) がる
-garu

面倒がる (s.o. shows signs of being too lazy (to do s.t.))
mendō-garu

Examples

(a) スーザンは一人でさびしがっています。
Sūzan wa hitori de sabishi-gatte imasu.
(Susan feels lonely (lit., is showing signs of being lonely) by herself.)

(b) みんな暑がっているのでエアコンを入れましょう。
Minna atsu-gatte iru node eakon o iremashō.
(Everybody is hot (lit., is showing signs of being hot), so let's turn on the air conditioner.)

(c) 私の子供はジェットコースターに乗るのをこわがった。
Watashi no kodomo wa jettokōsutā ni noru no o kowa-gatta.
(My child was scared (lit., showed signs of being scared) of riding a roller coaster.)

(d) 父は入院を嫌がった。
Chichi wa nyūin o iya-gatta.
(My father refused to get hospitalized (lit., showed signs of not wanting to get hospitalized).)

Notes

1. The auxiliary verb *garu* is commonly used with adjectives that describe people's psychological or physiological states when the subject is a third person.

This is because in Japanese those adjectives cannot be used in "bare forms" when describing a third person's psychological or physiological states, which are not directly observable to the speaker at the moment of speech. (Psychological or physiological adjectives that commonly occur with *garu* are listed in Note 4.) It is also noted that when describing a third person's state at the moment of speech using *garu*, its *te*-form with the auxiliary *iru* (i.e., *gatte iru*) is used. Adjective + *gatte iru* literally means "(s.o.) is showing signs of being [Adjective]," as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b).

2. *Garu* conjugates as a Gr. 1 verb, as shown below.

欲しが *hoshi-ga*	らない	*ranai*	plain, non-past, negative
	ります	*rimasu*	polite, non-past
	る	*ru*	plain, non-past
	れば	*reba*	conditional
	ろう	*rō*	volitional
	って	*tte*	*te*-form
	った	*tta*	plain, past

3. As shown in KS(A), Exs.(c) and (d), the particle that marks the direct object is *o* when *hoshii* is used with *garu*. Note that when *garu* is absent, *ga* is used. Compare (1a) with (1b).

(1) a. 私はスポーツカー**が**欲しい。
*Watashi wa supōtsukā **ga** hoshii.*
(I want a sports car.)

b. 森さんはスポーツカー**を**欲しがっている。(= KS(A))
*Mori-san wa supōtsukā **o** hoshi-gatte iru.*
(Mori-san wants a sports car. (lit., Mori-san is showing signs of wanting a sports car.))

4. The following table provides psychological and physiological adjectives that are commonly used with *garu*.

Psychological			Physiological		
Adj(*i*)			Adj(*i*)		
欲しい (want) *hoshii*	→	欲しがる *hoshi-**garu***	痛い (painful) *itai*	→	痛がる *ita-**garu***
～たい (want to ~) *~tai*	→	～たがる *~ta-**garu***	苦しい (laboring) *kurushii*	→	苦しがる *kurushi-**garu***

うれしい (happy) → うれしがる *ureshii* *ureshi-**garu***	かゆい (itchy) → かゆがる *kayui* *kayu-**garu***
悲しい (sad) → 悲しがる *kanashii* *kanashi-**garu***	寒い (cold) → 寒がる *samui* *samu-**garu***
さびしい (lonely) → さびしがる *sabishii* *sabishi-**garu***	暑い (hot) → 暑がる *atsui* *atsu-**garu***
こわい (scary) → こわがる *kowai* *kowa-**garu***	くすぐったい (ticklish) *kusuguttai* → くすぐったがる *kusugutta-**garu***
うらやましい (envious) → うらやましがる *urayamashii* *urayamashi-**garu***	
Adj(*na*)	
迷惑 (annoying) → 迷惑がる *meiwaku* *meiwaku-**garu***	
嫌 (undesirable) → 嫌がる *iya* *iya-**garu***	
面倒 (too lazy) → 面倒がる *mendō* *mendō-**garu***	

5. There are several situations in which the adjectives in Note 4 are used without *garu* even when the subject is a third person.

(A) Past states

(2) 森さんは若い時、スポーツカーが**欲しかった**。
*Mori-san wa wakai toki, supōtsukā ga **hoshikatta**.*
(Mori-san wanted a sports car when he was young.)

(B) In conjecture sentences (⇒ ~ ***sō da***[2]; ~ ***rashii***)

(3) a. 由美さんはプレゼントをもらってうれし**そうです**。
*Yumi-san wa purezento o moratte ureshi-**sō desu**.*
(Having received a present, Yumi-san looks happy.)

b. あの人はクモがこわい**らしい**。
*Ano hito wa kumo ga kowai **rashii**.*
(It looks like he is afraid of spiders.)

(C) In hearsay sentences (⇒ ~ ***sō da***[1])

(4) 西田さんはフランスに留学したい**そうだ**。
*Nishida-san wa Furansu ni ryūgaku-shi-tai **sō da**.*
(I heard that Nishida-san wants to study in France.)

(D) Before *no da* (⇒ ~ ***no da***)

(5) リズさんは友達がいなくてさびしい**んです**。
*Rizu-san wa tomodachi ga inakute sabishii **n desu**.*
(Liz-san is lonely without any friends.)

6. A limited number of psychological/physiological adjectives can be used with *gari*, the *masu*-stem of *garu*, to mean "a person who often shows signs of being ~." The suffix *-ya* is sometimes attached to *gari*. (6) provide examples.

G

(6) a. さびしがり(屋) (a person who always feels lonely)
sabishi-gari(-ya)

b. こわがり(屋) (a person who is easily frightened)
kowa-gari(-ya)

c. 寒がり(屋) (a person who is sensitive to cold)
samu-gari(-ya)

d. 暑がり(屋) (a person who is sensitive to heat)
atsu-gari(-ya)

-goro ごろ *suf.*

approximately (with a specific point of time)

about; around
【REL. *kurai*】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			Noun (time)		
小林さん *Kobayashi-san*	は *wa*	朝 *asa*	**7時** ***shichi-ji***	ごろ *-goro*	うちを出る / 出ます。 *uchi o deru / demasu.*
(Kobayashi-san leaves home at about seven o'clock in the morning.)					

Formation

N (time) ごろ
-goro

3時ごろ (at about three o'clock)
san-ji-goro

Examples

(a) A: いつごろオーストラリアに行きますか。
Itsu-goro Ōsutoraria ni ikimasu ka.
(About when are you going to Australia?)

B: 来年の６月ごろ行きます。
Rainen no roku-gatsu-goro ikimasu.
(I'm going there around June of next year.)

(b) ６時ごろからリハーサルを始めたいと思います。
Roku-ji-goro kara rihāsaru o hajime-tai to omoimasu.
(I think we'd like to begin our rehearsal around six o'clock (lit., from around six o'clock).)

(c) A: 今朝は何時ごろまで寝ていたの？
Kesa wa nan-ji-goro made nete ita no?
(Until about what time were you asleep this morning?)

B: 10 時ごろまで。
Jū-ji-goro made.
(Until about ten.)

(d) 去年の今ごろは大雪でしたね。
Kyonen no ima-goro wa ōyuki deshita ne.
(About this time last year it snowed heavily, didn't it?)

(e) それはいつごろの写真ですか。
Sore wa itsu-goro no shashin desu ka.
(Around what time was that picture taken? (lit., A picture of about what time is it?))

Notes

1. Other particles such as *ga*, *ni*, *kara*, *made*, *wa* and *no* can follow *-goro*. *Ni* is optional, but is often dropped.

2. The use of *-goro* is natural when the speaker's memory is not clear about the time of an action or event. For example, *-goro* does not sound natural in (1), but it is quite natural in (2).

(1) ??去年の夏ごろ山中さんに会いました。
??*Kyonen no natsu-**goro** Yamanaka-san ni aimashita.*
(*Intended meaning*: I met Yamanaka-san around the summer of last year.)

(2) おととしの夏ごろ山中さんに会いました。
*Ototoshi no natsu-**goro** Yamanaka-san ni aimashita.*
(I met Yamanaka-san sometime during the summer of the year before last.)

【Related Expression】

-goro is different from *kurai* "about" in that the latter is used with specific quantity expressions. [1] and [2] contrast the two expressions.

[1] 僕は３時ごろに寝ました。
*Boku wa san-ji-**goro** ni nemashita.*
(I went to sleep at about three o'clock.)

G

[2] 僕は３時間くらい寝ました。
*Boku wa san-jikan **kurai** nemashita.*
(I slept about three hours.)

(⇒ ***kurai***)

goto ni ごとに *comp. prt.*

a compound particle that means "every"

(for, at, etc.) every; (for, at, etc.) each; at intervals of
【REL. ***mai-***; *oki ni*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Number + Counter		
３時間 ***San-jikan***	ごとに *goto ni*	この薬を飲んでください。 *kono kusuri o nonde kudasai.*
(Please take this medicine every three hours.)		

(B)

Noun		
グループ ***Gurūpu***	ごとに *goto ni*	違うトピックで発表をした / しました。 *chigau topikku de happyō o shita / shimashita.*
(Each group gave a presentation on a different topic.)		

Formation

(i) Number + Counter ごとに
goto ni

5分ごとに (every five minutes; at intervals of five minutes)
go-fun goto ni

1試合ごとに (in every game)
is-shiai goto ni

(ii) N ごとに
goto ni

チームごとに (for every/each team)
chīmu goto ni

Examples

(a) 私は3日ごとにテニスをしています。
Watashi wa mik-ka goto ni tenisu o shite imasu.
(I'm playing tennis every third day.)

(b) 5メートルごとに柱が立っている。
Go-mētoru goto ni hashira ga tatte iru.
(Pillars stand (in line) at intervals of five meters.)

(c) 1課ごとに試験があります。
Ik-ka goto ni shiken ga arimasu.
(There is a test after every lesson (lit., for every lesson).)

(d) 1学期ごとに先生がかわる。
Ichi-gakki goto ni sensei ga kawaru.
(Every semester teachers change.)

(e) 野口さんは会う人ごとにあいさつしている。
Noguchi-san wa au hito goto ni aisatsu-shite iru.
(Noguchi-san is greeting every person he meets.)

(f) 昔、正月には家ごとに門松を立てていました。
Mukashi, shōgatsu ni wa ie goto ni kadomatsu o tatete imashita.
(In the old days people put up pine tree decorations at every house on New Year's Day.)

Notes

1. When the number in "Number + Counter *goto ni*" is one, it may drop. Thus, Exs.(c) and (d) can be rephrased as (1) and (2), respectively.

(1) **課**ごとに試験があります。(cf. Ex.(c))
***Ka** goto ni shiken ga arimasu.*
(There is a test after every lesson (lit., for every lesson).)

(2) **学期**ごとに先生がかわる。(cf. Ex.(d))
***Gakki** goto ni sensei ga kawaru.*
(Every semester teachers change.)

G

2. To express the ideas of "every day," "every week," "every month," etc., if someone does something (or something happens) literally every day, every week, every month, etc., *mai-nichi*, *mai-shū*, *mai-tsuki*, etc. are used rather than *hi goto ni*, *shū goto ni*, *tsuki goto ni*, etc., as in (3) and (4).

(3) ジェーンは{**毎日** / ×**日ごとに**}泳いでいる。
*Jēn wa{**mai-nichi** / ×**hi goto ni**} oyoide iru.*
(Jane swims every day.)

(4) この島には{**毎年** / ×**年ごとに**}台風が来る。
*Kono shima ni wa{**mai-toshi** / ×**toshi goto ni**} taifū ga kuru.*
(Typhoons hit (lit., come to) this island every year.)

Hi goto ni, *shū goto ni*, *tsuki goto ni*, etc. can be used if they figuratively mean "every day," "every week," "every month," etc., as in (5) and (6).

(5) 子供は**日ごとに**成長する。
Kodomo wa hi goto ni seichō-suru.
(Children grow every day.)

(6) この町は**年ごとに**近代化してきた。
Kono machi wa toshi goto ni kindaika-shite kita.
(This town has been modernized every year.)

[Related Expression]

Oki ni also indicates that something is repeated at certain intervals. However, "X *oki ni*" means "skipping X"; therefore, *oki ni* and *goto ni* mean different things in situations like [1] and [2].

[1] a. この電車は２駅**おきに**止まる。
*Kono densha wa futa-eki **oki ni** tomaru.*
(This train stops at every third station. (= The train skips two stations before it stops at a station each time.))

b. この電車は２駅**ごとに**止まる。
*Kono densha wa futa-eki **goto ni** tomaru.*
(This train stops at every other station.)

[2] a. 私は２日**おきに**直子と会っている。
*Watashi wa futsu-ka **oki ni** Naoko to atte iru.*
(I'm seeing Naoko every third day. (= I skip two days before I see Naoko each time.))

b. 私は２日**ごとに**直子と会っている。
*Watashi wa futsu-ka **goto ni** Naoko to atte iru.*
(I'm seeing Naoko every other day.)

However, in situations like [3] and [4], *oki ni* and *goto ni* mean the same thing.

G

[3] a. ５メートル**おきに**柱が立っている。
*Go-mētoru **oki ni** hashira ga tatte iru.*
(Pillars stand (in line) at intervals of five meters. (= There are five meters between two adjacent pillars.))

b. ５メートル**ごとに**柱が立っている。(= Ex.(b))
*Go-mētoru **goto ni** hashira ga tatte iru.*
(Pillars stand (in line) at intervals of five meters.)

[4] a. 電車は５分**おきに**出る。
*Densha wa go-fun **oki ni** deru.*
(The train leaves every five minutes. (= There are five minutes between one train's departure time and the following train's departure time.))

b. 電車は５分**ごとに**出る。
*Densha wa go-fun **goto ni** deru.*
(The train leaves every five minutes.)

～ hajimeru ～始める *aux. v. (Gr. 2)*

S.o./s.t. begins to do s.t. or s.t. begins to happen.

begin to do s.t.
【REL. ~ ***dasu***; ***kuru***[2]】
(ANT. ~ *owaru*)

◆ Key Sentence

Noun (starting time)			V*masu*	
明日 *Ashita*	から *kara*	レポートを *repōto o*	書き ***kaki***	始める / 始めます。 *-hajimeru / hajimemasu.*
(I'll begin to write my term paper tomorrow (lit., starting tomorrow).)				

H

Formation

V*masu* 始める
-hajimeru

話し始める (s.o. begins to talk)
hanashi-hajimeru

食べ始める (s.o. begins to eat)
tabe-hajimeru

Examples

(a) 先週から村上春樹の『ノルウェイの森』を読み始めました。
Senshū kara Murakami Haruki no "Noruwei no Mori" o yomi-hajime-mashita.
(I began to read *Norwegian Wood* by Haruki Murakami last week.)

(b) 日本は 2005 年から人口が減り始めた。
Nihon wa nisen-go-nen kara jinkō ga heri-hajimeta.
(The population of Japan began to decrease in 2005.)

(c) いつから日記をつけ始めたんですか。
Itsu kara nikki o tsuke-hajimeta n desu ka.
(When did you start to keep a diary?)

Notes

1. When V*masu hajimeru* is used, the starting time is usually marked with *kara*[1] rather than *ni*[1]. (⇒ ***kara***[1]; ***ni***[1])

2. *Hajimeru* is normally attached to a continual verb (e.g., *yomu* "read," *kaku* "write" and *miru* "see"), as in (1).

(1) ハワードさんはクリスマスカードを**書き始めました**。[continual verb]
*Hawādo-san wa kurisumasu-kādo o **kaki-hajimemashita.***
(Haward-san began to write Christmas cards.)

However, if the subject represents a large number of people or things, the verb can be a momentary verb (e.g., *tsuku* "arrive," *kuru* "come" and *shinu* "die"), as in (2). (⇒ **Appendix 2**. Semantic Classification of Verbs)

(2) {人々 / ×絵里}が会場に**着き始めました**。[momentary verb]
{*Hitobito* / ×*Eri*} *ga kaijō ni **tsuki-hajimemashita.***
({People / ×Eri} began arriving at the venue.)

H

hazu はず *n.*

a dependent noun that expresses the speaker's expectation that s.t. will take place or took place or that s.o./s.t. is or was in some state

I expect that ~; be supposed to do s.t.; should; must; I'm sure that ~; I believe that ~
【REL. ~ *ni chigai nai*】

◆ Key Sentence

Splain*	
クラークさんもパーティーに行く *Kurāku-san mo pātī ni iku*	はずだ / です。 *hazu da / desu.*
(I expect that Clark-san will go to the party, too.)	

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *no*, respectively.

Formation

(i) {Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain} はずだ
hazu da

{話す / 話した} はずだ (I expect that s.o. {will talk / talks / talked})
{*hanasu / hanashita*} *hazu da*

{高い / 高かった} はずだ (s.t. should {be / have been} expensive)
{*takai / takakatta*} *hazu da*

(ii) Adj(*na*) {な / だった} はずだ
{*na / datta*} *hazu da*

静か{な / だった}はずだ (s.t. should {be / have been} quiet)
shizuka{na / datta} hazu da

(iii) N{の / だった}はずだ
{no / datta} hazu da

先生{の / だった}はずだ (s.o. should {be / have been} a teacher)
sensei{no / datta} hazu da

Examples

(a) 岡野先生はサンドラを知っているはずです。
Okano-sensei wa Sandora o shitte iru hazu desu.
(Prof. Okano should know Sandra.)

(b) あのギターは高かったはずだ。
Ano gitā wa takakatta hazu da.
(That guitar must have been expensive.)

(c) その部屋は今朝掃除したはずだから、きれいなはずです。
Sono heya wa kesa sōji-shita hazu da kara, kirei na hazu desu.
(That room should have been cleaned (lit., (Someone) must have cleaned that room) this morning, so it must be clean.)

(d) 宮田さんの子供は今、中学生のはずだ。
Miyata-san no kodomo wa ima, chūgakusei no hazu da.
(Miyata-san's child must be a junior high student now.)

(e) カールソンさんの最初の仕事はエンジニアだったはずです。
Kāruson-san no saisho no shigoto wa enjinia datta hazu desu.
(I'm sure that Carlson-san's first job was an engineer.)

Notes

1. "S *hazu*" expresses the speaker's expectation, not in the sense of hoping or looking forward to something, but in the sense that the proposition expressed by S should be true or come true. Thus, when the speaker uses *hazu*, he is not merely guessing, but stating a proposition based on reliable information or knowledge. (⇒ ~ ***darō***; ~ ***rashii***; ~ ***sō da***[2]; ~ ***yō da***[1])

2. *Hazu* is not used for the first person's future/habitual action.

(1) a. ×私は今晩友達と一緒に晩ご飯を食べる**はず**です。
×*Watashi wa konban tomodachi to issho ni ban-gohan o taberu* ***hazu*** *desu.*
(*Intended meaning*: I'm supposed to have dinner with my friend this evening.)

b. ×私は毎週トイレの掃除をするはずだ。
×*Watashi wa mai-shū toire no sōji o suru* ***hazu*** *da.*
(*Intended meaning*: I'm supposed to clean the bathroom every week.)

In these situations, *koto ni natte iru* is used, as in (2a) and (2b).
(⇒ ~ ***koto ni naru***)

(2) a. 私は今晩友達と一緒に晩ご飯を食べることになっています。
Watashi wa konban tomodachi to issho ni ban-gohan o taberu ***koto ni natte imasu.***
(I'm supposed to have dinner with my friend this evening.)

b. 私は毎週トイレの掃除をすることになっている。
Watashi wa mai-shū toire no sōji o suru ***koto ni natte iru.***
(I'm supposed to clean the bathroom every week.)

3. *Hazu datta* can be used when someone was supposed to do something but he/she didn't do that or something was supposed to happen but it didn't happen. In this case, the subject can be the first person, as in (3a).

(3) a. 今日山村さんと会うはずだったが、風邪を引いて会えなかった。
Kyō Yamamura-san to au ***hazu datta*** *ga, kaze o hiite aenakatta.*
(I was supposed to meet Yamamura-san today, but I caught a cold and couldn't.)

b. 新幹線は 11 時に東京駅に着くはずだったが、大雪のため 1 時間ほど遅れた。
Shinkansen wa jūichi-ji ni Tōkyō-eki ni tsuku ***hazu datta*** *ga, ōyuki no tame ichi-jikan hodo okureta.*
(The Shinkansen train was supposed to arrive at Tokyo Station at 11 o'clock, but due to the snowstorm, it arrived about one hour later.)

4. *Hazu* is a dependent noun and cannot be used alone. It is always modified by a sentence or a demonstrative such as *sono* "that," *sonna* "like that" and *konna* "like this." Demonstrative + *hazu* is used when a proposition is known to the listener from the context, as in (4).

(4) A: マーサも来ますか。
Māsa mo kimasu ka.
(Is Martha coming, too?)

B: はい、そのはずです。
Hai, ***sono hazu*** *desu.*
(Yes, I expect so.)

5. Negative expectations can be expressed in two ways:

(A) S (negative) *hazu da*

(5) クラークさんはパーティーに行か**ないはずだ**。
*Kurāku-san wa pātī ni ika**nai hazu da**.*
(I don't expect that Clark-san is going to the party. (lit., I expect that Clark-san is not going to the party.))

(B) S *hazu*{*ga / wa*}*nai*

(6) クラークさんはパーティーに行く**はず**{**が / は**}**ない**。
*Kurāku-san wa pātī ni iku **hazu**{**ga / wa**}**nai**.*
(It is improbable that Clark-san will go to the party. (lit., I have no expectation that Clark-san is going to the party.))

The assertion in (6) is stronger than that in (5).

6. "S *hazu*" can also be used when the speaker has discovered the reason for an event or a state. In this case, *hazu* means "No wonder ~." and can be paraphrased as "S *wake da*," as in (7). (⇒ ~ ***wake da***)

(7) 日本語が上手な{**はず / わけ**}だ。彼女は日本で生まれて日本で育ったんだ。
*Nihongo ga jōzu na{**hazu / wake**}da. Kanojo wa Nihon de umarete Nihon de sodatta n da.*
(No wonder she speaks good Japanese. She was born in Japan and grew up in Japan.)

7. When "S *hazu*" modifies a noun, that is, when "S *hazu*" is used as a relative clause, *no* follows, as in (8). (⇒ **Relative clause**)

(8) 橋本さんに出した**はずの**手紙が床に落ちていた。
*Hashimoto-san ni dashita **hazu no** tegami ga yuka ni ochite ita.*
(I found the letter that was supposed to be sent to Hashimoto-san on the floor.)

[Related Expression]

S *ni chigai nai* is also used when the speaker believes that the proposition represented in S should be true or come true. However, unlike S *hazu da*, S *ni chigai nai* is used when the speaker's belief is usually not based on solid information or knowledge. Thus, for example, if the speaker sees someone on the street and just believes that she is a model, *ni chigai nai* is used, as in [1].
(⇒ ~ ***ni chigai nai***)

[1] あの人はモデル**にちがいない**。
*Ano hito wa moderu **ni chigai nai**.*
(She (lit., That person) must be a model.)

However, if the speaker has some information about the person that makes the speaker believe that the person is a model, *hazu da* is used, as in [2].

[2] あの人はモデルの**はずだ**。
Ano hito wa moderu ***no hazu da.***
(She must be a model.)

In the following situations, S *hazu da* can be used, but S *ni chigai nai* cannot.

(A) When the speaker believes that S is true based on his/her memory:

[3] a. 私の記憶が正しければ、小西さんの子供は今、大学４年生｛**のはずだ / ??にちがいない**｝。
Watashi no kioku ga tadashikereba, Konishi-san no kodomo wa ima, daigaku yo-nensei ｛***no hazu da*** / ??***ni chigai nai***｝.
(If my memory is correct, Konishi-san's child should be a senior at college now.)

b. あの地震があったのは、たしか５年前だった｛**はずだ / ×にちがいない**｝。
Ano jishin ga atta no wa, tashika go-nen mae datta ｛***hazu da*** / ×***ni chigai nai***｝.
(If I remember correctly, that earthquake must have occurred five years ago.)

(B) When S *hazu da* expresses a scheduled event or action:

[4] a. 村井さんは９時前に来る｛**はずです / ×にちがいありません**｝。
Murai-san wa ku-ji mae ni kuru ｛***hazu desu*** / ×***ni chigai arimasen***｝.
(Murai-san is supposed to come before nine.)

b. 学会はハワイである｛**はずだった / ×にちがいなかった**｝が、オンラインに変わった。
Gakkai wa Hawai de aru ｛***hazu datta*** / ×***ni chigai nakatta***｝ *ga, onrain ni kawatta.*
(The academic conference was supposed to be held in Hawaii, but it was changed to an online conference.)

(C) When the speaker has discovered the reason for an event or a state:

[5] a. 日本語が上手｛**なはずだ / ×にちがいない**｝。彼女は日本で生まれて日本で育ったんだ。(= (7) in Note 6)
Nihongo ga jōzu ｛***na hazu da*** / ×***ni chigai nai***｝. *Kanojo wa Nihon de umarete Nihon de sodatta n da.*
(No wonder she speaks good Japanese. She was born in Japan and grew up in Japan.)

b. 郵便が来ない{**はずだ / ×にちがいない**}。今日は祝日だ。
Yūbin ga konai {***hazu da*** / × ***ni chigai nai***}. *Kyō wa shukujitsu da.*
(No wonder there's no mail (today). Today is a holiday.)

hodo ほど *prt.*

H

a particle that indicates an extent or a degree to which s.o./s.t. does s.t. or is in some state

to the extent of; to the extent that ~; (not as) ~ as ~; about
【REL. *bakari*; *kurai*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun		Predicate (negative)
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	**カルロス** ***Karurosu***	ほど *hodo*	強くない / 強くないです。 *tsuyokunai / tsuyokunaidesu.*
(I'm not as strong as Carlos. (lit., I'm not strong to Carlos's extent.))				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Splain*		Predicate
この仕事 *Kono shigoto*	は *wa*	**子供でもできる** *kodomo demo dekiru*	ほど *hodo*	やさしい / やさしいです。 *yasashii / yasashiidesu.*
(This job is so easy that even a child can do it. (lit., This job is easy to the extent that even a child can do it.))				

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *de aru*, respectively.

Formation

(i) N ほど
hodo

アリスほど (as Alice)
Arisu hodo

(ii) Demonstrative pronoun ほど
hodo

それほど (to that extent)
sore hodo

(iii) Splain ほど
hodo

家が倒れるほど (to the extent that houses would fall down)
ie ga taoreru hodo

Examples

(a) 私はチャンさんほどきれいに漢字が書けません。
Watashi wa Chan-san hodo kirei ni kanji ga kakemasen.
(I can't write kanji characters as beautifully as Chan-san can.)

(b) ジェニファーほどよく勉強する学生はいない。
Jenifā hodo yoku benkyō-suru gakusei wa inai.
(There is no student who studies as hard as Jennifer.)

(c) 私は吉川さんがあれほどピアノが弾けるとは思わなかった。
Watashi wa Yoshikawa-san ga are hodo piano ga hikeru to wa omowana-katta.
(I didn't expect that Yoshikawa-san could play the piano that well (lit., to that extent).)

(d) プライスさんの日本語は太田先生も外国人だと気づかなかったほど上手です。
Puraisu-san no nihongo wa Ōta-sensei mo gaikokujin da to kizukanakatta hodo jōzu desu.
(Price-san's Japanese is so good that even Prof. Ota didn't notice he was a foreigner.)

Notes

1. When *hodo* is preceded by a noun, the predicate must be negative, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b). The following sentences are ungrammatical because the predicates are not negative.

(1) a. ×私は孝史ほど強い。
× *Watashi wa Takashi* ***hodo*** *tsuyoi.*
(*Intended meaning*: I am as strong as Takashi.)

b. ×サッカーほどおもしろいスポーツはたくさんある。
× *Sakkā* ***hodo*** *omoshiroi supōtsu wa takusan aru.*
(*Intended meaning*: There are many sports that are as interesting as soccer.)

The correct ways of saying (1a) and (1b) are (2a) and (2b), respectively.

(2) a. 私は孝史と同じくらい強い。
Watashi wa Takashi ***to onaji kurai*** *tsuyoi.*

b. サッカー**と同じくらい**おもしろいスポーツはたくさんある。
***Sakkā to onaji kurai** omoshiroi supōtsu wa takusan aru.*

If a sentence or a demonstrative pronoun modifies *hodo*, however, the predicate of the main clause can be either affirmative or negative, as in KS(B), Exs.(c), (d), and (3).

(3) a. その仕事は**それほど**やさしくない。
***Sono shigoto wa sore hodo** yasashikunai.*
(That job is not that easy (lit., not easy to that extent).)

b. その仕事は**それほど**やさしいんですか。
***Sono shigoto wa sore hodo** yasashii n desu ka.*
(Is that job that easy?)

2. When *hodo* is used with a quantifier, it means "about," as in (4).

(4) １時間**ほど**ジムで運動をしました。
*Ichi-jikan **hodo** jimu de undō o shimashita.*
(I worked out at the gym for about an hour.)

【Related Expressions】

Bakari and *kurai* also mean "about" when they are used with a number and a counter. The difference among the three is that *bakari* and *hodo* can be used to mean an exact number or amount of something, whereas *kurai* cannot, as seen in [1]. Here, the speaker does not mean to say that he/she wants about three apples. *Bakari/hodo* is used simply because it is a common practice in Japanese to avoid directness in situations like this.

[1] そのりんごを３つ{**ばかり** / **ほど** / ×**くらい**}ください。
*Sono ringo o mit-tsu {**bakari** / **hodo** / ×**kurai**} kudasai.*
(Please give me three of those apples.)

Another difference between *bakari*, *kurai* and *hodo* is that the first two can be used with *sukoshi* "a little" and *chotto* "a little" but *hodo* cannot, as in [2].

[2] 中国語が{少し / ちょっと}{**ばかり** / **くらい** / ×**ほど**}話せても、この仕事はできません。
*Chūgokugo ga {sukoshi / chotto} {**bakari** / **kurai** / ×**hodo**} hanasete-mo, kono shigoto wa dekimasen.*
(You cannot perform this job even if you can speak some Chinese.)

[2] may be used to deny a non-native Chinese speaker's claim that he/she is capable of doing a certain job because he/she can speak Chinese. In this case, *sukoshi* doesn't literally mean "a little," as the English translation indicates.

(⇒ ***bakari***; ***kurai***)

～ hō ga ii ～ほうがいい *phr.*

It is strongly suggested that s.o. do s.t.

It would be better if; better do s.t.; should
【REL. ***~tara dō desu ka***】

◆ Key Sentence

	Vplain・past		
病院に *Byōin ni*	行った ***itta***	ほうがいい / いいです *hō ga ii / iidesu*	よ。 *yo.*
(You'd better go to the hospital.)			

Formation

Vplain·past ほうがいい
hō ga ii

話したほうがいい (had better talk)
hanashita hō ga ii

食べたほうがいい (had better eat)
tabeta hō ga ii

Examples

(a) 野菜も食べたほうがいいよ。
Yasai mo tabeta hō ga ii yo.
(You'd better eat vegetables, too.)

(b) 弁護士に相談したほうがいいでしょうか。
Bengoshi ni sōdan-shita hō ga ii deshō ka.
(Would it be better to consult a lawyer?)

(c) 和美はもっと英語を勉強したほうがいいね。
Kazumi wa motto eigo o benkyō-shita hō ga ii ne.
(Kazumi should study English harder.)

Notes

1. Vplain·past *hō ga ii*, which is an idiomatic expression that involves the comparative structure, expresses a strong suggestion. (⇒ ~ ***hō ga*** ~ ***yori***)

2. The second person subject in declarative sentences and the first person subject in interrogative sentences are usually omitted, as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b). When the subject is the third person, it is usually not omitted, as in Ex.(c).

3. In ~ *hō ga ii*, Vplain·non-past can also be used in place of Vplain·past, as in (1).

(1) 野菜も｛**食べた** / **食べる**｝ほうがいいよ。(cf. Ex.(a))
Yasai mo｛***tabeta*** / ***taberu***｝*hō ga ii yo.*
(You'd better eat vegetables, too.)

The meanings of the two versions are almost the same except that the past tense version expresses a stronger suggestion than the non-past tense version. Thus, in (2), the past tense sounds more natural.

(2) 今すぐ病院に｛**行った** / ??**行く**｝ほうがいいよ。
Ima sugu byōin ni｛***itta*** / ??***iku***｝*hō ga ii yo.*
(You should go to the hospital right away.)

4. "Had better not do s.t." is expressed by *~nai hō ga ii*, as in (3).

(3) あまりコーヒーを**飲まない**ほうがいいですよ。
Amari kōhī o ***nomanai*** *hō ga iidesu yo.*
(You'd better not drink too much coffee.)

Note that the verb must be in the non-past negative form in this expression. The following sentence is ungrammatical.

(4) ×あまりコーヒーを**飲まなかった**ほうがいいですよ。
× *Amari kōhī o* ***nomanakatta*** *hō ga iidesu yo.*
(*Intended meaning*: You'd better not drink too much coffee.)

5. Vplain·past *hō ga ii* expresses a strong suggestion. The tone of this expression can be softened by adding *to omou* "think that," as in (5).

(5) そのプロジェクトはやめたほうがいい**と思います**。
Sono purojekuto wa yameta hō ga ii ***to omoimasu.***
(I think it would be better if you stop that project.)

~ hō ga ~ yori　~ほうが~より　*phr.*

In comparing two entities, one is in some state or does s.t. more than the other.

be more (Adj.) than; do s.t. more (Adv.) than ~ do
【REL. *yori*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Noun 1			Noun 2		Adjective
木原さん ***Kihara-san***	の *no*	ほうが *hō ga*	私 ***watashi***	より *yori*	若い / 若いです。 *wakai / wakaidesu.*
(Kihara-san is younger than I am.)					

(B)

Noun 1			Noun 2		Adverb	Verb
私 ***Watashi***	の *no*	ほうが *hō ga*	上田さん ***Ueda-san***	より *yori*	よく *yoku*	食べる / 食べます。 *taberu / tabemasu.*
(I eat more than Ueda-san does.)						

(C)

Sentence 1 (plain)		Sentence 2 (plain, non-past)		Adjective
車で行く ***Kuruma de iku***	ほうが *hō ga*	バスで行く ***basu de iku***	より *yori*	安い / 安いです。 *yasui / yasuidesu.*
(Going by car is cheaper than going by bus.)				

Formation

KSs(A) and (B):

N のほうが N より
no hō ga *yori*

先生のほうが学生より (teachers { are / do s.t. } more ~ than students)
sensei no hō ga gakusei yori

KS(C):

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } ほうが { Vplain·non-past / Adj(*i*)plain·non-past } より
hō ga *yori*

{ 話す / 話した } ほうが聞くより ({ talking / having talked } is more ~ than hearing)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *hō ga kiku yori*

{ 高い / 高かった } ほうが安いより ({ being / having been } expensive is more ~ than being cheap)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *hō ga yasui yori*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } ほうが Adj(*na*) な(の) より
{ *na / datta* } *hō ga* *na (no) yori*

便利{な / だった}ほうが不便なのより　({being / having been} convenient
benri{*na* / *datta*} *hō ga fuben na no yori*　is more ~ than being inconvenient)

(See Note 5 for the form before *yori*.)

(iii) N{の / だった}ほうが N より
{*no* / *datta*} *hō ga* *yori*

先生{の / だった}ほうが学生より　({being / having been} a teacher
sensei{*no* / *datta*} *hō ga gakusei yori*　is more ~ than being a student)

Examples

(a) 私はこのカメラのほうがあのカメラより好きです。
Watashi wa kono kamera no hō ga ano kamera yori suki desu.
(I like this camera better than that camera.)

(b) ジェフのほうが私より速く走れる。
Jefu no hō ga watashi yori hayaku hashireru.
(Jeff can run faster than I can.)

(c) 発表は英語でするより日本語でするほうがいいでしょう。
Happyō wa eigo de suru yori nihongo de suru hō ga ii deshō.
(It's probably better to give a presentation in Japanese than to do so in English.)

(d) もちろん、家賃は高いより安いほうがうれしいです。
Mochiron, yachin wa takai yori yasui hō ga ureshiidesu.
(Of course, I'm happier when the rent is cheap than when it is expensive.)

(e) 子供は元気なほうが静かな(の)より安心だ。
Kodomo wa genki na hō ga shizuka na (no) yori anshin da.
(Talking about children, you feel more at ease when they are lively than when they are quiet.)

(f) 火曜日が祝日より月曜日が祝日のほうがうれしいです。
Kayōbi ga shukujitsu yori getsuyōbi ga shukujitsu no hō ga ureshiidesu.
(A holiday on Monday would make me happier than a holiday on Tuesday.)

Notes

1. In Japanese there are no comparative forms of adjectives and adverbs. The idea of comparison is expressed by the "X *no hō ga* Y *yori*" or "Y *yori* X *no hō ga*" pattern. The word order is relatively free as seen in the example sentences above. However, when X is under focus, "Y *yori* X *no hō ga*" is more natural. Yuka's and Mari's lines in (1) are examples of this case.

(1) 亜紀：　私はネコが好きです。由香さんは？
Aki:　*Watashi wa neko ga suki desu. Yuka-san wa?*
(I like cats. What about you, Yuka-san?)

由香： 私は{ネコよりイヌのほうが / ?イヌのほうがネコより}好きです。真里さんは？

Yuka: *Watashi wa{**neko yori inu no hō ga** / ?**inu no hō ga neko yori**} suki desu. Mari-san wa?*
(I like dogs more than cats. What about you, Mari-san?)

真里： 私は{イヌよりネコのほうが / ?ネコのほうがイヌより}好きです。

Mari: *Watashi wa{**inu yori neko no hō ga** / ?**neko no hō ga inu yori**} suki desu.*
(I like cats more than dogs.)

2. The predicate that follow the "X *no hō ga* Y *yori*" (or "Y *yori* X *no hō ga*") pattern is often an adjective, as in KSs(A) and (C), or an adverb followed by a verb, as in KS(B). However, the predicate can also be a sentence, as in (2).

(2) 日本よりこの国のほうが**食べ物が安いです**。
*Nihon yori kono kuni no hō ga **tabemono ga yasuidesu**.*
(Foods are cheaper in this country than in Japan.)

3. "Y *yori*" may be omitted if it is clear from the context or the situation, as in (3).

(3) A: イアンとアダムとどちらが強いですか。
Ian to Adamu to dochira ga tsuyoidesu ka.
(Who is stronger, Ian or Adam?)

B: (**アダムより**)イアンのほうが強いです。
***(Adamu yori)** Ian no hō ga tsuyoidesu.*
(Ian is stronger (than Adam).)

4. In the "S_1 *hō ga* S_2 *yori*" (or "S_2 *yori* S_1 *hō ga*") pattern (i.e, KS(C)), S_1 can be either non-past or past, but S_2 is always non-past regardless of the tense of S_1 and that of the main clause, as in (4) and (5). In (4), where the whole sentence is about a present or future action, the use of the past form *hanashita* sounds more hypothetical than the non-past form *hanasu*.

(4) あなたが**話す**より私が{**話す / 話した**}ほうがいいでしょう。
*Anata ga **hanasu** yori watashi ga{**hanasu** / **hanashita**} hō ga ii deshō.*
(It would probably be better if I talk rather than if you talk.)

In (5), the whole sentence is about a past action, but the past form cannot be used before *yori*. Note that (5) is a counterfactual sentence.

(5) あなたが{**話す** / ×**話した**}より私が**話した**ほうがよかった。
*Anata ga{**hanasu** / ×**hanashita**} yori watashi ga **hanashita** hō ga yokatta.*
(It would have been better if I had talked rather than you.)

5. X *no hō* is a noun phrase; therefore, it can also be a direct object, an indirect object, etc. However, when it is used for something other than the subject, the "Y *yori* X *no hō* (*o*, *ni*, etc.)" order is preferable, as in (6).

(6) a. 私は小説よりマンガのほうをよく読む。
Watashi wa shōsetsu yori manga no hō o yoku yomu.
(I read manga more often than novels.)

b. 学生は井川先生より大村先生のほうによく質問に行く。
Gakusei wa Igawa-sensei yori Ōmura-sensei no hō ni yoku shitsu-mon ni iku.
(Students go to Prof. Omura to ask questions more often than to Prof. Igawa.)

6. Basically, *yori* is a particle that is attached to nouns. However, in the "X *hō ga* Y *yori*" construction, *yori* can be attached to verbs and adjectives directly, except when it is used with *na*-adjectives. When *na*-adjectives precede *yori* in this construction, "Adj(*na*) *na no*" or "Adj(*na*) *na*" is used, as in Ex.(e). Here, "Adj(*na*) *na*" is the noun-modification form and *no* is a nominalizer.

(⇒ ***no***[3]; ***yori***)

【Related Expression】

The idea of comparison can be expressed by the "X *wa* Y *yori*" pattern, too. However, when this pattern is used, X must have already been established as a topic. Thus, in a context like [1], the "X *wa* Y *yori*" pattern cannot be used.

(⇒ ***yori***)

[1] A: イアンとアダムとどちらが強いですか。
Ian to Adamu to dochira ga tsuyoidesu ka.
(Who is stronger, Ian or Adam?)

B: イアン{**のほうが / ×は**}（アダムより）強いです。
Ian {***no hō ga*** */ ×* ***wa***} *(Adamu yori) tsuyoidesu.*
(Ian is stronger (than Adam).)

On the other hand, in a context like [2], the "X *wa* Y *yori*" pattern is preferable because X has already been established as a topic in the previous sentence.

[2] イアンはとても強いです。彼{**は / ??のほうが**}アダムより強いです。
Ian wa totemo tsuyoidesu. Kare {***wa*** */* ??***no hō ga***} *Adamu yori tsuyoi-desu.*
(Ian is very strong. He is stronger than Adam.)

hoshii[1] 欲しい[1] *adj. (i)*

S.t. is desired by s.o.

want (s.t.)
【REL. ~ ***tai***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (1st person subject)		Noun (desired object)		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	車 *kuruma*	が *ga*	欲しい / 欲しいです。 *hoshii / hoshiidesu.*
(I want a car.)				

(B)

Topic (3rd person subject)		Noun (desired object)		
弟 *Otōto*	は *wa*	新しい自転車 *atarashii jitensha*	を *o*	欲しがっている / います。 *hoshi-gatte iru / imasu.*
(My little brother wants a new bike.)				

Examples

(a) A: あなたは今何が欲しいですか。
Anata wa ima nani ga hoshiidesu ka.
(What do you want now?)

B: 私は日本人の友達が欲しいです。
Watashi wa nihonjin no tomodachi ga hoshiidesu.
(I want a Japanese friend.)

(b) 私は宝石はあまり欲しくないです。
Watashi wa hōseki wa amari hoshikunaidesu.
(I don't want jewelry so much.)

(c) テレサはグランドピアノを欲しがっている。
Teresa wa gurando-piano o hoshi-gatte iru.
(Teresa wants a grand piano.)

Notes

1. The *i*-adjective *hoshii* expresses a person's desire for some object. Like other adjectives and verbs that indicate one's ability, need and preference (e.g., *jōzu*

"be good at," *dekiru* "can do/play/speak," *iru* "need," *suki* "like," etc.), *hoshii* takes the ~ *wa* ~ *ga* construction, where the person who desires something is marked by *wa* and the desired object by *ga*. (⇒ ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

2. In the "X *wa* Y *ga hoshii*" construction, X is usually the first person in declarative sentences and the second person in interrogative sentences, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b). The third person's desire is usually expressed by *hoshi-gatte iru* (= [the stem of *hoshii*] + [the *te*-form of the auxiliary verb *garu*] + [the auxiliary verb *iru* (= *iru*[2])], as in KS(B) and Ex.(c). The literal meaning of *hoshi-gatte iru* is "be showing signs of wanting (s.t.)." It is noted that when *hoshi-gatte iru* is used, the desired object is marked by *o* rather than *ga*. (⇒ ~ ***garu***)

3. However, *hoshii* can be used for a third person in the following situations.

(1) [When used in the past tense]

ゲイリーはいいステレオが欲しかった。
*Geirī wa ii sutereo ga hoshi**katta**.*
(Gary wanted a good stereo set.)

(2) [In indirect speech and hearsay sentences] (⇒ ~ ***to iu***[1]; ~ ***sō da***[1])

a. ジョイスはピアノが欲しいと言っている。
*Joisu wa piano ga hoshii **to itte iru**.*
(Joyce says she wants a piano.)

b. オスカーもピアノが欲しいそうだ。
*Osukā mo piano ga hoshii **sō da**.*
(I heard that Oscar also wants a piano.)

(3) [In *no da* sentences] (⇒ ~ ***no da***)

パメラはイヤリングが欲しいんです。
*Pamera wa iyaringu ga hoshii **n desu**.*
((The explanation is that) Pamela wants a pair of earrings.)

(4) [In conjecture sentences] (⇒ ~ ***hazu***; ~ ***ni chigai nai***; ~ ***rashii***; ~ ***yō da***[1])

a. フランシスは腕時計が欲しいらしい。
*Furanshisu wa udedokei ga hoshii **rashii**.*
(It seems that Francis wants a wristwatch.)

b. コニーは人形が欲しい{ようです / みたいです}。
*Konī wa ningyō ga hoshii{**yō desu** / **mitai desu**}.*
(It appears that Connie wants a doll.)

c. グラントはスケートボードが欲しいにちがいない。
*Guranto wa sukētobōdo ga hoshii **ni chigai nai**.*
(Grant must want a skateboard.)

d. 戸田さんは新しいコートが欲しい**はずです**。
*Toda-san wa atarashii kōto ga hoshii **hazu desu**.*
(I'm certain that Toda-san wants a new coat.)

4. *Hoshiidesu ka* is the expression to ask the listener's desire directly, and it is not appropriate to use when the listener is higher in status than the listener or is not very close to the speaker. For example, (5) is not appropriate for a student to say to his/her teacher when he/she wants to pick up foods for the teacher at a party.

(5) ×先生、何が欲しいですか。
× *Sensei, nani ga hoshiidesu ka.*
(*Intended meaning*: What would you like, Professor?)

An appropriate way to say (5) would be (6):

(6) 先生、{何を召し上がりますか / 何がよろしいですか}。
Sensei,{ nani o meshiagarimasu ka / nani ga yoroshiidesu ka}.
({What would you have / What would you like (lit., would be good)}, Professor?)

For the same reason, (7) is not appropriate for a student to say to ask his/her teacher when his/her homework assignment is due. In addition to the above reason, (7) is also inappropriate because it is unlikely that the teacher wants the student's homework assignment.

(7) ×先生、この宿題がいつ欲しいですか。
× *Sensei, kono shukudai ga itsu hoshiidesu ka.*
(*Intended meaning*: Professor, when would you like this homework?)

An appropriate way to say (7) would be (8): (⇒ ***ba***)

(8) 先生、この宿題をいつ出せばよろしいですか。
Sensei, kono shukudai o itsu daseba yoroshiidesu ka.
(Professor, when am I supposed (lit., when would be good) to turn in this homework?)

hoshii² ほしい² *aux. adj. (i)*

want s.o. to do s.t.

want (s.o.) to do s.t.
【REL. *morai-tai*; ~ ***tai***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (1st person subject)		Actor			V*te*	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	ネイティブの人 *neitibu no hito*	に *ni*	英語を *eigo o*	**教えて** ***oshiete***	ほしい / ほしいです。 *hoshii* / *hoshiidesu.*
(I want a native speaker to teach me English.)						

(B)

Topic (1st person subject)		Actor			Vplain・non-past・neg		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	チャック *Chakku*	に *ni*	もうアパートに *mō apāto ni*	**来ない** ***konai***	で *de*	ほしい / ほしいです。 *hoshii* / *hoshiidesu.*
(I don't want Chuck to come to my apartment (lit., I want Chuck not to come to my apartment) anymore.)							

(C)

	Subject (event)		V*te*	
早く *Hayaku*	この不況 *kono fukyō*	が *ga*	**終わって** ***owatte***	ほしい / ほしいです。 *hoshii* / *hoshiidesu.*
(I want this recession to be over soon.)				

Formation

(i) V*te* ほしい
hoshii

話してほしい (want (s.o.) to talk/tell)
hanashite hoshii

(ii) Vplain·non-past·neg でほしい
de hoshii

話さないでほしい (don't want (s.o.) to talk/tell)
hanasanaide hoshii

Examples

(a) 私は子供たちに私と一緒に住んでほしい。
Watashi wa kodomo-tachi ni watashi to issho ni sunde hoshii.
(I want my children to live together with me.)

(b) 誕生日パーティーにだれに来てほしいですか。
Tanjōbi-pātī ni dare ni kite hoshiidesu ka.
(Who do you want to come to your birthday party?)

(c) 父に働きすぎないでほしいです。
Chichi ni hataraki-suginaide hoshiidesu.
(I want my father not to work too much.)

(d) 早くこの国に平和が戻ってきてほしいとみんなが願っています。
Hayaku kono kuni ni heiwa ga modotte-kite hoshii to minna ga negatte imasu.
(Everybody wishes that peace will return to this country soon.)

Notes

1. *Hoshii* is used as an auxiliary with V*te* to mean "want (s.o.) to do (s.t.)." When X wants Y to do something, Y (i.e., the actor) is marked by *ni*.

2. "X *wa* Y *ni* V*te hoshii*" is not used when X is the first person, Y is the second person, and Y has a higher status than X. (See [3] in Related Expression for the correct sentence in that situation.)

3. In "X *wa* Y *ni* V*te hoshii*," X is usually the first person in declarative sentences (KSs(A)–(C) and Ex.(a)) and the second person in interrogative sentences (Ex.(b)). If X is a third person, V*te morai-ta-gatte iru* "lit., be showing the sign of wanting to receive the favor of doing s.t. from s.o." is used, as in (1).
(⇒ Related Expression below; ***morau***[2]; ~ ***tai***; ~ ***garu***)

(1) アダムスさんはグレースにこの仕事をしてもらいたがっている。
Adamusu-san wa Gurēsu ni kono shigoto o shite ***morai-ta-gatte iru.***
(Adams-san wants Grace to do this job.)

4. The idea of "do not want s.o. to do s.t." can be expressed using Vplain·non-past·neg *de hoshii*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c). The same idea can also be expressed using V*te hoshikunaidesu*, as in (2). Vplain·non-past·neg *de hoshii* conveys a stronger desire.

(2) 父に働きすぎて**ほしくないです**。(cf. Ex.(c))
Chichi ni hataraki-sugite ***hoshikunaidesu.***
(I don't want my father to work too much.)

5. When one wants something to happen rather than someone to do something, the subject of the event is marked by *ga* rather than *ni*, as in KS(C) and Ex.(d).

【Related Expression】

V*te morai-tai* also conveys the idea of "someone wants someone else to do something." Thus, KSs(A) and (B) can be paraphrased using V*te morai-tai*, as in [1] and [2]. (⇒ ***morau*** [2]; ~ ***tai***)

[1] 私はネイティブの人に英語を教えて{**ほしいです / もらいたいです**}。(cf. KS(A))
Watashi wa neitibu no hito ni eigo o oshiete {***hoshiidesu / morai-taidesu***}.
(I want a native speaker to teach me English.)

[2] 私はチャックにもうアパートに来ないで{**ほしいです / もらいたいです**}。(cf. KS(B))
Watashi wa Chakku ni mō apāto ni konaide {***hoshiidesu / morai-taidesu***}.
(I don't want Chuck to come to my apartment anymore.)

When the actor is higher in status than the speaker, the humble form V*te itadaki-tai* is more appropriate than V*te morai-tai*, as in [3].

[3] 私たちは山内先生に教えて**いただきたいです**。
Watashi-tachi wa Yamauchi-sensei ni oshiete ***itadaki-taidesu.***
(We would like Prof. Yamauchi to teach us. / We'd rather you teach us, Prof. Yamauchi.)

As the second English translation indicates, [3] can also be used when Prof. Yamauchi is the listener.

ichiban 一番 *adv.*

a superlative marker — most

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Noun		Subject	
この *Kono*	クラス ***kurasu***	(の中)で *(no naka) de*	大川さん *Ōkawa-san*	が *ga*
		Adjective		
一番 *ichiban*	頭が *atama ga*	いい / いいです。 ***ii / iidesu.***		
(Okawa-san is the brightest in this class.)				

(B)

Noun				Adverb	Verb
友達 ***Tomodachi***	の中で *no naka de*	アリスと *Arisu to*	一番 *ichiban*	よく ***yoku***	話す / 話します。 ***hanasu / hanashimasu.***
(Among my friends I talk with Alice most often.)					

Formation

(i) 一番 Adj(*i*)
ichiban

一番{高い / 高かった} (s.t. is/was the highest)
ichiban {*takai / takakatta*}

(ii) 一番 Adj(*na*){だ / だった}

一番 静か{だ / だった} (s.t. is/was the most quiet)
ichiban shizuka {*da / datta*}

(iii) 一番{Adj(*i*)stem く / Adj(*na*) に / Adv} V
ichiban *ku* *ni*

一番 速く走る (run the fastest)
ichiban hayaku hashiru

一番 上手に作る (make s.t. the most skillfully)
ichiban jōzu ni tsukuru

一番 たくさん食べる (eat the most)
ichiban takusan taberu

Examples

(a) A: この映画の中でどれが一番おもしろいですか。
Kono eiga no naka de dore ga ichiban omoshiroidesu ka.
(Among these movies, which one is the most interesting?)

B: この日本の映画でしょう。
Kono Nihon no eiga deshō.
(This Japanese movie, I guess.)

(b) A: ファストフードの中で何を一番よく食べますか。
Fasutofūdo no naka de nani o ichiban yoku tabemasu ka.
(Among fast foods, what do you eat most often?)

B: カレーを一番よく食べます。
Karē o ichiban yoku tabemasu.
(I eat curry and rice most often.)

(c) 私たちの中で由美が一番ダンスが上手だ。
Watashi-tachi no naka de Yumi ga ichiban dansu ga jōzu da.
(Yumi is the best dancer among us.)

(d) A: 松本さんと池田さんと清水さんの中で、だれが一番よく食べますか。
Matsumoto-san to Ikeda-san to Shimizu-san no naka de, dare ga ichiban yoku tabemasu ka.
(Among Matsumoto-san, Ikeda-san and Shimizu-san, who is the biggest eater (lit., eats most)?)

B: 池田さんです。
Ikeda-san desu.
(Ikeda-san is.)

(e) 日本で一番きれいな所はどこだと思いますか。
Nihon de ichiban kirei na tokoro wa doko da to omoimasu ka.
(What place do you think is the most scenic in Japan?)

Notes

1. In Japanese there are no superlative adjective/adverb forms like "tallest," "most beautiful" and "most quickly" in English. Superlative ideas are expressed using *ichiban* "No. 1" with adjectives or adverbs in Japanese.

2. *Ichiban* usually cannot be affixed directly to a noun, as in (1a). (1b) provides the grammatical form.

(1) a. ×一番レストラン
×***ichiban*** *resutoran*
(*Intended meaning*: the best restaurant)

b. 一番いいレストラン
ichiban ii *resutoran*
(the best restaurant)

However, nouns that indicate the degree of something like an adjective can be directly modified by *ichiban*, as in (2).

(2) 私たちの中で南さんが一番金持ちだ。
Watashi-tachi no naka de Minami-san ga ***ichiban*** *kanemochi da.*
(Minami-san is the richest among us.)

Other nouns that indicate a degree of something include *tokai* "urban," *inaka* "countryside," *bijin* "beautiful person," *usotsuki* "liar," *namakemono* "lazy person" and *yasumono* "cheap thing."

3. Superlative sentences often involve X *de* or X *no naka de*, as in KSs(A) and (B). When *no naka* is used depends on what kind of noun X is.

(i) When X represents a place, *no naka* is usually not used, as in Ex.(e).

(ii) When X is a group noun (e.g., *kurasu* "class," *chīmu* "team"), *no naka* is optional, as in KS(A).

(iii) In other situations, *no naka* is mandatory (e.g., when X is a category noun such as *tomodachi* "friend," *eiga* "movie" and *fasutofūdo* "fast foods," as in KS(B), Exs.(a)-A and (b)-A; when X is a plural pronoun such as *watashi-tachi* "we" and *kore-ra* "these," as in Ex.(c); and when X is a noun phrase that consists of multiple nouns connected with *to*, as in Ex.(d)-A).

iku[1] **行く**[1] *v. (Gr. 1)*

S.o/s.t. goes somewhere moving in a direction away from the speaker or the speaker's viewpoint.

go; come
【REL. ***kuru***[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Noun (direction)		
原さん *Hara-san*	は *wa*	来週 *raishū*	オーストラリア ***Ōsutoraria***	へ / に *e / ni*	行く / 行きます。 *iku / ikimasu.*
(Hara-san is going to Australia next week.)					

(B)

I

Topic (subject)		Noun (location)		Noun (location)		Noun (means)		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	東京 ***Tōkyō***	から *kara*	大阪 ***Ōsaka***	まで *made*	バス ***basu***	で *de*	行った / 行きました。 *itta /* *ikimashita.*
(I went from Tokyo to Osaka by bus.)								

Examples

(a) 私は毎朝８時に会社に行く。
Watashi wa mai-asa hachi-ji ni kaisha ni iku.
(I go to work (lit., my company) at eight every morning.)

(b) [On the phone]
A: ちょっと会議室に来てもらえませんか。
Chotto kaigi-shitsu ni kite moraemasen ka.
(Could you come to the meeting room for a while?)

B: はい、今すぐ行きます。
Hai, ima sugu ikimasu.
(Sure. I'll come (lit., go) right away.)

(c) あなたにもその知らせは行きましたか。
Anata ni mo sono shirase wa ikimashita ka.
(Did you get the notice, too? (lit., Did the notice go to you, too?))

(d) その村にもバスは行っている。
Sono mura ni mo basu wa itte iru.
(The bus goes to the village, too.)

Notes

1. *Iku*[1] is used when someone or something goes somewhere and that movement is in a direction away from the speaker or the speaker's viewpoint. For example, KS(A) is used when Hara's movement is in a direction away from the

speaker. Thus, if the speaker is in Australia, *iku* cannot be used. In this case *kuru* "come" is used. (⇒ ***kuru***[1])

2. In the situation of Ex.(b), in English, Speaker B takes Speaker A's viewpoint and uses *come*, but in Japanese, such viewpoint shift does not take place, and Speaker B uses *iku*.

3. When someone goes to his/her own "home base" (e.g., *uchi* "home," *ofisu* "office"), (*uchi ni*) *iku* is ungrammatical. In this case, *kaeru* "return" is used, as in (1).

(1) a. 私はたいてい7時ごろうちに{**帰ります** / ×**行きます**}。
Watashi wa taitei shichi-ji-goro uchi ni {***kaerimasu*** / ×***ikimasu***}.
(I usually go (lit., return) home around seven.)

b. 田村さんは急いでオフィスに{**帰った** / ×**行った**}。
Tamura-san wa isoide ofisu ni {***kaetta*** / ×***itta***}.
(Tamura-san rushed back to his office.)

4. When someone is away from his/her hometown or country and goes there, *kaeru* is usually used rather than *iku*. For example, if the subject person is from Canada but lives in another country, *kaeru* is commonly used, as in (2). If *iku* is used, it sounds like Canada is not this person's home country.

(2) ダニエラは毎年カナダに{**帰る** / ??**行く**}。
Daniera wa mai-toshi Kanada ni {***kaeru*** / ??***iku***}.
(Danielle returns to Canada every year.)

5. Besides the use mentioned in Notes 1 and 2, V*te iku* is also used to mean "someone does something and goes somewhere," as in (3)–(5) below. However, in this use, *iku* is almost an element of a compound verb, and therefore, the meaning of "go" is weaker than that of *iku* when it is used alone. In fact, the destination of *iku* is usually not mentioned in this use, while the destination is usually mentioned when *iku* is used alone.

(3) [Someone does something on the way to somewhere.]

a. デパートでケーキを買っていく
depāto de kēki o katte iku
(buy a cake at the department store on the way)

b. カフェでお茶を飲んでいく
kafe de o-cha o nonde iku
(drink some tea at the café on the way)

(4) [Someone does something at his/her home base before going somewhere.]

a. 弁当を作っていく
bentō o tsukutte iku
(fix a boxed lunch to take somewhere)

b. 昼ご飯を食べていく
*hiru-gohan o tabe**te iku***
(eat lunch (at home) before going somewhere)

c. 予習していく
*yoshū-shi**te iku***
(prepare before a class)

(5) [Someone goes somewhere in some way. (lit., Someone does something and goes somewhere.)]

a. 自転車に乗っていく
*jitensha ni not**te iku***
(go by bicycle (lit., ride a bicycle and go))

b. ブーツをはいていく
*būtsu o hai**te iku***
(go in boots (lit., put on boots and go))

iku[2] いく[2] *aux. v. (Gr. 1)*

An action or state keeps changing from the point in time at which the speaker first describes it.

go on V-ing; continue; grow; keep doing s.t.
【REL. *kuru*[2]】

◆ Key Sentence

		V*te*		
これからは *Kore kara wa*	寒く *samuku*	なって ***natte***	いく / いきます *iku / ikimasu*	よ。 *yo.*
(It will get colder (and continue to be that way) from now on.)				

Formation

V*te* いく
iku

変わっていく (s.t./s.o. continues to change)
kawatte iku

Examples

(a) その頃からあの国の経済は強くなっていった。
Sono koro kara ano kuni no keizai wa tsuyoku natte itta.
(The economy of that country grew stronger from that time on.)

(b) この国は来年から人口が減っていくでしょう。
Kono kuni wa rainen kara jinkō ga hette iku deshō.
(The population of this country will probably keep decreasing from next year on.)

(c) これから毎日、本を１冊読んでいくつもりです。
Kore kara mai-nichi, hon o is-satsu yonde iku tsumori desu.
(I plan to keep reading one book every day from now on.)

Note

Iku is used as an auxiliary verb to indicate that the state of something/someone keeps changing, as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b), or that someone continues doing something, as in Ex.(c). When *iku* is used as an auxiliary verb, the speaker's viewpoint is when the change begins to take place or someone begins to do something. (See Related Expression below.)

【Related Expression】

When *iku*[2] is used to indicate a continual change in the state of something/someone, as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b), it can be replaced by *kuru*[2], as in [1a] and [1b] below. (⇒ ***kuru***[2])

[1] a. これからは寒くなって{いきます / きます}よ。(cf. KS)
Kore kara wa samuku natte { ***ikimasu*** / ***kimasu*** } *yo.*
(It will get colder from now on.)

b. その頃からあの国の経済は強くなって{いった / きた}。(cf. Ex.(a))
Sono koro kara ano kuni no keizai wa tsuyoku natte { ***itta*** / ***kita*** } .
(The economy of that country grew stronger from that time on.)

The difference here is that *kuru*[2] versions stress that the change is going to involve or has involved the speaker himself, while the *iku*[2] versions are less personal than the *kuru*[2] versions.

When *iku*[2] is used to indicate someone's continual action in the future, as in Ex.(c), it cannot be replaced by *kuru*[2], as in [2].

[2] これから毎日、本を１冊読んで{いく / ×くる}つもりです。(= Ex.(c))
Kore kara mai-nichi, hon o is-satsu yonde { ***iku*** / × ***kuru*** } *tsumori desu.*
(I plan to keep reading one book every day from now on.)

If someone took an action continually in the past, however, *kuru*[2] can replace *iku*[2], as in [3].

[3] 私はその時から毎日、本を１冊読んで{いった / きた}。
Watashi wa sono toki kara mai-nichi, hon o is-satsu yonde {***itta*** / ***kita***}.
(I kept reading a book every day from that time on.)

The difference is the viewpoint. That is, when *itta* is used, the viewpoint is when the action began, while when *kita* is used, the viewpoint is when the action ended.

I

iru[1] いる[1] *v. (Gr. 2)*

An animate thing exists.

be; exist; stay
【REL. ***aru***[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (location)		Subject		Quantifier	
この町 ***Kono machi***	(に) は *(ni) wa*	日本人 ***nihonjin***	が *ga*	たくさん *takusan*	いる / います。 *iru / imasu.*
(There are many Japanese in this town. (lit., In this town are many Japanese.))					

(B)

Topic (subject)			Noun (location)		
リーさん ***Rī-san***	は *wa*	この *kono*	寮 ***ryō***	に *ni*	いる / います。 *iru / imasu.*
(Lee-san is in this dorm.)					

Examples

(a) この動物園にはパンダがいます。
Kono dōbutsuen ni wa panda ga imasu.
(There are pandas in this zoo.)

(b) スティーブは今ロビンのアパートにいる。
Sutību wa ima Robin no apāto ni iru.
(Steve is in Robin's apartment now.)

Notes

1. *Iru*[1] expresses existence in terms of animate beings. It cannot be used for plant life or inanimate things. Thus, the following sentence is ungrammatical.

   (1) ×このキャンパスには木がたくさん**いる**。
   × *Kono kyanpasu ni wa ki ga takusan* ***iru.***
   (*Intended meaning*: There are many trees on this campus.)

   For plants and inanimate things, *aru* is used. (⇒ ***aru***[1])

2. Two sentence patterns are commonly used with *iru*[1]. In the KS(A) pattern, a location is presented as the topic and what exists there is under focus. In this pattern the location marker *ni* can optionally drop. In the KS(B) pattern, on the other hand, what exists is presented as the topic and where it exists is under focus. (⇒ ***aru***[1]: Note 4)

3. An animate thing, or a group of animate things (e.g., a sports team), or an organization (e.g., a company) can also be in the location position, as seen in (2).

   (2) a. 私(に)は子供が３人いる。
   Watashi *(ni) wa kodomo ga san-nin iru.*
   (I have three children. (lit., There are three children with me.))

   b. このチーム(に)はいいゴールキーパーがいる。
   Kono chīmu *(ni) wa ii gōrukīpā ga iru.*
   (This team has a good goalkeeper. (lit., There is a good goalkeeper in this team.))

   c. 私の課(に)は女子社員が一人もいない。
   Watashi no ka *(ni) wa joshi-shain ga hitori mo inai.*
   (There is not a single female worker in my section.)

4. Quantifiers (i.e., Number + Counter or other expressions that represent a number) usually follow the particle *ga* (i.e., "Noun + *ga* + Quantifier"), as in KS(A) and (2a). "Noun + Quantifier + *ga*" is totally ungrammatical, as in (3a), and "Quantifier + Noun + *ga*" is somewhat unnatural, as in (3b).

   (3) a. ×この町には**日本人たくさんが**いる。
   × *Kono machi ni wa* ***nihonjin takusan ga*** *iru.*
   (*Intended meaning*: There are many Japanese in this town.)

   b. ？私には**３人子供が**いる。
   ? *Watashi ni wa* ***san-nin kodomo ga*** *iru.*
   (I have three children.)

iru² いる² *aux. v. (Gr. 2)*

S.o./s.t. began to do s.t. some time ago and that action is going on at the moment of speech, or s.o. did s.t. (or s.t. happened) some time ago and the state resulted from that action/event remains unchanged at the moment of speech.

be V-ing; be V-ed
【REL. ***aru***²; ~ ***tokoro da***²】

◆ Key Sentences

I

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vte	
佐々木さん *Sasaki-san*	は *wa*	今メールを *ima mēru o*	書いて ***kaite***	いる / います。 *iru / imasu.*
(Sasaki-san is writing an email now.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Vte	
ジュリー *Jurī*	は *wa*	結婚して ***kekkon-shite***	いる / います。 *iru / imasu.*
(Julie is married.)			

Formation

Vte いる
iru

話している (be talking)
hanashite iru

食べている (be eating)
tabete iru

Examples

(a) 信吾はゲームをしています。
Shingo wa gēmu o shite imasu.
(Shingo is playing games.)

(b) だれかがドアをノックしている。
Dare-ka ga doa o nokku-shite iru.
(Someone is knocking on the door.)

(c) このりんごは腐っています。
Kono ringo wa kusatte imasu.
(This apple is rotten.)

(d) 木が倒れている。
Ki ga taorete iru.
(A tree has fallen down (and is lying there).)

Notes

1. *Iru* is used as an auxiliary verb with V*te* and expresses the continuation of an action or state. In general, if V*te* expresses an action that can continue or be repeated, V*te iru* expresses the continuation of the action, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b).

2. If V*te* is a verb indicating a momentary action that cannot be repeated, V*te iru* expresses the idea that something happened to X and X maintains the state that resulted from that event. KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d) are examples of this usage. The examples in (1) also express a resultant state, not an action in progress.

(1) a. 車がとまっている。
*Kuruma ga **tomatte iru**.*
(A car is parked. × A car is stopping.)

b. おじいさんがいすに座っている。
*O-jīsan ga isu ni **suwatte iru**.*
(An old man is in a chair. × An old man is (in the process of) sitting in a chair.)

c. ドアが開いている。
*Doa ga **aite iru**.*
(The door is open. × The door is opening.)

d. 冷蔵庫に牛乳が入っている。
*Reizōko ni gyūnyū ga **haitte iru**.*
(Milk is in the refrigerator. × Milk is getting into the refrigerator.)

e. コンサートが始まっている。
*Konsāto ga **hajimatte iru**.*
(The concert has begun. × The concert is beginning.)

f. 金魚が死んでいる。
*Kingyo ga **shinde iru**.*
(The goldfish is dead. × The goldfish is dying.)

g. 靴が汚れている。
*Kutsu ga **yogorete iru**.*
(The shoes are dirty. × The shoes are getting dirty.)

Note that ***shiru*** means "get to know" or "learn of." Thus, for the English verb *know*, ***shitte iru*** should be used, which represents the resultant state of someone after he/she got to know something. (2) provides examples of how ***shiru*** is used. Note that for "not to know" ***shiranai*** is used rather than ***shitte inai***, as in (2)-B. (⇒ ***shiru***)

(2) A: 市村さんを知っていますか。
Ichimura-san o shitte imasu ka.
(Do you know Ichimura-san?)

B: いいえ、{知りません / ×知っていません}。
Īe, {***shirimasen*** / × ***shitte imasen***}.
(No, I don't.)

I

3. V***te iru*** also expresses a habitual action, as in (3), which is a special case of repeated action explained in Note 1.

(3) 私は毎日４キロ**走っている**。
Watashi wa mai-nichi yon-kiro ***hashitte iru.***
(I run four kilometers every day.)

Habitual action can be expressed by V·non-past, as in (4).

(4) 私は毎日４キロ**走る**。
Watashi wa mai-nichi yon-kiro ***hashiru.***
(I run four kilometers every day.)

The difference between the two habitual expressions can be seen in the sentences in (5). That is, when the starting time of a habitual action is not known, V***te iru*** cannot be used, as in (5a), while when the starting time of a habitual action is explicitly mentioned, V·non-past cannot be used, as in (5b).

(5) a. 日本人は正月に神社に{行く / ×行っている}。
Nihonjin wa shōgatsu ni jinja ni {***iku*** / × ***itte iru***}.
(Japanese people go to shrines during the New Year's holiday.)

b. 私は**先月から**毎日４キロ{走っている / ×走る}。
Watashi wa ***sengetsu kara*** *mai-nichi yon-kiro* {***hashitte iru*** / × ***hashiru***}.
(I run four kilometers every day, starting last month.)

The above examples indicate that when (3) (= V***te iru*** version) is said, the starting time of the habitual action is in the speaker's consciousness, while when (4) (= V·non-past version) is used, this is not the case.

4. When V***te*** is a motion verb such as *iku* "go," *kuru* "come" and *kaeru* "return," V***te iru*** does not mean "be V-ing." For example, *itte iru* means "have gone to some place and still be there." (6) provides examples.

(6) a. 健はオーストラリアに**行っている**。
*Ken wa Ōsutoraria ni **itte iru**.*
(Ken has gone to Australia and is there. × Ken is going to Australia.)

b. 高井さんは今シカゴに**来ています**。
*Takai-san wa ima Shikago ni **kite imasu**.*
(Takai-san has come to Chicago and is here now. × Takai-san is coming to Chicago now.)

c. ベックさんはもう家に**帰っています**。
*Bekku-san wa mō ie ni **kaette imasu**.*
(Beck-san has already returned home and is there. × Beck-san is returning home already.)

5. The verbs *sumu* "live," *motsu* "have" and *tsutomeru* "work" require the "V*te iru*" pattern if the sentence expresses a present state, as in (7).

I

(7) a. 私は東京に{**住んでいる** / ×**住む**}。
*Watashi wa Tōkyō ni{**sunde iru** / ×**sumu**}.*
(I live in Tokyo.)

b. ケニーは高いスマホを{**持っている** / ×**持つ**}。
*Kenī wa takai sumaho o{**motte iru** / ×**motsu**}.*
(Kenny has an expensive smartphone.)

c. 西本さんはITの会社に{**つとめている** / ×**つとめる**}。
*Nishimoto-san wa IT no kaisha ni{**tsutomete iru** / ×**tsutomeru**}.*
(Nishimoto-san works for an IT company.)

6. Verbs like *omou* "think" and *iu* "say" require the "V*te iru*" form if the subject is a third person and the sentence expresses a present state, as in (8).
(⇒ ~ ***to iu***[1]; ~ ***to omou***)

(8) a. ウエストさんは日本語はやさしいと{**思っている** / ×**思う**}。
*Uesuto-san wa nihongo wa yasashii to{**omotte iru** / ×**omou**}.*
(West-san thinks that Japanese is easy.)

b. マークは今の仕事を辞めたいと{**言っている** / ×**言う**}。
*Māku wa ima no shigoto o yame-tai to{**itte iru** / ×**iu**}.*
(Mark says that he wants to quit his current job.)

7. Because V*te iru* can mean an action in progress, a resultant state and a habitual action, sentences are sometimes ambiguous without context, as in (9) and (10).

(9) a. 由香里さんは着物を**着ている**。
*Yukari-san wa kimono o **kite iru**.*
(Yukari-san is in a kimono. [resultant state] / Yukari-san is putting on a kimono. [action in progress])

b. 由香里さんは今日着物を**着ている**。
*Yukari-san wa kyō kimono o **kite iru**.*
(Yukari-san is in a kimono today. [resultant state])

c. 由香里さんは今、２階で着物を**着ている**。
*Yukari-san wa ima, ni-kai de kimono o **kite iru**.*
(Yukari-san is putting on a kimono upstairs. [action in progress])

(10) a. 島岡さんは昔のクラスメートと**会っています**。
*Shimaoka-san wa mukashi no kurasumēto to **atte imasu**.*
(Shimaoka-san is meeting his old classmate. [action in progress] / Shimaoka-san meets his old classmate. [habitual action])

b. 島岡さんは今、昔のクラスメートと**会っています**。
*Shimaoka-san wa ima, mukashi no kurasumēto to **atte imasu**.*
(Shimaoka-san is meeting his old classmate now. [action in progress])

c. 島岡さんは毎週昔のクラスメートと**会っています**。
*Shimaoka-san wa mai-shū mukashi no kurasumēto to **atte imasu**.*
(Shimaoka-san meets his old classmate every week. [habitual action])

8. In sentences involving V*te iru*, the location is marked by either *de* or *ni*, as in (11) and (12).

(11) a. 公園{で / ×に}子供が遊んでいる。
*Kōen{**de** / ×**ni**} kodomo ga asonde iru.*
(Children are playing in the park.)

b. この教室{で / ×に}学生が試験を受けている。
*Kono kyōshitsu{**de** / ×**ni**} gakusei ga shiken o ukete iru.*
(Students are taking a test in this classroom.)

(12) a. あそこ{に / ??で}キノコが生えている。
*Asoko{**ni** / ??**de**} kinoko ga haete iru.*
(Mushrooms are growing over there.)

b. 海{に / ??で}ゴミが浮かんでいる。
*Umi{**ni** / ??**de**} gomi ga ukande iru.*
(Garbage is floating in the sea.)

As seen in the above examples, when "X *ga* V*te iru*" indicates an action in progress, as in (11), the location is marked by *de*. On the other hand, when this structure indicates a state of X that exists in a certain location, the location is marked by *ni*, as in (12). (⇒ ***de***[1]; ***ni***[6])

jibun 自分 *pronoun*

a reflexive pronoun that refers (back) to a human subject

-self; own

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)				
直也 *Naoya*	は *wa*	自分 *jibun*	を *o*	はげました / はげましました。 *hagemashita / hagemashimashita.*
(Naoya cheered himself up.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)							
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	テレワークをする時は *terewāku o suru toki wa*	自分 *jibun*	の *no*	コンピュータ *konpyūta*	を *o*	使う / 使います。 *tsukau / tsukaimasu.*
(I use my own computer when I work remotely.)							

Examples

(a) 私はもう同じ失敗をしないように自分に言い聞かせた。
Watashi wa mō onaji shippai o shinai yō ni jibun ni ii-kikaseta.
(I told myself not to make the same mistake anymore.)

(b) 自分を知ることが一番難しいと思います。
Jibun o shiru koto ga ichiban muzukashii to omoimasu.
(I think to know yourself is the hardest.)

(c) 人は自分の言葉に責任を持たなければならない。
Hito wa jibun no kotoba ni sekinin o motanakereba naranai.
(One should be loyal to (lit., have a responsibility for) one's own words.)

(d) 中川は自分が京大に入れるとは思っていなかった。
Nakagawa wa jibun ga Kyōdai ni haireru to wa omotte inakatta.
(Nakagawa didn't think that he (lit., himself) could enter Kyoto University.)

(e) 自分のことは自分でしなさい。
Jibun no koto wa jibun de shi-nasai.
(Take care of yourself. (lit., Do your own things on your own.))

Notes

1. *Jibun* is used when the human referent of the direct object, indirect object, etc. is the same as the referent of the subject, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c).

2. While it is always the case that *jibun* refers to the same referent as that of the subject, in some contexts, *jibun* is used for contrast and/or emphasis. For example, KS(B) means that when the speaker works from home, she uses her own computer rather than the company's. If *jibun* is not present in KS(B), the meaning of the sentence changes significantly, as in (1).

   (1) 私はテレワークする時はコンピュータを使う。
   Watashi wa terewāku o suru toki wa konpyūta o tsukau.
   (I use a computer when I work remotely.)

   Ex.(d) provides another example of this use of *jibun*. This sentence implies that Nakagawa didn't expect that he would be admitted to Kyoto University ahead of other applicants. If *jibun* is not used, no such implication is conveyed as in (2).

   (2) 中川は ø 京大に入れるとは思っていなかった。
   Nakagawa wa ø Kyōdai ni haireru to wa omotte inakatta.
   (Nakagawa didn't think that he could enter Kyoto University.)

   Ex.(e) can also be considered to be an example of the *jibun* of the contrastive/emphatic use.

3. *Jibun* refers back to the referent of the subject that occurs earlier in the sentence. Because of this, when there are multiple subjects in a sentence, the referent of *jibun* can be ambiguous. For example, there are two subjects in (3): Laura (= the subject person who made Bob go shopping) and Bob (= the semantic subject person who went shopping). Here, *jibun no kuruma* "(someone's) own car" can refer to either Laura's car or Bob's car. Whose car it refers to cannot be determined without further contextual or situational information.

   (3) ローラはボブに**自分**の車で買い物に行かせた。
   *Rōra wa Bobu ni **jibun** no kuruma de kaimono ni ikaseta.*
   (Laura made Bob go shopping in his/her own car.)

4. *Jibun* is also used when the speaker/writer is empathetic with its referent. For example, in (4), the direct object in the embedded sentence (i.e., *Maya ga* { *kare / jibun* } *o aishite iru*) can be represented by either *kare o* or *jibun o*, both of which refer to Hiroki. If *kare* is used, it sounds like the speaker is detached from Hiroki, but when *jibun* is used, it sounds like the speaker is describing the situation from Hiroki's point of view, i.e., the speaker is empathetic with Hiroki.

(4) 弘樹は麻矢が{**彼** / **自分**}を愛していることを知らなかった。
*Hiroki wa Maya ga{**kare** / **jibun**} o aishite iru koto o shiranakatta.*
(Hiroki didn't know that Maya loved him.)

5. *Jibun* is sometimes used to refer to the speaker himself/herself with no antecedent, as in (5).

(5) a. **自分**は何もしていません。
***Jibun** wa nani mo shite imasen.*
(I (lit., Myself) haven't done anything (wrong).)

b. 悪いのは**自分**ではない。
*Warui no wa **jibun** de wa nai.*
(The one to blame is not me. (lit., The one who's bad is not myself.))

ka[1] **か**[1] *prt.*

a particle that marks an alternative

(either) ~ or ~
【REL. *soretomo*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Noun Phrase			Prt	
			Noun 1		Noun 2		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	毎朝 *mai-asa*	ジュース *jūsu*	か *ka*	ミルク ***miruku***	を *o*	飲む / 飲みます。 *nomu / nomimasu.*
(I drink either juice or milk every morning.)							

(B)

K

Sentence 1 (plain)*		Sentence 2 (plain)*	
この記事が間違っている ***Kono kiji ga machigatte iru***	か *ka*	彼がうそを言っている ***kare ga uso o itte iru***	か *ka*
どちらかだ / です。 *dochira-ka da / desu.*			
(Either this article is wrong or he's telling a lie.)			

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N drops.

Formation

(i) N_1 か N_2 (か)
ka *(ka)*

先生か学生(か) (either a teacher or a student)
sensei ka gakusei (ka)

(ii) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } か
ka

{ 話す / 話した } か (either s.o. { will talk / talks / talked } or)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *ka*

{ 高い / 高かった } か (either s.t. is/was expensive or)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *ka*

(iii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { ø / だった } か
{ ø / *datta* } *ka*

静か { ø / だった } か (either s.t. is/was quiet or)
shizuka { ø / *datta* } *ka*

先生 { ø / だった } か (either s.o. is/was a teacher or)
sensei { ø / *datta* } *ka*

Examples

(a) 課長にはボブか私が話します。
Kachō ni wa Bobu ka watashi ga hanashimasu.
(Either Bob or I will talk to the section chief.)

(b) A: 空港まで何で行きますか。
Kūkō made nan de ikimasu ka.
(How (lit., By what) will you go to the airport?)

B: 電車かバスで行くつもりです。
Densha ka basu de iku tsumori desu.
(I'm planning to go by train or bus.)

(c) A: 台風が近づいていますが、明日のコンサートはどうなるでしょう。
Taifū ga chikazuite imasu ga, ashita no konsāto wa dō naru deshō.
(The typhoon is approaching. What will happen to tomorrow's concert, I wonder?)

B: 延期になるか中止になるかどちらかでしょう。
Enki ni naru ka chūshi ni naru ka dochira-ka deshō.
(I guess it'll be either postponed or canceled.)

(d) A: 高森さんは来ませんでしたね。
Takamori-san wa kimasendeshita ne.
(Takamori-san didn't come.)

B: たぶん仕事が忙しかったか体の調子が悪かったかどちらかでしょう。
Tabun shigoto ga isogashikatta ka karada no chōshi ga warukatta ka dochira-ka deshō.
(Probably she was too busy with her work or didn't feel well (lit., her physical condition was bad).)

(e) 食べるか話すかどちらかにしなさい。
Taberu ka hanasu ka dochira-ka ni shi-nasai.
(Just do one thing, eat or talk. (lit., Decide on either eating or talking.))

Notes

1. The basic function of *ka* is to mark an alternative. It can mark either nouns or sentences. When it marks sentences, *ka* is necessary for both sentences, as in KS(B) and Exs.(c)–(e). In this construction, the two sentences are subordinate clauses; therefore, they must be in the plain form, and the topic marker *wa* does not occur.

2. *Ka* cannot be used to connect two questions. Thus, the following sentences are ungrammatical.

   (1) a. × これはあなたのですか。**か**私のですか。
   × *Kore wa anata no desu ka. **Ka** watashi no desu ka.*
   (*Intended meaning*: Is this yours? Or is it mine?)

   b. × 私と一緒に来ますか。**か**ここにいますか。
   × *Watashi to issho ni kimasu ka. **Ka** koko ni imasu ka.*
   (*Intended meaning*: Will you come with me? Or will you stay here?)

   In this case, *soretomo* is used instead of *ka*. (See Related Expression.)

K

3. *Dochira-ka* in KS(B) and Exs.(c)–(e) means "either (A or B)." When the sense of alternativeness is weak, *dochira-ka* is not necessary, as in (2).

   (2) 今すぐ電話をかけるかメールするか ø してください。
   Ima sugu denwa o kakeru ka mēru-suru ka ø shite kudasai.
   (Make a call or send an email right away, please.)

   Here, the point of the sentence is that the listener should contact someone immediately whichever the means may be.

[Related Expression]

Soretomo is also used with alternatives. However, the function of *soretomo* is to *connect* two alternatives, not to *mark* an alternative, as in [1] and [2].

(⇒ ***soretomo***)

[1] これはあなたのですか。**それとも**私のですか。
*Kore wa anata no desu **ka**. **Soretomo** watashi no desu **ka**.*
(Is this yours or mine?)

[2] 私と一緒に来ますか。**それとも**ここにいますか。
*Watashi to issho ni kimasu **ka**. **Soretomo** koko ni imasu **ka**.*
(Will you come with me? Or will you stay here?)

ka² **か**² *prt.*

a sentence-final particle that indicates that the preceding sentence is interrogative (i.e., question marker)

whether; if

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Sentence (polite)	
友美は大学へ行きます *Tomomi wa daigaku e ikimasu*	か。 *ka.*
(Is Tomomi going to college?)	

(B)

	Splain*			
私はテリーに *Watashi wa Terī ni*	ローレンが日本へ**行く** *Rōren ga Nihon e **iku***	か *ka*	（と） *(to)*	聞いた / 聞きました。 *kiita / kikimashita.*
(I asked Teri whether Lauren was going to Japan.)				

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N drops.

Formation

(i) { V / Adj(*i*) } か
ka

{ 話します / 話す } か ({ Will / Does } s.o. talk? (polite) / if
{ *hanashimasu / hanasu* } *ka* s.o. { will talk / talks })

{ 高いです / 高い } か (Is s.t. expensive? (polite) / if s.t. is expensive)
{ *takaidesu / takai* } *ka*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { です / ø } か
{ *desu* / ø } *ka*

静か { です / ø } か (Is s.t. quiet? (polite) / if s.t. is quiet)
shizuka { *desu* / ø } *ka*

先生 { です / ø } か (Is s.o. a teacher? (polite) / if s.o. is a teacher)
sensei { *desu* / ø } *ka*

Examples

(a) あなたは学生ですか。
Anata wa gakusei desu ka.
(Are you a student?)

(b) これは何ですか。
Kore wa nan desu ka.
(What is this?)

(c) 私は友達にアラビア語は難しいか(と)聞きました。
Watashi wa tomodachi ni arabiago wa muzukashii ka (to) kikimashita.
(I asked my friend if Arabic is difficult.)

(d) 私はジャンにパーティーにだれが来たか(と)たずねた。
Watashi wa Jan ni pātī ni dare ga kita ka (to) tazuneta.
(I asked Jan who had come to the party.)

(e) 私は山崎先生が昨日何を言ったか忘れてしまった。
Watashi wa Yamazaki-sensei ga kinō nani o itta ka wasurete shimatta.
(I've forgotten what Prof. Yamazaki said yesterday.)

K

(f) 次の会議がいつあるか知りません。
Tsugi no kaigi ga itsu aru ka shirimasen.
(I don't know when the next meeting will be held.)

Notes

1. The question marker *ka* is a special use of *ka*[1], i.e., the particle that marks an alternative. For example, KS(A) came from (1), with the parenthesized part omitted. (⇒ ***ka***[1])

   (1) 友美は大学へ行きますか。(それとも行きませんか。)
   Tomomi wa daigaku e ikimasu ka. (Soretomo ikimasen ka.)
   (Is Tomomi going to college? (Or is she not?))

2. *Ka* marks both yes-no questions and Wh-questions. Note that a Japanese interrogative sentence is pronounced with rising intonation whether it is a yes-no question or a Wh-question.

3. *Ka* is also used in indirect questions, as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d), and in embedded questions, as in Exs.(e) and (f). In indirect questions, the quotation marker *to* is optional. *To* does not occur after embedded questions, as in Exs.(e) and (f).

4. In casual speech, *ka* is usually not used in interrogative sentences. Rising intonation is used instead to indicate that they are interrogative sentences.

(2) a. この映画(は)見た ø ？
Kono eiga (wa) mita ø?
(Did you watch this movie?)

b. そのアパート(は)安い ø ？
Sono apāto (wa) yasui ø?
(Is (the rent of) that apartment reasonable?)

c. この辞書(は)便利 ø ？
Kono jisho (wa) benri ø?
(Is this dictionary useful?)

d. 明日(は)休み ø ？
Ashita (wa) yasumi ø?
(Is tomorrow a day off?)

Although the use of *ka* in casual speech is rare, it may be used by some men in very casual speech.

Note that *da* does not occur before *ka*, and neither is *da* pronounced with rising intonation when *ka* does not follow, as in (3).

(3) a. ×この辞書(は)便利{だか。/ だ？} (cf. (2c))
×*Kono jisho (wa) benri* {***da ka*** / ***da?***}

b. ×明日(は)休み{だか。/ だ？} (cf. (2d))
×*Ashita (wa) yasumi* {***da ka*** / ***da?***}

A possible reason for this restriction is that *da*, the plain form of *desu*, expresses a strong assertion and it conflicts with the question marker *ka* or the *da* with rising intonation, which expresses the speaker's uncertainty about something. (⇒ ***da***)

5. When interrogative sentences are embedded, *da* does not occur before *ka*, as in (4).

(4) a. 父は私に仕事は大変{ø / ×だ}か(と)聞いた。
Chichi wa watashi ni shigoto wa taihen {ø / × ***da***} *ka (to) kiita.*
(My father asked me if my work is tough.)

b. 私はステラに明日は休み{ø / ×だ}か(と)聞いた。
Watashi wa Sutera ni ashita wa yasumi {ø / × ***da***} *ka (to) kiita.*
(I asked Stella if tomorrow is a day off.)

～ ka dō ka ～かどうか *comp. prt.*

a marker for an embedded yes-no question

whether or not; if (~ or not)

◆ Key Sentence

Embedded Yes-No Question			
Splain*			
藤川さんが大学に入った *Fujikawa-san ga daigaku ni haitta*	か *ka*	どうか *dō ka*	知らない / 知りません。 *shiranai / shirimasen.*
(I don't know whether Fujikawa-san entered college or not.)			

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N drops.

Formation

K

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } かどうか
ka dō ka

{ 話す / 話した } かどうか (whether s.o. { will talk / talks / talked } or not)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *ka dō ka*

{ 高い / 高かった } かどうか (whether s.t. is/was expensive or not)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *ka dō ka*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { ø / だった } かどうか
{ ø / *datta* } *ka dō ka*

静か { ø / だった } かどうか (whether s.t. is/was quiet or not)
shizuka { ø / *datta* } *ka dō ka*

先生 { ø / だった } かどうか (whether s.o. is/was a teacher or not)
sensei { ø / *datta* } *ka dō ka*

Examples

(a) 小川さんが結婚しているかどうか知っていますか。
Ogawa-san ga kekkon-shite iru ka dō ka shitte imasu ka.
(Do you know if Ogawa-san is married or not?)

(b) 村上春樹の小説がこの図書館にあるかどうか調べてみます。
Murakami Haruki no shōsetsu ga kono toshokan ni aru ka dō ka shirabete mimasu.
(I'll check if this library has Haruki Murakami's novels.)

(c) 日本で働くかどうかまだ決めていない。
Nihon de hataraku ka dō ka mada kimete inai.
(I haven't decided yet whether I'll work in Japan or not.)

(d) 木崎先生がお元気かどうか存じません。
Kizaki-sensei ga o-genki ka dō ka zonjimasen.
(I don't know if Prof. Kizaki is fine.)

(e) 新しい先生が日本人かどうか学科のスタッフに聞いてみます。
Atarashii sensei ga nihonjin ka dō ka gakka no sutaffu ni kiite mimasu.
(I'll ask the department staff if our new teacher is Japanese or not.)

Notes

1. *Ka dō ka* is used only when the embedded question is a yes-no question. Thus, *ka dō ka* is ungrammatical in (1) because the sentence is a Wh-question.

   (1) そのレストランで**何**を食べた{**か** / × **かどうか**}覚えていますか。
   *Sono resutoran de **nani** o tabeta{**ka** / × **ka dō ka**} oboete imasu ka.*
   (Do you remember what you ate at that restaurant?)

2. Splain *ka dō ka* is a noun phrase. In (2), for example, *Shigoto o yameru ka dō ka* is the subject of the whole sentence and is marked by *ga*. Similarly, in (3), *Daigakuin ni itta hō ga ii ka dō ka* is the direct object of the whole sentence and is marked by *o*.

   (2) 小説を書き始める時、仕事を辞めるかどうか**が**問題だった。
   *Shōsetsu o kaki-hajimeru toki, shigoto o yameru ka dō ka **ga** mondai datta.*
   (When I began writing novels, whether to quit my job or not was the question.)

   (3) 大学院に行ったほうがいいかどうか**を**今考えています。
   *Daigakuin ni itta hō ga ii ka dō ka **o** ima kangaete imasu.*
   (I'm now thinking about whether or not I should go to graduate school.)

K

～ kamoshirenai ～かもしれない *aux.*

It is possible that what is stated is the case or will come true.

might; may; It is possible that ~
【REL. ~ *darō*; ~ *ni chigai nai*; ~ *sō da*[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Vplain	
午後雨が *Gogo ame ga*	**降る** ***furu***	かもしれない / かもしれません。 *kamoshirenai / kamoshiremasen.*
(It might rain in the afternoon.)		

(B)

	Adj(*i*)plain	
あの先生の授業は *Ano sensei no jugyō wa*	**つまらない** ***tsumaranai***	かもしれない / かもしれません。 *kamoshirenai / kamoshiremasen.*
(That teacher's class might be dull.)		

(C)

	Adj(*na*)	
京都の桜はまだ *Kyōto no sakura wa mada*	**きれい** ***kirei***	かもしれない / かもしれません。 *kamoshirenai / kamoshiremasen.*
(The cherry blossoms in Kyoto might still be beautiful.)		

K

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } かもしれない
kamoshirenai

{ 話す / 話した } かもしれない (s.o. might { talk / have talked })
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *kamoshirenai*

{ 高い / 高かった } かもしれない (s.t. might { be / have been } expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *kamoshirenai*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { ø / だった } かもしれない
{ ø / *datta* } *kamoshirenai*

静か { ø / だった } かもしれない (s.t. might { be / have been } quiet)
shizuka { ø / *datta* } *kamoshirenai*

先生 { ø / だった } かもしれない (s.o. might { be / have been } a teacher)
sensei { ø / *datta* } *kamoshirenai*

Examples

(a) 今年の冬は大変寒くなるかもしれない。
Kotoshi no fuyu wa taihen samuku naru kamoshirenai.

(It might be very cold this winter.)

(b) クリスは今日のパーティーのことを忘れているかもしれません。
Kurisu wa kyō no pātī no koto o wasurete iru kamoshiremasen.
(Chris might have forgotten about today's party.)

(c) このあたりのアパートは高いかもしれません。
Kono atari no apāto wa takai kamoshiremasen.
(Apartments around here might be expensive.)

(d) 中国語の文法は日本語の文法より簡単かもしれない。
Chūgokugo no bunpō wa nihongo no bunpō yori kantan kamoshirenai.
(Chinese grammar might be simpler than Japanese grammar.)

(e) あれは岡田先生かもしれないよ。
Are wa Okada-sensei kamoshirenai yo.
(That might be Prof. Okada.)

Note

1. *Kamoshirenai* is used when the speaker thinks that there is a possibility that something is the case or will come true.

2. *Kamoshirenai* may occur with low-certainty adverbs such as *hyotto suru to* "possibly" and *moshika shitara* "by some chance."

(1) a. ひょっとすると、これは大発見かもしれない。
***Hyotto suru to**, kore wa dai-hakken kamoshirenai.*
(Who knows? This might be a great discovery.)

b. もしかしたら、私が間違っていたかもしれません。
***Moshika shitara**, watashi ga machigatte ita kamoshiremasen.*
(I'm not sure, but it might be me who made a mistake.)

3. *Kamoshirenai* is also used when the speaker is certain about what he/she states but wants to avoid sounding assertive or "pushy," as in (2).

(2) a. [When the speaker has no intention to join an event]
私は明日参加できないかもしれません。
*Watashi wa ashita sanka-dekinai **kamoshiremasen**.*
(I may not be able to join tomorrow.)

b. [When the speaker is certain that the current plan won't work]
計画を変えたほうがいいかもしれませんね。
*Keikaku o kaeta hō ga ii **kamoshiremasen** ne.*
(We may be better off changing the plan.)

【Related Expressions】

I. The speaker's certainty level indicated by a *kamoshirenai* sentence is lower than that indicated by a *darō* sentence and much lower than that indicated by a *ni chigai nai* sentence, as diagrammed below:

less certain ⟵ *kamoshirenai < darō < ni chigai nai* ⟶ more certain

(⇒ ~ ***darō***; ~ ***ni chigai nai***)

Japanese weather forecaster on radio or TV, for example, employ *deshō* (the formal version of *darō*) often and *kamoshirenai* occasionally in their forecasts as in the following:

[1] 関東地方、明日は一日中曇りでしょう。午後、少し晴れ間が見えるかもしれません。
Kantō-chihō, asu wa ichi-nichi-jū kumori ***deshō****. Gogo, sukoshi harema ga mieru* ***kamoshiremasen****.*
(Tomorrow, in the Kanto region it will probably be cloudy all day long. There might be a brief break in the clouds in the afternoon.)

K

II. { V*masu* / Adj(*i*)stem / Adj(*na*) } ***sō da*** is used when the speaker makes a guess based primarily on visual or other perceptual information, while *kamoshirenai* is used when the speaker logically thinks that there is a possibility that something is the case or will come true. Thus, in situations like [2], *sō da* is acceptable, but *kamoshirenai* is not. (⇒ ~ ***sō da***[2])

[2] a. あっ！ このケーキ (は) おいしそうですね。
*A! Kono kēki (wa) oishi-****sō desu*** *ne.*
(Look, this cake looks delicious, doesn't it?)

b. × あっ！ このケーキ (は) おいしいかもしれませんね。
× *A! Kono kēki (wa) oishii* ***kamoshiremasen*** *ne.*
(*Intended meaning*: Look, this cake might be delicious, might it not?)

kara[1] から[1] *prt.*

A particle that indicates a starting point or a source

from; at; out of
【REL. ***ni***[3]; ***o***[3]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun (starting time)		
パーティー *Pātī*	は *wa*	**8時** ***hachi-ji***	から *kara*	始まる / 始まります。 *hajimaru / hajimarimasu.*
(The party starts at (lit., from) eight o'clock.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)			Noun (source)		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	その知らせを *sono shirase o*	**カール** ***Kāru***	から *kara*	聞いた / 聞きました。 *kiita / kikimashita.*
(I heard the news from Karl.)					

Examples

(a) 今日の会議は１時から３時までです。
Kyō no kaigi wa ichi-ji kara san-ji made desu.
(Today's meeting is from one o'clock to three o'clock.)

(b) 私たちはバンクーバーから来ました。
Watashi-tachi wa Bankūbā kara kimashita.
(We are (lit., came) from Vancouver.)

(c) ここから富士山が見えるよ。
Koko kara Fujisan ga mieru yo.
(You can see Mt. Fuji from here.)

(d) そのスーツケースはだれから借りたんですか。
Sono sūtsukēsu wa dare kara karita n desu ka.
(Who did you borrow that suitcase from?)

(e) 日本酒は米から作る。
Nihonshu wa kome kara tsukuru.
(Sake is made from rice.)

(f) つまらないことからけんかになった。
Tsumaranai koto kara kenka ni natta.
(We started to quarrel over a trifle. (lit., It became a quarrel from a trifle.))

Notes

1. *Kara* basically indicates a temporal or spatial starting point, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c), or a source, as in KS(B) and Exs.(d)–(f). A source can be a person

from whom something is transferred to another person (KS(B), Ex.(d)), a material from which something is made (Ex.(e)), an event that causes something (Ex.(f)), etc.

2. *Kara* in KS(B) and Ex.(d) can be replaced by *ni*, as in (1). (⇒ ***ni***[3])

(1) a. 私はその知らせをカール{**に / から**}聞いた。(cf. KS(B))
Watashi wa sono shirase o Kāru {***ni / kara***} *kiita.*
(I heard the news from Karl.)

b. そのスーツケースはだれ{**に / から**}借りたんですか。(cf. Ex.(d))
Sono sūtsukēsu wa dare {***ni / kara***} *karita n desu ka.*
(Who did you borrow that suitcase from?)

K

kara[2] から[2] *conj.*

after/since a point in time at which s.o. does s.t. or s.t. takes place

after V-ing; after ~ have V-ed; since (time)
【REL. ***ato de***; ***sorekara***; *~te*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	V*te*		
彩は晩ご飯を *Aya wa ban-gohan o*	**食べて** ***tabete***	から *kara*	映画に行った / 行きました。 *eiga ni itta / ikimashita.*
(Aya went to a movie after eating dinner.)			

(B)

	V*te*		
この町に *Kono machi ni*	**引っ越して** ***hikkoshite***	から *kara*	ずっと今のアパートに住んでいる / います。 *zutto ima no apāto ni sunde iru / imasu.*
(I've lived in the current apartment all the time since I moved to this town.)			

Formation

V*te* から
kara

話してから (after talking; since s.o. talked)
hanashite kara

食べてから (after eating; since s.o. ate)
tabete kara

Examples

(a) 私は友達に電話してからうちを出た。
Watashi wa tomodachi ni denwa-shite kara uchi o deta.
(I left home after making a call to my friend.)

(b) ロペスさんはいつもシャワーを浴びてから寝ます。
Ropesu-san wa itsumo shawā o abite kara nemasu.
(Lopez-san always goes to bed after taking a shower.)

(c) ミラーさんは２年前に交通事故を起こしてから車に乗らないようにしています。
Mirā-san wa ni-nen mae ni kōtsūjiko o okoshite kara kuruma ni noranai yō ni shite imasu.
(Miller-san has been trying not to drive a car since he caused a traffic accident two years ago.)

(d) 私たちがこの家を買ってからもう 10 年になる。
Watashi-tachi ga kono ie o katte kara mō jū-nen ni naru.
(It's already been ten years since we bought this house.)

K

Notes

1. V*te kara* is used to indicate either the sequence of two actions or events, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b), or the starting point of a situation, as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d).

2. *Te kara* is not to be confused with *ta kara*, in which *kara* is used as a conjunction of cause/reason. (⇒ ***kara***[3])

(1) a. ジョギングをして**から**シャワーを浴びた。
*Jogingu o shi**te kara** shawā o abita.*
(I took a shower after jogging.)

b. ジョギングをし**たから**シャワーを浴びた。
*Jogingu o shi**ta kara** shawā o abita.*
(I took a shower because I jogged.)

[Related Expression]

"V_1 *te* V_2" and "V_1 *te kara* V_2" are similar in that both constructions indicate that the action of V_1 and that of V_2 take place in this order. A critical difference between the two constructions is that "V_1 *te kara* V_2" is used to indicate the sequence of two actions when the sequence is *not* determined by the relation of the two actions. For example, in general, making a call to someone can be done either before arriving at a hotel or after that. This being the case, [1] indicates that the speaker made a call after arriving at his/her hotel rather than before. Here, the focus is when the speaker made a call or what the speaker did after arriving at the hotel. In either case, the timing of his/her making a call is a critical piece of information in this sentence. In this case, "V_1 *te* V_2" is odd.

[1] 私はホテルに{着いてから / ??着いて}友達に電話した。
Watashi wa hoteru ni {*tsui**te kara*** / ??*tsui**te***} *tomodachi ni denwa-shita.*
(I made a phone call to a friend of mine after arriving at the hotel.)

K

On the other hand, in [2], buying beef can be done only after being at the supermarket (assuming that the purpose of going to the supermarket is to buy beef). In this case, V*te kara* is unacceptable.

[2] スーパーへ{行って / ×行ってから}牛肉を買った。
[V_1 must be done before V_2]
Sūpā e {*itte* / × *itte kara*} *gyūniku o katta.*
(I went to the supermarket and bought some beef.)

In addition to the uses mentioned above, "V_1 *te* V_2" is also used to indicate means, manner, and cause, as in [3]–[5]. "V_1 *te kara* V_2" cannot be used in such situations.
(⇒ ***~te***)

[3] 強い地震ですべての交通機関が止まったので、**歩いて**家に帰った。[means]
*Tsuyoi jishin de subete no kōtsū-kikan ga tomatta node, **aruite** ie ni kaetta.*
(All the transportation systems stopped due to a strong earthquake, so I walked home (lit., returned home on foot).)

[4] 麻美は**着物を着て**パーティーに出た。[manner]
*Asami wa **kimono o kite** pātī ni deta.*
(Asami attended the party in a kimono.)

[5] 今日は**風邪を引いて**会社を休んだ。[cause]
*Kyō wa **kaze o hiite** kaisha o yasunda.*
(I took a day off today because I caught a cold.)

kara[3] から[3] *conj.*

a subordinate conjunction that indicates a reason or a cause

so; since; because
【REL. ***de***[3]; ***node***; ***tame ni***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause (reason /cause)		Main Clause
Splain		
今日は**月曜日だ** *Kyō wa **getsuyōbi da***	から *kara*	美術館は全部休みだ / です。 *bijutsukan wa zenbu yasumi da / desu.*
(Today is Monday, so all the art museums are closed.)		

(B)

A:		
どうして日本語を勉強しているんですか。 *Dōshite nihongo o benkyō-shite iru n desu ka.*		
(Why are you studying Japanese?)		
B:		
Splain		
来年日本に**留学する** *Rainen Nihon ni **ryūgaku-suru***	から *kara*	です。 *desu.*
(It's because I'm going to study in Japan next year.)		

K

Formation

Splain から
kara

{話す / 話した} から　(because s.o. { will talk / talks / talked })
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *kara*

{高い / 高かった} から　(because s.t. is/was expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *kara*

静か{だ / だった} から　(because s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *da / datta* } *kara*

先生{だ / だった} から　(because s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei { *da / datta* } *kara*

Examples

(a) 明日テストがあるから今晩パーティーには行きません。
Ashita tesuto ga aru kara konban pātī ni wa ikimasen.
(I have a test tomorrow, so I'm not going to the party this evening.)

(b) この店は高いから他の店に行きましょう。
Kono mise wa takai kara hoka no mise ni ikimashō.
(This store is expensive, so let's go to another store.)

(c) A: どうして昨日学校を休んだんですか。
Dōshite kinō gakkō o yasunda n desu ka.
(Why were you absent from school yesterday?)
B: 頭が痛かったからです。
Atama ga itakatta kara desu.
(It was because I had a headache.)

Notes

K

1. "S *kara*" represents a reason or a cause. Thus, "S_1 *kara* S_2" corresponds to "S_2 because/since S_1," "Because/Since S_1, S_2," or "S_1, so S_2." Note that the order of S_1 and S_2 is not always the same in English, while in Japanese *kara* clauses (= S_1) always precede main clauses (= S_2).

2. In subordinate clauses predicates are usually in the plain form. However, since the degree of subordination or dependency of S_1 in "S_1 *kara* S_2" is rather low, S_1 may be in the polite form in very polite speech, as in (1).

   (1) 今日は忙しいですから明日来てください。
   *Kyō wa isogashii**desu** kara ashita kite kudasai.*
   (Please come tomorrow because I'm busy today.)

3. When a main clause is known to the listener from the context, the KS(B) pattern is used. In this case, the *kara* clause must be in the plain form. The following sentence is unacceptable.

   (2) ×来年日本に留学しますからです。
   × *Rainen Nihon ni ryūgaku-**shimasu** kara desu.*
   (*Intended meaning*: It's because I'm going to study in Japan next year.)

-kata 方 *suf.*

a noun-forming suffix that indicates a way or a manner in which one does s.t.

how to do s.t.; way; manner
【REL. *hōhō*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Direct Object of V*masu*		V*masu*			
すし *Sushi*	の *no*	作り ***tsukuri***	方 *-kata*	を *o*	習った / 習いました。 *naratta / naraimashita.*
(I learned how to make sushi.)					

(B)

Subject of V*masu*		V*masu*			
モーガン先生 *Mōgan-sensei*	の *no*	教え ***oshie***	方 *-kata*	は *wa*	ユニークだ / です。 *yunīku da / desu.*
(Prof. Morgan's way of teaching is unique.)					

K

Formation

V*masu* 方
-kata

話し方 (way/manner of speaking)
hanashi-kata

食べ方 (way/manner of eating)
tabe-kata

Examples

(a) この漢字の読み方が分かりません。
Kono kanji no yomi-kata ga wakarimasen.
(I don't know how to pronounce (lit., read) this kanji.)

(b) 村田さんのお茶の飲み方はとても美しい。
Murata-san no o-cha no nomi-kata wa totemo utsukushii.
(Murata-san's manner of drinking tea is very beautiful.)

(c) 漢字の勉強のし方を教えてください。
Kanji no benkyō no shi-kata o oshiete kudasai.
(Please teach me how to study kanji.)

Notes

1. When the verb of V*masu kata* occurs with a direct object or a subject, the direct object or the subject is marked by *no* without *o* or *ga*, and precedes V*masu kata*, as in KSs(A) and (B).

2. When the verb of V*masu kata* occurs with a noun that represents a direction, means, etc. (i.e., a noun marked by *e*, *de*, *to*, etc.), the particle must be present before *no*, as in (1).

   (1) a. 美術館への行き方
   *bijutsukan **e** no iki-kata*
   (how to go to the art museum)

   b. 日本語での言い方
   *nihongo **de** no ii-kata*
   (how to say (it) in Japanese)

   c. お客様との話し方
   *o-kyaku-sama **to** no hanashi-kata*
   (how to talk to customers)

   d. これからの生き方
   *kore **kara** no iki-kata*
   (how to live from now on)

The particle *ni* cannot occur with *no*. Thus, *ni* before *no* changes to a particle with the closest meaning, as in (2).

(2) a. お風呂に入る → お風呂への入り方
*o-furo **ni** hairu* *o-furo **e** no hairi-kata*
(how to take a bath (lit., how to get into a bath))

b. 先生にメールを書く → 先生へのメールの書き方
*sensei **ni** mēru o kaku* *sensei **e** no mēru no kaki-kata*
(how to write emails to your teachers)

c. 国に奨学金をもらう → 国からの奨学金のもらい方
*kuni **ni** shōgakukin o morau* *kuni **kara** no shōgakukin no morai-kata*
(how to get a scholarship from the government (lit., country))

3. *Suru*-verbs such as *benkyō-suru* "study," *ryōri-suru* "cook" and *setsumei-suru* "explain" need the particle *no* before *shi-kata*, as in (3). That is, VN *shi-kata* is ungrammatical.

(3) {勉強 / 料理 / 説明}{の / ×ø}し方
{*benkyō* / *ryōri* / *setsumei*}{***no*** / ×ø}*shi-kata*
(a way/manner of studying/cooking/explanation)

When a direct object or a subject occurs with VN *no shi-kata*, the direct object or the subject is marked by *no* and precedes VN *no shi-kata*. Thus, two *no*'s occur in this case, as in (4).

(4) a. ウナギの料理のし方
unagi ***no*** *ryōri* ***no*** *shi-kata*
(how to cook eels)

b. 前田さんの説明のし方
Maeda-san ***no*** *setsumei* ***no*** *shi-kata*
(Maeda-san's manner of explanation)

4. Without a sufficient context, V*masu kata* is ambiguous; it can mean either "how to do something" or "a manner in which someone does something," as in (5).

(5) お茶の飲み方
o-cha no nomi-kata
(how to drink tea / someone's manner of drinking tea)

【Related Expression】

K

Hōhō "method" is similar to *-kata* in meaning. For example, Ex.(c) can be paraphrased as [1] using *hōhō*.

[1] 漢字の勉強の**方法**を教えてください。
Kanji no benkyō no ***hōhō*** *o oshiete kudasai.*
(Please teach me a method for studying kanji.)

However, *hōhō* is a noun and can be used alone, as in [2].

[2] A: コンピュータが動かないんですが、データは取り出せるでしょうか。
Konpyūta ga ugokanai n desu ga, dēta wa tori-daseru deshō ka.
(My computer is not working. I wonder if I can recover the data?)

B: **方法**がないことはないです。
Hōhō *ga nai koto wa naidesu.*
(There is a way. (lit., It's not that there is no method.))

Another difference is the kinds of elements and forms that precede *hōhō*. That is, it can be preceded by Adj(*i*), Adj(*na*) *na*, N *no* or a sentence, as in [3].

[3] a. 新しい方法
atarashii *hōhō*
(a new method)

b. 便利な方法
benri na *hōhō*
(a convenient method)

c. **AIの研究の方法**
āai no kenkyū no *hōhō*
(methods of researching AI)

d. **単語を速く覚える方法**
tango o hayaku oboeru *hōhō*
(a method of remembering vocabulary items fast)

In terms of the meaning, *hōhō* cannot be used to indicate a manner in which someone does something. Thus, Ex.(b) cannot be paraphrased using *hōhō*.

[4] ×村田さんのお茶を飲む**方法**はとても美しい。
×*Murata-san no o-cha o nomu* ***hōhō*** *wa totemo utsukushii.*
(*Intended meaning*: Murata-san's manner of drinking tea is very beautiful.)

In addition, *hōhō* is used only when a way of doing something is relatively complicated. Thus, [5] is odd.

[5] ??この漢字を書く**方法**が分かりません。
??*Kono kanji o kaku* ***hōhō*** *ga wakarimasen.*
(*Intended meaning*: I don't know how to write this kanji.)

K

～ kawari ni　～かわりに　*comp. prt. / conj.*

S.t. (including an action) replaces s.t. else.

in place of; instead of; to make up for; although; but

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Noun			Noun		
今日のお昼は *Kyō no o-hiru wa*	サンドイッチ ***sandoitchi***	の *no*	かわりに *kawari ni*	おにぎり *onigiri*	を *o*	食べた / 食べました。 *tabeta / tabemashita.*
(I had rice balls instead of a sandwich for my lunch today.)						

(B)

Splain*		
土曜日に仕事をする *Doyōbi ni shigoto o **suru***	かわりに *kawari ni*	月曜日は休む / 休みます。 *getsuyōbi wa yasumu / yasumimasu.*
(To make up for working on Saturdays, I take Mondays off.)		

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *no*, respectively.

Formation

(i) N のかわりに
no kawari ni

先生のかわりに (in place of the teacher)
sensei no kawari ni

(ii) {Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain} かわりに
kawari ni

{話す / 話した} かわりに (instead of talking / Although s.o. talked)
{*hanasu / hanashita*} *kawari ni*

{高い / 高かった} かわりに (Although s.t. is/was expensive)
{*takai / takakatta*} *kawari ni*

(iii) Adj(*na*) {な / だった} かわりに
{*na / datta*} *kawari ni*

静か {な / だった} かわりに (Although s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka {*na / datta*} *kawari ni*

(iv) N {の / だった} かわりに
{*no / datta*} *kawari ni*

休日 {の / だった} かわりに (Although s.t. is/was a day off)
kyūjitsu {*no / datta*} *kawari ni*

K

Examples

(a) ケーキのかわりにパイを買った。
Kēki no kawari ni pai o katta.
(I bought a pie instead of a cake.)

(b) 私のかわりに中西さんが発表してもいいですか。
Watashi no kawari ni Nakanishi-san ga happyō-shitemo iidesu ka.
(Is it all right if Nakanishi-san gives a presentation in place of me?)

(c) 今日は夜遅くまでゲームをするかわりに、明日は一日中勉強します。
Kyō wa yoru osoku made gēmu o suru kawari ni, ashita wa ichi-nichi-jū benkyō-shimasu.
(I'll study all day tomorrow to make up for playing games until late tonight.)

(d) この授業は期末試験がないかわりに、レポートを書かなければならない。
Kono jugyō wa kimatsu-shiken ga nai kawari ni, repōto o kakanakereba naranai.
(There's no final exam for this class, but (to make up for it) we have to write a term paper.)

(e) 美香に英語を教えてあげるかわりに、彼女に日本語を教えてもらっている。
Mika ni eigo o oshiete ageru kawari ni, kanojo ni nihongo o oshiete mora-tte iru.
(I teach Mika English, so (to make up for it) she teaches me Japanese.)

(f) その車は安かったかわりに、よく故障しました。
Sono kuruma wa yasukatta kawari ni, yoku koshō-shimashita.
(Although that car was inexpensive, (the downside was that) it often broke down.)

K

(g) 僕のアパートは不便なかわりに、家賃が安い。
Boku no apāto wa fuben na kawari ni, yachin ga yasui.
(Although my apartment is inconvenient, (the plus side is that) the rent is cheap.)

(h) 金曜日が休みのかわりに、日曜日に仕事をしなければなりません。
Kin'yōbi ga yasumi no kawari ni, nichiyōbi ni shigoto o shinakereba nari-masen.
(I have Fridays off, but to make up for it, I have to work on Sundays.)

Notes

1. In "N_1 *no kawari ni* N_2," N_2 represents the substitute for N_1, which indicates the initially intended thing or person, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b). In this use, *no kawari ni* is used as a compound particle.

2. In "S_1plain *kawari ni* S_2," S_2 represents an action or a state that makes up for the action/state represented in S_1, as in KS(B) and Exs.(c)–(h). In this use, *kawari ni* functions as a conjunction.

keredomo けれども *conj.*

a disjunctive subordinate conjunction

although; but; however
【REL. ***ga***[2]; ***noni***; ***temo***】

◆ Key Sentence

Subordinate Clause		Main Clause
Splain		
私は言わなかった *Watashi wa **iwanakatta***	けれども、 *keredomo,*	ノーマンはそのことを知っていた / いました。 *Nōman wa sono koto o shitte ita / imashita.*
(Although I didn't tell him, Norman knew about it.)		

Formation

Splain けれども
keredomo

{話す / 話した} けれども (Although s.o. {will talk / talks / talked})
{*hanasu / hanashita*} *keredomo*

{高い / 高かった} けれども (Although s.t. is/was expensive)
{*takai / takakatta*} *keredomo*

静か{だ / だった} けれども (Although s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka{*da / datta*} *keredomo*

先生{だ / だった} けれども (Although s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei{*da / datta*} *keredomo*

Examples

(a) 理沙はよく働くけれども、真由美はあまり仕事をしない。
Risa wa yoku hataraku keredomo, Mayumi wa amari shigoto o shinai.
(Risa works hard, but Mayumi doesn't do much work.)

(b) この本は高いけれども、いい本ですよ。
Kono hon wa takai keredomo, ii hon desu yo.
(Although it is expensive, this book is a good book.)

(c) 文法の説明を読んだけれども、よく分からなかった。
Bunpō no setsumei o yonda keredomo, yoku wakaranakatta.
(Although I read the explanation of the grammar, I couldn't fully understand it.)

(d) 漢字の勉強はあまり好きじゃないけれども、しなければなりません。
Kanji no benkyō wa amari suki ja nai keredomo, shinakereba narimasen.
(I don't like studying kanji very much, but I have to do it.)

(e) 大原さんは90歳だけれども、とても元気だ。
Ōhara-san wa kyūjus-sai da keredomo, totemo genki da.
(Although Ohara-san is ninety years old, he is very healthy.)

Notes

1. The construction "S_1 *keredomo* S_2" is used when what is stated in S_2 is not normally expected from what is stated in S_1, as in KS and Exs.(c)–(e), or when S_1 and S_2 represent two contrastive ideas, as in Exs.(a) and (b).

2. "S_1 *keredomo*" is a subordinate clause; therefore, it is usually in the plain form. However, in very polite speech, S_1 can be in the polite form, as in (1).

   (1) この本は**高いです**けれども、いい本ですよ。(cf. Ex.(b))
   *Kono hon wa **takaidesu** keredomo, ii hon desu yo.*
   (Although it is expensive, this book is a good book.)

K

3. *Keredomo* is commonly attached to S_1, but it can also occur in the sentence-initial position, as in (2).

   (2) 大野さんは90歳だ。**けれども**、とても元気だ。(cf. Ex.(e))
   *Ōno-san wa kyūjus-sai da. **Keredomo**, totemo genki da.*
   (Ohno-san is ninety years old. However, he's very healthy.)

4. In spoken language, the shortened forms *keredo* and *kedo* are commonly used. *Kedo* is more casual than *keredo*.

5. In spoken language, the main clause is left out in some situations, e.g., when the speaker wants the listener to perform an action but does not want to explicitly say it, when the speaker does not know what to say, etc., as in (3)–(5).

   (3) a. [Talking to a staff person at a hotel]
   あのう、テレビが映らないんですけど(見てもらえませんか)。
   *Anō, terebi ga utsuranai n desu **kedo** (mite moraemasen ka).*
   (Uh, the TV set (in my room) doesn't work (lit., doesn't show any picture). (Could you check it?))

   b. [Talking to the teacher in her office]
   先生、ちょっと質問があるんですけど(今、よろしいですか)。
   *Sensei, chotto shitsumon ga aru n desu **kedo** (ima, yoroshiidesu ka).*
   (Professor, I have a question. (Would it be all right to ask now?))

(4) A: 北田さんは今日来ますか。
Kitada-san wa kyō kimasu ka.
(Will Kitada-san come today?)

B: ええ、来ると思いますけど(はっきりとは分かりません)。
Ee, kuru to omoimasu ***kedo*** *(hakkiri to wa wakarimasen).*
(Yes, I think so, but (I don't know for sure).)

(5) A: 今度の学会に行きますか。
Kondo no gakkai ni ikimasu ka.
(Are you going to the next conference?)

B: ええ、行きますけど(どうして聞くんですか)。
Ee, ikimasu ***kedo*** *(dōshite kiku n desu ka).*
(Yes, I am, but (why do you ask?))

K

kikoeru 聞こえる *v. (Gr. 2)*

S.o. can hear s.t. passively or spontaneously.

(can) hear; be audible; sound
【REL. *kikeru*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (place)			Noun Phrase (audible object)		
私のアパート *Watashi no apāto*	は *wa*	いつも *itsumo*	**車の騒音** ***kuruma no sōon***	が *ga*	聞こえる / 聞こえます。 *kikoeru / kikoemasu.*
(In my apartment I always hear the noise of cars (lit., the noise of cars are always audible).)					

(B)

Topic (experiencer)		Noun Phrase (audible object)			
私 *Watashi*	(に) は *(ni) wa*	隣の部屋の話し声 ***tonari no heya no hanashigoe***	が *ga*	よく *yoku*	聞こえる / 聞こえます。 *kikoeru / kikoemasu.*
(I can clearly hear the people talking in the next room. (lit., To me the voices in the next room are clearly audible.))					

(C)

Sentence						Nom	
	Subject			Vte			
隣の部屋で *Tonari no heya de*	ルームメート *rūmumēto*	が *ga*	ギターを *gitā o*	**弾いて** ***hiite***	**いる** ***iru***	の *no*	が *ga*
聞こえる / 聞こえます。 *kikoeru / kikoemasu.*							
(I hear my roommate playing the guitar in the next room.)							

K

Examples

(a) このあたりはウグイスの声が聞こえる。
Kono atari wa uguisu no koe ga kikoeru.
(We can hear nightingales (lit., the cries of nightingales) in this area.)

(b) 小島さんの声は大きいので後ろの席でもよく聞こえます。
Kojima-san no koe wa ōkii node ushiro no seki de mo yoku kikoemasu.
(Kojima-san's voice is so loud that we can hear him well even in the back row.)

(c) 私にはお寺のかねの音が聞こえるが、父には聞こえないらしい。
Watashi ni wa o-tera no kane no ne ga kikoeru ga, chichi ni wa kikoenai rashii.
(I can hear the sound of the temple bell, but it looks like my father can't.)

(d) ターナーさんの作った文は私には変に聞こえます。
Tānā-san no tsukutta bun wa watashi ni wa hen ni kikoemasu.
(The sentences Turner-san made sound strange to me.)

(e) だれかがドアをノックするのが聞こえた。
Dare-ka ga doa o nokku-suru no ga kikoeta.
(I heard someone knock on the door.)

Notes

1. When *kikoeru* is the predicate and the noun phrase that represents an audible object is not the topic, the noun phrase is marked by *ga*, not *o*, as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (c).

2. When an experiencer (i.e., the person who hears something) is present, it is marked by *ni*, as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d). When the experiencer is marked by *wa*, *ni* is optional. The experiencer with *(ni) wa* is usually interpreted as a contrastive element.

3. In the *kikoeru* construction, a verb sentence can be used in the position of the noun phrase that represents an audible object, as in KS(C) and Ex.(e). In this case, the sentence has to be nominalized with the nominalizer *no* (= *no*[3]) and the subject of the sentence must be marked by the subject marker *ga* rather than the topic marker *wa*.

4. In many cases, *kikoeru* is used when something is spontaneously audible, but it can also be used in some non-spontaneous situations, as in (1).

   (1) 集中するとそのかすかな音が聞こえてきます。
   Shūchū-suru to sono kasuka na oto ga kikoete kimasu.
   (If you concentrate, you'll begin to hear that faint sound (lit., that faint sound will become audible).)

K

[Related Expression]

Kikoeru and the regular potential form of *kiku* "hear" (= *kikeru*) are similar in meaning, but they are used in different situations. That is, *kikoeru*, which indicates a passive, auditory potentiality, is used when one can hear something passively, as in [1] and [2]. In these situations, *kikeru* cannot be used. (In [2], *mimi* "ear" is not the audible object. Rather, *mimi ga kikoenai* is a set phrase that means "have trouble hearing" or "be hard of hearing.")

[1] こんなに後ろに座るとよく{**聞こえない** / ×**聞けない**}よ。
Konna ni ushiro ni suwaru to yoku { ***kikoenai*** / × ***kikenai*** } *yo.*
(If we sit this far back, we won't be able to hear well.)

[2] 私は耳がよく{**聞こえない** / ×**聞けない**}。
Watashi wa mimi ga yoku { ***kikoenai*** / × ***kikenai*** } .
(I cannot hear well.)

On the other hand, *kikeru* is used when someone actively hears (i.e., listen to) something, as in [3] and [4]. In these situations, *kikoeru* cannot be used.

(⇒ ***~rareru***[2])

[3] レコードプレーヤーを買ったから古いレコードが{**聞ける** / ×**聞こえる**}。
Rekōdo-purēyā o katta kara furui rekōdo ga { ***kikeru*** / × ***kikoeru*** } *.*
(I bought a turntable, so I can listen to old records.)

[4] 今日の講師はノーベル賞受賞者だから、おもしろい話が{**聞ける** / ×**聞こえる**}はずだ。
Kyō no kōshi wa nōberushō-jushōsha da kara, omoshiroi hanashi ga { ***kikeru*** / × ***kikoeru*** } *hazu da.*
(Today's lecturer is a Nobel Prize recipient, so we should be able to listen to an interesting lecture.)

kirai 嫌い *adj. (na)*

K

S.t./s.o. is what s.o. does not like.

don't like; dislike
(ANT. *suki*)

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (experiencer)		Noun (disliked object)			
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	チーズ ***chīzu***	が *ga*	嫌い *kirai*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(I don't like cheese.)					

Examples

(a) 僕は冬が嫌いだ。
Boku wa fuyu ga kirai da.
(I dislike winter.)

(b) 今村さんはワイドショーが大嫌いです。
Imamura-san wa waido-shō ga dai-kirai desu.
(Imamura-san hates TV talk shows.)

Notes

1. *Kirai* is a *na*-adjective that requires the ~ *wa* ~ *ga* construction. The experiencer (i.e., the person who dislikes something) is marked by *wa* and the disliked object by *ga*. Note that the disliked object is marked by *ga*, not by *o*.
(⇒ ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

2. In subordinate clauses, *wa* marking the experiencer changes into ***ga***, as in (1).

(1) a. 私**が**チーズが嫌いなことはみんな知っている。(cf. KS(A))
*Watashi **ga** chīzu ga kirai na koto wa minna shitte iru.*
(Everybody knows that I don't like cheese.)

b. 僕**が**嫌いな季節は冬です。(cf. Ex.(a))
*Boku **ga** kirai na kisetsu wa fuyu desu.*
(The season I don't like is winter.)

3. "Dislike a lot" or "hate" is expressed by *dai-kirai da*, as in Ex.(b).

koto[1] こと[1] *n.*

a thing that is intangible

thing; something; what
【REL. *mono*】

K

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Adjective			
いい ***Ii***	こと *koto*	を *o*	教えてあげよう / あげましょう。 *oshiete ageyō / agemashō.*
(I'll tell you something good. (lit., I'll tell you a good thing.))			

(B)

Relative Clause			
日本にいた時に考えた ***Nihon ni ita toki ni kangaeta***	こと *koto*	を *o*	書いてください。 *kaite kudasai.*
(Please write what you thought while in Japan.)			

(C)

	Noun Phrase				
ミラーさんは *Mirā-san wa*	**日本の大学** ***Nihon no daigaku***	の *no*	こと *koto*	を *o*	よく知っている / います。 *yoku shitte iru / imasu.*
(Miller-san knows a lot (of things) about Japanese universities.)					

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } こと
koto

{ 話す / 話した } こと (what s.o. { will tell / tells / told })
{ *hanasu* / *hanashita* } *koto*

{ おもしろい / おもしろかった } こと (what is/was interesting)
{ *omoshiroi* / *omoshirokatta* } *koto*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } こと
{ *na* / *datta* } *koto*

大事 { な / だった } こと (what is/was important)
daiji { *na* / *datta* } *koto*

(iii) N のこと
no koto

先生のこと (things about the teacher)
sensei no koto

K

Examples

(a) 大事なことはもう全部話しました。
Daiji na koto wa mō zenbu hanashimashita.
(I already told you everything important.)

(b) 大学で勉強したことはみんな忘れてしまった。
Daigaku de benkyō-shita koto wa minna wasurete shimatta.
(I forgot everything I studied at college.)

(c) 試験のことは忘れなさい。
Shiken no koto wa wasure-nasai.
(Forget about the exam.)

Notes

1. *Koto* refers to a thing that is intangible. Thus, (1) is ungrammatical. (See Related Expression below.)

(1) ×おいしいことはありませんか。
× *Oishii* ***koto*** *wa arimasen ka.*
(*Intended meaning*: Is there something tasty? (lit., Isn't there a delicious thing?))

Note, however, that *koto* is not used to refer to something that is intangible but physically exists, such as gases and radio waves.

2. N *no koto*, whose literal meaning is "thing of N," is often used with verbs such as *shitte iru* "know," *hanasu* "talk" and *wasureru* "forget," and means "about N," as in KS(C) and Ex.(c).

3. *Koto* is used as a nominalizer, too. Thus, (2) is ambiguous without proper context, as the two English translations indicate. (⇒ ***koto***[2])

   (2) 先生が言ったことを覚えていますか。
   Sensei ga itta ***koto*** *o oboete imasu ka.*
   (Do you remember what the teacher said? / Do you remember (the fact) that the teacher said (it)?)

【Related Expression】

Mono also means "thing," but it is used to refer to "a tangible thing." [1] and [2] provide examples of *mono* and *koto*.

[1] 黒い{もの / ×こと}が見えましたか。
Kuroi { ***mono*** / × ***koto*** } *ga miemashita ka.*
(Did you see something black?)

[2] おもしろい{こと / ×もの}を話してください。
Omoshiroi { ***koto*** / × ***mono*** } *o hanashite kudasai.*
(Please tell us something interesting.)

K

koto[2] こと[2] *nom.*

a nominalizer that indicates the speaker's relative lack of empathy with the content of the nominalized sentence or phrase

to V; V-ing; that ~
【REL. *no*[3]】

◆ Key Sentence

Noun Phrase			
Splain*			
日本語を**教える** *Nihongo o* ***oshieru***	こと *koto*	は *wa*	難しい / 難しいです。 *muzukashii / muzukashiidesu.*
(Teaching Japanese is hard.)			

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *de aru*, respectively.

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } こと
koto

{ 話す / 話した } こと ((the fact) that s.o. talks/talked)
{ *hanasu* / *hanashita* } *koto*

{ 高い / 高かった } こと ((the fact) that s.t. is/was expensive)
{ *takai* / *takakatta* } *koto*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } こと
{ *na* / *datta* } *koto*

静か { な / だった } こと ((the fact) that s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *na* / *datta* } *koto*

(iii) N { である / であった / だった } こと
{ *de aru* / *de atta* / *datta* } *koto*

先生 { である / であった / だった } こと ((the fact) that s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei { *de aru* / *de atta* / *datta* } *koto*

K

Examples

(a) 若い時にいい友達を作ることはとても大事だ。
Wakai toki ni ii tomodachi o tsukuru koto wa totemo daiji da.
(It is very important to make good friends when one is young.)

(b) 大学４年の時にフランスに留学することを考えています。
Daigaku yo-nen no toki ni Furansu ni ryūgaku-suru koto o kangaete imasu.
(I am thinking of studying in France during my senior year.)

(c) 日本の文化がおもしろいことは分かるが、特にユニークだとは思わない。
Nihon no bunka ga omoshiroi koto wa wakaru ga, tokuni yunīku da to wa omowanai.
(I know that Japanese culture is interesting, but I don't think that it is particularly unique.)

(d) スイスがきれいなことは写真で知っています。
Suisu ga kirei na koto wa shashin de shitte imasu.
(I know that Switzerland is beautiful from pictures.)

(e) あの人がいい人であることは間違いない。
Ano hito ga ii hito de aru koto wa machigai nai.
(There is no doubt that he is a good person.)

Note

By attaching *koto* to a verb phrase, an adjective phrase, or a sentence, they can be turned into a noun phrase. The *koto* in this use is called a nominalizer. Once a verb

phrase, a sentence, etc. has become a noun phrase, they can be used anywhere a regular noun phrase can occur. For example, it can be the subject, as in KS, Exs.(a) and (e), or the direct object, as in Exs.(b) and (d).

【Related Expression】

No, another nominalizer, indicates that what is nominalized is something the speaker can directly perceive or empathize with, while *koto*, in general, indicates that what is nominalized is something the speaker does not feel close or something the speaker talks about objectively. For example, in KS, *koto* indicates that the speaker is not personally involved in teaching Japanese. In other words, he/she is stating the sentence in objective terms or as a general statement. However, if *no* is used instead of *koto* as in [1], it indicates that the speaker is personally involved in teaching Japanese or is empathetic with it. (⇒ ***no***[3])

[1] 日本語を教えるのは難しいです。
*Nihongo o oshieru **no** wa muzukashiidesu.*
(Teaching Japanese is hard.)

[2] and [3] provide examples in which *no* or *koto* are unacceptable.

K

[2] a. 私は真理が一人で遊ぶ｛の / ×こと｝を見ていた。
*Watashi wa Mari ga hitori de asobu｛**no** / ×**koto**｝o mite ita.*
(I was watching Mari play by herself.)

b. アビーはジョージが洗濯する｛の / ×こと｝を手伝った。
*Abī wa Jōji ga sentaku-suru｛**no** / ×**koto**｝o tetsudatta.*
(Abbie helped George do laundry.)

c. 私は自分の体が震えている｛の / ×こと｝を感じた。
*Watashi wa jibun no karada ga furuete iru｛**no** / ×**koto**｝o kanjita.*
(I felt my body trembling.)

d. お母さんがこんなに心配している｛の / ??こと｝が分からないの？
*O-kāsan ga konna ni shinpai-shite iru｛**no** / ??**koto**｝ga wakaranai no?*
(Don't you understand I am (lit., your mom is) worried this much?)

[3] a. この町ではいい音楽を聞く｛こと / ×の｝ができる。
*Kono machi de wa ii ongaku o kiku｛**koto** / ×**no**｝ga dekiru.*
(You can listen to good music in this town.)

b. 見る｛こと / ×の｝は信じる｛こと / ×の｝だ。
*Miru｛koto / ×no｝wa shinjiru｛**koto** / ×**no**｝da.*
(To see is to believe.)

In some situations, *koto* and *no* are interchangeable, as in [4].

[4] a. すしを作る{こと / の}はそれほど難しくないです。
Sushi o tsukuru { ***koto*** / ***no*** } *wa sore hodo muzukashikunaidesu.*
(Making sushi is not so difficult.)

b. マーティンさんがフランスへ行く{こと / の}を知っていますか。
Mātin-san ga Furansu e iku { ***koto*** / ***no*** } *o shitte imasu ka.*
(Do you know that Martin-san is going to France?)

There are a number of idiomatic phrases with *koto* where *koto* cannot be replaced by *no*. (⇒ ~ ***koto ga aru***[1]; ~ ***koto ga aru***[2]; ~ ***koto ga dekiru***; ~ ***koto ni naru***; ~ ***koto ni suru***)

[5] lists verbs/adjectives and the nominalizer that can be used with them.

[5] a. ~{ *no* / × *koto* } + Prt + V
Verbs used only with *no*:

(を)見る	*(o) miru*	(see)
(が)見える	*(ga) mieru*	(be visible)
(を)聞く	*(o) kiku*	(hear)
(が)聞こえる	*(ga) kikoeru*	(be audible)
(を)感じる	*(o) kanjiru*	(feel)
(を)止める	*(o) tomeru*	(stop (s.t.))
(を)待つ	*(o) matsu*	(wait)
(を)手伝う	*(o) tetsudau*	(help)
(を)見つける	*(o) mitsukeru*	(discover)

b. ~{ *no* / ? *koto* } + Prt + V
Verbs normally used with *no* (using with *koto* is rather unnatural):

(を)ふせぐ	*(o) fusegu*	(protect)

c. ~{ *no* / *koto* } + Prt + V / Adj
Verbs and adjectives used with *no* or *koto*:

(を)知る	*(o) shiru*	(get to know)
(を)忘れる	*(o) wasureru*	(forget)
(に)気がつく	*(ni) ki ga tsuku*	(notice)
(を)思い出す	*(o) omoi-dasu*	(recall)
(を)覚える	*(o) oboeru*	(learn)

(を) 認める	*(o) mitomeru*	(admit)
(を) 避ける	*(o) sakeru*	(avoid)
(を) やめる	*(o) yameru*	(stop)
(を) 後悔する	*(o) kōkai-suru*	(regret)
(が) 分かる	*(ga) wakaru*	(understand)
(が) 好きだ	*(ga) suki da*	(like)
(が) 嫌いだ	*(ga) kirai da*	(dislike)
(が) こわい	*(ga) kowai*	(afraid)
(が) うれしい	*(ga) ureshii*	(happy)
(が) 悲しい	*(ga) kanashii*	(sad)
(が) やさしい	*(ga) yasashii*	(easy)
(が) 難しい	*(ga) muzukashii*	(difficult)

d. ~ { ? *no* / *koto* } + Prt + V

Verbs normally used with *koto* (using with *no* is rather unnatural):

(を) 期待する	*(o) kitai-suru*	(expect)

e. ~ { × *no* / *koto* } + Prt + V

Verbs used only with *koto*:

(を) 信じる	*(o) shinjiru*	(believe)
(を) 勧める	*(o) susumeru*	(advise)
(を) 考える	*(o) kangaeru*	(think)
(を) 頼む	*(o) tanomu*	(ask)
(を) 命じる	*(o) meijiru*	(order)
(が) できる	*(ga) dekiru*	(can do)
(が) ある	*(ga) aru*	(there are/were times when)
(に) する	*(ni) suru*	(decide)
(に) なる	*(ni) naru*	(be decided)
(に) よる	*(ni) yoru*	(be due to)

Incidentally, the difference between *koto* and *no* is apparently due to the difference in the initial sounds *k* and *n*; the velar sound *k* is used to symbolize a harsh,

metallic, impersonal sound and the nasal sound *n* is used to symbolize a soft, warm, personal sound.

(⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 7**. Sound Symbolisms)

~ koto ga aru[1] ～ことがある[1] *phr.*

There was a time when ~.

have V-ed; have experience V-ing; There was a time when ~.

◆ Key Sentences

K

(A)

Splain・past (action)			
私はヨーロッパへ行った *Watashi wa Yōroppa e* ***itta***	こと *koto*	が *ga*	ある / あります。 *aru* / *arimasu*.
(I have been to Europe.)			

(B)

Splain・past (state)			
レタスがとても高かった *Retasu ga totemo* ***takakatta***	こと *koto*	が *ga*	ある / あります。 *aru* / *arimasu*.
(There was a time when lettuce was very expensive.)			

Formation

Splain·past ことがある
koto ga aru

話したことがある (have talked)
hanashita koto ga aru

高かったことがある (There was a time when s.t. was expensive.)
takakatta koto ga aru

静かだったことがある (There was a time when s.t. was quiet.)
shizuka datta koto ga aru

先生だったことがある (There was a time when s.o. was a teacher.)
sensei datta koto ga aru

Examples

(a) 私は日本の中学校で英語を教えたことがあります。
Watashi wa Nihon no chūgakkō de eigo o oshieta koto ga arimasu.
(I have taught English at a junior high school in Japan.)

(b) 島田さんはまだゴルフをしたことがない。
Shimada-san wa mada gorufu o shita koto ga nai.
(Shimada-san hasn't played golf yet.)

(c) 私はロックバンドでギターを弾いていたことがあります。
Watashi wa rokku-bando de gitā o hiite ita koto ga arimasu.
(There was a time when I was playing the guitar in a rock band.)

(d) ジャクソンさんは一時ジャズがとても好きだったことがある。
Jakuson-san wa ichiji jazu ga totemo suki datta koto ga aru.
(At one time Jackson-san liked jazz a lot. (lit., There was a time when Jackson-san liked jazz a lot.))

(e) 私はシェフだったことがあります。
Watashi wa shefu datta koto ga arimasu.
(There was a time when I was a chef.)

K

Notes

1. In general, Splain·past *koto ga aru* expresses the idea that there was a time when someone or something was in some state or did something.

2. More specifically, Splain·past *koto ga aru* can express one's experience, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b). In this case, Splain·past *koto ga aru* is an extended use of the possession expression "A *wa* B *ga aru*," where B is a past action rather than a possessed thing. This extended use of the expression of possession for the expression of experience in Japanese is parallel to that in English, as seen in (1) and (2). (⇒ ***aru***[1]: Note 5)

   (1) [Possession]
   私は車がある。
   Watashi wa *kuruma* ***ga aru.***
   (*I have* a car.)

   (2) [Experience]
   私は[ロシア語を勉強したこと]past action がある。
   Watashi wa *[roshiago o benkyō-shita koto]* past action ***ga aru.***
   (*I have* [studied Russian.] past action)

3. In the Splain·past *koto ga aru* structure, a past adverb can be used in S.

(3) 私は**５年前に**日本へ行った**ことがある**。
*Watashi wa **go-nen mae ni** Nihon e it**ta koto ga aru.***
(I went to Japan five years ago. (lit., I have been to Japan five years ago.))

(3) expresses the ideas "I have been to Japan" and "It was five years ago" at the same time. However, in this usage, the time expressed cannot be too close to the present. For example, (4) is unacceptable.

(4) ×私は**昨日**刺身を食べた**ことがある**。
× *Watashi wa **kinō** sashimi o tabe**ta koto ga aru.***
(lit., I have eaten sashimi yesterday.)

～ koto ga aru[2]　～ことがある[2]　*phr.*

K

There are times when ~.　　There are times when ~.

◆ Key Sentence

Splain・non-past*			
私は電話で３時間以上**話す** *Watashi wa denwa de san-jikan ijō **hanasu***	こと *koto*	が *ga*	ある / あります。 *aru / arimasu.*
(There are times when I talk for more than three hours over the phone.)			

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *no* / *de aru*, respectively.

Formation

(i)　{ Vplain・non-past / Adj(*i*)plain・non-past } ことがある
koto ga aru

話すことがある　(There are times when s.o. talks.)
hanasu koto ga aru

高いことがある　(There are times when s.t. is expensive.)
takai koto ga aru

(ii)　Adj(*na*) なことがある
na koto ga aru

静かなことがある　(There are times when s.t. is quiet.)
shizuka na koto ga aru

(iii) N{の / である}ことがある
N{*no* / *de aru*} *koto ga aru*

先生{の / である}ことがある (There are times when s.o. is a teacher.)
sensei{*no* / *de aru*} *koto ga aru*

Examples

(a) 私は朝ご飯を食べずに学校へ行くことがある。
Watashi wa asa-gohan o tabezu ni gakkō e iku koto ga aru.
(There are times when I go to school without eating breakfast.)

(b) この店のミルクはたまに古いことがある。
Kono mise no miruku wa tamani furui koto ga aru.
(Occasionally there are times when the milk in this store is old.)

(c) 電子書籍はたいていは便利だが、時々不便なこともある。
Denshi-shoseki wa taitei wa benri da ga, tokidoki fuben na koto mo aru.
(E-books are useful in most cases, but there are some times when they are inconvenient.)

(d) 母はスーパーでセールのものを買いすぎることがよくある。
Haha wa sūpā de sēru no mono o kai-sugiru koto ga yoku aru.
(My mother often buys too many sale items at the supermarket.)

(e) ネットにある情報は間違った情報であることがあるので注意しなければならない。
Netto ni aru jōhō wa machigatta jōhō de aru koto ga aru node chūi-shinakereba naranai.
(Because the information on the Internet can sometimes be wrong (lit., there are times when the information on the Internet is wrong information), we must be careful.)

(f) 最近のいわゆる自然食品は本当の自然食品じゃないことがある。
Saikin no iwayuru shizen-shokuhin wa hontō no shizen-shokuhin ja nai koto ga aru.
(There are times these days when so-called natural foods are not genuine natural foods.)

Notes

1. Splain·non-past *koto ga aru* expresses the idea that someone does something, something happens, or something is the case from time to time.

2. Adverbs of frequency such as *tamani* "occasionally," *tokidoki* "sometimes" and *yoku* "often" are sometimes used with this expression, as in Exs.(b)–(d).

～ koto ga dekiru ～ことができる *phr.*

Doing s.t. is possible.

can; be able to do s.t.
【REL. ~*rareru*[2]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (experiencer)		Noun Phrase				
			Vplain・non-past	Nom		
西本さん *Nishimoto-san*	は *wa*	中国語を *chūgokugo o*	**話す** ***hanasu***	こと *koto*	が *ga*	できる / できます。 *dekiru / dekimasu.*
(Nishimoto-san can speak Chinese. (lit., For Nishimoto-san speaking in Chinese is possible.))						

K

Formation

Vplain·non-past ことができる
koto ga dekiru

話すことができる (s.o. can talk)
hanasu koto ga dekiru

Examples

(a) マーフィーさんは日本語で手紙を書くことができる。
Māfī-san wa nihongo de tegami o kaku koto ga dekiru.
(Murphy-san can write letters in Japanese.)

(b) 新幹線に乗れば大阪まで２時間半で行くことができます。
Shinkansen ni noreba Ōsaka made ni-jikan-han de iku koto ga dekimasu.
(If you take a Shinkansen train, you can get to Osaka in two and a half hours.)

(c) 小田は６歳の時、バッハを弾くことができた。
Oda wa roku-sai no toki, Bahha o hiku koto ga dekita.
(Oda was able to play Bach at the age of six.)

Notes

1. Vplain·non-past *koto ga dekiru* is a potential form meaning "can" or "be able to." This potential form involves the "X *wa* Y *ga*" construction, in which X represents the experiencer (i.e., the person who can do something) and Y represents what X can do. *Koto* here is a nominalizer. (⇒ ***koto***[2]; ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

2. If a verb is closely associated with its direct object, "*o* V *koto*" can be deleted, as in (1).

(1) a. アリソンはピアノ(**を弾くこと**)ができる。
*Arison wa piano (**o hiku koto**) ga dekiru.*
(Alison can play the piano.)

b. 岡本さんはロシア語(**を話すこと**)ができる。
*Okamoto-san wa roshiago (**o hanasu koto**) ga dekiru.*
(Okamoto-san can speak Russian.)

The "*o* V *koto*" deletion is unacceptable in the following sentence, however, because there is no close association between the verb and its direct object.

(2) パウエルさんは日本語の新聞{**を読むこと** / ×ø}ができる。
*Paueru-san wa nihongo no shinbun{**o yomu koto** / ×ø} ga dekiru.*
(Powell-san can read Japanese newspapers.)

[Related Expression]

A shorter potential form of verb (i.e., *~rareru*[2]) can replace the longer potential form Vplain·non-past *koto ga dekiru* without a change in meaning. Thus, Exs.(a)–(c) can be rewritten as [1a]–[1c], respectively.

[1] a. マーフィーさんは日本語で手紙が**書ける**。
*Māfī-san wa nihongo de tegami ga **kakeru**.*

b. 新幹線に乗れば大阪まで２時間半で**行ける**。
*Shinkansen ni noreba Ōsaka made ni-jikan-han de **ikeru**.*

c. 小田は６歳の時、バッハ{が / を}**弾けた**。
*Oda wa roku-sai no toki, Bahha{ga / o} **hiketa**.*

Basically the shorter potential form is more colloquial and less formal than the longer one.

In the majority of cases the shorter version and the longer version are interchangeable. However, only the shorter one can be used when it conveys a special meaning, as in [2], and when the situation is urgent, as in [3].

[2] a. この店のすしはなかなか{いける / ×いくことができる}よ。
*Kono mise no sushi wa nakanaka{**ikeru** / × **iku koto ga dekiru**} yo.*
(The sushi at this restaurant is quite tasty.)

b. 今度の課長は{話せる / ×話すことができる}ね。
*Kondo no kachō wa{**hanaseru** / × **hanasu koto ga dekiru**} ne.*
(Our new section chief is very understanding (lit., can talk to), isn't he?)

c. 彼女は{できる / ×することができる}よ。
*Kanojo wa{**dekiru** / × **suru koto ga dekiru**} yo.*
(She is capable, you know.)

[3] [To a person who fell down]
あ、大丈夫ですか。{起きられます / ??起きることができます}か。
A, daijōbu desu ka. { ***Okiraremasu*** / ??***Okiru koto ga dekimasu*** } *ka.*
(Oh, are you okay? Can you stand up?)

～ koto ni naru ～ことになる *phr.*

Some decision or arrangement to do something is made.

be decided that ~; be arranged that ~; be supposed to do s.t.
【REL. ~ ***koto ni suru***】

K

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic			Vplain・non-past	Nom		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	大阪に *Ōsaka ni*	転勤する ***tenkin-suru***	こと *koto*	に *ni*	なった / なりました。 *natta / narimashita.*
(I'm going to be transferred to Osaka. (lit., It has been decided that I will transfer to Osaka.))						

(B)

Topic			Vplain・non-past	Nom		
ロスさん *Rosu-san*	は *wa*	1時にここへ *ichi-ji ni koko e*	来る ***kuru***	こと *koto*	に *ni*	なっている / います。 *natte iru / imasu.*
(Ross-san is supposed to be here at one o'clock.)						

Formation

Vplain·non-past ことに{なる / なった}
koto ni { *naru* / *natta* }

話すことに{なる / なった} (it { will be / has been } decided that s.o. will talk)
hanasu koto ni { *naru* / *natta* }

Examples

(a) 私は来月からシンガポールの会社に勤めることになりました。
Watashi wa raigetsu kara Shingapōru no kaisha ni tsutomeru koto ni narimashita.
(I'm going to work for an Singapore company (lit., It has been decided that I will be employed at an Singapore company) beginning next month.)

(b) 来年６月に結婚することになりました。
Rainen roku-gatsu ni kekkon-suru koto ni narimashita.
(It's been arranged that I will get married next June.)

(c) 今年はスピーチコンテストをしないことになった。
Kotoshi wa supīchi-kontesuto o shinai koto ni natta.
(It's been decided that we won't have a speech contest this year.)

(d) 今日山田先生に会うことになっています。
Kyō Yamada-sensei ni au koto ni natte imasu.
(I'm supposed to meet Prof. Yamada today.)

(e) 日本では、車は道の左側を走ることになっている。
Nihon de wa, kuruma wa michi no hidarigawa o hashiru koto ni natte iru.
(In Japan cars are supposed to be driven (lit., run) on the left side of the street.)

K

Notes

1. The phrase *koto ni naru* consists of the nominalizer *koto*, the direction particle *ni* (= *ni* [7]) and the verb *naru* "become." Vplain·non-past *koto ni naru* is basically used when some decision or arrangement is made by some unspecified agent.

2. In some situations, Vplain·non-past *koto ni naru* is used when the speaker knows who has made the decision, but wants to make the decision maker unknown for some reason. For example, the speaker may say the sentence in (1) when the decision maker is himself/herself, but he/she does not want to take a responsibility for the decision.

   (1) 来月の会議は全部オンラインでやることになりました。
   Raigetsu no kaigi wa zenbu onrain de yaru ***koto ni narimashita.***
   (It's been decided that all the meetings next month will be online.)

3. If a decision or an arrangement is made not to do something, the negative form of the verb is used before *koto ni naru*, as in Ex.(c).

4. *Koto ni natte iru*, as in KS(B), Exs.(d) and (e), indicates that some decision or arrangement was made at some point in the past and that that decision/arrangement is still in effect, sometimes to the extent that it has become a rule or a custom, as in Ex.(e).

~ koto ni suru ～ことにする *phr.*

Someone makes a decision or resolution to do s.t.

decide to do s.t.
【REL. ~ *koto ni kimeru*; ~ *koto ni naru*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic			Vplain・non-past	Nom		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	会社を *kaisha o*	**辞める** ***yameru***	こと *koto*	に *ni*	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(I decided to quit my company.)						

(B)

Topic			Vplain・non-past	Nom		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	毎日30分ぐらい運動を *mai-nichi sanjup-pun gurai undō o*	**する** ***suru***	こと *koto*	に *ni*	している / います。 *shite iru / imasu.*
(I make it a rule to exercise for about 30 minutes every day.)						

Formation

Vplain·non-past ことに{する / した}
koto ni{suru / shita}

話すことに{する / した} ((I) {have just decided / have decided} to talk)
hanasu koto ni{suru / shita}

Examples

(a) 留学の計画について先生と相談することにします。
Ryūgaku no keikaku ni tsuite sensei to sōdan-suru koto ni shimasu.
(I'll talk (lit., I've just decided to talk) to my teacher about my plan to study abroad.)

(b) 京都まではバスで行くことにしましょう。
Kyōto made wa basu de iku koto ni shimashō.
(Let's (lit., decide to) go as far as Kyoto by bus.)

(c) 今年の夏は北海道を旅行することにした。
Kotoshi no natsu wa Hokkaidō o ryokō-suru koto ni shita.
(I've decided to make a trip in Hokkaido this summer.)

(d) 毎日漢字を 10 個覚えることにしました。
Mai-nichi kanji o juk-ko oboeru koto ni shimashita.
(I've decided to memorize ten kanji every day.)

(e) 私は肉をあまり食べないことにしている。
Watashi wa niku o amari tabenai koto ni shite iru.
(I make it a rule not to eat very much meat.)

Notes

1. The phrase *koto ni suru* consists of the nominalizer *koto*, the direction particle *ni* (= *ni* [7]) and the verb *suru*[4] "make" or "change." Vplain·non-past *koto ni suru* is a more complex version of N *ni suru* "decide on N." (⇒ ~ ***ni suru***)

2. *Koto ni suru* is used in several different patterns, including *koto ni suru*, *koto ni shita* and *koto ni shite iru*. *Koto ni suru* is used when the speaker has just made a decision or resolution to do something, as in Exs.(a) and (b), while *koto ni shita* is used when someone made a decision or resolution to do something some time before the moment of speech and the decision is still in effect, as in KS(A), Exs.(c) and (d). (1) and (2) present additional examples. Note that a third person cannot be used with *koto ni suru*, as in (1b).

(1) a. 今日から毎日泳ぐことにします。
Kyō kara mai-nichi oyogu ***koto ni shimasu.***
(I'll swim (lit., I've just decided to swim) every day starting today.)

b. ??藤田さんは今日から毎日泳ぐことにします。
??*Fujita-san wa kyō kara mai-nichi oyogu* ***koto ni shimasu.***
(*Intended meaning*: Fujita-san has just decided to swim every day starting today.)

(2) a. 来週から毎日泳ぐことにしました。
Raishū kara mai-nichi oyogu ***koto ni shimashita.***
(I've decided to swim every day starting next week.)

b. 藤田さんは来週から毎日泳ぐことにしました。
Fujita-san wa raishū kara mai-nichi oyogu ***koto ni shimashita.***
(Fujita-san has decided to swim every day starting next week.)

Koto ni shite iru is used when someone made a decision or resolution to do something some time before the moment of speech and that action has become the person's routine activity, as in KS(B) and Ex.(e). (3) provides additional examples.

(3) a. 健康のために毎日泳ぐことにしています。
Kenkō no tame ni mai-nichi oyogu ***koto ni shite imasu.***
(I make it a practice to swim every day for my health.)

b. 藤田さんは健康のために毎日泳ぐ**ことにしています**。
Fujita-san wa kenkō no tame ni mai-nichi oyogu ***koto ni shite imasu.***
(Fujita-san makes it a practice to swim every day for her health.)

3. If one decides not to do something, the negative form of the verb is used before *koto ni suru* as in (4).

(4) パーティーに行くつもりでしたが、頭が痛いので**行かない**ことにしました。
Pātī ni iku tsumori deshita ga, atama ga itai node ***ikanai*** *koto ni shimashita.*
(I was planning to go to the party, but I've decided not to because I have a headache.)

【Related Expressions】

K

I. Both *koto ni naru* and *koto ni suru* are used to express decisions. The difference is that *koto ni suru* indicates that the decision maker is the actor (i.e., the person who takes an action according to the decision) whereas *koto ni naru* indicates that the decision maker is someone other than the actor or that the actor is not the sole decision maker, as in [1] and [2].

[1] a. 来週の会議はオンラインですることにした。
Raishū no kaigi wa onrain de suru ***koto ni shita.***
(We/I have decided to have next week's meeting online.)

b. 来週の会議はオンラインですることになった。
Raishū no kaigi wa onrain de suru ***koto ni natta.***
(It's been decided that we will have next week's meeting online.)

[2] a. ジョシュはニコラと別れることにした。
Joshu wa Nikora to wakareru ***koto ni shita.***
(Josh has decided to break up with Nicola.)

b. ジョシュはニコラと別れることになった。
Joshu wa Nikora to wakareru ***koto ni natta.***
(It's been decided that Josh will break up with Nicola.)

For the above reason, when someone has made a resolution to do something, in which case who has made that resolution is an important part of the information, *koto ni suru* is used, as in [3]. Here, *koto ni naru* is unnatural.

[3] 私はたばこをやめることに{しました / ??なりました}。
Watashi wa tabako o yameru koto ni {***shimashita*** / ??***narimashita***}.
(I've decided to quit smoking.)

On the other hand, if the decision maker is not the actor, *koto ni suru* cannot be used. For example, in [4], *koto ni suru* is not appropriate because a company employee's transfer is not something he/she can decide on his/her own.

[4] 私は大阪に転勤することに{**なりました** / ??**しました**}。
Watashi wa Ōsaka ni tenkin-suru koto ni {***narimashita*** / ??***shimashita***}.
(I'm going to be transferred to Osaka. (lit., It has been decided that I will transfer to Osaka.))

(⇒ ***~ koto ni naru***)

II. *Koto ni suru* and *koto ni kimeru* "determine to do s.t." are essentially the same in meaning. However, *koto ni suru* can be used when the speaker makes an on-the-spot decision (i.e., "I've decided to ~"), but *koto ni kimeru* cannot in such situations, as in [5].

[5] 私は会社を辞めることに{**します** / ??**決めます**}。
Watashi wa kaisha o yameru koto ni {***shimasu*** / ??***kimemasu***}.
(I'll quit my company. (lit., I've decided to quit my company.))

Additionally, *koto ni suru* is more natural in casual speech, and *koto ni kimeru* is natural when the speaker makes an important decision in a decisive manner.

K

~ koto wa ～ことは *phr.*

Speaking of proposition X, X is certainly true.

do ~ (but ~); indeed ~ (but ~); indeed ~ alright, (but ~)

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Predicate 1					Predicate 2
		V_1 plain			V_2		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	テニスを *tenisu o*	する ***suru***	ことは *koto wa*	する / します ***suru / shimasu***	が *ga*	上手じゃない / ないです。 *jōzu ja nai / naidesu.*
(I do play tennis, but I am not good at it.)							

Formation

(i) { V_1plain / Adj(*i*)$_1$plain } ことは { V_2 / Adj(*i*)$_2$ }
koto wa (where $V_1 = V_2$; Adj(*i*)$_1$ = Adj(*i*)$_2$)

話すことは { 話す / 話します } (s.o. does talk)
hanasu koto wa { hanasu / hanashimasu }

話したことは { 話した / 話しました } (s.o. did talk)
hanashita koto wa { hanashita / hanashimashita }

高いことは高い(です) (s.t. *is* expensive)
takai koto wa takai(desu)

高かったことは高かった(です) (s.t. *was* expensive)
takakatta koto wa takakatta(desu)

(ii) { Adj(*na*)$_1$ なこと / N_1 } は { Adj(*na*)$_2$ / N_2 } { だ / です }
na koto *wa* { *da* / *desu* }
(where Adj(*na*)$_1$ = Adj(*na*)$_2$; $N_1 = N_2$)

静かなことは静か { だ / です } (s.t. *is* quiet)
shizuka na koto wa shizuka { da / desu }

休みは休み { だ / です } (s.t. *is* a holiday)
yasumi wa yasumi { da / desu }

(iii) { Adj(*na*)$_1$ / N_1 } だったことは { Adj(*na*)$_2$ / N_2 } { だった / でした }
datta koto wa { *datta* / *deshita* }
(where Adj(*na*)$_1$ = Adj(*na*)$_2$; $N_1 = N_2$)

静かだったことは静か { だった / でした } (s.t. *was* quiet)
shizuka data koto wa shizuka { datta / deshita }

休みだったことは休み { だった / でした } (s.t. *was* a holiday)
yasumi datta koto wa yasumi { datta / deshita }

K

Examples

(a) トーマスさんは日本語を話すことは話しますが、簡単なことしか言えません。
Tōmasu-san wa nihongo o hanasu koto wa hanashimasu ga, kantan na koto shika iemasen.
(Thomas-san does speak Japanese, but he can say only simple things.)

(b) ボストン交響楽団のチケットは買えたことは買えましたが、いい席ではなかったです。
Bosuton Kōkyōgakudan no chiketto wa kaeta koto wa kaemashita ga, ii seki de wa nakattadesu.
(I was able to buy a ticket for the Boston Symphony alright, but it wasn't a good seat.)

(c) この店は安いことは安いですが、ものがよくないです。
Kono mise wa yasui koto wa yasui desu ga, mono ga yokunaidesu.
(This store is inexpensive alright, but its goods are of poor quality.)

(d) 今日の試験は難しかったことは難しかったが、よくできたと思う。
Kyō no shiken wa muzukashikatta koto wa muzukashikatta ga, yoku dekita to omou.
(Today's exam was indeed difficult, but I think I did well on it.)

(e) 私のアパートは駅に近くて便利なことは便利ですが、家賃がとても高いです。
Watashi no apāto wa eki ni chikakute benri na koto wa benri desu ga, yachin ga totemo takaidesu.
(My apartment is close to the station and convenient alright, but the rent is very high.)

(f) その人が好きだったことは好きでしたが、結婚はしませんでした。
Sono hito ga suki datta koto wa suki deshita ga, kekkon wa shimasendeshita.
(I did like him/her, but I didn't marry him/her.)

(g) 明日は休みは休みですが、仕事がたくさんあるので家で仕事をします。
Ashita wa yasumi wa yasumi desu ga, shigoto ga takusan aru node ie de shigoto o shimasu.
(Tomorrow *is* a holiday, but I have a lot of work, so I'll work at home.)

(h) あの人は、いい人だったことはいい人だったけれど、頑固だったね。
Ano hito wa, ii hito datta koto wa ii hito datta keredo, ganko datta ne.
(He was indeed a good person, but he was stubborn, wasn't he?)

Notes

1. In this construction, when the final predicate (= Predicate 2) is in the past tense, the first predicate (= Predicate 1) can be in either the past tense or the non-past tense, as in (1) and (2).

   (1) ボストン交響楽団のチケットは{**買えた / 買える**}ことは**買えましたが**、いい席ではなかったです。(cf. Ex.(b))
   *Bosuton Kōkyōgakudan no chiketto wa{**kaeta / kaeru**}koto wa **kaemashita** ga, ii seki de wa nakattadesu.*

   (2) 今日の試験は{**難しかった / 難しい**}ことは**難しかった**が、よくできたと思う。(cf. Ex.(d))
   *Kyō no shiken wa{**muzukashikatta / muzukashii**}koto wa **muzukashikatta** ga, yoku dekita to omou.*

2. The predicate before *koto wa* (= Predicate 1) is normally in the plain form even if the final predicate (= Predicate 2) is in the polite form.

3. This construction is usually followed by a disjunctive conjunction such as *ga* "but," *keredo* "but; although" and *shikashi* "but."

～ kudasai ～ください *aux. v. (imperative form)*

an auxiliary verb that indicates a polite command or a request

Please do s.t.

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	V*te*	
日本語で *Nihongo de*	書いて ***kaite***	ください。 *kudasai.*
(Please write in Japanese.)		

(B)

	Vneg (Gr. 1) / Vstem (Gr. 2)		
英語を *Eigo o*	使わ ***tsukawa***	ないで *naide*	ください。 *kudasai.*
(Please don't use English.)			

(C)

		V*masu*	
この部屋でしばらく *Kono heya de shibaraku*	お *o-*	待ち ***machi***	ください。 *kudasai.*
(Please wait in this room for a while.)			

Formation

(i) V*te* ください
kudasai

話してください (Please talk.)
hanashite kudasai

(ii) Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg ないでください
naide kudasai

話さないでください (Please don't talk.)
hanasanaide kudasai

Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem ないでください
naide kudasai

寝ないでください (Please don't sleep.)
nenaide kudasai

Irr. verbs: 来る → 来ないでください (Please don't come.)
kuru *konaide kudasai*

する → しないでください (Please don't do s.t.)
suru *shinaide kudasai*

(iii) お V*masu* ください
o *kudasai*

お話しください (Please tell (me).)
o-hanashi kudasai

Examples

(a) その報告書は金曜日までに出してください。
Sono hōkokusho wa kin'yōbi made ni dashite kudasai.
(Please submit that report by Friday.)

(b) 授業に遅れないでください。
Jugyō ni okurenaide kudasai.
(Please don't be late for class.)

(c) どうぞお座りください。
Dōzo o-suwari kudasai.
(Would you please sit down.)

K

Notes

1. *Kudasai* is the polite imperative form of *kudasaru*, the honorific version of *kureru* "give (me)," and is used as an auxiliary verb with the *te*-form of verbs or the *naide* form of verbs. (⇒ ***kureru***[2])

2. When the speaker is in a stronger position than the listener (e.g., a teacher vs. his/her students; a doctor vs. his/her patient; a police officer vs. a traffic violator), ~ *kudasai* is a command rather than a request.

3. When used as a request, ~ *kudasai* is a very direct request; therefore, the situations that allow its use are rather limited. (1) presents examples. As (1b) shows, the final particle *ne* softens the directness of the request.

(1) a. [In a class]
先生、宿題をもう少し減らしてください。
Sensei, shukudai o mō sukoshi herashite ***kudasai.***
(Professor, please reduce the amount of homework.)

b. [At a party]
このケーキの作り方、私にも教えてくださいね。
*Kono kēki no tsukuri-kata, watashi ni mo oshiete **kudasai** ne.*
(Please give me the recipe for this cake (lit., teach me how to make this cake), too, will you?)

4. *Dōzo* emphasizes the speaker's request and makes it more polite, as in (2).

(2) a. どうぞ教えてください。
***Dōzo** oshiete kudasai.*
(Please tell me.)

b. どうぞこのボランティアを辞めないでください。
***Dōzo** kono borantia o yamenaide kudasai.*
(Please don't quit this volunteer work.)

5. *O-*V*masu kudasai* is used to express a very polite command or request, as in KS(C) and Ex.(c).

K

6. In casual speech, *kudasai* drops, as in (3).

(3) a. 早く来て。
*Hayaku **kite**.*
(Come quickly.)

b. まだ帰らないで。
*Mada kaera**naide**.*
(Don't go home yet.)

7. In order to make a request more polite, a negative polite question with *kureru* or *kudasaru* (i.e., *kuremasen ka* or *kudasaimasen ka*) can be used instead of *kudasai*, as in (4). In fact, *kudasaimasen ka* is a very polite request form.

(4) 明日８時に来て{くれませんか / くださいませんか}。
*Ashita hachi-ji ni kite{**kuremasen ka / kudasaimasen ka**}.*
(Would you come at eight o'clock tomorrow? / Would you please come at eight o'clock tomorrow?)

kurai くらい *prt.*

a particle that indicates an approximate quantity or extent

approximately; about
【REL. ***-goro***; ***hodo***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Number + Counter		
東京からサンフランシスコまで飛行機で *Tōkyō kara Sanfuranshisuko made hikōki de*	**９時間** ***ku-jikan***	くらい *kurai*	かかる / かかります。 *kakaru / kakarimasu.*
(It takes about nine hours by plane (to go) from Tokyo to San Francisco.)			

(B)

Noun			
アリソンさん ***Arison-san***	(と同じ) *(to onaji)*	くらい *kurai*	ピアノが弾けるようになりたい / たいです。 *piano ga hikeru yō ni nari-tai / taidesu.*
(I want to become able to play the piano as well as Alison-san (lit., at about the same level as Alison-san).)			

K

Formation

(i) Number (+ Counter) くらい
kurai

4 冊くらい (about four volumes)
yon-satsu kurai

100 くらい (about a hundred)
hyaku kurai

(ii) N(と同じ)くらい
(to onaji) kurai

日本(と同じ)くらい (about the size/level/etc. of Japan)
Nihon (to onaji) kurai

(iii) Demonstrative { pronoun / adjective } くらい
kurai

{これ / この} くらい (about this much)
{*kore / kono*} *kurai*

{どれ / どの} くらい (about how much?)
{*dore / dono*} *kurai*

(iv) Interrogative pronoun くらい
kurai

いくらくらい (about how much?)
ikura kurai

Examples

(a) ロバーツさんは京都に４か月くらい行っていた。
Robātsu-san wa Kyōto ni yon-kagetsu kurai itte ita.
(Roberts-san was in Kyoto for about four months.)

(b) A: このあたりの家はいくらくらいですか。
Kono atari no ie wa ikura kurai desu ka.
(About how much are houses in this area?)
B: よく知りませんが、たぶん５千万円くらいでしょう。
Yoku shirimasen ga, tabun gosenman-en kurai deshō.
(I don't know well, but they are probably about fifty million yen.)

(c) オーストリアは北海道くらいの大きさです。
Ōsutoria wa Hokkaidō kurai no ōki-sa desu.
(Austria is about the size of Hokkaido.)

K

(d) 大学院を終わってから２年間、全然仕事が見つからなかった。あの時くらいつらかったことはない。
Daigakuin o owatte kara ni-nenkan, zenzen shigoto ga mitsukaranakatta. Ano toki kurai tsurakatta koto wa nai.
(I couldn't find any job for two years after I finished my graduate school. There has been no time as hard as that time.)

(e) ワンさんぐらい英語と日本語ができればいいのですが。
Wan-san gurai eigo to nihongo ga dekireba ii no desu ga.
(I wish I could speak English and Japanese as well as Wang-san (lit., at about the level of Wang-san).)

(f) 私でもそれぐらいのことは分かりますよ。
Watashi demo sore gurai no koto wa wakarimasu yo.
(Even I can understand that sort of thing (lit., things of that extent).)

Notes

1. In Exs.(e) and (f), *gurai* is used instead of *kurai*. The meaning is the same as *kurai*.

2. When *kurai* is used with a number with or without a counter, it means "approximately," as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b).

3. *Kurai* can also be used with *sukoshi* and *chotto*, both of which mean "a few" or "a little," as in (1).

(1) 少しくらい文法を間違っても心配する必要はありません。
Sukoshi kurai *bunpō o machigattemo shinpai-suru hitsuyō wa ari-masen.*
(You don't have to worry if you make just a few mistakes in grammar.)

4. N *kurai* is used to mean "about the same size, degree, etc. as that of N," as in KS(B) and Exs.(c)–(e). N *kurai* is also used to mean "at least," as in (2). This use of N *kurai* is not a shortened form of N *to onaji kurai*.

(2) [Mother to her son]
忙しくても時々**電話くらい**しなさいね。
Isogashikutemo tokidoki ***denwa kurai*** *shi-nasai ne.*
(Even if you're busy, at least give us a call from time to time, OK?)

kureru[1] くれる[1] *v. (Gr. 2)*

K

S.o. whose status is not higher than the speaker's gives s.t. to the speaker or to s.o. with whom the speaker empathizes.

give
【REL. *ageru*[1]; *morau*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Indirect Object		Direct Object		
大川さん *Ōkawa-san*	は *wa*	(私 ***(watashi***	に) *ni)*	**本** ***hon***	を *o*	くれた / くれました。 *kureta / kuremashita.*
(Okawa-san gave me a book.)						

Examples

(a) A: エドは(あなたに)何をくれましたか。
Edo wa (anata ni) nani o kuremashita ka.
(What did Ed give to you?)

B: ペンダントをくれました。
Pendanto o kuremashita.
(He gave me a pendant.)

(b) 内村さんは私の娘にチョコレートをくれた。
Uchimura-san wa watashi no musume ni chokorēto o kureta.
(Uchimura-san gave my daughter chocolates.)

Notes

1. *Kureru*, which is one of a set of giving and receiving verbs, means "give." Unlike the English *give*, however, *kureru* is used only when the receiver is the first person or someone with whom the speaker empathizes (e.g., the speaker's child, pet, etc.). For example, (1) is unacceptable unless the speaker empathizes with Ito-san.

   (1) 川口さんは伊藤さんにコンサートのチケットをくれた。
   Kawaguchi-san wa Itō-san ni konsāto no chiketto o kureta.
   (Kawaguchi-san gave Ito-san a concert ticket.)

2. When the giver is the first person, *kureru* cannot be used.

   (2) ×私は中島さんにイタリアのワインをくれた。
   × *Watashi wa Nakajima-san ni Itaria no wain o* ***kureta.***
   (*Intended meaning*: I gave Nakajima-san Italian wine.)

   In this case, *ageru* must be used, as in (3).

K

   (3) 私は中島さんにイタリアのワインをあげた。
   Watashi wa Nakajima-san ni Itaria no wain o ***ageta.***
   (I gave Nakajima-san Italian wine.)

   Note that when the subject is the speaker, *kureru* sentences are not grammatical even if the receiver is someone the speaker empathizes with, as in (4).

   (4) ×私は兄さんにチョコレートをくれた。
   × *Watashi wa nī-san ni chokorēto o* ***kureta.***
   (*Intended meaning*: I gave my elder brother chocolates.)

   The reason for this is as follows: *Kureru* requires the receiver's point of view when describing an event, and when an event involves the first person, the event is normally described from the first person's point of view. Therefore, if the first person is the giver in *kureru* sentences, a viewpoint conflict arises, making the sentences ungrammatical. (In this case, *ageru* must be used.)

3. The honorific version of *kureru* is *kudasaru* (Gr. 1 verb). The *masu*-form is not *kudasarimasu*, but *kudasaimasu*, as in (5).

   (5) 先生は(私に)本をくださいました。
   Sensei wa (watashi ni) hon o ***kudasaimashita.***
   (My teacher gave me a book.)

4. The indirect object is often omitted if it refers to the speaker in declarative sentences or to the listener in interrogative sentences. (See KS and Ex.(a).)

[Related Expressions]

I. *Ageru* also means "give." However, *ageru* and *kureru* are used in different situations; that is, *ageru* is used when the speaker takes the giver's point of view (i.e., the object to be given is transferred in the direction away from the giver), while *kureru* is used when the speaker takes the receiver's point of view (i.e., the object to be given is transferred in the direction toward the receiver.). Some examples of *ageru* are provided in [1].

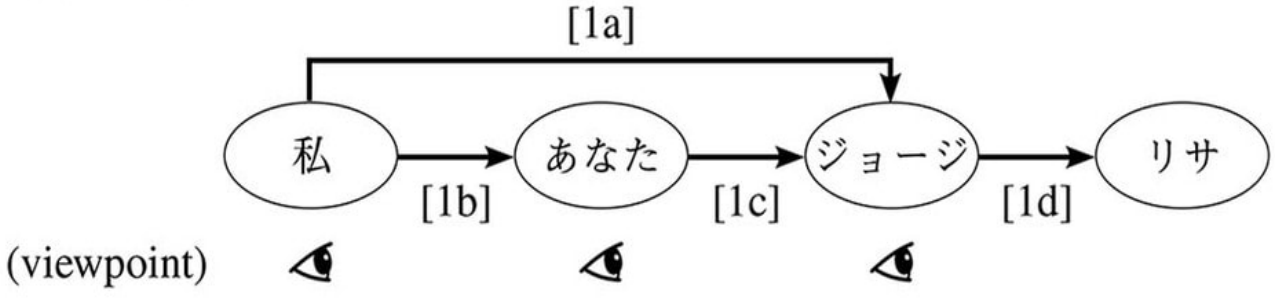
[1] a. (私は) ジョージにTシャツを**あげました**。[Viewpoint = 私]
(Watashi wa) Jōji ni tī-shatsu o ***agemashita.***
(I gave George a T-shirt.)

b. (私は) (あなたに) このCDを**あげます**。[Viewpoint = 私]
(Watashi wa) (anata ni) kono shīdī o ***agemasu.***
(I'll give this CD to you.)

c. (あなたは) ジョージに何を**あげましたか**。[Viewpoint = あなた]
(Anata wa) Jōji ni nani o ***agemashita*** *ka.*
(What did you give to George?)

d. ジョージはリサにスカーフを**あげました**。[Viewpoint = ジョージ]
Jōji wa Risa ni sukāfu o ***agemashita.***
(George gave Lisa a scarf.)

あげる *ageru*:



In [1a]–[1c], *kureru* cannot be used. *Kureru* can be used in [1d], but only when Lisa is psychologically very close to the speaker (i.e., the speaker is empathetic with Lisa), in which case, the speaker takes Lisa's point of view.

Next, examples of *kureru* are provided in [2]. Here, *ageru* cannot be used.

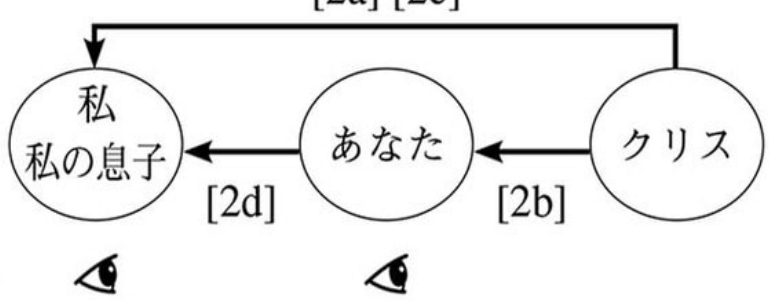
[2] a. クリスは (私に) Tシャツを**くれました**。[Viewpoint = 私]
Kurisu wa (watashi ni) tī-shatsu o ***kuremashita.***
(Chris gave me a T-shirt.)

b. クリスは (あなたに) 何を**くれましたか**。[Viewpoint = あなた]
Kurisu wa (anata ni) nani o ***kuremashita*** *ka.*
(What did Chris give you?)

c. クリスは<u>私の息子</u>におもちゃを**くれました**。[Viewpoint = 私の息子]
*Kurisu wa <u>watashi no musuko</u> ni omocha o **kuremashita**.*
(Chris gave my son a toy.)

d. 去年のバレンタインデーに（あなたは）（<u>私</u>に）チョコレートを**くれましたね**。とてもうれしかったです。[Viewpoint = 私]
*Kyonen no Barentaindē ni (anata wa) (<u>watashi</u> ni) chokorēto o **kuremashita** ne. Totemo ureshikattadesu.*
(You gave me chocolate last Valentine's Day. I was very happy.)

くれる *kureru*：



K

Below are some general principles regarding the point of view:

(i) When a situation involves the speaker, it is usually described from the speaker's point of view.

(ii) When a situation does not involve the speaker but involves the listener, the situation is usually described from the listener's point of view.

(iii) When a situation does not involve the speaker but involves someone pscychologically very close to the speaker (e.g., a member of the speaker's in-group), the situation is usually described from that person's point of view.

(⇒ ***ageru***[1]; **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 8**. Viewpoint)

II. *Morau* is similar to *kureru* in that both verbs are used when giving-receiving situations are described from the receiver's point of view. The difference is that the subjects of *morau* sentences are the receivers, while the subjects of *kureru* sentences are the givers. Compare the sentences in [3] with those in [2].

[3] a. （私は）クリスにTシャツを**もらいました**。[Viewpoint = 私]
*(Watashi wa) Kurisu ni tī-shatsu o **moraimashita**.*
(I got a T-shirt from Chris.)

b. (あなたは) クリスに何を**もらいましたか**。[Viewpoint = あなた]
(Anata wa) Kurisu ni nani o ***moraimashita*** *ka.*
(What did you get from Chris?)

c. 私の息子はクリスにおもちゃを**もらいました**。[Viewpoint = 私の息子]
Watashi no musuko wa Kurisu ni omocha o ***moraimashita.***
(My son got a toy from Chris.)

(⇒ ***morau***[1])

kureru[2]　くれる[2]　*aux. v. (Gr. 2)*

K

S.o. does s.t. as a favor for the speaker or for s.o. with whom the speaker empathizes.

do s.t. (for me or s.o.); do (me or s.o.) a favor by doing s.t.

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Indirect Object: Favor Recipient		Direct Object		V*te*	
父 *Chichi*	は *wa*	(私 ***(watashi***	に) *ni)*	カメラ ***kamera***	を *o*	買って ***katte***	くれた / くれました。 *kureta / kuremashita.*
(My father bought me a camera.)							

(B)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object: Favor Recipient		V*te*	
信行 *Nobuyuki*	は *wa*	私 ***watashi***	を *o*	なぐさめて ***nagusamete***	くれた / くれました。 *kureta / kuremashita.*
(Nobuyuki consoled me.)					

(C)

Topic (subject)			Direct Object				Vte	
			Favor Recipient		Noun			
私の彼女 *Watashi no kanojo*	は *wa*	時々 *tokidoki*	**私** ***watashi***	の *no*	**部屋** ***heya***	を *o*	**掃除して** ***sōji-shite***	くれる / くれます。 *kureru* / *kuremasu*.
(My girlfriend sometimes cleans my room for me.)								

(D)

Topic (subject)		Favor Recipient		Direct Object		Vte	
友達 *Tomodachi*	は *wa*	**私** ***watashi***	のために *no tame ni*	パーティー ***pātī***	を *o*	して ***shite***	くれた / くれました。 *kureta* / *kuremashita*.
(My friends held a party for me.)							

K

Formation

Vte くれる
kureru

話してくれる (s.o. { will talk / talks } for my sake)
hanashite kureru

Examples

(a) 母は(私に)ケーキを焼いてくれた。
Haha wa (watashi ni) kēki o yaite kureta.
(My mother baked a cake for me.)

(b) ウォーカーさんは私の娘に英語を教えてくれている。
Wōkā-san wa watashi no musume ni eigo o oshiete kurete iru.
(Walker-san is kindly teaching my daughter English.)

(c) 子供たちは母の日に(あなたに)何をしてくれましたか。
Kodomo-tachi wa haha no hi ni (anata ni) nani o shite kuremashita ka.
(What did your children do for you on Mother's Day?)

(d) クラスメートが私をはげましてくれた。
Kurasumēto ga watashi o hagemashite kureta.
(My classmates cheered me up.)

(e) 姉は私の宿題を手伝ってくれました。
Ane wa watashi no shukudai o tetsudatte kuremashita.
(My elder sister helped me with my homework.)

(f) リンさんは私のために祈ってくれた。
Rin-san wa watashi no tame ni inotte kureta.
(Lynn-san prayed for me.)

Notes

1. *Kureru* is used as an auxiliary verb with V*te*. The meaning of V*te kureru* is "someone does the speaker (or someone with whom the speaker empathizes) a favor by doing something." Like sentences with *kureru* as a main verb, sentences with V*te kureru* are stated from the viewpoint of the person who receives the favor. Thus, (1a) is grammatical, but (1b) is not. (⇒ ***kureru***[1])

(1) a. 姉は私に弁当を作ってくれた。
Ane wa watashi ni bentō o tsukutte kureta.
(My elder sister fixed a boxed lunch for me.)

b. × 私は姉に弁当を作ってくれた。
× *Watashi wa ane ni bentō o tsukutte kureta.*
(*Intended meaning*: I fixed a boxed lunch for my elder sister.)

(1b) is ungrammatical because of the following reason: When the speaker is involved in a giving-receiving situation, the situation must be described from the speaker's point of view. However, *kureru* requires the viewpoint of the favor recipient (in this case, *ane* "my elder sister"). Thus, the viewpoint conflict takes place in (1b). In order to make (1b) grammatical, *ageru* must be used, as in (2). (⇒ ***ageru***[2])

(2) 私は姉に弁当を作って**あげた**。
Watashi wa ane ni bentō o tsukutte ***ageta***.
(I fixed a boxed lunch for my elder sister.)

2. There are four sentence patterns in terms of the marker of the benefit recipient (= X).

(A) X *ni*: The benefit recipient is marked by *ni* when something is transferred to the benefit recipient as the result of the benefactor's action, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b). The benefit recipient is also marked by *ni* when what kind of favor the benefit recipient receives is unknown, as in Ex.(c).

(B) X *o*: The benefit recipient is marked by *o* when the benefit recipient is the direct object of the benefactor's action, as in KS(B) and Ex.(d). The following sentences are ungrammatical:

(3) a. ×信行は私になぐさめてくれた。(cf. KS(B))
×*Nobuyuki wa watashi* ***ni*** *nagusamete kureta.*

b. ×クラスメートが私にはげましてくれた。(cf. Ex.(d))
×*Kurasumēto ga watashi* ***ni*** *hagemashite kureta.*

(C) X *no*: The benefit recipient is marked by *no* when the benefactor acts on the benefit recipient's belonging, as in KS(C) and Ex.(e).

(D) X *no tame ni*: In other cases, the benefit recipient is marked by *no tame ni* "for the sake of," as in KS(D) and Ex.(f). The following sentences are ungrammatical.

(4) a. ×友達は私にパーティーをしてくれた。(cf. KS(D))
×*Tomodachi wa watashi* ***ni*** *pātī o shite kureta.*

b. ×リンさんは私に祈ってくれた。(cf. Ex.(f))
×*Rin-san wa watashi* ***ni*** *inotte kureta.*

3. The honorific version of V*te kureru* is V*te kudasaru*, as in (5).

K

(5) 先生は私に本を貸してくださった。
Sensei wa watashi ni hon o kashite ***kudasatta.***
(My teacher kindly lent me a book.)

4. In sentences like "X taught me ~," "X bought me ~" and "X lent me ~," which usually imply that the speaker received some sort of favor, V*te kureru* (or *kudasaru*) should be used, though in English this is usually not expressed explicitly. In Japanese, without the auxiliary verbs *kureru* or *kudasaru*, such sentences do not convey the idea that the speaker received a favor, which would make them sound rude to the person who did the speaker the favor.

5. The indirect object is often omitted if it refers to the speaker in declarative sentences or to the listener in interrogative sentence, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (c).

kuru[1] **来る**[1] *v. (Irr.)*

S.o./s.t. moves in a direction towards the speaker or the speaker's viewpoint.

come; visit; show up
【REL. *iku*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

	Noun (direction)		
北川さんが明日 *Kitagawa-san ga ashita*	うち ***uchi***	へ / に *e / ni*	来る / 来ます。 *kuru / kimasu.*
(Kitagawa-san will come to my home tomorrow.)			

Examples

(a) 今日はまだ新聞が来ない。
Kyō wa mada shinbun ga konai.
(Today's newspaper hasn't come yet.)

(b) 私はバスで会社に来ます。
Watashi wa basu de kaisha ni kimasu.
(I come to work by bus.)

(c) 明日私の研究室に来てください。
Ashita watashi no kenkyū-shitsu ni kite kudasai.
(Please come to my office tomorrow.)

(d) シャーロットは昨日パーティーに来ましたか。
Shārotto wa kinō pātī ni kimashita ka.
(Did Charlotte come to the party yesterday?)

(e) [Over the phone]
すみませんが、妻がそちらに来たらすぐ電話するように言ってもらえませんか。
Sumimasen ga, tsuma ga sochira ni kitara sugu denwa-suru yō ni itte moraemasen ka.
(I'm sorry to bother you, but could you tell my wife to give (me) a call right away if/when she drops by (lit., come) there.)

(f) 来週大森さんが名古屋に来るそうだ。
Raishū Ōmori-san ga Nagoya ni kuru sō da.
(I was told that Omori-san is coming to Nagoya next week.)

Notes

1. *Kuru* commonly describes a movement towards a place where the speaker physically exists at the moment of speech, as in Exs.(a) and (b), or a movement in a direction where the speaker has placed his/her viewpoint or where he feels empathy, as in Ex.(c). KS can be used when the speaker is either home or away from home. In Ex.(d) the speaker, who did not attend the party, is taking the viewpoint of the listener, who did attend. Ex.(e) is another example in which the speaker is taking the listener's viewpoint. In Exs.(d) and (e), if the speaker

does not take the listener's viewpoint, *iku* "go" is used. Ex.(f) implies that the speaker lives in Nagoya or nearer Nagoya than Omori does and feels that Omori is entering the speaker's territory or area of empathy.

2. *Kuru* often occurs after the *te*-forms of verbs. In some of these cases, *kuru* functions as an element of compound verbs. (For this reason, *kuru* in this use is usually written in hiragana. In this book, a hyphen is used after this *kuru*, as in *motte-kuru* "bring.") Below are situations in which *kuru* is used after the *te*-forms of verbs.

(A) Someone does something and comes to where the speaker (or the speaker's viewpoint) is. ("V and come")

(1) a. パーティーにおすしを作ってきました。
*Pātī ni o-sushi o tsukut**te-kimashita.***
(I made sushi (at home) for the party. (lit., I made sushi for the party and came here.))

K

b. おいしいケーキを買ってきました。
*Oishii kēki o kat**te-kimashita.***
(I bought you a delicious cake (on the way). (lit., I bought a delicious cake (on the way here) and came here.))

c. ライアンは友達を連れてきた。
*Raian wa tomodachi o tsure**te-kita.***
(Ryan brought his friend (lit., was accompanied by his friend and came).)

d. あの本、持ってきた？
*Ano hon, mot**te-kita?***
(Did you bring that book (lit., carry that book and come)?)

In this use, V*te* before *kuru* sometimes indicates in what outfit someone comes, as in (2).

(2) a. ウィリアムはレセプションにTシャツを着てきた。
Wiriamu wa resepushon ni tī-shatsu o kite-kita.
(William came to the reception in a T-shirt (lit., put on a T-shirt and came to the reception).)

b. 明日のパーティーはフォーマルなので、ネクタイをしてきてください。
Ashita no pātī wa fōmaru na node, nekutai o shite-kite kudasai.
(Tomorrow's party is formal, so please come with a tie (lit., put on a tie and come).)

(B) Someone (usually the speaker) goes somewhere to do something and returns to the original place. ("Go to V (and come back)")

(3) a. 傘を取ってきます。
*Kasa o tot**te-kimasu**.*
(I'll go get my umbrella. (lit., I'll get my umbrella and come back here.))

b. ちょっと散歩してきます。
*Chotto sanpo-shi**te-kimasu**.*
(I'll go out to take a walk (and come back).)

(C) Someone/something moves toward where the speaker is.

(4) a. ボートが近づいてきた。
*Bōto ga chikazui**te-kita**.*
(A boat approached us (lit., got close and came where we were).)

b. たくさんのプラスチックごみが海岸に流れてきた。
*Takusan no purasuchikku-gomi ga kaigan ni nagare**te-kita**.*
(A lot of plastic trash floated (lit., floated and came) to the sea-shore.)

K

(D) Someone did something directed toward the speaker.

(5) a. 食品の会社がカタログを送ってきた。
*Shokuhin no kaisha ga katarogu o okut**te-kita**.*
(A food company sent me a brochure.)

b. 学生が不平を言ってきた。
*Gakusei ga fuhei o it**te-kita**.*
(A student came to complain.)

【Related Expression】

If a movement is towards the speaker or a place where the speaker places his viewpoint, *kuru* is used, while if a movement is in a direction away from the speaker or the speaker's viewpoint, *iku* is used. As explained in Note 1, in Exs.(d) and (e) both *kuru* and *iku* are acceptable. The difference is where the speaker is placing his/her viewpoint.

[1] shows another example in which both *kuru* and *iku* can be used.

[1] [The speaker lives in San Francisco and is calling his friend, Morris, who lives in New York is coming to Los Angeles.]
モリスさんは来月ロサンゼルスに{**来る / 行く**}そうですね。
*Morisu-san wa raigetsu Rosanzerusu ni{**kuru / iku**}sō desu ne.*
(Morris-san, I was told that you're coming/going to Los Angeles next month.)

In this situation, *kuru* is the more likely choice than *iku*, because in general, a speaker is more empathetic with a town close to his/her own. If *iku* is chosen here, it implies that the speaker is unempathetic with the town in the same state.

(⇒ ***iku***[1])

kuru[2] くる[2] *aux. v. (Irr.)*

K

an auxiliary verb that indicates the beginning of the change of a state or the continuation of an action or an event up to the moment of speech

begin to do s.t.; come to do s.t.; become; grow; have V-ed; have been V-ing
【REL. ~ *hajimeru*; ***iku***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	V*te*	
日本語の文法が *Nihongo no bunpō ga*	分かって ***wakatte***	きた / きました。 *kita / kimashita.*
(I have begun to understand Japanese grammar.)		

(B)

	V*te*	
私はいろいろな日本の歴史書を *Watashi wa iroiro na Nihon no rekishisho o*	読んで ***yonde***	きた / きました。 *kita / kimashita.*
(I've been reading various Japanese histories.)		

Formation

V*te* { くる / きた }
{ *kuru / kita* }

やせて { くる / きた }　(s.o. { begins / has begun } to lose weight)
yasete { *kuru / kita* }

Examples

(a) テニスをしていたら急に雨が降ってきた。
Tenisu o shite itara kyū ni ame ga futte kita.
(While we were playing tennis, it suddenly began to rain.)

(b) 私はこのごろ太ってきました。
Watashi wa konogoro futotte kimashita.
(I've started to gain weight these days.)

(c) 午後から頭が痛くなってきました。
Gogo kara atama ga itaku natte kimashita.
(My head began to ache in the afternoon.)

(d) 最近、漢字の勉強が好きになってきた。
Saikin, kanji no benkyō ga suki ni natte kita.
(I began to like studying kanji lately.)

(e) 今までたくさん本を読んできましたが、これからも読んでいくつもりです。
Ima made takusan hon o yonde kimashita ga, kore kara mo yonde iku tsumori desu.
(Up to now I have read quite a few books, and I intend to keep reading from now on, too.)

(f) 今まで遊んできましたが、これからは一生懸命勉強するつもりです。
Ima made asonde kimashita ga, kore kara wa isshōkenmei benkyō-suru tsumori desu.
(Up to now I haven't been working hard (lit., have been playing), but from now on I intend to work very hard.)

Note

Kuru is used as an auxiliary verb with the *te*-forms of verbs to express the inception of an action or an event, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(d), or the continuation of an action or an event up to the point of speech, as in KS(B), Exs.(e) and (f). In the former case, the verb before *kuru* is a verb that indicates the change of a state of someone or something, such as *naru* "become," *wakaru* "understand," *futoru* "gain weight," etc. In the latter case, the verb before *kuru* is a continual verb.

(⇒ **Appendix 2**. Semantic Classification of Verbs)

[Related Expression]

When *kuru*[2] expresses the beginning of the change of a state, it is very close to V*masu hajimeru* "begin to ~" in meaning. For example, KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(d) can all be paraphrased using V*masu hajimeru*, as in [1].

[1] a. 日本語の文法が｛分かっ**てきた** / 分かり**始めた**｝。(cf. KS(A))
Nihongo no bunpō ga ｛ *wakat**te kita*** / *wakari-**hajimeta*** ｝.
(I have begun to understand Japanese grammar.)

b. テニスをしていたら急に雨が｛降っ**てきた** / 降り**始めた**｝。(cf. Ex.(a))
Tenisu o shite itara kyū ni ame ga ｛ *fut**te kita*** / *furi-**hajimeta*** ｝.
(While we were playing tennis, it suddenly began to rain.)

However, V*masu hajimeru* sentences sounds more detached or objective than V*te kuru* sentences. (⇒ ~ ***hajimeru***)

mada まだ *adv.*

S.o./s.t. is in the same state he/she or it was in some time ago.

still; (not) yet
【REL. *mō*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Predicate (affirmative)
竹下さん *Takeshita-san*	は *wa*	まだ *mada*	昼ご飯を**食べている / います**。 *hiru-gohan o **tabete iru / imasu**.*
(Takeshita-san is still eating his lunch.)			

(B)

Topic (subject)			Predicate (negative)
ルーカス *Rūkasu*	は *wa*	まだ *mada*	そのことを**知らない / 知りません**。 *sono koto o **shira**nai / **shiri**masen.*
(Lucas still doesn't know about it.)			

Examples

(a) 弟はまだ寝ている。
Otōto wa mada nete iru.
(My little brother is still sleeping.)

(b) 西本さんはまだ部長の部屋にいます。
Nishimoto-san wa mada buchō no heya ni imasu.
(Nishimoto-san is still in the department chief's room.)

(c) 私はまだ中国へ行ったことがない。
Watashi wa mada Chūgoku e itta koto ga nai.
(I haven't been to China yet.)

(d) A: もう昼ご飯を食べましたか。
Mō hiru-gohan o tabemashita ka.
(Have you eaten your lunch yet?)

B1: いいえ、まだ食べていません。
Īe, mada tabete imasen.
(No, I haven't eaten it yet.)

B2: いいえ、まだです。
Īe, mada desu.
(No, not yet.)

(e) 私の祖母は90歳だが、まだ元気だ。
Watashi no sobo wa kyūjus-sai da ga, mada genki da.
(My grandmother is ninety, but she's still fine.)

(f) 私の娘はまだ高校生だから、まだ結婚のことは考えていないと思います。
Watashi no musume wa mada kōkōsei da kara, mada kekkon no koto wa kangaete inai to omoimasu.
(My daughter is still a high school student, so I don't think she thinks about her marriage yet.)

Notes

1. *Mada* expresses the idea that someone or something is in the same state in which he/she or it was in some time ago. In affirmative sentences, *mada* always corresponds to "still," as in KS(A), Exs.(a), (b) and (e), while in negative sentences, it corresponds to "yet," as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d)-B1. Ex.(f) contains *mada* in both affirmative and negative sentences.

2. As in Ex.(d)-B1, *mada tabete imasen* is used to mean "have not eaten yet" in response to A's question. Note that (1) is not appropriate in this situation because this sentence talks about the speaker's future action when the question is asking about the speaker's current state (more specifically, asking if the speaker's state has changed).

(1) いいえ、まだ食べません。
Īe, mada tabemasen.
(No, I'm not going to eat it yet.)

The only exception is *shiru* "get to know; learn of," as in (2)-B. In this case, *shitte imasen* is not acceptable. (⇒ ***shiru***)

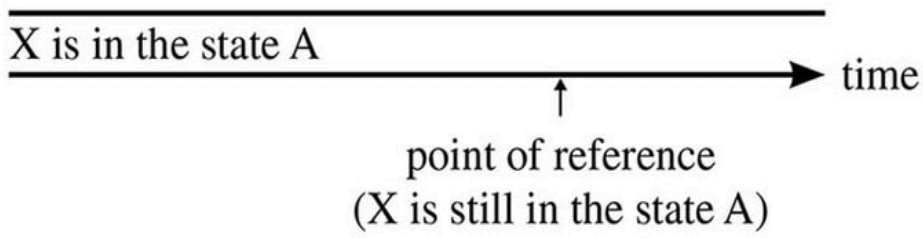
(2) A: 安田さんはもうこのニュースを知っていますか。
Yasuda-san wa mō kono nyūsu o shitte imasu ka.
(Does Yasuda-san know this news yet?)
B: いいえ、まだ{**知りません** / ×**知っていません**}。
Īe, mada {***shirimasen*** / ×***shitte imasen***}.
(No, he doesn't know it yet.)

3. The abbreviated sentence "*Īe, mada desu*" can be used instead of "*Īe, mada* V*te imasen*," as in Ex.(d)-B2.

[Related Expression]

The concept that *mada* expresses is opposite to that of *mō*. [1] and [2] illustrate the difference between the two. (⇒ ***mō***)

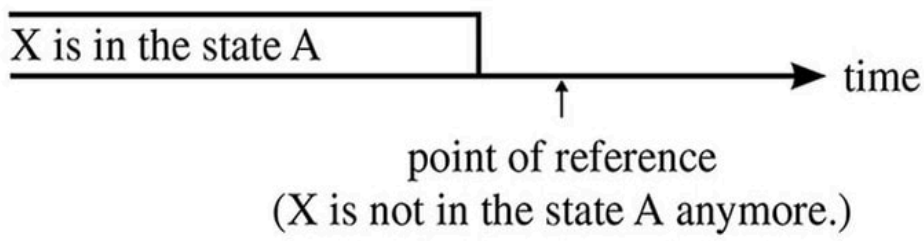
[1] *mada*



Exs. まだ食べている。(S.o. is still eating.)
***Mada** tabete iru.*

まだ食べていない。(S.o. hasn't eaten yet.)
***Mada** tabete inai.*

[2] *mō*



Exs. もう食べていない。(S.o. is not eating any longer.)
***Mō** tabete inai.*

もう食べている。(S.o. has already started to eat (and is eating now).)
***Mō** tabete iru.*

もう食べた。(S.o. has already eaten.)
***Mō** tabeta.*

M

made まで *prt. / conj.*

a particle/conjunction that indicates the ending point of a temporal or spatial span

to; through; up to; as far as; till; until; even
【REL. ***e***; ***made ni***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Noun (time)		Noun (time)		
昨日は *Kinō wa*	３時 ***san-ji***	から *kara*	５時 ***go-ji***	まで *made*	友達とテニスをした / しました。 *tomodachi to tenisu o shita / shimashita.*
(Yesterday 1 played tennis from three to five with my friend.)					

(B)

Noun (location)		Noun (location)		
東京 ***Tōkyō***	から *kara*	**大阪** ***Ōsaka***	まで *made*	新幹線で２時間半かかる / かかります。 *shinkansen de ni-jikan-han kakaru / kakarimasu.*
(It takes two hours and half by Shinkansen train from Tokyo to Osaka.)				

(C)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Vplain・non-past		
私が *Watashi ga*	**行く** ***iku***	まで *made*	うちで待っていてください。 *uchi de matte ite kudasai.*
(Please wait at home until I get there.)			

(D)

	Number + Counter		
このホールは *Kono hōru wa*	**２千人** ***nisen-nin***	まで *made*	入れる / 入れます。 *haireru / hairemasu.*
(This hall can hold up to 2,000 people.)			

(E)

	Noun (unexpected object)		
金高さんは英語や スペイン語はもちろん *Kanetaka-san wa eigo ya supeingo wa mochiron*	**アラビア語** ***arabiago***	まで *made*	話す / 話します。 *hanasu / hanashimasu.*
(Kanetaka-san speaks even Arabic, not to mention English and Spanish.)			

Formation

(i) Noun (time/location) まで
made

{ 5時 / 学校 } まで (until five / as far as school)
{ *go-ji* / *gakkō* } *made*

(ii) Vplain·non-past まで
made

話すまで (until s.o. talks)
hanasu made

(iii) Number + Counter まで
made

40 人まで (up to forty people)
yonjū-nin made

(iv) N (+ Prt) まで
made

スカイダイビングまで (even skydiving)
sukaidaibingu made

沖縄でまで (even in Okinawa)
Okinawa de made

Examples

(a) 私は来週月曜日から木曜日までタイに出張します。
Watashi wa raishū getsuyōbi kara mokuyōbi made Tai ni shutchō-shimasu.
(I'm taking a business trip to Thailand from Monday through Thursday next week.)

(b) 駅から大学までは歩いて 10 分ぐらいです。
Eki kara daigaku made wa aruite jup-pun gurai desu.
(It's about a ten-minute walk from the station to the university. (lit., It's about 10 minutes from the station to the university on foot.))

(c) 電車が来るまで待合室で友達と話していた。
Densha ga kuru made machiai-shitsu de tomodachi to hanashite ita.
(I was talking with my friend in the waiting room until the train arrived.)

(d) この図書館は一度に 10 冊まで借りられる。
Kono toshokan wa ichi-do ni jus-satsu made karirareru.
(At this library you can check out up to ten books at a time.)

(e) ウッズさんは刺身はもちろん、納豆まで食べるんですよ。
Uzzu-san wa sashimi wa mochiron, nattō made taberu n desu yo.
(Woods-san even eats fermented soybeans, not to mention raw fish.)

(f) このイベントにはインドやトルコからまで参加者があった。
Kono ibento ni wa Indo ya Toruko kara made sankasha ga atta.
(People participated in this event even from India and Turkey. (lit., There were participants in this event even from India and Turkey.))

Notes

1. When attached to a time or location noun, *made* indicates the ending point of a period or a spatial span, as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (b).

2. When attached to a clause, *made* means "until," as in KS(C) and Ex.(c). Note, however, that "X *made*" and "until X" do not have the same meaning in some situations. For example, in (1), *raishū no getsuyōbi made* means that the speaker will be absent next Monday; therefore, the corresponding English is "until next *Tuesday*."

   (1) 私は来週の月曜日まで休みます。
   Watashi wa raishū no getsuyōbi made yasumimasu.
   (I'll be absent until next Tuesday.)

3. When *made* follows a number with or without a counter, it indicates a quantitative limitation, as in KS(D) and Ex.(d).

4. When *made* follows a noun (sometimes with a particle), it can also mean "even," as in KS(E), Exs.(e) and (f). The particles *ga* and *o* do not appear with *made*, as in KS(E) and Ex.(e); *e* and *ni* sometimes drop; *de*, *to* and *kara* do not drop, as in Ex.(f).

M

made ni までに *comp. prt. / conj.*

a compound particle / conjunction that indicates the time by which an action/ event ends

by; by the time
【REL. *made*; *made de*; *mae ni*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Noun (time)		
４時 ***Yo-ji***	までに *made ni*	オフィスに戻ります。 *ofisu ni modorimasu.*
(I'll return to my office by four.)		

(B)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Vplain・non-past		
会議が *Kaigi ga*	**始まる** ***hajimaru***	までに *made ni*	この提案書を読んでおいてください。 *kono teiansho o yonde oite kudasai.*
(Please read this proposal (in advance) by the time the meeting starts.)			

Formation

(i) N (time) までに
made ni

明日までに (by tomorrow)
ashita made ni

(ii) Vplain·non-past までに
made ni

話すまでに (by the time s.o. { will talk / talks / talked })
hanasu made ni

M

Examples

(a) 私はこのレポートを１月 20 日までに書きあげなければならない。
Watashi wa kono repōto o ichi-gatsu hatsu-ka made ni kaki-agenakereba naranai.
(I have to finish writing this paper by January 20.)

(b) A: 何時までに空港に行けばいいでしょうか。
Nan-ji made ni kūkō ni ikeba ii deshō ka.
(By what time should I come to the airport?)

B: 出発の２時間前までに来てください。
Shuppatsu no ni-jikan mae made ni kite kudasai.
(Please come no later than two hours before departure.)

(c) 飛行機がパリに着くまでに長編小説を１冊読んでしまった。
Hikōki ga Pari ni tsuku made ni chōhen-shōsetsu o is-satsu yonde shimatta.
(By the time the plane arrived in Paris, I had finished reading a long novel.)

Note

In general, *made ni* indicates the time by which an action or an event ends. Either a noun or a clause can be used before *made ni*. When a clause precedes *made ni*, the predicate verb must be in the plain, non-past form and also be a momentary

verb, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c). (1) illustrates this point. That is, in (1a), *hajimaru* "begin" is a momentary verb; therefore, *made ni* is acceptable. However, in (1b), *made ni* cannot be used because *(kaigi o) suru* "have (a meeting)" is not a momentary verb.

(1) a. **会議が始まる**までにこの仕事を片付けてしまいます。
Kaigi ga hajimaru *made ni kono shigoto o katazukete shimaimasu.*
(I'll finish this assignment by the time the meeting begins.)

b. ×**会議をする**までにこの仕事を片付けてしまいます。
× ***Kaigi o suru*** *made ni kono shigoto o katazukete shimaimasu.*
(*Intended meaning*: I'll finish this assignment by the time we meet (lit., have the meeting).)

Similarly, in (2a), *made ni* is acceptable because *dekakeru* "go out" is a momentary verb, whereas in (2b), *made ni* is not acceptable because *jogingu-suru* "jog" is not a momentary verb. (See Related Expression II.)

(2) a. ジョギングに**出かける**までに雨がやんでよかった。
Jogingu ni ***dekakeru*** *made ni ame ga yande yokatta.*
(It was good that it stopped raining by the time I went out for jogging.)

M

b. ×ジョギング**する**までに雨がやんでよかった。
× ***Jogingu-suru*** *made ni ame ga yande yokatta.*
(*Intended meaning*: It was good that it stopped raining by the time I jogged.)

【Related Expressions】

I. *Made* "until; up to" must be distinguished from *made ni*. *Made* is used when an action/event continues or a state lasts *until* one point in time, while *made ni* is used when an action is taken or an event ends *by* one point in time. Thus, in [1], in which an action or state continues until one point in time, *made* is the correct particle.

[1] a. 高森さんは来月{**まで** / ×**までに**}ロンドンにいる。
Takamori-san wa raigetsu {***made*** / × ***made ni***} *Rondon ni iru.*
(Takamori-san will stay in London until next month.)

b. ５時{**まで** / ×**までに**}ここで待っています。
Go-ji {***made*** / × ***made ni***} *koko de matte imasu.*
(I'll be waiting here until five o'clock.)

On the other hand, in [2], in which an action is taken or an event ends *by* one point in time, *made ni* is the correct particle. (⇒ ***made***)

[2] a. ８時｛**までに / ×まで**｝オフィスに行きます。
Hachi-ji｛***made ni* / × *made***｝*ofisu ni ikimasu.*
(I'll be in your/my office by eight o'clock.)

b. 会議は３時｛**までに / ×まで**｝終わるでしょう。
Kaigi wa san-ji｛***made ni* / × *made***｝*owaru deshō.*
(The meeting will probably end by three o'clock.)

II. When verbs precede *made ni*, *made ni* can be substituted with *mae ni* in some situations, as in [3] and [4].

[3] 会議が始まる｛**までに / 前に**｝この提案書を読んでおいてください。
(cf. KS(B))
Kaigi ga hajimaru｛***made ni* / *mae ni***｝*kono teiansho o yonde oite kudasai.*
(Please read this proposal (in advance)｛by the time / before｝the meeting starts.)

[4] 飛行機がパリに着く｛**までに / 前に**｝長編小説を１冊読んでしまった。
(cf. Ex.(c))
Hikōki ga Pari ni tsuku｛***made ni* / *mae ni***｝*chōhen-shōsetsu o is-satsu yonde shimatta.*
(｛By the time / Before｝the plane arrived in Paris, I had finished reading a long novel.)

M

However, while *made ni* can be used only with momentary verbs, *mae ni* has no such restriction. This is because *made ni* refers to a point in time while *mae ni* simply indicates that one action or event takes place before another. Thus, in [5] and [6], *mae ni* can be used in both sentences, whereas *made ni* cannot be used in the (b) sentences because the preceding verb *suru* and *jogingu-suru* are not momentary verbs.

[5] a. 会議が始まる｛**前に / までに**｝この仕事を片付けてしまいます。
(cf. (1a))
Kaigi ga hajimaru｛***mae ni* / *made ni***｝*kono shigoto o katazukete shimaimasu.*
(I'll finish this assignment｛before / by the time｝the meeting begins.)

b. 会議をする｛**前に / ×までに**｝この仕事を片付けてしまいます。
(cf. (1b))
Kaigi o suru｛***mae ni* / × *made ni***｝*kono shigoto o katazukete shimaimasu.*
(I'll finish this assignment｛before / by the time｝we meet (lit., have the meeting).)

[6] a. ジョギングに出かける{**前に / までに**}雨がやんでよかった。(cf. (2a))
Jogingu ni dekakeru {***mae ni / made ni***} *ame ga yande yokatta.*
(It was good that it stopped raining {before / by the time} I went out for jogging.)

b. ジョギングする{**前に / ×までに**}雨がやんでよかった。(cf. (2b))
Jogingu-suru {***mae ni / × made ni***} *ame ga yande yokatta.*
(It was good that it stopped raining {before / by the time} I jogged.)

Regarding kinds of nouns that precede *made ni* and *mae ni*, various kinds can occur before *made ni*, but *mae ni* allows only certain kinds, as seen in the following table. Note that when nouns occur before *mae ni*, they are usually followed by *no* (i.e., N *no mae ni*). (⇒ ***mae ni***)

M

Nouns	までに *made ni* (by)	の前に *no mae ni* (before)
Relative time: 今 *ima* (now) 現在 *genzai* (present) 明日 *asu/ashita* (tomorrow) 昨日 *kinō* (yesterday) 来週 *raishū* (next week) 先週 *senshū* (last week) 来月 *raigetsu* (next month) 先月 *sengetsu* (last month) 来年 *rainen* (next year) 去年 *kyonen* (last year)	○	×
Non-relative time: 5時 *go-ji* (five o'clock) 木曜日 *mokuyōbi* (Thursday) 6月 *roku-gatsu* (June) 4月1日 *shi-gatsu tsuitachi* (April 1) 2025年 *nisen-nijū-go-nen* (the year of 2025)	○	×
Special days: クリスマス *kurisumasu* (Christmas) 大晦日 *ōmisoka* (New Year's Eve) 誕生日 *tanjōbi* (one's birthday) 給料日 *kyūryōbi* (payday)	○	○
Actions/events: 発表 *happyō* (presentation) 帰国 *kikoku* (returning home) 試験 *shiken* (exam) 面接 *mensetsu* (job interview) コンサート *konsāto* (concert)	○	○

When demonstratives precede *made ni* and *mae ni*, *made ni* requires demonstrative pronouns (e.g., *kore* "this," *sore* "that") because *made* is a particle, while *mae ni* requires demonstrative adjectives (e.g., *kono* "this ~," *sono* "that ~") because *mae* is a noun. [7] provides examples.

[7] a. 今日は５時に帰りたいので、**それまでに**この仕事を全部片付けるつもりです。
Kyō wa go-ji ni kaeri-tai node, ***sore made ni*** *kono shigoto o zenbu katazukeru tsumori desu.*
(I want to leave (my office) at five today, so I'm going to finish all of this work by then.)

b. ３時から会議だが、**その前に**コーヒーを飲みたい。
San-ji kara kaigi da ga, ***sono mae ni*** *kōhī o nomi-tai.*
(The meeting begins at three, but I want to have some coffee before that.)

III. X *made de* means "s.t. continues until X and stops at X." In other words, *made de* has no meaning of "by X." Compare [8a] and [8b]. [8b] says that the meeting will not last beyond five o'clock with the implication that it will possibly end before that time.

[8] a. 今日の会議は５時までで終わります。
Kyō no kaigi wa go-ji ***made de*** *owarimasu.*
(Today's meeting will end at five (lit., will last until five and end then).)

b. 今日の会議は５時までに終わります。
Kyō no kaigi wa go-ji ***made ni*** *owarimasu.*
(Today's meeting will end by five.)

Note that *made de* is used with verbs with the meaning of ending. [9] provides additional examples.

[9] a. 申し込みの受け付けは今月末までで締め切ります。
Mōshikomi no uketsuke wa kongetsu-matsu ***made de*** *shimekirimasu.*
(We accept applications until the end of this month and close then. (lit., The acceptance of applications lasts until the end of this month and closes then.))

b. ２割引き特別セールは土曜日までで終了しました。
Ni-wari-biki tokubetsu-sēru wa doyōbi ***made de*** *shūryō-shimashita.*
(The special 20 percent-off sale (lasted through Saturday and) ended on Saturday.)

mae ni 前に *conj. / comp. prt.*

before s.o. does s.t. or some situation comes about, or in front of s.t.

before; in front of
【REL. ***made ni***; *~nai uchi ni*】
(ANT. *ato de*; *ushiro ni*)

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic		Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
			Vplain・non-past		
ピアースさん *Piāsu-san*	は *wa*	日本へ *Nihon e*	行く ***iku***	前に *mae ni*	日本語を勉強した / しました。 *nihongo o benkyō-shita / shimashita.*
(Pierce-san studied Japanese before he went to Japan.)					

(B)

Noun (event)			
旅行 ***Ryokō***	の *no*	前に *mae ni*	風邪を引いた / 引きました。 *kaze o hiita / hikimashita.*
(I caught a cold before the trip.)			

(C)

Noun (*object*)			
駅 ***Eki***	の *no*	前に *mae ni*	銀行がある / あります。 *ginkō ga aru / arimasu.*
(There is a bank in front of the station.)			

Formation

(i) Vplain·non-past 前に
mae ni

話す前に (before s.o. { will talk / talks / talked })
hanasu mae ni

(ii) N の前に
no mae ni

朝ご飯の前に (before breakfast)
asa-gohan no mae ni

学校の前に (in front of the school)
gakkō no mae ni

Examples

(a) 日本人はご飯を食べる前に「いただきます」と言う。
Nihonjin wa gohan o taberu mae ni "Itadakimasu" to iu.
(Japanese people say "*Itadakimasu*" (lit., I'll humbly eat (this food)) before eating their meals.)

(b) 石川さんはサンフランシスコへ行く前にハワイに寄りました。
Ishikawa-san wa Sanfuranshisuko e iku mae ni Hawai ni yorimashita.
(Ishikawa-san stopped in Hawaii before he went to San Francisco.)

(c) 私は試験の前に映画を見に行きました。
Watashi wa shiken no mae ni eiga o mi ni ikimashita.
(I went to see a movie before the exam.)

(d) ラーメン屋の前に人がたくさん並んでいる。
Rāmen-ya no mae ni hito ga takusan narande iru.
(There are many people lining up in front of the ramen shop.)

M

Notes

1. When a verb precedes *mae ni*, it remains in the non-past tense, even if the main clause is in the past, as in KS(A) and Ex.(b). This is because, in Japanese, a past-tense subordinate clause indicates that its action or event is completed before the main clause's action or event.

2. When X *mae ni* is used, the speaker usually assumes that the action or event represented by X will actually take place. Thus, when the speaker is not certain if X will take place, *mae ni* sounds awkward, as in (1) and (2). (See Related Expression for the proper expressions.)

(1) ??忘れる**前に**話しておこう。
??*Wasureru **mae ni** hanashite okō.*
(*Intended meaning*: I'll tell you something (in advance) before I forget.)

(2) ??地震が起きるかどうか分からないが、起きる**前に**この橋を補強しておいたほうがいい。
??*Jishin ga okiru ka dō ka wakaranai ga, okiru **mae ni** kono hashi o hokyō-shite oita hō ga ii.*
(*Intended meaning*: We don't know if an earthquake will hit here, but before one does, we'd better reinforce this bridge.)

3. *Mae ni* cannot be used when the main clause represents a state of someone or something. In this case, *mae wa* is used, as in (3).

(3) a. 留学する{**前は** / ×**前に**}とても心配だった。
Ryūgaku-suru {***mae wa*** / ×***mae ni***} *totemo shinpai datta.*
(I was very worried before studying abroad.)

b. この町は、カジノができる{**前は** / ×**前に**}安全で住みやすかった。
Kono machi wa, kajino ga dekiru {***mae wa*** / ×***mae ni***} *anzen de sumi-yasukatta.*
(This town was safe and livable before the casinos came.)

4. When "N *no*" precedes *mae ni*, N represents either an event, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c), or an object, as in KS(C) and Ex.(d). In the second case, the English equivalent is "in front of," and the Japanese antonym is *ushiro ni* "behind."

【Related Expression】

As mentioned in Note 2, when the speaker is not certain if an event will take place, *mae ni* is awkward. In this case, *~nai uchi ni* "before s.t./s.o. V" is used, as in [1] and [2]. (⇒ ***uchi ni***)

M

[1] {忘れ**ないうちに** / ??忘れる**前に**}話しておこう。(cf. (1))
{*Wasure**nai uchi ni*** / ??*Wasureru **mae ni***} *hanashite okō.*
(I'll tell you something (in advance) before I forget.)

[2] 地震が起きるかどうか分からないが、{起き**ないうちに** / ??起きる**前に**}この橋を補強しておいたほうがいい。(cf. (2))
Jishin ga okiru ka dō ka wakaranai ga, {*oki**nai uchi ni*** / ??***okiru mae ni***} *kono hashi o hokyō-shite oita hō ga ii.*
(We don't know if an earthquake will hit here, but before one does, we'd better reinforce this bridge.)

mai- 毎 *pref.*

a prefix that means "every (unit of time)"

every; per
【REL. *goto ni*】

◆ Key Sentence

		Noun (time)	
私は *Watashi wa*	毎 *mai-*	日 ***nichi***	２キロ泳ぐ / 泳ぎます。 *ni-kiro oyogu / oyogimasu.*
(I swim two kilometers every day.)			

Formation

毎 N (time)
mai-

毎朝　(every morning)
mai-asa

毎月　(every month)
mai-tsuki

Examples

(a) 正人は最近、毎晩めぐみと会っているそうだ。
Masato wa saikin, mai-ban Megumi to atte iru sō da.
(I heard that recently Masato meets Megumi every evening.)

(b) 私は毎年一度か二度日本へ行きます。
Watashi wa mai-toshi ichi-do ka ni-do Nihon e ikimasu.
(I go to Japan once or twice every year.)

(c) あの人のスピーチは毎回同じでつまらない。
Ano hito no supīchi wa mai-kai onaji de tsumaranai.
(That man's speech is always the same (lit., the same every time) and boring.)

(d) 台風は毎時 20 キロの速さで北に進んでいる。
Taifū wa mai-ji nijuk-kiro no hayasa de kita ni susunde iru.
(The typhoon is moving north at a speed of twenty kilometers per hour.)

(e) マリーナは毎食サラダを食べます。
Marīna wa mai-shoku sarada o tabemasu.
(Marina eats salad for every meal.)

Notes

1. In most cases, *mai* is prefixed to nouns that represent a time or a time-related meaning. Thus, nouns that represent things like a person, an object and an event cannot be used with *mai*, as in (1). (The correct expressions are given in parentheses.)

(1) a. "every person"

× 毎人　　(すべての人 / 人はみんな / 人ごとに)
× *mai-hito/nin*　　*(subete no hito / hito wa minna / hito goto ni)*

b. "every teacher"

× 毎先生　　(すべての先生 / 先生はみんな / 先生ごとに)
× *mai-sensei*　　*(subete no sensei / sensei wa minna / sensei goto ni)*

c. "every house"

× 毎家　　(すべての家 / 家はみんな / 家ごとに)
× *mai-ie/ka/ya*　　*(subete no ie / ie wa minna / ie goto ni)*

d. "every class"

× 毎授業　　(すべての授業 / 授業はみんな / 授業ごとに)
× *mai-jugyō*　　*(subete no jugyō / jugyō wa minna / jugyō goto ni)*

M

However, there are a handful of nouns that do not represent a time or a time-related meaning but that can occur with *mai*, as in Ex.(e). (2) provides additional examples.

(2) a. このチームは**毎試合**いいプレーを見せてくれる。
*Kono chīmu wa **mai-shiai** ii purē o misete kureru.*
(This team shows good plays in every game.)

b. この雑誌は**毎号**おもしろいトピックを取り上げるので、いつも発売日が楽しみだ。
*Kono zasshi wa **mai-gō** omoshiroi topikku o toriageru node, itsumo hatsubaibi ga tanoshimi da.*
(This magazine deals with an interesting topic in every issue, so I always look forward to its release date.)

2. *Mai* cannot be used with nouns that represent a specific time, as in (3). (See [1] in Related Expression for correct expressions.)

(3) a. "every Monday"　　× 毎月曜日
× *mai-getsuyōbi*

b. “every second week” ×毎第２週
×*mai-dai-ni-shū*

c. “every August” ×毎８月
×*mai-hachi-gatsu*

d. “every Christmas” ×毎クリスマス
×*mai-kurisumasu*

e. “every Children’s Day” ×毎子供の日
×*mai-kodomo-no-hi*

f. “every holiday” ×毎休み
×*mai-yasumi*

3. *Mai* cannot be used when nouns of time are preceded by numbers. For example, the following phrases are unacceptable. (See [2] in Related Expression for correct expressions.)

(4) a. “every three days” ×毎３日
×*mai-mik-ka*

b. “every two years / every other year” ×毎２年
×*mai-ni-nen*

c. “every one hour” ×毎１時間
×*mai-ichi-jikan*

[Related Expression]

Goto ni also means “every,” but its usage differs from that of *mai*. First, *goto ni* is not a prefix but a compound particle that follows time expressions and other nouns. Second, it is used with specific times, as seen in [1], and with nouns of time preceded by numbers, as in [2]. (⇒ ***goto ni***)

[1] Specific time (cf. (3)):

a. 月曜日ごとに “every Monday”
getsuyōbi goto ni

b. 第２週ごとに “every second week”
dai-ni-shū goto ni

c. ８月ごとに “every August”
hachi-gatsu goto ni

d. クリスマスごとに “every Christmas”
kurisumasu goto ni

e. 子供の日ごとに “every Children's Day”
kodomo-no-hi goto ni

f. 休みごとに “every holiday”
yasumi goto ni

[2] Period of time (cf. (4)):

a. ３日ごとに “every three days”
mik-ka goto ni

b. ２年ごとに “every two years; every other year”
ni-nen goto ni

c. １時間ごとに “every hour”
ichi-jikan goto ni

Third, unlike *mai*, *goto ni* can be used with nouns that do not represent a time, as seen in [3].

[3] グラントさんは会う**人**ごとに日本語であいさつをした。
*Guranto-san wa au **hito** goto ni nihongo de aisatsu o shita.*
(Grant-san greeted every person he met in Japanese.)

M

Additionally, *goto ni* is also used with *hi* “day” and *toshi* “year” to mean “after,” as in [4].

[4] a. 日ごとに “day after day”
hi goto ni

b. 年ごとに “year after year”
toshi goto ni

mama まま *n.*

a dependent noun that indicates that the state of s.t./s.o remains unchanged or s.o. does s.t. without changing the state of s.t.

as it is; unchanged; leave as is; remain
【REL. *~naide*; *~zu ni*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun			
この部屋 *Kono heya*	は *wa*	**昨日** ***kinō***	の *no*	まま *mama*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(This room is as it was yesterday.)					

(B)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		Vplain・past		
弟 *Otōto*	は *wa*	テレビ *terebi*	を *o*	**つけた** ***tsuketa***	まま *mama*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(My younger brother has left the TV on.)						

(C)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		Vplain・past		
弟 *Otōto*	は *wa*	テレビ *terebi*	を *o*	**つけた** ***tsuketa***	まま *mama*	寝てしまった / しまいました。 *nete shimatta /* *shimaimashita.*
(My younger brother went to sleep leaving the TV on.)						

(D)

Topic (direct object)		Demonstrative Adjective			
この部屋 *Kono heya*	は *wa*	**この** ***kono***	まま *mama*	に *ni*	しておく / おきます。 *shite oku / okimasu.*
(I'll leave this room as it is.)					

(E)

Subject		Vplain·past			
テレビ *Terebi*	が *ga*	**ついた** ***tsuita***	まま *mama*	に *ni*	なっている / います。 *natte iru / imasu.*
(The TV has been left on.)					

(F)

	Vplain·past			Noun		
帽子を *Bōshi o*	**かぶった** ***kabutta***	まま *mama*	の *no*	**学生** ***gakusei***	が *ga*	教室にいた / いました。 *kyōshitsu ni ita / imashita.*
(A student who kept his hat on was in the classroom.)						

Formation

(i) Vplain·past まま
mama

(電気を)つけたまま (leaving (the light) on)
(denki o) tsuketa mama

M

(ii) Adj(*i*)plain·non-past まま
mama

大きいまま (as s.t. is big)
ōkii mama

(iii) {Adj(*na*) な / N の} まま
na *no* *mama*

不便なまま (as s.t. inconvenient)
fuben na mama

昔のまま (leaving s.t. as it was)
mukashi no mama

(iv) Demonstrative adjective まま
mama

そのまま (as it is)
sono mama

Examples

(a) あの人はあれからずっと入院したままだ。
Ano hito wa are kara zutto nyūin-shita mama da.
(He's been in the hospital (lit., all along) since then.)

(b) メガネをかけたままシャワーを浴びてしまいました。
Megane o kaketa mama shawā o abite shimaimashita.
(I took a shower (by mistake) with my eyeglasses on.)

(c) 高山さんはタイへ行ったまま帰らなかった。
Takayama-san wa Tai e itta mama kaeranakatta.
(Takayama-san went to Thailand, never to return.)

(d) 食べ残したピザを冷たいまま食べたが、おいしくなかった。
Tabe-nokoshita piza o tsumetai mama tabeta ga, oishikunakatta.
(I ate the leftover pizza cold, but it wasn't tasty.)

(e) 車のエンジンをかけたままにしておいた。
Kuruma no enjin o kaketa mama ni shite oita.
(I left the car engine on.)

(f) この部屋は子供たちが使っていた時のままになっています。
Kono heya wa kodomo-tachi ga tsukatte ita toki no mama ni natte imasu.
(This room has been left unchanged since the time our children were using it.)

(g) リチャードから聞いた話を、そのままエイミーに話した。
Richādo kara kiita hanashi o, sono mama Eimī ni hanashita.
(I told Amy exactly what I had heard from Richard. (lit., I told Amy the story I had heard from Richard as it was.))

Notes

1. The verb before *mama* has to be non-past if the verb is negative as in (1). (See Related Expressions.)

   (1) a. 玄関の鍵を**かけないまま**出かけてしまった。
   *Genkan no kagi o **kakenai mama** dekakete shimatta.*
   (I left home with the front door unlocked (by mistake).)

   b. さようならも**言わないまま**行ってしまった。
   *Sayōnara mo **iwanai mama** itte shimatta.*
   (She went away without even saying goodbye.)

2. When *mama* is followed by a verb other than *suru* and *naru*, as in KS(C) and Exs.(b)–(d), *de* may occur between *mama* and the verb, as in (2).

   (2) a. 弟はテレビをつけたまま**で**寝てしまった。(cf. KS(C))
   *Otōto wa terebi o tsuketa mama **de** nete shimatta.*

   b. メガネをかけたまま**で**シャワーを浴びてしまいました。(cf. Ex.(b))
   *Megane o kaketa mama **de** shawā o abite shimaimashita*

3. When "X *mama*" modifies a noun, *no* is necessary after *mama*, as in KS(F).

【Related Expressions】

Vplain·non-past·neg *mama* can be paraphrased using *naide* or *zu ni*, as in [1].

[1] 玄関の鍵を｛かけ**ないまま** / かけ**ないで** / かけ**ずに**｝出かけてしまった。(cf. (1a))
*Genkan no kagi o｛kake**nai mama** / kake**naide** / kake**zu ni**｝dekakete shimatta.*
(I left home｛with the front door locked / without locking the front door｝(by mistake).)

The difference is that the *mama* sentence focuses on the unaltered situation, while the *naide / zu ni* sentences focus primarily on the fact that no action was taken.
(⇒ ***~naide***)

M

~mashō ～ましょう *verb ending*

a verb ending that indicates the first person's volition or invitation in polite speech

I/We will do s.t.; Let's do s.t.
【REL. *~masen ka*; *~yō*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subject (1st person)			Vmasu	
私 *Watashi*	が *ga*	彼に *kare ni*	話し ***hanashi***	ましょう。 *mashō.*
(*I* will talk to him.)				

(B)

	Vmasu		
そのかばんを *Sono kaban o*	持ち ***mochi***	ましょう *mashō*	か。 *ka.*
(Shall I carry that bag (for you)?)			

(C)

	Vmasu	
映画に *Eiga ni*	行き ***iki***	ましょう。 *mashō.*
(Let's go to a movie.)		

(D)

	Vmasu		
パーティーを *Pātī o*	し ***shi***	ましょう *mashō*	か。 *ka.*
(Shall we have a party?)			

Formation

Vmasu ましょう
mashō

話しましょう (I/We will talk.; Let's talk.)
hanashimashō

食べましょう (I/We will eat.; Let's eat.)
tabemashō

M

Examples

(a) 私たちが手伝いましょう。
Watashi-tachi ga tetsudaimashō.
(We will help you.)

(b) 私が提案書を書きましょうか。
Watashi ga teiansho o kakimashō ka.
(Shall I write a proposal?)

(c) 今晩はパスタを食べましょう。
Konban wa pasuta o tabemashō.
(Let's have pasta tonight.)

(d) 車で行きましょうか。
Kuruma de ikimashō ka.
(Shall we go by car?)

Notes

1. *Mashō* is the polite verb ending to express the first person's volition, as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (b), or invitation, as in KSs(C), (D), Exs.(c) and (d).

2. The volitional *mashō* with the question marker *ka* is used to offer help, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b), or to make a suggestion, as in KS(D) and Ex.(d).

3. When the subject "X *ga*" occurs in volitional *mashō* sentences, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b), it implies that "not others but X will do something." When a *mashō* sentence simply expresses the first person's volition with no such implication, the subject is usually omitted. (1) compares a sentence without "X *ga*" and one with "X *ga*."

   (1) a. そのかばんを持ちましょう。
   Sono kaban o mochimashō.
   (I'll carry that bag.)
   b. 私がそのかばんを持ちましょう。
   ***Watashi ga** sono kaban o mochimashō.*
   (*I* will carry that bag.)

4. In invitation and suggestion situations, the subject is usually omitted, as in KSs(C), (D), Exs.(c) and (d).

5. *Mashō ka* sentences with a question word express neither invitation nor suggestion. They are simply asking a question about the action to be taken with the listener, as in (2).

   (2) a. 今日はどこでお昼を食べましょうか。
   *Kyō wa doko de o-hiru o tabe**mashō ka**.*
   (Where shall we eat lunch today?)
   b. この仕事をだれに頼みましょうか。
   *Kono shigoto o dare ni tanomi**mashō ka**.*
   (Who shall we ask to do this job?)

6. Negative volition is usually expressed by simple non-past negative sentences, as in (3).

   (3) 私はパーティーに行きません。
   Watashi wa pātī ni ikimasen.
   (I won't go to the party.)

7. "Let's not do s.t." is expressed by different constructions as follows.

   (4) Vplain *no wa yamemashō* (lit., Let's stop doing s.t.)
   パーティーに行くのはやめましょう。
   *Pātī ni iku **no wa yamemashō**.*
   (Let's not go to the party.)

(5) { Vneg (Gr. 1) / Vstem (Gr. 2) } *naide okimashō*
(lit., Let's leave ~ undone.) (⇒ ~ ***oku***)
タイラーには言わ**ないでおきましょう**。
*Tairā ni wa iwa**naide okimashō.***
(Let's not tell Tyler.)

【Related Expressions】

I. The speaker's invitation can also be expressed using *~masen ka*, (i.e., negative questions), as in [1].

[1] パーティーに{行きませんか / 行きましょう}。
Pātī ni { ***ikimasen ka*** / ***ikimashō*** } .
(Wouldn't you (like to) go to the party? / Let's go to the party.)

In invitation situations, negative questions are more polite than *mashō* sentences because the former are asking whether or not the listener will do something and, therefore, are listener-oriented, while the latter do not consider the listener's volition and are more speaker-oriented.

In [2], the speaker is inviting the listener to his/her party. In this case, *mashō ka* cannot be used. That is, in invitation sentences, if the speaker does not take an action together with the listener, *mashō ka* cannot be used.

M

[2] パーティーに{来ませんか /×来ましょうか}。
Pātī ni { ***kimasen ka*** / × ***kimashō ka*** } .
(Wouldn't you like to come to the party?)

The sentences in [3] present other examples to show the above point. That is, [3a] can be used either when the speaker is thinking of drinking coffee with the listener or when the speaker simply offers coffee for the listener but the speaker is not planning to drink it, while [3b] can be used only when the speaker is thinking of drinking coffee with the listener.

[3] a. コーヒーを飲み**ませんか**。
*Kōhī o nomi**masen ka.***
(Wouldn't you like to have coffee?)

b. コーヒー飲み**ましょうか**。
*Kōhī o nomi**mashō ka.***
(Shall we have coffee?)

II. Besides the polite volitional forms, verbs have the plain volitional forms.
(⇒ ~***yō***)

mieru 見える *v. (Gr. 2)*

S.o. can see s.t. passively or spontaneously.

(can) see; be visible; look
【REL. *mirareru*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (location)		Noun (visible object)		
窓から *Mado kara*	(は) *(wa)*	**海** ***umi***	が *ga*	見える / 見えます。 *mieru / miemasu.*
(We can see the ocean from the window. (lit., From the window the ocean is visible.))				

(B)

Topic (experiencer)		Noun (visible object)			
私 *Watashi*	(に)は *(ni) wa*	**遠くのもの** ***tōku no mono***	が *ga*	よく *yoku*	見える / 見えます。 *mieru / miemasu.*
(I can see distant objects very well. (lit., To me distant objects are very visible.))					

(C)

Topic (subject)			Adj(*i*)stem		
吉川さん *Yoshikawa-san*	は *wa*	年よりずっと *toshi yori zutto*	**若** ***waka***	く ***ku***	見える / 見えます。 *mieru / miemasu.*
(Yoshikawa-san looks much younger than his (real) age.)					

(D)

Sentence					Nom		
	Subject			V*te*			
校庭で *Kōtei de*	子供たちが *kodomo-tachi*	が *ga*	サッカーを *sakkā o*	して ***shite***	いる ***iru***	の *no*	が *ga*	見える / 見えます。 *mieru /* *miemasu.*
(We can see children playing soccer on the school ground.)								

Examples

(a) 東京スカイツリーからは東京の町がよく見えます。
Tōkyō Sukaitsurī kara wa Tōkyō no machi ga yoku miemasu.
(From Tokyo Skytree you can get a good view of the Tokyo cityscape.)

(b) 私には望遠鏡なしでその星が見えた。
Watashi ni wa bōenkyō nashi de sono hoshi ga mieta.
(I could see the star without a telescope.)

(c) 金子さんは今日ハイヒールをはいているのでいつもより背が高く見えます。
Kaneko-san wa kyō haihīru o haite iru node itsumo yori se ga takaku miemasu.
(Kaneko-san looks taller than usual today because she is wearing high heels.)

(d) きれいな箱に入っていると、中の商品も高級に見えます。
Kirei na hako ni haitte iru to, naka no shōhin mo kōkyū ni miemasu.
(When a product is in a pretty box, the product in it also looks high-class.)

(e) 今岡さんはカジュアルな服を着ていると学生に見える。
Imaoka-san wa kajuaru na fuku o kite iru to gakusei ni mieru.
(Imaoka-san looks like a student in casual clothes.)

(f) コールさんがホテルから出てくるのが見えた。
Kōru-san ga hoteru kara dete-kuru no ga mieta.
(I saw Cole-san come out of the hotel.)

M

Notes

1. When *mieru* is the predicate and the noun phrase that represents a visible object is not the topic, the noun phrase is marked by *ga*, not by *o*, as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (b).

2. When an experiencer (i.e., the person who sees something) is present, it is marked by *ni*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b). When the experiencer is marked by *wa*, *ni* is optional.

3. *Mieru* means "look" when it is preceded by the adverbial form of an *i*-adjective, as in KS(C) and Ex.(c), or by a *na*-adjective or noun with *ni*, as in Exs.(d) and (e). Note, however, that (1a) is not an acceptable expression when it is used to praise the listener. This is because *mieru* means "someone/something looks in a certain way to the speaker" with the implication that he/she/it may be different from the way he/she/it looks. In this case, the appropriate form is (1b).

(1) a. ×かわいく見えるね！
×*Kawaiku mieru ne!*
(*Intended meaning*: You look cute!)

b. かわいいね！
Kawaii ne!
(You are cute!)

4. *Mieru* is often used with the impression expressions *sō ni* and *yō ni*, as in (2) and (3). (*Sō ni* and *yō ni* are the adverbial forms of *sō da* "look; it looks like" and *yō da* "it looks like; appear," respectively.) (⇒ ~ ***sō da***[2]; ~ ***yō ni***[1])

(2) リードさんは病気だと聞いたが、私には元気**そうに見えた**。
*Rīdo-san wa byōki da to kiita ga, watashi ni wa genki-**sō ni mieta**.*
(I heard that Reed-san is ill, but he looked fine to me.)

(3) デービッドは新しい仕事を楽しんでいる**ように見える**。
*Dēbiddo wa atarashii shigoto o tanoshinde iru **yō ni mieru**.*
(It looks like David is enjoying his new assignment.)

5. In the *mieru* construction, a verb sentence can be used in the position of the noun phrase that represents a visible object, as in KS(D) and Ex.(f). In this case, the sentence has to be nominalized with the nominalizer *no* (= *no*[3]) and the subject of the sentence must be marked by the subject marker *ga* rather than the topic marker *wa*.

M

6. *Mieru* can be used as a honorific polite version of *kuru* "come," as in (4). This is because it is a more indirect reference to a superior's act of "coming."

(4) 学会には小野先生も**見えた**。
*Gakkai ni wa Ono-sensei mo **mieta**.*
(Prof. Ono also attended the academic conference.)

(5) お母さん、お客さんが**見えた**よ！
*O-kāsan, o-kyaku-san ga **mieta** yo!*
(Mom, we have company!)

【Related Expression】

Mieru is different from *mirareru*, the regular potential form of *miru*, in that *mieru* indicates that someone can see something passively or spontaneously, while *mirareru* indicates that someone can see something when he/she tries to see it volitionally. Thus, in [1a] and [1b], *mieru* can be used but *mirareru* cannot, while in [2a] and [2b], *mirareru* can be used but *mieru* cannot.

[1] a. 私は最近目がよく｛**見えない** / ×**見られない**｝。
*Watashi wa saikin me ga yoku｛**mienai** / ×**mirarenai**｝.*
(I cannot see well these days.)

b. ここはよく｛**見えない** / ×**見られない**｝からステージの近くに行こう。
*Koko wa yoku｛**mienai** / ×**mirarenai**｝kara sutēji no chikaku ni ikō.*
(We can't see (the stage) well here, so let's go closer to the stage.)

[2] a. その映画はどこで{**見られます / ×見えます**}か。
Sono eiga wa doko de*{*miraremasu* / ×*miemasu*}*ka.
(Where can we see that movie?)

b. 大きいテレビを買ったから大画面で映画が{**見られる / ×見える**}。
Ōkii terebi o katta kara daigamen de eiga ga*{*mirareru* / ×*mieru*}*.
(Because I bought a large TV, I can now watch movies on a big screen.)

In [3], both *mieru* and *mirareru* can be used. If *mieru* is used, it implies that viewing the mountains was the speaker's spontaneous act, while if *mirareru* is used, it implies that viewing the mountains was the speaker's conscious act.

[3] 隣に高いビルが立ったので山が{**見えなく / 見られなく**}なった。
Tonari ni takai biru ga tatta node yama ga*{*mienaku* / *mirarenaku*}*natta.
(Because a tall building was built next door, {the mountains are not visible anymore / I can't see the mountains anymore}.)

M

miru みる *aux. v. (Gr. 2)*

do s.t. to see what it's like or what will happen	do s.t. and see; try V-ing 【REL. *~yō to suru*】

◆ Key Sentence

		V*te*	
夏休みに *Natsu-yasumi ni*	日本の小説を *Nihon no shōsetsu o*	**読んで** ***yonde***	みる / みます。 *miru / mimasu.*
(I will read Japanese novels during summer vacation (to see what they are like).)			

Formation

V*te* みる
miru

話してみる (try talking)
hanashite miru

食べてみる (try eating)
tabete miru

Examples

(a) おもしろそうなコンサートだったので行ってみた。
Omoshiro-sō na konsāto datta node itte mita.
(Since it looked interesting, I went to the concert (to see what it was like).)

(b) ここの刺身はおいしいですよ。食べてみますか。
Koko no sashimi wa oishiidesu yo. Tabete mimasu ka.
(The sashimi here is good. Will you try it (lit., try eating it)?)

Notes

1. *Miru* is used as an auxiliary verb with V*te* to mean "make an attempt at doing s.t. to see what it is like or what will happen."

2. The past form V*te mita* is used only when someone actually performed the action indicated by V*te*. That is, V*te mita* cannot be used when someone tried to perform the action, but did not after all, as in (1). These sentences cannot be used if they are intended to mean the same ideas as the English sentences in the parentheses.

   (1) a. ×すしを作ってみたが、できなかった。
   × *Sushi o tsukutte mita ga, dekinakatta.*
   (*Intended meaning*: I tried to make sushi, but I couldn't.)

   b. ×日本語の小説を読んでみたが、難しいのでやめた。
   × *Nihongo no shōsetsu o yonde mita ga, muzukashii node yameta.*
   (*Intended meaning*: I tried to read a novel written in Japanese, but gave up because it was (too) difficult.)

   For the correct ways of saying (1a) and (1b), see Related Expression below.

M

[Related Expression]

~yō to suru expresses the idea of "try to do s.t." However, this expression and V*te miru* significantly differ in usage. First, when these two expressions are used in the past tense (i.e., *~yō to shita* and V*te mita*), they mean different things. For example, [1a] means that Joshua tried to put on Tom's shirt, with the implication that he couldn't or didn't actually do it for some reason, while [1b] means that Joshua did put it on. (⇒ ***~yō to suru***)

[1] a. ジョシュアはトムのシャツを着ようとした。
*Joshua wa Tomu no shatsu o **kiyō to shita**.*
(Joshua tried to put on Tom's shirt.)

b. ジョシュアはトムのシャツを着てみた。
*Joshua wa Tomu no shatsu o **kite mita**.*
(Joshua tried on Tom's shirt.)

The difference between the two expressions can also be seen in [2], in which [2a] is acceptable while [2b] is not, i.e., [2b] cannot be used if it is intended to mean the same idea as the English sentence in [2a].

[2] a. ジョシュアはトムのシャツを**着ようとした**が、小さすぎて着られなかった。
*Joshua wa Tomu no shatsu o **kiyō to shita** ga, chīsa-sugite kirare-nakatta.*
(Joshua tried to put on Tom's shirt but he couldn't because it was too small.)

b. ×ジョシュアはトムのシャツを**着てみた**が、小さすぎて着られなかった。
× *Joshua wa Tomu no shatsu o **kite mita** ga, chīsa-sugite kirare-nakatta.*

Second, V*te miru* can be used to express the speaker's volition, whereas *~yō to suru* cannot be used in this situation, as in [3].

[3] a. 彼女に手紙を**書いてみます**。
*Kanojo ni tegami o **kaite mimasu**.*
(I'll write a letter to my girlfriend (and see what will happen).)

b. ×彼女に手紙を書こうとします。
× *Kanojo ni tegami o **kakō to shimasu**.*

Third, *~yō to suru* can be used in the V*te iru* form (i.e., *~yō to shite iru*) to mean "s.o. is trying to do s.t.; s.o. is about to do s.t.," but V*te miru* cannot be used in the V*te iru* form (i.e., V*te mite iru*), as in [4].

[4] a. あ、知らない人が私の車のドアを**開けようとしている**！
*A, shiranai hito ga watashi no kuruma no doa o **akeyō to shite iru**!*
(Oh, a stranger is trying to open my car's door.)

b. ×あ、知らない人が私の車のドアを**開けてみている**！
× *A, shiranai hito ga watashi no kuruma no doa o **akete mite iru**!*

mo[1] も[1] *prt.*

a particle that indicates that a proposition about the preceding element X is also true when another similar proposition is true

too; also; (not) ~ either

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subject		
エミリー ***Emirī***	も *mo*	学生だ / です。 *gakusei da / desu.*
(Emily is a student, too. (lit., Emily, too, is a student.))		

(B)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		
ダニエル *Danieru*	は *wa*	スペイン語 ***supeingo***	も *mo*	話す / 話します。 *hanasu / hanashimasu.*
(Daniel speaks Spanish, too.)				

(C)

Topic (subject)		Indirect Object			
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	西口さん ***Nishiguchi-san***	に ***ni***	も *mo*	プレゼントをあげる / あげます。 *purezento o ageru / agemasu.*
(I will give a present to Nishiguchi-san, too.)					

Formation

(i) N も
mo

私も (I, too; me, too [indirect object])
watashi mo

(ii) N (+ Prt) も
mo

日本(に)も (in/to Japan, too)
Nihon (ni) mo

アメリカ(へ)も (to America, too)
Amerika (e) mo

(iii) N + Prt も
mo

先生にも (to/for the teacher, too [indirect object])
sensei ni mo

イギリスでも (in England, too)
Igirisu de mo

友達とも (with my friend, too)
tomodachi to mo

フランスからも (from France, too)
Furansu kara mo

Examples

(a) ハートさんは日本語が話せる。ルイスさんも(日本語が)話せる。
Hāto-san wa Nihongo ga hanaseru. Ruisu-san mo (Nihongo ga) hanaseru.
(Hart-san can speak Japanese. Lewis-san can also speak it.)

(b) 村上さんはテニスをします。(彼は)ゴルフもします。
Murakami-san wa tenisu o shimasu. (Kare wa) gorufu mo shimasu.
(Murakami-san plays tennis. He plays golf, too.)

(c) 京都にはお寺や神社がたくさんあります。奈良(に)もたくさんあります。
Kyōto ni wa o-tera ya jinja ga takusan arimasu. Nara (ni) mo takusan arimasu.
(There are many temples and shrines in Kyoto. There are also many in Nara.)

(d) 大阪へ行くので、奈良(へ)も行くつもりだ。
Ōsaka e iku node, Nara (e) mo iku tsumori da.
(I'm going to Osaka, so I plan to go to Nara, too.)

(e) この町では日本の食品が買えません。隣の町でも(日本の食品が)買えません。
Kono machi de wa Nihon no shokuhin ga kaemasen. Tonari no machi de mo (Nihon no shokuhin ga) kaemasen.
(You can't buy Japanese foodstuffs in this town. You can't buy them in the next town, either.)

(f) 私はたいてい友達とテニスをしますが、時々弟ともします。
Watashi wa taitei tomodachi to tenisu o shimasu ga, tokidoki otōto to mo shimasu.
(I usually play tennis with my friends, but sometimes play with my younger brother, too.)

(g) オンラインの学会だったので、外国からもたくさん参加者があった。
Onrain no gakkai datta node, gaikoku kara mo takusan sankasha ga atta.
(Because the academic conference was held online, there were many participants from abroad, too.)

Notes

1. The particles *wa*, *ga* and *o* do not occur with *mo*, as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (b). The *ni* of existence location (= *ni*[6]) and the direction markers *ni* (= *ni*[7]) and *e* are optional before *mo*, as in Exs.(c) and (d). The other particles, including *ni*[1]–*ni*[6], *de*, *to* and *kara* do not drop before *mo*, as in KS(C) and Exs.(e)–(g).

2. In general, when "X (+ Prt) *mo*" appears in a sentence, a related sentence with "Y (+ Prt)" in place of "X (+ Prt) *mo*" is presupposed. For example, when a speaker states (1a), a sentence like (1b) is presupposed.

   (1) a. 私はニューヨークへも行った。
   *Watashi wa Nyūyōku e **mo** itta.*
   (I went to New York, too.)

   M b. 私はボストンへ行った。
   Watashi wa Bosuton e itta.
   (I went to Boston.)

   Thus, when "X (+ Prt) *mo*" appears in a sentence, this element is always under focus in that sentence.

3. However, there are cases in which "X (+ Prt) *mo*" is used when it does not exactly replace "Y (+ Prt)" in the presupposed sentence. For example, (2b) can be said after (2a).

   (2) a. 私の家は居間が狭い。
   Watashi no ie wa ima ga semai.
   (The living room of my house is small.)

   b. それに台所も使いにくい。
   *Sore ni daidokoro **mo** tsukai-nikui.*
   (On top of that, the kitchen is hard to use, too.)

   In this case, the presupposition when (2b) is said is not "something else is hard to use." Rather, the speaker implies that his/her house is inconvenient when he/she says (2a), and this implication is the presupposition of (2b), where the speaker elaborates on the inconvenience.

4. "X *mo* A *da*" cannot be used to mean "X is also A" in the sense that X is A as well as something else. "X *mo* A *da*" can be used only when "Y *wa/ga* A *da*" is presupposed. For example, (3) cannot be used to mean the intended meaning.

(3) 大木さんは医者だ。× 彼**も**先生だ。
Ōki-san wa isha da. × *Kare* ***mo*** *sensei da.*
(*Intended meaning*: Oki-san is a (medical) doctor. He is also a teacher.)

The idea that someone is a doctor as well as a teacher is expressed as in (4).

(4) 大木さんは医者だ。そして先生**でもある**。
Ōki-san wa isha da. Soshite sensei ***de mo aru.***
(Oki-san is a (medical) doctor and also a teacher.)

mo[2]　**も**[2]　*prt.*

a particle that indicates emphasis

even; as many/much/long/etc. as; (not) even (one); (not) any

M

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Direct Object		
グレイさんは *Gurei-san wa*	**こんな難しい漢字** ***konna muzukashii kanji***	も *mo*	読める / 読めます。 *yomeru / yomemasu.*
(Gray-san can read even difficult kanji like this.)			
ハリスさんは *Harisu-san wa*	**こんなやさしい漢字** ***konna yasashii kanji***	も *mo*	読めない / 読めません。 *yomenai / yomemasen.*
(Harris-san cannot read even easy kanji like this.)			

(B)

Topic (subject)			Number (+ Counter)		Verb (affirmative)
ヘイズさん *Heizu-san*	は *wa*	車を *kuruma o*	**５台** ***go-dai***	も *mo*	持っている / います。 *motte iru / imasu.*
(Hayes-san has as many as five cars.)					

(C)

	Subject			Counter		Verb (affirmative)
その地震で *Sono jishin de*	人 *hito*	が *ga*	**何** ***nan***	**人** ***-nin***	も *mo*	死んだ / 死にました。 *shinda / shinimashita.*
(Many people died in that earthquake.)						

(D)

Topic (location)		Subject			Counter		Verb (negative)
この図書館 *Kono toshokan*	には *ni wa*	日本語の本 *nihongo no hon*	が *ga*	1 *is*	**冊** ***-satsu***	も *mo*	ない / ありません。 *nai / arimasen.*
(There is no (lit., not a single) Japanese book in this library.)							

(E)

Topic (subject)			Q-word		Verb (negative)
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	今 *ima*	**何** ***nani***	も *mo*	**食べたく**ない / **たく**ないです。 ***tabe-taku****nai* / ***taku****naidesu.*
(I don't want to eat anything now.)					

(F)

Topic (subject)			V*masu*		
アイリーン *Airīn*	は *wa*	私の話を *watashi no hanashi o*	**聞き** ***kiki***	も *mo*	しない / しません。 *shinai / shimasen.*
(Irene doesn't even listen to me.)					

Formation

(i) NP (+ Prt) も
mo

こんな簡単な仕事も (even such a simple job)
konna kantan na shigoto mo

あんな学校にも (even at a school like that)
anna gakkō ni mo

(ii) Number (+ Counter) も
mo

50 も (as many as fifty)
gojū mo

100 人も　(as many as a hundred people)
hyaku-nin mo

(iii) { 何 / いく } + Counter も
{ *nan* / *iku* } *mo*

何人も　(many (people); a number of (people))
nan-nin mo

いくつも　(many (objects); a number of (objects))
iku-tsu mo

(iv) 1 + Counter も
mo

1 冊も　((not) even one (book, magazine, etc.))
is-satsu mo

1 つも　((not) even one ~)
hito-tsu mo

(v) Q-word も
mo

何も　((not) anything)
nani mo

だれも　((not) anyone)
dare mo

(vi) Q-word の Noun (+ Prt) も
no *mo*

だれの本も　(anyone's book)
dare no hon mo

どこの店にも　(at any store (lit., at a store at any place))
doko no mise ni mo

(vii) Adjectival question word + Noun (+ Prt) も
mo

どの車も　(any car)
dono kuruma mo

どんな人とも　(with any kind of people)
donna hito to mo

(viii) V*masu* もしない
mo shinai

話しもしない　(don't even talk)
hanashi mo shinai

Examples

(a) 彼女は大変な仕事も嫌がらずにやってくれる。
Kanojo wa taihen na shigoto mo iya-garazu ni yatte kureru.
(She even takes on tough work without reluctance.)

(b) 弘之は１年生のたし算もまともにできません。
Hiroyuki wa ichi-nensei no tashizan mo matomo ni dekimasen.
(Hiroyuki cannot do even first-grade addition correctly.)

(c) 今日は車が 10 台も売れた。
Kyō wa kuruma ga jū-dai mo ureta.
(As many as ten cars sold today.)

(d) 何回も練習したので、うまく発表できると思います。
Nan-kai mo renshū-shita node, umaku happyō-dekiru to omoimasu.
(I practiced many times, so I think I can give my presentation all right.)

(e) 昨日のパーティーには女の子は一人も来ませんでした。
Kinō no pātī ni wa onna no ko wa hitori mo kimasen deshita.
(No girls (lit., Not even one girl) came to yesterday's party.)

(f) 会議室にはだれもいなかった。
Kaigi-shitsu ni wa dare mo inakatta.
(There was no one in the conference room.)

M

(g) このことはだれにも言いません。
Kono koto wa dare ni mo iimasen.
(I won't tell this to anyone.)

(h) 早紀はだれのアドバイスも聞かなかった。
Saki wa dare no adobaisu mo kikanakatta.
(Saki didn't listen to anyone's advice.)

(i) どのドレスも素敵です。でも、私にはどれも高すぎて買えません。
Dono doresu mo suteki desu. Demo, watashi ni wa dore-mo taka-sugite kaemasen.
(All the dresses look nice, but any one of them is too expensive for me to buy.)

(j) 私は小西さんがくれた本をまだ見もしていない。
Watashi wa Konishi-san ga kureta hon o mada mi mo shite inai.
(I haven't even taken a look at the book Konishi-san gave me yet.)

Notes

1. *Mo* as an emphatic marker is an extended use of *mo*[1]. The following examples show the transition of meaning from the original idea "also" to the emphatic use "even." (⇒ ***mo***[1])

(1) a. グレイさんは非常に難しい漢字も読める。(cf. KS(A))
*Gurei-san wa hijō ni muzukashii kanji **mo** yomeru.*
(Gray-san can read even very difficult kanji. (lit., Gray-san can read very difficult kanji, too.))

b. ハリスさんは非常にやさしい漢字も読めない。(cf. KS(A))
*Harisu-san wa hijō ni yasashii kanji **mo** yomenai.*
(Harris-san cannot read even very easy kanji. (lit., Harris-san cannot read very easy kanji, either.))

2. *Mo* is used with a large number (optionally with a counter) to mean "as many/much as ~," as in KS(B) and Ex.(c).

3. *Mo* is used with "*nan/iku* + Counter" to mean "a number of" or "many," as in KS(C) and Ex.(d).

4. *Mo* is used with "1 + Counter" in negative sentences to mean "not a single ~," "not any ~" or "no ~," as in KS(D) and Ex.(e).

5. In the "Question word (+ Prt) *mo ~nai*" construction, when the question word is the subject or the direct object, the subject marker *ga* and the direct object marker *o* do not occur in the Prt position, as in KS(E) and Ex.(f).

E and the directional *ni* (= *ni*[7]) are optional before *mo*, as in (2).

(2) 今年の夏はどこ(へ / に)も行きません。
*Kotoshi no natsu wa doko (**e** / **ni**) **mo** ikimasen.*
(I'm not going anywhere this summer.)

The non-directional *ni*, *to* and *kara* do not drop before *mo*, as in Ex.(g). (3) provides additional examples.

(3) a. 今はだれとも話したくない。
*Ima wa dare **to mo** hanashi-takunai.*
(I don't want to talk to anyone now.)

b. 今年はだれからもクリスマスカードが来なかった。
*Kotoshi wa dare **kara mo** kurisumasu-kādo ga konakatta.*
(I didn't receive any Christmas cards from anyone this year.)

6. *Nani mo* and *dare mo* are used only in negative sentences, as in KS(E) and Ex.(f). However, other question words with *mo* can be used in both affirmative sentences and negative sentences, as in (4) and (5).

(4) a. 岡村さんはいつも人に親切だ。
*Okamura-san wa **itsumo** hito ni shinsetsu da.*
(Okamura-san is always kind to people.)

b. 川本さんは**いつも**約束を守らない。
*Kawamoto-san wa **itsumo** yakusoku o mamoranai.*
(Kawamoto-san never keeps his promises.)

(5) a. 京都の人気スポットは**どこも**観光客でいっぱいだ。
*Kyōto no ninki-supotto wa **doko-mo** kankōkyaku de ippai da.*
(Every popular spot in Kyoto is full of tourists.)

b. 危険な職場は**どこも**働く人がいなくて困っている。
*Kiken na shokuba wa **doko-mo** hataraku hito ga inakute komatte iru.*
(Every dangerous workplace has a shortage of manpower and has trouble (because of that).)

In fact, the following expressions are commonly recognized as single words.

(6) a. いつも (always; anytime)
itsumo

b. どこも (everywhere; anywhere)
doko-mo

c. どちらも (both; neither of the two ~)
dochira-mo

M

d. どれも (any one of ~)
dore-mo

e. どうも (somehow)
dōmo

7. V*masu mo* is always followed by a negative form of *suru* "do," as in KS(F) and Ex.(j).

mō もう *adv.*

S.o./s.t. is no longer in the same state that he/she or it was in some time ago.

(not) anymore; (not) any longer; already; yet; now
【REL. ***mada***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Predicate (affirmative)
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	もう *mō*	昼ご飯を食べた / 食べました。 *hiru-gohan o **tabeta / tabemashita.***
(I have already eaten my lunch.)			

(B)

Topic (subject)			Predicate (negative)
ヒルさん *Hiru-san*	は *wa*	もう *mō*	日本語を勉強していない / いません。 *nihongo o **benkyō-shite inai / imasen.***
(Hill-san is not studying Japanese any longer.)			

M

Examples

(a) A: もう宿題をしましたか。
Mō shukudai o shimashita ka.
(Have you done your homework yet? / Have you already done your homework?)

B: はい、もうしました。
Hai, mō shimashita.
(Yes, I've already done it.)

(b) 私はもうゲームをしません。
Watashi wa mō gēmu o shimasen.
(I won't play games anymore.)

(c) もうティムとは一緒に仕事をしたくない。
Mō Timu to wa issho ni shigoto o shi-takunai.
(I don't want to work with Tim anymore.)

(d) 良太君はもう大丈夫です。
Ryōta-kun wa mō daijōbu desu.
(Ryota-kun is all right now.)

Notes

1. *Mō* indicates that someone or something is not in the same state he/she or it was in some time ago. Thus, *mō* corresponds to "already" or "now" in affirmative declarative sentences, as in KS(A), Exs.(a)-B and (d), "yet" or "already" in affirmative interrogative sentences, as in Ex.(a)-A, and "(not) anymore" or "(not) any longer" in negative sentences, as in KS(B), Exs.(b) and (c).

2. The opposite concept of *mō* is expressed by *mada*. (⇒ ***mada***)

～ mo ～ mo　～も～も　*str.*

a structure that expresses the idea of "both X and Y"

both ~ and ~; neither ~ nor ~

M

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Noun		Noun		
大西さん ***Ōnishi-san***	も *mo*	寺内さん ***Terauchi-san***	も *mo*	ITの会社に勤めている / います。 *aitī no kaisha ni tsutomete iru / imasu.*
(Both Onishi-san and Terauchi-san work for an IT company.)				

(B)

	Noun	Prt		Noun	Prt		
この温泉へは *Kono onsen e wa*	バス ***basu***	で ***de***	も *mo*	電車 ***densha***	で ***de***	も *mo*	行ける / 行けます。 *ikeru / ikemasu.*
(You can go to this hot spring either by bus or by train.)							

(C)

	Adj(*i*)stem			Adj(*i*)stem			
この店は特に *Kono mise wa toku ni*	高 ***taka***	く *ku*	も *mo*	安 ***yasu***	く *ku*	も *mo*	ない / ないです。 *nai / naidesu.*
((The goods in) this store are neither particularly expensive nor cheap.)							

(D)

	Noun			Noun			
これは *Kore wa*	タイ語 ***taigo***	で *de*	も *mo*	ベトナム語 ***betonamugo***	で *de*	も *mo*	ない / ないです。 *nai / naidesu.*
(This is neither Thai nor Vietnamese.)							

Formation

(i) N (+ Prt) も N (+ Prt) も (N (+ Prt) も)
mo *mo* *mo*

先生も学生も (both teachers and students)
sensei mo gakusei mo

南米からもアフリカからも (from both South America and Africa)
nanbei kara mo Afurika kara mo

(ii) Adj(*i*)stem くも Adj(*i*)stem くもない
ku mo *ku mo nai*

大きくも小さくもない (s.t. is neither big nor small)
ōkiku mo chīsaku mo nai

(iii) { Adj(*na*) / N } でも { Adj(*na*) / N } でもない
de mo *de mo nai*

便利でも不便でもない (s.t. is neither convenient nor inconvenient)
benri de mo fuben de mo nai

先生でも学生でもない (s.o. is neither a teacher nor a student)
sensei de mo gakusei de mo nai

M

Examples

(a) マットもジェームズもよく食べる。
Matto mo Jēmuzu mo yoku taberu.
(Both Matt and James eat a lot.)

(b) 私は歌もダンスもあまり上手じゃないです。
Watashi wa uta mo dansu mo amari jōzu ja naidesu.
(I'm not very good at singing or dancing.)

(c) お母さんは私にも妹にもテニスのラケットを買ってくれました。
O-kāsan wa watashi ni mo imōto ni mo tenisu no raketto o katte kure-mashita.
(My mother bought tennis rackets for both my younger sister and me.)

(d) 私はホセともマシューとも踊った。
Watashi wa Hose to mo Mashū to mo odotta.
(I danced with both Jose and Matthew.)

(e) 今の仕事環境は特によくも悪くもない。
Ima no shigoto-kankyō wa toku ni yoku mo waruku mo nai.
(The current work environment is neither particularly good nor bad.)

(f) 私は彼が別に好きでも嫌いでもないです。
Watashi wa kare ga betsu ni suki de mo kirai de mo naidesu.
(I do not particularly like or dislike him.)

(g) リーさんは中国人でも韓国人でもない。アメリカ人だ。
Rī-san wa chūgokujin de mo kankokujin de mo nai. Amerikajin da.
(Li-san is neither Chinese nor Korean. He is an American.)

Notes

1. "Noun (+ Prt) *mo* Noun (+ Prt) *mo*" can be used as the subject as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), as the direct object as in Ex.(b), as the indirect object as in Ex.(c), or in any other place where a noun with a particle can occur except for the predicate position. The following sentence is ungrammatical because "Noun *mo* Noun *mo*" is used in the predicate position.

M

(1) ×ウィリアムズさんはピアニストも作曲家もです。
× *Wiriamuzu-san wa pianisuto* ***mo*** *sakkyokuka* ***mo*** *desu.*
(*Intended meaning*: Williams-san is both a pianist and a composer.)

2. The structure "X *mo* Y *mo nai*" is used to express the idea that someone or something is neither X nor Y, as in KSs(C), (D) and Exs.(e)–(g).

mono (da) もの(だ) *n.*

a dependent noun that conveys the speaker's emotion as expressing his/her nostalgic reminiscence, desire, etc.

used to do s.t.; tend to do s.t.; be supposed to do s.t.; How dare ~!; How could ~!

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Splain			
	Vplain・past		
昔はよくこの湖で *Mukashi wa yoku kono mizuumi de*	**泳いだ** ***oyoida***	もの *mono*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(I used to swim in this lake often.)			

(B)

Splain				
	V*masu*			
こんないいうちに一度 *Konna ii uchi ni ichi-do*	**住み** ***sumi***	たい *-tai*	もの *mono*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(I'd like to live in such a nice house once.)				

(C)

Splain			
	Vplain		
メイはよくあんな男と *Mei wa yoku anna otoko to*	デートできる ***dēto-dekiru***	もの *mono*	だ / です！ *da / desu!*
(How could May date that kind of guy!)			

(D)

Splain		
人は年を取ると昔のことを話したがる *Hito wa toshi o toru to mukashi no koto o* ***hanashi-ta-garu***	もの *mono*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(When people get old, they tend to want to talk about their past.)		

(E)

Splain			
	Vplain・non-past		
朝、人に会ったら「おはよう」と *Asa, hito ni attara "Ohayō" to*	**言う** ***iu***	もの *mono*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(You are supposed to say "Good morning" when you meet people in the morning.)			

(F)

A:	B:	Splain*		
どうしてパーティーに行かないの？ *Dōshite pātī ni ikanai no?*	だって、 *Datte,*	今 忙しい *ima* ***isogashii***	んだ *n da*	もの。 *mono.*
(How come you don't go to the party?)	(Because I'm busy now.)			

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na*.

Formation

(i) { Vplain / V*masu* たい } ものだ
-tai mono da

話すものだ (s.o. is supposed to talk)
hanasu mono da

話したものだ (s.o. used to talk)
hanashita mono da

話したいものだ ((I) really would like to talk)
hanashi-tai mono da

M

(ii) Adj(*i*)plain ものだ
mono da

高いものだ (s.t. is supposed to be expensive)
takai mono da

高かったものだ (s.t. used to be expensive)
takakatta mono da

(iii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } ものだ
{ *na* / *datta* } *mono da*

静かなものだ (s.t. is supposed to be quiet)
shizuka na mono da

静かだったものだ (s.t. used to be quiet)
shizuka datta mono da

Examples

(a) 昔はこの川にも魚がいたものです。
Mukashi wa kono kawa ni mo sakana ga ita mono desu.
(There used to be fish in this river, too.)

(b) 一度ぜひ一緒にテニスをしたいものですね。
Ichi-do zehi issho ni tenisu o shi-tai mono desu ne.
(I'd like to play tennis with you sometime.)

(c) よくあんな難しいプロジェクトを成功させたものだと思います。
Yoku anna muzukashii purojekuto o seikō-saseta mono da to omoimasu.
(I'm surprised (myself) that we successfully completed such a difficult project.)

(d) よくそんなばかなことができるものだ！
Yoku sonna baka na koto ga dekiru mono da!
(How could you do such a foolish thing!)

(e) 月日が経つのは速いものだ。
Tsukihi ga tatsu no wa hayai mono da.
(Time flies! (lit., Months and days are supposed to go by quickly.))

(f) 好きな仕事をしていると病気にならないものだ。
Suki na shigoto o shite iru to byōki ni naranai mono da.
(When you are doing work you love, you don't become ill (lit., you tend not to get ill).)

(g) 人の家に行く時はおみやげを持って行くものです。
Hito no ie ni iku toki wa o-miyage o motte-iku mono desu.
(When you visit someone, you are supposed to take a gift with you.)

(h) A: どうして食べないの？
Dōshite tabenai no?
(Why don't you eat it?)

B: だって、まずいんだもの。
Datte, mazui n da mono.
(Because it doesn't taste good.)

Note

Mono means "(tangible) thing" when used as a common noun, as in (1).

(1) ここにあるものは全部私のものです。
Koko ni aru ***mono*** *wa zenbu watashi no* ***mono*** *desu.*
(Everything here is mine. (lit., The things that exist here are all my things.))

However, *mono* is also used as a dependent noun. In this case, it is attached to plain form sentences and in many cases, followed by *da*, as in KSs(A)–(E). In this structure, *mono* carries no meaning, but it conveys the speaker's emotion as expressing the following:

(i) Nostalgic reminiscence of past habits and states, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a). In this use, verbs in the past forms precede *mono da*.

(ii) Desire, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b). In this use, V*masu tai* precedes *mono da*.

(iii) Surprise, as in KS(C), Exs.(c) and (d). In this use, "S *mono da*" can express both positive feelings and negative feelings. *Yoku* is often added, but not always, as in (2).

(2) こんな難しい問題を 30 分で解くとは大したものだ。
Konna muzukashii mondai o sanjup-pun de toku to wa taishita ***mono da.***
(It's impressive that he solved such a difficult problem in thirty minutes.)

(iv) General truths and general tendencies, as in KS(D), Exs.(e) and (f). As an extended usage, "S *mono da*" can also be used as an indirect command, as in KS(E) and Ex.(g).

(v) Reason, as in KS(F) and Ex.(h). In this use, *da* does not occur after *mono*. "S *mono*" is usually used by female speakers and children in casual speech. The contracted form *mon* is also used.

M

morau[1] もらう[1] *v. (Gr. 1)*

The first person or s.o. the speaker empathizes with receives s.t. from s.o. whose status is not higher than the receiver's.

get; receive; be given
【REL. ***kureru***[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject, receiver)		Giver		Direct Object		
(私	は)	山本さん	に	本	を	もらった / もらいました。
(Watashi	*wa)*	***Yamamoto-san***	*ni*	***hon***	*o*	*moratta / moraimashita.*
(I got a book from Yamamoto-san.)						

Examples

(a) A: (あなたは) クリスさんに何をもらいましたか。
(Anata wa) Kurisu-san ni nani o moraimashita ka.
(What did you get from Chris-san?)

B: (私は) (クリスさんに) イヤリングをもらいました。
(Watashi wa) (Kurisu-san ni) iyaringu o moraimashita.
(I got a pair of earrings (from Chris-san).)

(b) 娘は橋本さんにコンサートのチケットをもらった。
Musume wa Hashimoto-san ni konsāto no chiketto o moratta.
(My daughter got a concert ticket from Hashimoto-san.)

Notes

1. *Morau* "get" or "receive" is one of a set of giving and receiving verbs. Unlike the English *get*, however, *morau* is used only when the receiver is the first person or someone with whom the speaker empathizes (usually a member of the speaker's in-group). Thus, (1) is unacceptable.

(1) ×山本さんは私にクッキーをもらった。
× *Yamamoto-san wa watashi ni kukkī o moratta.*
(*Intended meaning*: Yamamoto-san got cookies from me.)

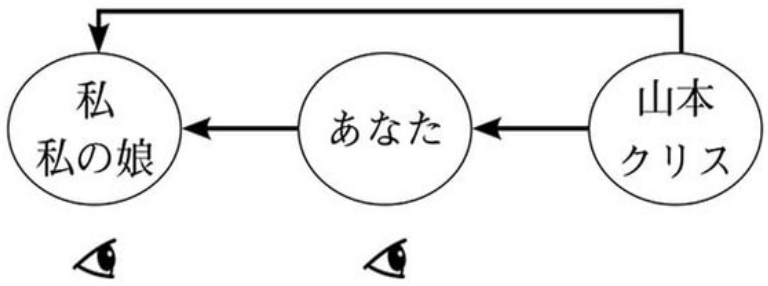
The reason for this is that *morau* requires the receiver's point of view when describing an event, and when an event involves the first person, the event is normally described from the first person's point of view. Therefore, if the first person is the giver in a *morau* sentence, a viewpoint conflict arises, making the sentence ungrammatical. The situation in (1) is usually described using *ageru*, as in (2). (⇒ ***ageru***[1])

M

(2) 私は山本さんにクッキーを**あげた**。
Watashi wa Yamamoto-san ni kukkī o ***ageta.***
(I gave Yamamoto-san cookies.)

2. The following diagram illustrates whose point of view is taken in different situations when *morau* is used. The arrows indicate the directions of objects that are received.

もらう *morau*：



As shown in the above diagram, when the first person or a person with whom the speaker is empathetic is involved (e.g., the speaker's daughter), the action is always described from the viewpoint of the speaker or that of the person with whom the speaker is empathetic. When the second person is involved but

the first person (or someone the speaker is empathetic with) is not involved, the action is always described from the second person's viewpoint.

3. In declarative sentences, if the subject is the speaker, it is often omitted, as in KS and Ex.(a)-B. Similarly, in interrogative sentences, if the subject is the listener, it is often omitted, as in Ex.(a)-A.

4. The humble polite version of *morau* is *itadaku*. (3) provides an example.

   (3) 私は先生に本を**いただいた**。
   Watashi wa sensei ni hon o ***itadaita.***
   (I was given a book by my teacher.)

5. In *morau* sentences, the giver is commonly marked by *ni*, but it can also be marked by the source particle *kara* "from" (= *kara*[1]), as in (4). (⇒ ***kara***[1])

   (4) 私は山本さん{**に / から**}本をもらった。(cf. KS)
   Watashi wa Yamamoto-san {***ni*** / ***kara***} *hon o moratta.*
   (I got a book from Yamamoto-san.)

As a matter of fact, when the giver is not human, *kara* is more appropriate than *ni*, as in (5).

M

(5) 私は国{**から** / ??**に**}奨学金をもらった。
Watashi wa kuni {***kara*** / ??***ni***} *shōgakukin o moratta.*
(I received a scholarship from the government (lit., country).)

This seems to be due to the fact that *kara* basically carries the idea of source, while the core idea of *ni* is direct contact.

(⇒ **Semantic Derivations of *Ni*** (p. 371))

morau[2] もらう[2] *aux. v. (Gr. 1)*

The first person or s.o. the speaker empathizes with receives some benefit from an action by someone whose status is not higher than the receiver's.

have s.t. done by s.o.; have s.o. do s.t.; get s.o. to do s.t.; ask s.o. to do s.t.

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject, favor recipient)		Giver		Direct Object		V*te*	
(私 *(Watashi*	は) *wa)*	**父** ***chichi***	に *ni*	カメラ *kamera*	を *o*	**買って** ***katte***	もらった / もらいました。 *moratta / moraimashita.*
(My father bought a camera for me. (lit., I had my father buy a camera for me.))							

(B)

Topic (subject, favor recipient)		Giver			V*te*	
(私 *(Watashi*	は) *wa)*	**友達** ***tomodachi***	に *ni*	アパートに *apāto ni*	**来て** ***kite***	もらった / もらいました。 *moratta / moraimashita.*
(I had my friend come to my apartment (for my benefit).)						

Formation

V*te* もらう
morau

話してもらう (have s.o. talk for my sake)
hanashite morau

食べてもらう (have s.o. eat for my sake)
tabete morau

Examples

(a) デービッドはローラに車を貸してもらった。
Dēbiddo wa Rōra ni kuruma o kashite moratta.
(David had Laura lend him her car.)

(b) (あなたは)ベックさんに何をしてもらいましたか。
(Anata wa) Bekku-san ni nani o shite moraimashita ka.
(What did Beck-san do for you? (lit., What did you have Beck-san do for you?))

(c) エバンズさんは松井さんに日本語を教えてもらっている。
Ebanzu-san wa Matsui-san ni nihongo o oshiete moratte iru.
(Evans-san has Matsui-san teaching him Japanese.)

(d) 明日１時に私のオフィスに来てもらえませんか。
Ashita ichi-ji ni watashi no ofisu ni kite moraemasen ka.
(Could you come to my office at one tomorrow?)

Notes

1. *Morau* is used as an auxiliary verb with V*te*. The meaning of V*te morau* is "receive some benefit from someone's action" or "have someone do something for someone else's sake." Like sentences with *morau* as a main verb, when the auxiliary verb *morau* is used, the recipient of the favor (i.e., the person in the subject position) must be the first person or someone with whom the speaker empathizes. Thus, (1a) is grammatical, but (1b) is not.

   (1) a. **私は**隣の人にペンを貸してもらった。
   Watashi wa *tonari no hito ni pen o kashite moratta.*
   (I borrowed a pen from the person next to me. (lit., I had the person next to me lend me a pen.))

   b. ×隣の人は**私に**ペンを貸してもらった。
   × *Tonari no hito wa* ***watashi ni*** *pen o kashite moratta.*
   (*Intended meaning*: The person next to me borrowed a pen from me. (lit., The person next to me had me lend him a pen.))

   Note that if the giver of the favor is the first person, sentences with V*te morau* are ungrammatical even if the recipient of the favor is a member of the speaker's in-group, as in (2).

M

   (2) ×**弟は私に**スーツケースを貸してもらった。
   × ***Otōto wa watashi ni*** *sūtsukēsu o kashite moratta.*
   (*Intended meaning*: My younger brother had me lend him my suitcase.)

2. In terms of the viewpoint, a sentence with V*te morau* describes a situation from the viewpoint of the favor recipient (= the subject).

(⇒ ***morau***[1]: Note 2)

3. In declarative sentences, if the subject is the speaker, it is often omitted, as in KSs(A) and (B). Similarly, in interrogative sentences, if the subject is the listener, it is often omitted, as in Ex.(b).

4. The humble polite version of *morau* as an auxiliary verb is *itadaku*, as in (3).

   (3) 私は先生に本を貸していただいた。
   Watashi wa sensei ni hon o kashite ***itadaita.***
   (I borrowed a book from my teacher. (lit., I had my teacher lend me a book.))

5. V*te moraemasen ka* can be used to make a polite request, as in Ex.(d). Here, *moraemasen* is the polite negative potential form. Thus, the literal meaning of V*te moraemasen ka* is "Can't I have (you) do something for me?" (4) provides additional examples. (4b), in which *itadakemasen* is used in place of *moraemasen*, is more polite than (4a).

(4) a. すみませんが、しばらく待っ**てもらえませんか**。
Sumimasen ga, shibaraku matte ***moraemasen ka.***
(I'm sorry, but could you wait for a while?)

b. すみませんが、スマホの番号を教え**ていただけませんか**。
Sumimasen ga, sumaho no bangō o oshiete ***itadakemasen ka.***
(I'm sorry, but could you please give me your smartphone number?)

The negative request form is *~naide* { *moraemasen / itadakemasen* } *ka*, as in (5).

(5) a. ここではスマホを使わ**ないでもらえませんか**。
*Koko de wa sumaho o tsukawa****naide moraemasen ka.***
(Could you please not use your smartphone here?)

b. ここでは写真を撮ら**ないでいただけませんか**。
*Koko de wa shashin o tora****naide itadakemasen ka.***
(Could you please not take pictures here?)

The affirmative potential form V*te* { *moraemasu / itadakemasu* } *ka* can also be used to make a request, but this version sounds direct, and is less polite than the version with the negative potential form, as in (6).

(6) a. すみませんが、しばらく待っ**てもらえますか**。(cf. (4a))
*Sumimasen ga, shibaraku mat****te moraemasu ka.***
(I'm sorry, but can you wait for a while?)

b. すみませんが、スマホの番号を教え**ていただけますか**。(cf. (4b))
*Sumimasen ga, sumaho no bangō o oshie****te itadakemasu ka.***
(I'm sorry, but could you give me your smartphone number?)

Note that non-potential forms cannot be used for making a request. For example, (7a) and (7b) are both grammatical sentences, but they are not acceptable as a sentence to make a request.

(7) a. ×すみませんが、しばらく待っ**てもらいませんか**。(cf. (4a))
× *Sumimasen ga, shibaraku matte* ***moraimasen ka.***
(*Intended meaning*: I'm sorry, but could you wait for a while?)

b. ×すみませんが、スマホの番号を教え**ていただきませんか**。(cf. (4b))
× *Sumimasen ga, sumaho no bangō o oshiete* ***itadakimasen ka.***
(*Intended meaning*: I'm sorry, but could you please give me your smartphone number?)

320 *na*

na な *prt.*

a negative imperative marker

Don't do s.t.
【REL. ~ *nasai*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Vplain・non-past	
失敗しても *Shippai-shitemo*	**あきらめる** ***akirameru***	な！ *na!*
(Even if you fail, don't give up!)		

(B)

	Vplain・non-past			
医者に酒を *Isha ni sake o*	**飲む** ***nomu***	な *na*	と *to*	言われた / 言われました。 *iwareta / iwaremashita.*
(I was told by my doctor not to drink alcohol.)				

N

Formation

Vplain·non-past な
na

話すな (Don't talk!)
hanasu na

食べるな (Don't eat!)
taberu na

Examples

(a) もうそんな所に行くな！
Mō sonna tokoro ni iku na!
(Don't go to such a place anymore!)

(b) 父はあんな男と結婚するなと言いましたが、私は彼を愛しています。
Chichi wa anna otoko to kekkon-suru na to iimashita ga, watashi wa kare o aishite imasu.
(My father told me not to marry such a man, but I love him.)

Notes

1. Vplain·non-past *na* expresses a strong negative imperative. The bare form of this expression, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), is used only by male speakers and is seldom used in daily situations. If *yo* with falling intonation is added as in (1)-B, however, the force of the statement is softened and can be used in conversation between people who are intimate with each other.

   (1) A: もう私に電話もメールもしないで！
   Mō watashi ni denwa mo mēru mo shinaide!
   (Don't call me or send me emails anymore!)

   B: そんなこと言うなよ。
   Sonna koto iu na yo.
   (Don't say such a thing.)

   Note that female speakers would use *~naide* rather than Vplain·non-past *na*, as in (1)-A. (⇒ ~ ***kudasai***: Note 5)

2. Vplain·non-past *na* is also used in indirect speech, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b). In this use, Vplain·non-past *na* simply indicates that the original sentence was one of those prohibition sentences (e.g., *Sake o nomanaide kudasai.* "Please don't drink alcohol." and *Sake o nonde wa ikemasen.* "You should not drink alcohol."). (⇒ ~ ***kudasai***; ~ ***tewa ikenai***)

N

[Related Expressions]

Affirmative imperatives can be expressed using ~ *nasai* (polite imperative) or plain imperative forms, such as *mate* "Wait," *tabero* "Eat (it)" and *koi* "Come."
(⇒ ~ ***nasai***; **Appendix 1**. Basic Conjugations)

nado など *prt.*

a particle that presents examples

things like; for example; and so on; etc.; and the like

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Noun		Noun			
日本の食べ物の中では *Nihon no tabemono no naka de wa*	すし ***sushi***	や *ya*	てんぷら ***tenpura***	など *nado*	が *ga*	好きだ / です。 *suki da / desu.*
(Among Japanese foods, I like things like sushi and tempura.)						

(B)

	Noun		Predicate (negative)
私は *Watashi wa*	ブランド物 ***burando-mono***	など *nado*	買わない / 買いません。 *kawanai / kaimasen.*
(I don't buy brand-name items or anything like that.)			

(C)

	Noun		Noun			Noun		
私は *Watashi wa*	ロボット ***robotto***	や *ya*	AI ***āai***	など *nado*	の *no*	技術 ***gijutsu***	に *ni*	興味がある。 *kyōmi ga aru.*
(I'm interested in technologies like robots and AI.)								

N

Examples

(a) 音楽はロックやジャズなどをよく聞きます。
Ongaku wa rokku ya jazu nado o yoku kikimasu.
(Talking about music, I listen to things like rock and jazz often.)

(b) この大学には中国などから学生が大勢来る。
Kono daigaku ni wa Chūgoku nado kara gakusei ga ōzei kuru.
(A large number of students come to this university from China and other countries.)

(c) A: 冬休みはどこに行こうか。
Fuyu-yasumi wa doko ni ikō ka.
(Where shall we go during winter vacation?)

B: ハワイなんか(は)どう？
Hawai nanka (wa) dō?
(How about Hawaii, for example?)

(d) A: お金がない時はどんなものを食べますか。カップラーメンですか。
O-kane ga nai toki wa donna mono o tabemasu ka. Kappu-rāmen desu ka.

(What kind of things do you eat when you don't have money? Cup noodles?)

B: いいえ、カップラーメンなど食べません。
Īe, kappu-rāmen nado tabemasen.
(No, I don't eat things like cup noodles.)

Notes

1. When *nado* is used to present examples, two examples are commonly presented, but there may be only one, as in Ex.(c)-B. When *nado* presents examples, the particles *wa*, *ga*, *o*, etc. occur after *nado*, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b).

2. When predicates are in the negative form, as in KS(B) and Ex.(d)-B, or carry a negative meaning, as in (1) and (2), *nado* expresses the speaker's negative feelings rather than presenting examples.

(1) 数学**など**大嫌いだ。
*Sūgaku **nado** dai-kirai da.*
(I hate stuff like math.)

(2) クリスマスイブの残業**など**最悪です。
*Kurisumasu-ibu no zangyō **nado** saiaku desu.*
(Things like working after hours on Christmas Eve would be the worst.)

In this use of *nado*, the particles *wa*, *ga* and *o* after *nado* are usually dropped, and particles like *e*, *ni*, *de*, *to* and *kara* usually occur before *nado*, as in (3) and (4).

N

(3) 塾**へなど**行きたくない。
*Juku **e nado** iki-takunai.*
(I don't want to go to (a place like) a cram school.)

(4) マーシャ**になど**仕事を手伝ってほしいとは思わない。
*Māsha **ni nado** shigoto o tetsudatte hoshii to wa omowanai.*
(I don't think I want (a person like) Marsha to help with my work.)

3. When *nado* is used with the speaker, the speaker's belongings, etc., it conveys humbleness, as in (5) and (6).

(5) A: この英文を日本語に翻訳してもらえませんか。
Kono eibun o nihongo ni hon'yaku-shite moraemasen ka.
(Could you translate these English sentences into Japanese for me?)

B: こんな難しい文の翻訳は私**など**にはできません。
*Konna muzukashii bun no hon'yaku wa watashi **nado** ni wa dekimasen.*
(I (lit., A person like me) cannot translate such difficult sentences.)

(6) 私が書いた本**など**大したことはありません。
*Watashi ga kaita hon **nado** taishita koto wa arimasen.*
(The books (lit., Things like the books) I wrote are nothing.)

4. *Nado* can be used for people. However, they cannot be people in a higher status than the speaker's, as in (7).

(7) a. 高校のクラスメートやその友達**など**とカラオケに行った。
*Kōkō no kurasumēto ya sono tomodachi **nado** to issho ni karaoke ni itta.*
(I went to karaoke with my high school classmates, their friends, and others.)

b. ??高校の先生や先輩**など**と一緒にカラオケに行った。
??*Kōkō no sensei ya senpai **nado** to issho ni karaoke ni itta.*
(*Intended meaning*: I went to karaoke with my high school teachers, older graduates, and others.)

5. When the structure "A *ya* B *nado*" modifies a noun, it is followed by *no*, as in KS(C). However, when this structure modifies a noun phrase rather than a bare noun like *gijutsu* "technology" in KS(C), *no* is optional, as in (8).

(8) a. 今年の夏はタイ**や**マレーシア**など**{、/ **の**}アジアの国に行きたい。
*Kotoshi no natsu wa Tai **ya** Marēshia **nado** {, / **no**} Ajia no kuni ni iki-tai.*
(I want to go to Asian countries like Thailand and Malaysia this summer.)

N

b. 姉はスキー**や**スノーボード**など**{、/ **の**}冬のスポーツが得意だ。
*Ane wa sukī **ya** sunōbōdo **nado** {, / **no**} fuyu no supōtsu ga tokui da.*
(My older sister is good at winter sports like skiing and snowboarding.)

6. *Nanka* in Ex.(c) is the casual, colloquial version of *nado*. (9) provides more examples.

(9) a. お昼はカレーやパスタ**なんか**をよく食べます。
*O-hiru wa karē ya pasuta **nanka** o yoku tabemasu.*
(I often eat curry and rice, pasta, and things like that for lunch.)

b. 薬**なんか**飲みたくない。
*Kusuri **nanka** nomi-takunai.*
(I don't want to take medicine or anything like that.)

nagara ながら *conj.*

a conjunction that indicates that the action represented in the preceding verb phrase takes place concurrently or simultaneously with the action represented in the main clause

while; over; with
【REL. ***aida (ni)***】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			Secondary Action			Primary Action
				V*masu*		
森さん *Mori-san*	は *wa*	いつも *itsumo*	新聞を *shinbun o*	**読み** ***yomi***	ながら *nagara*	朝ご飯を 食べる / 食べます。 *asa-gohan o* *taberu / tabemasu.*
(Mori-san always eats his breakfast while reading a newspaper.)						

Formation

V*masu* ながら
nagara

話しながら (while talking; talk while doing s.t.)
hanashi nagara

食べながら (while eating; eat while doing s.t.)
tabe nagara

Examples

(a) 歩きながらスマホを使うのは危ないですよ。
Aruki nagara sumaho o tsukau no wa abunaidesu yo.
(It is dangerous to use your smartphone while walking.)

(b) 山岡さんは笑いながら私の話を聞いていた。
Yamaoka-san wa warai nagara watashi no hanashi o kiite ita.
(Yamaoka-san was listening to me with a smile. (lit., Yamaoka-san was listening to my story while smiling.))

(c) 私はいつも寝ながら小説を読む。
Watashi wa itsumo ne nagara shōsetsu o yomu.
(I always read novels in bed. (lit., I always read novels while lying.))

(d) ものを食べながら話してはいけません。
Mono o tabe nagara hanashite wa ikemasen.

(Don't talk with food in your mouth. (lit., You must not talk while eating things.))

(e) 大竹さんは会社で働きながら学校に行っている。
Ōtake-san wa kaisha de hataraki nagara gakkō ni itte iru.
(Otake-san goes to school while working for a company.)

Notes

1. V*masu nagara* represents an action that occurs concurrently or simultaneously with another action. Note here that when one of the two actions is secondary to the other, V*masu nagara* must represent the secondary action. For example, (1)-B is a common expression when the speaker suggests that he/she and the listener talk over a cup of coffee. In this situation, (2) is unacceptable.

(1) A: ちょっと大事な話があるんですが。
Chotto daiji na hanashi ga aru n desu ga.
(I have something important to talk to you about.)

B: じゃあ、コーヒーを飲み**ながら**話しましょう。
*Jā, kōhī o nomi **nagara** hanashimashō.*
(Then, let's talk over a cup of coffee.)

(2) ×話し**ながら**コーヒーを飲みましょう。
× *Hanashi **nagara** kōhī o nomimashō.*
(Let's drink a cup of coffee while talking.)

N

When neither action of the two is secondary to the other, the situation can be described in two ways, as in (3).

(3) a. メールを読み**ながら**昼ご飯を食べた。
*Mēru o yomi **nagara** hiru-gohan o tabeta.*
(I ate my lunch while reading emails.)

b. 昼ご飯を食べ**ながら**メールを読んだ。
*Hiru-gohan o tabe **nagara** mēru o yonda.*
(I read emails while eating my lunch.)

Note also that in English the action represented by "while V-ing" is not always the secondary action.

2. V*masu nagara* cannot be used when the subjects of the two actions are different, as in (4).

(4) ×ルームメートがゲームをしながら私は勉強した。
× *Rūmumēto ga gēmu o shi nagara watashi wa benkyō-shita.*
(*Intended meaning*: I studied while my roommate was playing games.)

In this case, *aida* is used. (⇒ ***aida (ni)***)

3. Because V*masu nagara* represents an action in progress, "action-in-progress" expressions such as V*te iru* cannot be used with *nagara*, as in (5).

(5) × メールを**読んでいながら**昼ご飯を食べた。
× *Mēru o* ***yonde i nagara*** *hiru-gohan o tabeta.*
(*Intended meaning*: I ate my lunch while reading emails.)

～naide　～ないで　*verb ending*

the ending of the negative *te*-forms of verbs

do not V_1, and V_2 instead; without V-ing
【REL. ***~mama***; *~nakute*; *~zu ni*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Adverbial Clause			
			Vneg (Gr. 1) / Vstem (Gr. 2)		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	ホテルに *hoteru ni*	**泊まら** ***tomara***	ないで *naide*	旅館に泊まった / 泊まりました。 *ryokan ni tomatta /* *tomarimashita.*
(I didn't stay at a hotel and stayed at a Japanese style inn instead.)					

(B)

Topic (subject)			Adverbial Clause			
				Vneg (Gr. 1) / Vstem (Gr. 2)		
エリー *Erī*	は *wa*	今朝、 *kesa,*	朝ご飯を *asa-gohan o*	**食べ** ***tabe***	ないで *naide*	学校へ行った / 行きました。 *gakkō e itta /* *ikimashita.*
(Ellie went to school this morning without eating her breakfast.)						

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg ないで
naide

話さないで (s.o. doesn't talk and ~ instead; without talking)
hanasanaide

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem ないで
naide

食べないで (s.o. doesn't eat and ~ instead; without eating)
tabenaide

(iii) Irr. verbs:
来る → 来ないで (s.o. doesn't come and ~ instead; without coming)
kuru *konaide*

する → しないで (s.o. doesn't do s.t. and ~ instead; without doing s.t.)
suru *shinaide*

Examples

(a) 内村さんは大阪に行かないで京都に行きました。
Uchimura-san wa Ōsaka ni ikanaide Kyōto ni ikimashita.
(Instead of going to Osaka, Uchimura-san went to Kyoto.)

N

(b) この授業は教授が教えないで大学院生が教えている。
Kono jugyō wa kyōju ga oshienaide daigakuinsei ga oshiete iru.
(This class is being taught by a graduate student instead of a professor. (lit., Regarding this class, a professor is not teaching it, and a graduate student is teaching it.))

(c) この記事は、辞書を使わないで読んでください。
Kono kiji wa, jisho o tsukawanaide yonde kudasai.
(Please read this article without using a dictionary.)

(d) 予約をしないでレストランに行ったら、満席で１時間も待たなければならなかった。
Yoyaku o shinaide resutoran ni ittara, manseki de ichi-jikan mo mata-nakereba naranakatta.
(When we went to the restaurant without making a reservation, it was full and we had to wait for (as long as) one hour.)

Notes

1. The negative forms of verbs have two types of *te*-forms, and *naide* is the ending of one of them. (The other is *nakute*. See Related Expression II.) The literal meaning of "V_1 *naide* V_2" is "do not V_1 and V_2." However, this construction is commonly used to convey more specific meanings as follows:

(i) "do not V_1 and V_2 instead," as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b)

(ii) "V_2 without V_1-ing," as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d)

2. *~naide* is also used with various auxiliaries, as in (1)–(6).

(1) まだ帰ら**ないでください**。
*Mada kaera**naide kudasai**.*
(Please don't go home yet.)

(2) 私は夜早く寝るので、友達に夜遅く電話し**ないでほしい**です。
*Watashi wa yoru hayaku neru node, tomodachi ni yoru osoku denwa-shi**naide hoshii**desu.*
(Because I go to bed early at night, I don't want my friends to call me (lit., I want my friends not to call) late at night.)

(3) この部屋は壁が薄いので、隣の人にうるさくし**ないでもらいたい**です。
*Kono heya wa kabe ga usui node, tonari no hito ni urusaku shi**naide morai-tai**desu.*
(Because the walls are thin in this room, I don't want my next-door neighbors to make noises (lit., I want my next-door neighbors not to make noises).)

(4) たまごはまだ少しあるから買わ**ないでおいた**。
*Tamago wa mada sukoshi aru kara kawa**naide oita**.*
(Because I still have a few eggs, I didn't buy any.)

(5) 新しい仕事がまだ見つからないので、今の会社を辞められ**ないでいる**。
*Atarashii shigoto ga mada mitsukaranai node, ima no kaisha o yame-rare**naide iru**.*
(Because I still cannot find a new job, I haven't been able to quit my current company.)

(6) 先に予約をしておいたので、待た**ないですみました**。
*Saki ni yoyaku o shite oita node, mata**naide sumimashita**.*
(Because we made a reservation ahead of time, we didn't have to wait.)

3. *~naide* is used only with verbs. It cannot be used with *i*-adjectives or *na*-adjectives/nouns with *de wa* or *ja*, as in (7). (See Related Expression II for the correct forms.)

(7) a. ×大きくないで (*Intended meaning*: s.t. is not big, and)
×*ōkikunaide*

b. ×静か{では / じゃ}ないで (*Intended meaning*: s.t./s.o. is not quiet, and)
×*shizuka{de wa / ja}naide*

c. ×学生{では / じゃ}ないで (*Intended meaning*: s.o. is not a student, and)
×*gakusei{de wa / ja}naide*

【Related Expressions】

I. *~naide* can be replaced by *~zu ni* if *de* of *naide* retains the original meaning of "do not V and" in some way as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a)–(d), and (4)–(6), as seen in [1].

[1] a. 私はホテルに泊まら**ずに**旅館に泊まった。(cf. KS(A))
*Watashi wa hoteru ni tomara**zu ni** ryokan ni tomatta.*
(I didn't stay at a hotel and stayed at a Japanese style inn instead.)

b. エリーは今朝、朝ご飯を食べ**ずに**学校へ行った。(cf. KS(B))
*Erī wa kesa, asa-gohan o tabe**zu ni** gakkō e itta.*
(Ellie went to school this morning without eating her breakfast.)

c. たまごはまだ少しあるから買わ**ずに**おいた。(cf. (4))
*Tamago wa mada sukoshi aru kara kawa**zu ni** oita.*
(Because I still have a few eggs, I didn't buy any.)

d. 新しい仕事がまだ見つからないので、今の会社を辞められ**ずに**いる。(cf. (5))
*Atarashii shigoto ga mada mitsukaranai node, ima no kaisha o yamerare**zu ni** iru.*
(Because I still cannot find a new job, I haven't been able to quit my current company.)

N

e. 先に予約をしておいたので、待た**ずに**すみました。(cf. (6))
*Saki ni yoyaku o shite oita node, mata**zu ni** sumimashita.*
(Because we made a reservation ahead of time, we didn't have to wait.)

However, *~zu ni* cannot be used in place of *~naide* in (1)–(3), as seen in [2].

[2] a. ×まだ帰ら**ずに**ください。(cf. (1))
× *Mada kaera**zu ni** kudasai.*
(*Intended meaning*: Please don't go home yet.)

b. ×私は夜早く寝るので、友達に夜遅く電話せ**ずに**ほしいです。(cf. (2))
× *Watashi wa yoru hayaku neru node, tomodachi ni yoru osoku denwa-se**zu ni** hoshiidesu.*
(*Intended meaning*: Because I go to bed early at night, I don't want my friends to call me late at night.)

c. ×この部屋は壁が薄いので、隣の人にうるさくせ**ず**にもらいたいです。(cf. (3))
× *Kono heya wa kabe ga usui node, tonari no hito ni urusaku se**zu ni** morai-taidesu.*
(*Intended meaning*: Because the walls are thin in this room, I don't want my next-door neighbors to make noises.)

The forms before *zu ni* are the same as those before *naide* except for *suru*, in which case, *sezu ni* is used rather than *shizu ni*. (See [2b] and [2c].)

Another difference between ~*naide* and ~*zu ni* is that ~*zu ni* is commonly used in formal speech or written Japanese.

II. ~*nakute*, which is another *te*-form of ~*nai* "not," also means "not ~ and," but ~*nakute* and ~*naide* are in most cases not interchangeable, as in [3].

[3] a. 私はホテルに{泊まら**ないで** / ×泊まら**なくて**}旅館に泊まった。
(= KS(A))
*Watashi wa hoteru ni{ tomara**naide** / × tomara**nakute**} ryokan ni tomatta.*

b. エリーは今朝、朝ご飯を{食べ**ないで** / ×食べ**なくて**}学校へ行った。(= KS(B))
*Erī wa kesa, asa-gohan o{ tabe**naide** / × tabe**nakute**} gakkō e itta.*

c. たまごはまだ少しあるから{買わ**ないで** / ×買わ**なくて**}おいた。
(= (4))
*Tamago wa mada sukoshi aru kara{ kawa**naide** / × kawa**nakute**} oita.*

d. 新しい仕事がまだ見つからないので、今の会社を{辞められ**ないで** / ×辞められ**なくて**}いる。(= (5))
*Atarashii shigoto ga mada mitsukaranai node, ima no kaisha o{ yamerare**naide** / × yamerare**nakute**} iru.*

~*naide sumu* "get by without V-ing" is an exception, and *nakute* can be used in place of *naide*, as in [4].

[4] 先に予約をしておいたので、{待た**ないで** / 待た**なくて**}すみました。
(cf. (6))
*Saki ni yoyaku o shite oita node,{ mata**naide** / mata**nakute**} sumimashita.*

When a ~*nakute* clause represents a reason as in [5], ~*naide* is not entirely unacceptable but is not as natural as ~*nakute*.

[5] a. 私は敬語がうまく{使え**なくて** / ?使え**ないで**}恥ずかしかった。
*Watashi wa keigo ga umaku{ tsukae**nakute** / ? tsukae**naide**} hazukashikatta.*
(I felt ashamed because I couldn't use honorific language properly. (lit., I couldn't use honorific language well and I felt ashamed.))

b. アビーが遊びに｛来**なくて** / ？来**ないで**｝助かった。
*Abī ga asobi ni｛**konakute** / ？**konaide**｝tasukatta.*
(I was relieved because Abbie didn't come to see me. (lit., Abbie didn't come to see me and I was relieved.))

It is also noted that *~nakute* can be preceded by *i*-adjectives and "*na*-adjectives/nouns + *de wa* (or *ja*)," while *~naide* cannot, as in [6]. (⇒ ***~nakute***)

[6] a. このスマホは｛大きく**なくて** / ×大きく**ないで**｝持ちやすいです。
*Kono sumaho wa｛ōkiku**nakute** / × ōkiku**naide**｝mochi-yasui desu.*
(This smartphone is not big and easy to hold.)

b. アパートが静かじゃ｛**なくて** / ×**ないで**｝勉強しにくいです。
*Apāto ga shizuka ja｛**nakute** / × **naide**｝benkyō-shi-nikuidesu.*
(My apartment is not quiet and it is hard to study (there).)

c. 彼女は学生では｛**なくて** / ×**ないで**｝先生です。
*Kanojo wa gakusei de wa｛**nakute** / × **naide**｝sensei desu.*
(She is not a student, but a teacher.)

N

～nakereba naranai　～なければならない　*phr.*

S.o. must do s.t., or s.t./s.o. has to be something or in some state.

have to; must; need; should
【REL. *~nai to ikenai*; *~nakereba ikenai*; *~nakute wa ikenai/naranai*; *~neba naranai*; ***~temo ii***】
(ANT. *~naide mo ii*; *~nakutemo ii*)

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vneg (Gr. 1) / Vstem (Gr. 2)	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	週末も *shūmatsu mo*	**働か** ***hataraka***	なければならない / なりません。 *nakereba naranai / narimasen.*
(I have to work on weekends, too.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Adj(*i*)stem		
外国語の授業 *Gaikokugo no jugyō*	は *wa*	**楽し** ***tanoshi***	く *ku*	なければならない / なりません。 *nakereba naranai / narimasen.*
(Foreign language classes should be fun.)				

(C)

Topic				Adj(*na*)		
この仕事 *Kono shigoto*	は *wa*	日本語 *nihongo*	が *ga*	**上手** ***jōzu***	で *de*	なければならない / なりません。 *nakereba naranai /* *narimasen.*
(To do this job (lit., Regarding this job), your Japanese has to be good.)						

(D)

Topic (subject)		Noun		
この仕事をする人 *Kono shigoto o suru hito*	は *wa*	**大学生** ***daigakusei***	で *de*	なければならない / なりません。 *nakereba naranai /* *narimasen.*
(The person for this job has to be a college student.)				

N

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg なければならない
nakereba naranai

話さなければならない (s.o. has to talk)
hanasanakereba naranai

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem なければならない
nakereba naranai

食べなければならない (s.o. has to eat)
tabenakereba naranai

(iii) Irr. verbs: 来る → 来なければならない (s.o. has to come)
kuru *konakereba naranai*

する → しなければならない (s.o. has to do s.t.)
suru *shinakereba naranai*

(iv) Adj(*i*): Adj(*i*)stem くなければならない
kunakereba naranai

安くなければならない (s.t. has to be inexpensive)
yasukunakereba naranai

(v) Adj(*na*) / N: { Adj(*na*) / N } でなければならない
de nakereba naranai

静かでなければならない (s.t. has to be quiet)
shizuka de nakereba naranai

先生でなければならない (s.o. has to be a teacher)
sensei de nakereba naranai

Examples

(a) 私は明日朝５時に起きなければなりません。
Watashi wa ashita asa go-ji ni okinakereba narimasen.
(I have to get up at five tomorrow morning.)

(b) パイロットは目がよくなければならない。
Pairotto wa me ga yokunakereba naranai.
(Pilots must have good eyesight.)

N

(c) お客様への言葉使いは丁寧でなければなりません。
O-kyaku-sama e no kotoba-zukai wa teinei de nakereba narimasen.
(The language you use for your customers must be polite.)

(d) このゴルフ場を使うためにはメンバーでなければならない。
Kono gorufu-jō o tsukau tame ni wa menbā de nakereba naranai.
(To use this golf course, you have to be a member.)

Notes

1. Verbs with *nakereba naranai* expresses obligation, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), and adjectives/nouns with *nakereba naranai* express necessity, as in KSs(B)–(D) and Exs.(b)–(d).

2. In casual speech, the contracted form ~*nakya naranai* is often used.

(1) 金曜日までにこのレポートを出さ**なきゃならない**んだ。
*Kin'yōbi made ni kono repōto o dasa**nakya naranai** n da.*
(I've got to turn in this report by Friday.)

Sometimes, *naranai* is omitted.

(2) もう{帰ら**なければ** / 帰ら**なきゃ**}ø。
*Mō{ kaera**nakereba** / kaera**nakya**}ø.*
(I've got to go home now.)

3. To express that there is no obligation (i.e., "s.o. does not have to do s.t.") or no necessity (i.e., "s.t./s.o. does not have to be s.t."), *~nakutemo ii* (lit., It is all right if ~ not) is used. (⇒ ***~temo ii***)

【Related Expressions】

There are several obligation/necessity expressions other than *~nakereba naranai*, as in [1]. The differences between them are very subtle.

[1] a. (話さ) **なければいけない**
*(hanasa)**nakereba ikenai***

b. (話さ) **なくてはいけない**
*(hanasa)**nakute wa ikenai***

c. (話さ) **ないといけない**
*(hanasa)**nai to ikenai***

d. (話さ) **なくてはならない**
*(hanasa)**nakute wa naranai***

e. (話さ) **ねばならない**
*(hanasa)**neba naranai***

[1e] is used only in written language. In casual speech, *nakereba* in [1a] and *nakute wa* in [1b] and [1d] are usually contracted into *nakya* and *nakucha*, respectively, as in [2].

[2] a. (話さ) **なければいけない** ([1a]) → (話さ) **なきゃいけない**
*(hanasa)**nakereba** ikenai* → *(hanasa)**nakya** ikenai*

b. (話さ) **なくてはいけない** ([1b]) → (話さ) **なくちゃいけない**
*(hanasa)**nakute wa** ikenai* → *(hanasa)**nakucha** ikenai*

c. (話さ) **なくてはならない** ([1d]) → (話さ) **なくちゃならない**
*(hanasa)**nakute wa** naranai* → *(hanasa)**nakucha** naranai*

N

~naku naru ~なくなる *phr.*

X has reached the point where X doesn't/cannot do s.t. anymore or X is not in a certain state any longer.

not ~ anymore/any longer; no longer; not ~ now
【REL. *mō ~nai*; ~ ***yō ni naru***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Vneg (Gr. 1) / Vstem (Gr. 2)	
やさしい漢字も *Yasashii kanji mo*	**書け** ***kake***	なくなった / なりました。 *naku natta / narimashita.*
(I cannot even write easy kanji now.)		

(B)

	Adj(*i*)stem		
飛行機はもう *Hikōki wa mō*	**こわ** ***kowa***	く *ku*	なくなった / なりました。 *naku natta / narimashita.*
(I'm not afraid of flying (lit., planes) anymore.)			

(C)

	Adj(*na*)/N		
この町は *Kono machi wa*	**安全** ***anzen***	じゃ *ja*	なくなった / なりました。 *naku natta / narimashita.*
(This town is no longer safe.)			

N

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg なくなる
naku naru

話さなくなる (s.o. doesn't talk anymore)
hanasanaku naru

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem なくなる
naku naru

食べなくなる (s.o. doesn't eat anymore)
tabenaku naru

(iii) Irr. verbs: 来る → 来なくなる (s.o. doesn't come anymore)
kuru *konaku naru*

する → しなくなる (s.o. doesn't do anymore)
suru *shinaku naru*

(iv) Adj(*i*): Adj(*i*)stem くなくなる
kunaku naru

高くなくなる (s.t. isn't expensive anymore)
takakunaku naru

(v) Adj(*na*) / N: { Adj(*na*) / N } { では / じゃ } なくなる
{ *de wa* / *ja* } *naku naru*

静か { では / じゃ } なくなる (s.t. isn't quiet anymore)
shizuka { *de wa* / *ja* } *naku naru*

学生 { では / じゃ } なくなる (s.o. is no longer a student)
gakusei { *de wa* / *ja* } *naku naru*

Examples

(a) 前はよくゲームをしていましたが、このごろはあまりしなくなりました。
Mae wa yoku gēmu o shite imashita ga, konogoro wa amari shinaku nari-mashita.
(I used to play games a lot, but I don't play them much these days.)

(b) 彼は前はよく電話をかけてきたが、もうかけてこなくなった。
Kare wa mae wa yoku denwa o kakete kita ga, mō kakete konaku natta.
(He used to call me frequently, but he doesn't call me anymore.)

(c) アレルギーのため貝が食べられなくなった。
Arerugī no tame kai ga taberarenaku natta.
(I can no longer eat shellfish due to an allergy.)

(d) 日本語の文法はもう難しくなくなりました。
Nihongo no bunpō wa mō muzukashikunaku narimashita.
(Japanese grammar is not difficult (for me) anymore.)

(e) この郊外も地下鉄ができて不便ではなくなった。
Kono kōgai mo chikatetsu ga dekite fuben de wa naku natta.
(This suburb is no longer inconvenient because a subway is available now.)

(f) やっと大学を出て学生ではなくなりました。
Yatto daigaku o dete gakusei de wa naku narimashita.
(I finally graduated from college and am no longer a student.)

Notes

1. *Naku* in *~naku naru* is the adverbial form of the negative ending *nai*, and *naru* means "become." Thus, the literal meaning of *~naku naru* is "become not ~," but a more natural English translation is "not ~ anymore" or "not ~ now."
(⇒ ***naru***)

2. The potential forms of verbs often occur with *~naku naru*, as in KS(A) and Ex.(c). (⇒ ***~rareru***[2])

【Related Expression】

Mō ~nai expresses a similar idea to that of *~naku naru*, as in [1] and [2]. (⇒ ***mō***)

[1] 日本語が話せ**なくなった**。
*Nihongo ga hanase**naku natta**.*
(I cannot speak Japanese anymore.)

[2] 日本語が**もう**話せ**ない**。
*Nihongo ga **mō** hanase**nai**.*
(I cannot speak Japanese anymore.)

The difference is that [1] focuses on both process and result, while [2] focuses only on result. Thus, [1] can be used with time expressions indicating the period of change, such as *ichi-nen no uchi ni* "within a year" and *tōtō* "finally," as in [3], but [2] cannot, as in [4].

[3] a. １年のうちに日本語が話せ**なくなった**。
*Ichi-nen no uchi ni nihongo ga hanase**naku natta**.*
(Within one year, I came to the point where I could not speak Japanese.)

b. とうとう日本語が話せ**なくなった**。
*Tōtō nihongo ga hanase**naku natta**.*
(Finally, I came to the point where I could not speak Japanese.)

N

[4] a. × １年のうちに日本語が**もう**話せ**ない**。
× *Ichi-nen no uchi ni nihongo ga **mō** hanase**nai**.*
(lit., I cannot speak Japanese anymore within one year.)

b. × とうとう日本語が**もう**話せ**ない**。
× *Tōtō nihongo ga **mō** hanase**nai**.*
(lit., Finally, I cannot speak Japanese anymore.)

~nakute ～なくて *verb ending*

a *te*-form of the negative *nai*, which indicates a cause/reason for a state or an action

not ~ and ~; because ~ not
【REL. ***~naide***; *~nai kara*; *~nai node*】

◆ Key Sentence

Sentence 1 (cause/reason)			Sentence 2 (main clause)
	Vneg (Gr. 1) / Vstem (Gr. 2)		
朝７時に *Asa shichi-ji ni*	**起きられ** ***okirare***	なくて *nakute*	会社に遅れた / 遅れました。 *kaisha ni okureta / okuremashita.*
(I couldn't get up at seven in the morning and was late for work (at my company).)			

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg なくて
nakute

話さなくて (s.o. doesn't talk and ~)
hanasanakute

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem なくて
nakute

食べなくて (s.o. doesn't eat and ~)
tabenakute

(iii) Irr. verbs: 来る → 来なくて (s.o. doesn't come and ~)
kuru *konakute*

する → しなくて (s.o. doesn't do and ~)
suru *shinakute*

(iv) Adj(*i*): Adj(*i*)stem くなくて
ku nakute

高くなくて (s.t. isn't expensive and ~)
takakunakute

(v) Adj(*na*) / N: {Adj(*na*) / N} {では / じゃ} なくて
{*de wa* / *ja*} *nakute*

静か{では / じゃ}なくて (s.t. isn't quiet and ~)
shizuka{*de wa* / *ja*} *nakute*

先生{では / じゃ}なくて (s.o. isn't a teacher and ~)
sensei{*de wa* / *ja*} *nakute*

Examples

(a) 先生の説明が分からなくて困りました。
Sensei no setsumei ga wakaranakute komarimashita.
(I didn't understand the teacher's explanation and had a difficult time.)

(b) 日本では日本語が話せなくて残念でした。
Nihon de wa nihongo ga hanasenakute zannen deshita.
(It's regrettable that I couldn't speak Japanese in Japan.)

(c) 試験が難しくなくてよかったです。
Shiken ga muzukashikunakute yokatta desu.
(I'm glad that the exam was not difficult. (lit., The exam was not difficult and it was good.))

(d) 字が上手じゃなくて恥ずかしいです。
Ji ga jōzu ja nakute hazukashii desu.
(My handwriting is so poor that I feel ashamed.)

(e) 新しい先生がきびしい先生じゃなくてよかった。
Atarashii sensei ga kibishii sensei ja nakute yokatta.
(I'm glad that our new teacher is not strict. (lit., Our new teacher is not a strict teacher and it was good.))

Notes

1. The *nakute* clause indicates a cause of, or a reason for, what is stated in the main clause. In this structure, the main clause represents an event or state that cannot be controlled by the speaker or the subject person.

2. The potential forms of verbs often occur with ~*nakute*, as in KS and Ex.(b). (⇒ ~***rareru***[2])

N

[Related Expressions]

A cause or a reason can also be expressed using *kara* and *node*, as in [1].

[1] 朝７時に｛起きられ**なくて** / 起きられ**なかったから** / 起きられ**なかったので**｝会社に遅れました。(cf. KS)
*Asa shichi-ji ni｛okirare**nakute** / okirare**nakatta kara** / okirare**nakatta node**｝kaisha ni okuremashita.*
(I couldn't get up at seven in the morning and was late for work (at my company). / Because I couldn't get up at seven, I was late for work (at my company).)

Among the three expressions, ~*nakute* focuses on the cause/reason the least and *kara* the most. In explaining why something undesirable happened, as in [1], ~*nakute* is preferable because in this situation, focusing on the cause/reason is not considered sincere. (⇒ ***kara***[3]; ***node***)

nara なら *conj.*

a conjunction that indicates the speaker's supposition that what is said is true or the case

if it is true that ~; if it is the case that ~; if; would; could
【REL. ***tara***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
Splain*			
松田が**来る** *Matsuda ga **kuru***	の *no*	なら *nara*	僕はそのパーティーには行かない / 行きません。 *boku wa sono pātī ni wa ikanai / ikimasen.*
(If it is true that Matsuda will come to the party, I won't go. (lit., If it is true that Matsuda will come, I won't go to the party.))			

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N change to *na*.

(B)

Noun		
アリッサ ***Arissa***	なら *nara*	日本のアニメのことをよく知っている / います。 *Nihon no anime no koto o yoku shitte iru / imasu.*
(Alissa would know a lot about Japanese anime. (lit., If it's Alissa, she knows a lot about Japanese anime.)		

N

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } のなら
no nara

{ 話す / 話した } のなら (if it is true that s.o. talks/talked)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *no nara*

{ 高い / 高かった } のなら (if it is true that s.t. is/was expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *no nara*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { (なの) / だったの } なら
{ *(nano) / datta no* } *nara*

静か { (なの) / だったの } なら (if it is true that s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *(nano) / datta no* } *nara*

先生 { (なの) / だったの } なら (if it is true that s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei { *(nano) / datta no* } *nara*

Examples

(a) シカゴへ行くのならバスで行くほうが安いですよ。
Shikago e iku no nara basu de iku hō ga yasui desu yo.
(If you go to Chicago, going by bus is cheaper.)

(b) 杉田さんが来たのなら私は帰ります。
Sugita-san ga kita no nara watashi wa kaerimasu.
(If Sugita-san has come, I'll go home.)

(c) そんなに高いのなら私には買えない。
Sonna ni takai no nara watashi ni wa kaenai.
(If it's that expensive, I can't buy it.)

(d) 竹内さんが好きなら手紙を書いたらどうですか。
Takeuchi-san ga suki nara tegami o kaitara dō desu ka.
(If you like Takeuchi-san, why don't you write a letter to him?)

(e) フランス語なら少し話せます。
Furansugo nara sukoshi hanasemasu.
(I could speak some French. (lit., If it's French, I can speak it a little.))

Notes

1. "S *nara*" expresses the speaker's supposition that the statement represented by S is true or the case. Thus, the literal English equivalent of "S *nara*" is "if it is true that S" or "if it is the case that S."

2. *Nara* is also used with nouns. In this case, *nara* expresses the idea of "would" or "could," as in KS(B) and Ex.(e).

3. Etymologically, *nara* is the conditional form of *nari*, which is the equivalent of *da* in classical Japanese. Because of this, *nara* is often preceded by a non-conjugational word (e.g., a noun, a *na*-adjective) or a noun-equivalent phrase (e.g., a sentence nominalized by *no*). (⇒ ***no***[3])

4. When a sentence before *nara* is nominalized by *no*, the information represented by the sentence is usually shared between the speaker and the listener. For example, KS(A) would be uttered when the speaker has been told by the listener that Matsuda will join the party. Similarly, Ex.(a) would be natural after the speaker has learned that the listener is planning to go to Chicago. (1) provides an example of a dialogue. Here, the information in the *nara* clause in Speaker B's line is shared between the speaker (= B) and the listener (= A).

   (1) A: 来年の夏、日本を旅行しようと思っています。
   Rainen no natsu, Nihon o ryokō-shiyō to omotte imasu.
   (I'm thinking of traveling in Japan next summer.)

B: 夏、日本を旅行するのなら、北海道が涼しくていいですよ。
*Natsu, Nihon o ryokō-suru **no nara**, Hokkaidō ga suzushikute ii desu yo.*
(If you travel in Japan in summer, Hokkaido is cool and good.)

No nara often becomes *n nara* in conversation.

5. If the information represented by the sentence before *nara* is not shared between the speaker and the listener, *no* does not occur after verbs, *i*-adjectives, *na*-adjectives and nouns, as in (2).

(2) a. メガネを買うなら、この店がお勧めです。
*Megane o kau **nara**, kono mise ga o-susume desu.*
(If you buy eyeglasses, I recommend this store.)

b. 日本語が上手なら、その人に通訳を頼めますね。
*Nihongo ga jōzu **nara**, sono hito ni tsūyaku o tanomemasu ne.*
(If that person is good at Japanese, we can ask her to be our interpreter, can't we?)

c. 飲んだら乗るな。乗るなら飲むな。[traffic slogan]
*Nondara noru na. Noru **nara** nomu na.*
(If you drink, don't drive. If you drive, don't drink.)

6. "S_1 *nara* S_2" cannot be used if it is nonsensical to suppose the truth of S_1. For example, (3) and (4) are unacceptable. (3) is unacceptable because it never fails to become ten o'clock; (4) is unacceptable because one can never tell whether it is true or not that it will rain tomorrow. For the situations in (3) and (4), *tara* can be used. (⇒ ***tara***)

(3) ×10時になるのならバスが来るはずです。
*× Jū-ji ni naru **no nara** basu ga kuru hazu desu.*
(lit., If it is true that it becomes ten o'clock, the bus is expected to come.)

(4) ×明日雨が降るのなら試合はないでしょう。
*× Ashita ame ga furu **no nara** shiai wa nai deshō.*
(lit., If it is true that it will rain tomorrow, there will probably be no game.)

7. "S_1 *nara* S_2" cannot be used if the completion or actualization of S_1 brings about S_2, as in (5) and (6). In such situations, *tara* is used. (⇒ ***tara***)

(5) 奈津子のアパートへ{×行ったのなら / 行ったら}裕二がいた。
*Natsuko no apāto e {× itta **no nara** / it**tara**} Yūji ga ita.*
(When I went to Natsuko's apartment, Yuji was there.)

(6) その本はオンラインで{×注文した**のなら** / 注文し**たら**}すぐ届きました。
*Sono hon wa onrain de{× chūmon-shita **no nara** / chūmon-shi**tara**} sugu todokimashita.*
(The book was delivered right away when I ordered it online.)

8. "S *nara*" can be used to express a counter-factual condition, as in (7).

(7) 私が先生**なら**もっと学生に考えさせる授業をします。
*Watashi ga sensei **nara** motto gakusei ni kangaesaseru jugyō o shimasu.*
(If I were a teacher, I would teach class in a way that students would have to think more (lit., teach a class that makes students think).)

naru なる *v. (Gr. 1)*

N

The state or attribute of s.o./s.t. changes to another.

become; turn (into); change (into)
【REL. *suru*[5]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Adj(*i*)stem		
ガソリンが *Gasorin ga*	**安** ***yasu***	く *ku*	なった / なりました。 *natta / narimashita.*
(The price of gas has gone down. (lit., Gas has become cheap.))			

(B)

		Adj(*na*)		
車が減って *Kuruma ga hette*	空気が *kūki ga*	**きれい** ***kirei***	に *ni*	なった / なりました。 *natta / narimashita.*
(With fewer cars, the air quality has improved. (lit., The number of cars has decreased, and the air has become clean.))				

(C)

	Noun		
私の子供は *Watashi no kodomo wa*	パイロット ***pairotto***	に *ni*	なった / なりました。 *natta / narimashita.*
(My child became a pilot.)			

Formation

(i) Adj(*i*)stem くなる
ku naru

高くなる (s.t. becomes expensive)
takaku naru

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } になる
ni naru

静かになる (s.t. becomes quiet)
shizuka ni naru

先生になる (s.o. becomes a teacher)
sensei ni naru

Examples

(a) あのレストランは最近ちょっとまずくなった。
Ano resutoran wa saikin chotto mazuku natta.
(Recently, (the food of) that restaurant does not taste as good as before. (lit., Recently, the taste of (the food of) that restaurant has become a little bad.))

(b) 少し寝たら気分がよくなりました。
Sukoshi netara kibun ga yoku narimashita.
(I feel better after having taken a nap.)

(c) リサはピアノがとても上手になりました。
Risa wa piano ga totemo jōzu ni narimashita.
(Lisa improved her piano skills a lot. (lit., Lisa became very good at playing the piano.))

(d) 散歩を始めたら前よりずっと健康になった。
Sanpo o hajimetara mae yori zutto kenkō ni natta.
(I've become much healthier than before since I began taking walks.)

(e) 私たちはすぐ友達になりました。
Watashi-tachi wa sugu tomodachi ni narimashita.
(We became friends immediately.)

(f) 午後から雨が雪になった。
Gogo kara ame ga yuki ni natta.
(The rain changed into snow in the afternoon.)

(g) 私の大学は来週から夏休みになります。
Watashi no daigaku wa raishū kara natsu-yasumi ni narimasu.
(My university will be on summer vacation starting next week.)

Notes

1. The sentence structure "X *wa/ga* Y *naru*" is used to describe a change in X. Y is either the adverbial form of an *i*-adjective, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b), a *na*-adjective followed by *ni*, as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d), or a noun followed by *ni*, as in KS(C) and Exs.(e)–(g).

2. In many cases, the structure "X *wa/ga* Noun *ni naru*" describes a change in state, but it can also describe a change in attribute, role, function, purpose, title, status, occupation, etc., as in (1).

(1) a. 熱帯低気圧が台風になった。[change in attribute]
*Nettai-teikiatsu **ga** taifū **ni natta**.*
(A tropical cycrone has grown into a typhoon.)

b. 由利はもうすぐ母親になる。[change in role]
*Yuri **wa** mō sugu hahaoya **ni naru**.*
(Yuri is going to be a mother soon.)

c. 駐車場がマンションになった。[change in function/purpose]
*Chūsha-jō **ga** manshon **ni natta**.*
(The parking lot was turned into (lit., became) a condominium building.)

d. 村松さんは部長になった。[change in title]
*Muramatsu-san **wa** buchō **ni natta**.*
(Muramatsu-san has been promoted to department chief.)

3. In different situations, ~ *ni naru* means something different from "become" or "change / turn into," as in (A)–(D).

(A) Noun *ni naru* (= Noun *ni kimaru*) "be decided on Noun"

(2) a. 会議は来週になった。(＝来週に決まった)
*Kaigi wa raishū **ni natta**. (= raishū **ni kimatta**)*
(It's been decided that the meeting is going to be next week.)

b. イベント会場は大学の体育館になった。(＝体育館に決まった)
*Ibento-kaijō wa daigaku no taiikukan **ni natta**. (= taiikukan **ni kimatta**)*
(It's been decided that the venue of the event will be the university gym.)

(B) VN *ni naru* (= VN-*sareru*) " be V-ed"

(3) a. ストは中止になった。(＝中止された)
Suto wa chūshi ***ni natta****. (= chūshi-****sareta****)*
(The strike was canceled.)

b. 来年の予算は２割カットになった。(＝カットされた)
Rainen no yosan wa ni-wari katto ***ni natta*** *(= katto-****sareta****)*
(The budget for next year has been cut by twenty percent.)

(C) Number (+ Counter) *ni naru* "amount to"

(4) a. 今回の台風による死者は 18 人になった。
Konkai no taifū ni yoru shisha wa jūhachi-nin ***ni natta****.*
(The death toll from this typhoon amounts to eighteen.)

b. 地震の被害は 30 億円以上になりそうだ。
Jishin no higai wa sanjūoku-en ijō ***ni nari****-sō da.*
(It looks like the damage of the earthquake will amount to over three billion yen.)

(D) Phenomime *ni naru* "become ~"
(⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 7**. Sound Symbolisms)

(5) a. 暑い中を一日中歩き回ってフラフラになった。
Atsui naka o ichi-nichi-jū aruki-mawatte furafura ***ni natta****.*
(I walked around in the heat all day and got totally exhausted.)

N

b. 同じコートを毎日のように着たのでヨレヨレになった。
Onaji kōto o mai-nichi no yō ni kita node yoreyore ***ni natta****.*
(I wore the same coat almost every day, so it has gotten worn out.)

Some phenomimes requires *to naru* rather than *ni naru*, as in (6).

(6) a. うそつきと言われてカッとなった。
Usotsuki to iwarete kat ***to natta****.*
(I lost my temper when I was called a liar.)

b. 風邪薬を飲んだら頭がボーッとなった。
Kaze-gusuri o nondara atama ga bōt ***to natta****.*
(When I took some cold medicine, I got woozy.)

However, not all phenomimes can be used with *ni/to naru*, as in (7).

(7) a. けがをしたところがズキズキ{する / ×になる}。
Kega o shita tokoro ga zukizuki{ ***suru*** */ ×* ***ni naru****}.*
(The wounded area throbs.)

b. 友達がクマに襲われた話を聞いてゾッ{**とした** / ??**となった**}。
*Tomodachi ga kuma ni osowareta hanashi o kiite zot{**to shita** / ??**to natta**}.*
(The story that my friend was attacked by a bear gave me a chill.)

4. In most situations, *naru* is used as a non-volitional verb. However, there are situations in which *naru* is used as a volitional verb, as in (8).

(8) a. リハビリを頑張って、前のように元気に**なりましょう**。
*Rihabiri o ganbatte, mae no yō ni genki ni **narimashō**.*
(Let's work hard on rehabilitation and become as healthy as before.)

b. 私は将来パイロットに**なろう**と思っています。
*Watashi wa shōrai pairotto ni **narō** to omotte imasu.*
(I'm thinking of becoming a pilot in the future.)

c. もっとギターが上手に**なりたい**。
*Motto gitā ga jōzu ni **nari-tai**.*
(I want to be a much better guitarist (lit., to be much better at playing the guitar).)

5. *~ ni narimasu*, the polite form of *~ ni naru*, is commonly used in place of *desu* by restaurant servers, shop attendants and other workers who deal with customers when they serve dishes or show something to their customers, as in (9).

N

(9) a. お待たせしました。こちら、ランチセット**になります**。
(＝ランチセット**です**)
*O-matase shimashita. Kochira, ranchi-setto **ni narimasu**.*
*(= ranchi-setto **desu**)*
(Thank you for waiting. Here's your lunch set.)

b. これがこのパソコンの一番新しい機種**になります**。
(＝一番新しい機種**です**)
*Kore ga kono pasokon no ichiban atarashii kishu **ni narimasu**.*
*(= ichiban atarashii kishu **desu**)*
(This is the newest model of this computer.)

6. *Naru* is also used as part of grammatical patterns, such as *koto ni naru*, *naku naru*, *o ~ ni naru* and *yō ni naru*.
(⇒ ***~ koto ni naru***; ***~naku naru***; ***o ~ ni naru***; ***~ yō ni naru***)

[Related Expression]

Suru[5] "make" or "change" is also used to describe situations that involve a change of the state/attribute of something or someone. One of the differences between *suru*[5] and *naru* is that when *suru*[5] is used, the subject is the agent (i.e., someone or

something that causes the change), as in [1a], while when *naru* is used, the subject is the person or thing whose state/attribute changes, as in [1b]. In other words, when *naru* is used, the agent is not represented in the sentence.

[1] a. ベッキーはトイレをきれいにした。
*Bekkī wa toire o kirei ni **shita**.*
(Becky cleaned the bathroom. (lit., Becky made the bathroom clean.))

b. トイレがきれいになった。
*Toire ga kirei ni **natta**.*
(The bathroom became clean.)

The relation between *suru*[5] and *naru* can also be viewed from the viewpoint of causative and passive. That is, sentences involving *suru*[5] basically carry a causative meaning (i.e., X causes Y to change the state of Y), while sentences involving *naru* carry a passive meaning in some situations, as in [2]–[4]. (⇒ ***suru***[5])

[2] a. 学校は野山を停学にした。
*Gakkō wa Noyama o teigaku ni **shita**.*
(The school suspended Noyama. (lit., The school made Noyama suspended from school.))

b. 野山は停学になった。
*Noyama wa teigaku ni **natta**.*
(Noyama got suspended from school. (lit., Noyama became suspension from school.))

[3] a. 部長は吉本さんを新しいプロジェクトのリーダーにした。
*Buchō wa Yoshimoto-san o atarashii purojekuto no rīdā ni **shita**.*
(The department chief made Yoshimoto-san the new project leader.)

b. 吉本さんは新しいプロジェクトのリーダーになった。
*Yoshimoto-san wa atarashii purojekuto no rīdā ni **natta**.*
(Yoshimoto-san became the new project leader.)

[4] a. 私たちはこのクラブのウェブサイトを作ることにした。
*Watashi-tachi wa kono kurabu no uebu-saito o tsukuru koto ni **shita**.*
(We have decided to make a website for this club.)

b. 私たちはこのクラブのウェブサイトを作ることになった。
*Watashi-tachi wa kono kurabu no uebu-saito o tsukuru koto ni **natta**.*
(It's been decided that we will make a website for this club.)

～ nasai ～なさい *aux. v. (imperative form)*

a polite imperative used by superiors to their inferiors — Do s.t.

◆ Key Sentence

	V*masu*	
野菜も *Yasai mo*	食べ ***tabe***	なさい。 *-nasai.*
(Eat vegetables, too.)		

Formation

V*masu* なさい
-nasai

話しなさい (Talk.)
hanashi-nasai

食べなさい (Eat.)
tabe-nasai

N

Examples

(a) もっとまじめに勉強しなさい。
Motto majime ni benkyō-shi-nasai.
(Study more seriously.)

(b) もう遅いから歯を磨いて寝なさい。
Mō osoi kara ha o migaite ne-nasai.
(It's late now, so brush your teeth and go to bed.)

(c) 宿題を出しなさい。
Shukudai o dashi-nasai.
(Turn in your homework.)

Notes

1. ~ *nasai* is the imperative form of the verb *nasaru* "do" (polite honorific). It is used by superiors when they talk to their inferiors, typically, when parents talk to their children and when teachers talk to their lower-grade students.

2. ~ *nasai* is the polite version of non-polite imperatives. Compare the polite and non-polite imperatives below.

(1) a. 読みなさい。[polite imperative]
Yomi-nasai.
(Read it.)

b. 読め！ [non-polite imperative]
Yome!
(Read it!)

(2) a. 食べなさい。[polite imperative]
Tabe-nasai.
(Eat it.)

b. 食べろ！ [non-polite imperative]
Tabero!
(Eat it!)

Non-polite imperative forms are rarely used in daily conversation situations.
(⇒ **Appendix 1**. Basic Conjugations)

3. In written language, ~ *nasai* is commonly used in instructions for exam questions.

(3) a. 次の漢字の読み方をひらがなで書きなさい。
Tsugi no kanji no yomi-kata o hiragana de kaki-nasai.
(Write the pronunciations of the following kanji in hiragana.)

b. 次の表現を使って文を作りなさい。
Tsugi no hyōgen o tsukatte bun o tsukuri-nasai.
(Make sentences using the following expressions.)

4. The particles *yo* and *ne* make ~ *nasai* imperatives milder, as in (4) and (5). Although ~ *nasai ne* is milder than ~ *nasai yo*, both are commonly used by female speakers.

(4) 暗くなる前に帰って来**なさいよ**。
*Kuraku naru mae ni kaette-ki-**nasai yo**.*
(Come home before it gets dark, OK?)

(5) 今晩は早く寝**なさいね**。
*Konban wa hayaku ne-**nasai ne**.*
(Go to bed early tonight, OK?)

ne ね *prt.*

a sentence-final particle that indicates the speaker's request for confirmation or agreement from the listener about some shared knowledge

English tag question (e.g., isn't it?; is it?; don't you?; do you?); you know
【REL. ~ ***darō***; ***yo***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Sentence	
エリックさんは刺身を食べます *Erikku-san wa sashimi o tabemasu*	ね？ (with rising intonation) *ne?*
(Eric-san, you eat sashimi, don't you? / Eric-san eats sashimi, doesn't he?)	

(B)

Sentence	
きれいな桜です *Kirei na sakura desu*	ね。(with falling intonation) *ne.*
(Beautiful cherry blossoms, aren't they!)	

N

Examples

(a) 学生会館はこの建物ですね？
Gakusei-kaikan wa kono tatemono desu ne?
(The Student Union Building is this building, isn't it?)

(b) 杉下さんも今晩のパーティーに行きますね？
Sugishita-san mo konban no pātī ni ikimasu ne?
(You are going to tonight's party, too, aren't you, Sugishita-san? / Sugishita-san is going to tonight's party, too, isn't she?)

(c) A: 今日はいい天気ですね。
Kyō wa ii tenki desu ne.
(It's a nice day today, isn't it?)

B: 本当にそうですね。
Hontō ni sō desu ne.
(It sure is, isn't it!)

Notes

1. *Ne* can be used as a request for either confirmation or agreement from the listener. The intonation of *ne* differs depending on the use. Namely, the *ne* for requesting confirmation is pronounced with rising intonation (KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b)), and the *ne* for requesting agreement is pronounced with falling intonation (KS(B) and Ex.(c)). The *ne* for requesting agreement becomes *nē* if the speaker is excited about what he/she is talking about. In other words, "S *nē*" is an exclamatory sentence, as in (1).

   (1) a. おもしろい映画でした**ねえ**！
   *Omoshiroi eiga deshita **nē!***
   (It was such an interesting film, wasn't it!)

   b. 仕事が見つかったの？ よかった**ねえ**！
   *Shigoto ga mitsukatta no? Yokatta **nē!***
   (You got a job? Great! (lit., It was good!))

2. *Ne* with falling intonation is also used to make the listener aware of what he/she did, as in (2).

   (2) a. また間違えた**ね**。
   *Mata machigaeta **ne.***
   (You made a mistake again, you know?)

   b. このレポート、よく書けました**ね**。
   *Kono repōto, yoku kakemashita **ne.***
   (You did a good job with this report (lit., You were able to write this report well), you know?)

3. *Ne* can be used with polite commands, as in (3), but not with non-polite commands, as in (4).

   (3) a. 読みなさい**ね**。 (Read it, will you?)
   *Yomi-nasai **ne.***

   b. 読んでください**ね**。 (Please read it, will you?)
   *Yonde kudasai **ne.***

   (4) ×読め**ね**。
   × *Yome **ne.***
   (*Intended meaning*: Read it, will you?)

4. *Ne* is also used in a non-sentence-final position to maintain the listener's attention on what the speaker is saying or to confirm that the listener has understood what has been said up to that point. *Ne* is typically used in this manner in telephone conversations, as in (5).

(5) もしもし、今晩**ね**、友達とご飯を食べるから**ね**、遅くなるよ。
*Moshimoshi, konban **ne**, tomodachi to gohan o taberu kara **ne**, osoku naru yo.*
(Hi, I'm going to have dinner with my friend tonight, so I'll be home late.)

5. *Ne* is sometimes attached to incomplete sentences ending with a conjunction or the *te*-form of a verb, etc., as in (6) and (7).

(6) A: この前の宿題はCだったよ。
Kono mae no shukudai wa shī datta yo.
(I got a C for my last homework assignment.)

B: あの先生はとてもきびしい**からね**。
*Ano sensei wa totemo kibishii **kara ne**.*
((It's because) that teacher is very strict, you know?)

(7) [Explaining why the speaker was late for work this morning]
今朝、事故で電車が遅れ**てね**。
*Kesa, jiko de densha ga okure**te ne**.*
(The train was delayed this morning because of an accident, so ...)

6. *Ne* can be used after another sentence-final particle *yo* of assertion, as in (8). *Yo ne* is used when the speaker strongly wants to share with the listener what is said in the preceding sentence, but at the same time is not certain about its correctness or validity, and therefore wants confirmation or agreement from the listener. (⇒ ***yo***)

(8) a. あたしの言っていることが分かる**よね**。
*Atashi no itte iru koto ga wakaru **yo ne**.*
(You understand what I'm saying, don't you?)

b. あの先生はいい先生です**よね**。
*Ano sensei wa ii sensei desu **yo ne**.*
(That teacher is a good teacher. Don't you think so?)

7. *Ne* can also be used after the question marker *ka*. When *ka ne* is pronounced with falling intonation, it conveys the nuance of "I wonder" or "I am not sure if ~. What do you say?" (⇒ ***ka***[2])

(9) a. 藤井君は来年卒業できます**かね**。
*Fujii-kun wa rainen sotsugyō-dekimasu **ka ne**.*
(I wonder if Fujii-kun can graduate next year.)

b. これは日本製です**かね**。
*Kore wa Nihon-sei desu **ka ne**.*
(I'm not sure if this is made in Japan. What do you say?)

ni [1] **に** [1] *prt.*

a particle that indicates a point of time

at; in; on
【REL. ***de*** [4]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			Noun (time)		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	毎朝 *mai-asa*	**６時** ***roku-ji***	に *ni*	起きる / 起きます。 *okiru / okimasu.*
(I get up at six every morning.)					

Examples

(a) 今朝は５時半にうちを出ました。
Kesa wa go-ji-han ni uchi o demashita.
(This morning I left home at five thirty.)

(b) 私は４月１日に生まれました。
Watashi wa shi-gatsu tsuitachi ni umaremashita.
(I was born on April 1.)

(c) 来年の夏(に)海外旅行をするつもりです。
Rainen no natsu (ni) kaigai-ryokō o suru tsumori desu.
(I intend to take a trip abroad next summer.)

(d) 松山は大学にいる時(に)今の奥さんと出会った。
Matsuyama wa daigaku ni iru toki (ni) ima no okusan to deatta.
(Matsuyama met his current wife when he was in college.)

(e) 子供が学校に行っている間に手紙を書いた。
Kodomo ga gakkō ni itte iru aida ni tegami o kaita.
(I wrote a letter while my children were away at school.)

Notes

1. *Ni* [1] is used to indicate a point of time. It can be used with various time expressions as long as the time expression can be uniquely specified in terms of digits, as in (1).

(1) a. １時５分に
ichi-ji go-fun ***ni***
(at 1:05)

b. ３月４日に
san-gatsu yok-ka ***ni***
(on March 4)

c. 9月に
ku-gatsu ***ni***
(in September)

d. 1984年に
sen-kyūhyaku-hachijū-yo-nen ***ni***
(in 1984)

e. 21世紀に
nijūis-seiki ***ni***
(in the 21st century)

Ni [1] can also be used with days of the week (e.g., *getsuyōbi* "Monday" and *kayōbi* "Tuesday") because they specify the "first" day of the week, the "second" day of the week, etc. Similarly, *ni* [1] can mark days like *kurisumasu* "Christmas (Day)" and *shōgatu* "New Year's (Day)" as in (2) because they refer to specific days of the year such as December 25 and January 1.

(2) a. 月曜日に
getsuyōbi ***ni***
(on Monday)

b. クリスマスに
kurisumasu ***ni***
(on Christmas Day; at Christmas)

On the other hand, time expressions such as *asa* "morning," *ima* "now," *kinō* "yesterday," *kyō* "today," *ashita* "tomorrow," *konshū* "this week," *sengetsu* "last month," *rainen* "next year" and *saikin* "lately" cannot take *ni* because they cannot be specified uniquely in terms of digits.

2. *Ni* is optional with certain time nouns, such as *natsu* "summer" (Ex.(c)) and *toki* "time" (Ex.(d)). The version with *ni* stresses the point of time.

N

3. The time noun *aida* also takes *ni* if the event in the main clause does not continue for the entire duration of the event in the *aida* clause, as in Ex.(e). If the event in the main clause covers the same duration as the event in the *aida* clause, *ni* cannot be used, as in (3). (⇒ ***aida (ni)***)

(3) 気分が悪かったので、子供が学校に行っている**間**{ø / ×**に**}、ずっとベッドで休んでいた。
Kibun ga warukatta node, kodomo ga gakkō ni itte iru ***aida***{ø / ×***ni***}*, zutto beddo de yasunde ita.*
(Because I felt sick, I was lying in bed all the time while my children were away at school.)

4. When a specific time expression takes *goro* "about" as in (4), *ni* may drop.

(4) 今朝5時半**ごろ**(に)起きました。
*Kesa go-ji-han-****goro*** *(ni) okimashita.*
(I got up (at) about five thirty this morning.)

ni [2] **に** [2] *prt.*

an indirect object marker — to; for

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Indirect Object		Direct Object		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	**野田さん** ***Noda-san***	に *ni*	コンサートのチケット *konsāto no chiketto*	を *o*	あげた / あげました。 *ageta / agemashita.*
(I gave a concert ticket to Noda-san.)						

Examples

(a) 父は私に時計をくれた。
Chichi wa watashi ni tokei o kureta.
(My father gave me a watch.)

(b) 私は毎年、母の日に母にカードを送ります。
Watashi wa mai-toshi, haha no hi ni haha ni kādo o okurimasu.
(I send my mother a card on Mother's Day every year.)

(c) 私は日本人の学生にドイツ文学を教えている。
Watashi wa nihonjin no gakusei ni doitsu-bungaku o oshiete iru.
(I'm teaching German literature to Japanese students.)

(d) 竹村先生は学生にいろいろなオンライン辞書を見せた。
Takemura-sensei wa gakusei ni iroiro na onrain-jisho o miseta.
(Prof. Takemura showed various online dictionaries to his students.)

(e) 杉山さんに電話をしましたが、いませんでした。
Sugiyama-san ni denwa o shimashita ga, imasendeshita.
(I called Sugiyama-san, but she wasn't there.)

Notes

1. When a verb represents an action that involves something (X) that is transferred from one person to another, X is marked by the direct object marker *o* and the person who receives X is marked by the indirect object maker *ni*. Here, X can be an intangible thing such as information, as in Ex.(c). Verbs that involve a direct object and an indirect object include *ageru* "give," *dasu* "submit," *hanasu* "tell," *kasu* "lend," *kureru* "give," *miseru* "show," *okuru* "send," *oshieru* "teach" and *tsutaeru* "convey."

2. The indirect object marker *ni* is also used to mark the favor recipient in the V*te ageru* and V*te kureru* constructions, as in (1) and (2).

(1) 私は彼にサンドイッチを作ってあげた。
*Watashi wa kare **ni** sandoitchi o tsukutte ageta.*
(I made sandwiches for my boyfriend.)

(2) 小さい時、お母さんは私によく本を読んでくれた。
*Chīsai toki, o-kāsan wa watashi **ni** yoku hon o yonde kureta.*
(When I was small, my mother often read me books.)

Note that the benefit recipient is not always marked by *ni* when V*te ageru* and V*te kureru* are used. (⇒ ***ageru***[2]: Note 2; ***kureru***[2]: Note 2)

ni[3] **に**[3] *prt.*

a particle that marks the source of a direct object

from
【REL. *kara*[1]】

N

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Noun (source)		Direct Object		
エバ *Eba*	は *wa*	**オスカー** ***Osukā***	に *ni*	花 *hana*	を *o*	もらった / もらいました。 *moratta / moraimashita.*
(Eva got flowers from Oscar.)						

Examples

(a) 車が欲しいので両親にお金を借りました。
Kuruma ga hoshii node ryōshin ni o-kane o karimashita.
(I want a car, so I borrowed money from my parents.)

(b) 友紀は山野先生に生け花を習っている。
Yuki wa Yamano-sensei ni ikebana o naratte iru.
(Yuki is taking lessons in flower arranging (lit., learning flower arrangement) from Ms. Yamano.)

(c) トレーシーが結婚したことをクラスメートに聞いた。
Torēshī ga kekkon-shita koto o kurasumēto ni kiita.
(I heard from my classmate that Tracy got married.)

Note

Ni[3] is used to mark the source of the direct object of a sentence. This *ni* occurs when verbs represent an action that involves something (X) that is transferred from something (i.e., a source). X can be a tangible thing or intangible thing (e.g., information). Such verbs include *morau* "get" or "receive," *kariru* "borrow," *kiku* "hear," and *narau* "learn."

【Related Expression】

The particle *kara* "from" can be used in replace of *ni*[3], as in [1]. (⇒ ***kara***[1])

[1] a. エバはオスカー{**から / に**}花をもらった。(cf. KS)
Eba wa Osukā {***kara*** / ***ni***} *hana o moratta.*
(Eva got flowers from Oscar.)

b. トレーシーが結婚したことをリズ{**から / に**}聞いた。(cf. Ex.(c))
Torēshī ga kekkon-shita koto o Rizu {***kara*** / ***ni***} *kiita.*
(I heard from Liz that Tracy got married.)

However, *ni*[3] cannot be used if the source is an impersonal source, such as an institution, to which the speaker can hardly feel close, as in [2].

[2] トーマスさんは文科省{**から /** ×**に**}奨学金をもらいました。
Tōmasu-san wa Monkashō {***kara*** / × ***ni***} *shōgakukin o moraimashita.*
(Thomas-san has received a scholarship from the Ministry of Education.)

N

ni[4] **に**[4] *prt.*

a particle that indicates the surface of s.t. upon which some action is performed

on; onto; in
【REL. *de*[1]; ***e***; ***to***[2]】

◆ Key Sentence

Noun Phrase (object of contact)		Direct Object		Verb (action)
この用紙 ***Kono yōshi***	に *ni*	名前と住所 *namae to jūsho*	を *o*	書いてください。 *kaite kudasai.*
(Please write your name and address on this form.)				

Examples

(a) コートはここのハンガーにかけてください。
Kōto wa koko no hangā ni kakete kudasai.
(Please hang your coat on one of the hangers here.)

(b) キャンパスの掲示板にイベントのポスターを貼りましょう。
Kyanpasu no keijiban ni ibento no posutā o harimashō.
(Let's put up posters for the event on campus bulletin boards.)

(c) よそ見をしていて人にぶつかった。
Yosomi o shite ite hito ni butsukatta.
(Not looking where I was going, I bumped into someone.)

(d) 彼女へのプレゼントにリボンを付けた。
Kanojo e no purezento ni ribon o tsuketa.
(I put a ribbon on the present for my girlfriend.)

Notes

1. *Ni* [4] is used with verbs that indicate an action that involves physical contact with something. Besides the verbs in KS and Exs.(a)–(d), verbs such as *oku* "place" or "put," *suwaru* "sit down," *tatsu* "s.t./s.o. stands," *tateru* "stand s.t." and *motareru* "lean" belong to this group of verbs.

N

2. *Ni* [4] is also used with verbs such as *noru* "get on," *oriru* "land," *tomaru* "stop" or "stay," *tomeru* "park (a car)," *sumu* "live," *ukabu* "float," *deru* "appear (in a TV show, etc.)" and *arawareru* "present oneself," in which case, nouns marked by *ni* indicate a large two- or three- dimensional space rather than a small contact point or space. This use is considered to be an extended use of *ni* as a contact point. (1) and (2) provide examples.

(1) a. ヘリコプターがビルの屋上におりた。
*Herikoputā ga biru no okujō **ni** orita.*
(A helicopter landed on the rooftop of the building.)

b. 救急車が向かいの家の前に止まった。
*Kyūkyūsha ga mukai no ie no mae **ni** tomatta.*
(An ambulance stopped in front of the house across the street.)

(2) a. 私は海の近くに住みたい。
*Watashi wa umi no chikaku **ni** sumi-tai.*
(I want to live near the sea.)

b. 私は今パリのホテルに泊まっている。
*Watashi wa ima Pari no hoteru **ni** tomatte iru.*
(I'm staying in a hotel in Paris now.)

【Related Expression】

Ni[4] should be distinguished from *de*[1], a particle that indicates a location in which some action is performed. [1a] and [1b] demonstrate the difference in meaning between the two particles. (⇒ ***de***[1])

[1] a. 子供たちが道に絵を描いている。
Kodomo-tachi ga michi ***ni*** *e o kaite iru.*
(Children are drawing pictures *on* the street.)

b. 子供たちが道で絵を描いている。
Kodomo-tachi ga michi ***de*** *e o kaite iru.*
(Children are drawing pictures *in* the street.)

ni[5] **に**[5] *prt.*

N

a particle that indicates the purpose for which s.o. moves to somewhere

to do s.t.
【REL. ~ ***no ni***; *tame ni*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			V*masu*		Verb (motion)
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	図書館へ本を *toshokan e hon o*	返し ***kaeshi***	に *ni*	行った / 行きました。 *itta / ikimashita.*
(I went to the library to return a book.)					

Formation

V*masu* に
ni

話しに (to talk)
hanashi ni

食べに (to eat)
tabe ni

Examples

(a) 学生が質問をしに来た。
Gakusei ga shitsumon o shi ni kita.
(A student came to ask questions.)

(b) 川原さんは昼ご飯を食べにうちに帰った。
Kawahara-san wa hiru-gohan o tabe ni uchi ni kaetta.
(Kawahara-san went home to eat his lunch.)

(c) そんなところへ何をしに行くんですか。
Sonna tokoro e nani o shi ni iku n desu ka.
(For what purpose are you going to a place like that? (lit., To do what are you going to a place like that ?))

Notes

1. V*masu ni* can be used only with verbs of motion (i.e., verbs which express a movement from one place to another), such as *iku* "go," *kuru* "come," *kaeru* "return," *hairu* "enter" and *dekakeru* "go out."

   Verbs like *aruku* "walk," *hashiru* "run" and *oyogu* "swim" are not considered motion verbs because they express a manner of movement rather than a movement from one place to another. Therefore, these verbs cannot be used in the V*masu ni* construction, as in (1).

   (1) ×私は桜の花を**見に**公園を歩いた。
   × *Watashi wa sakura no hana o **mi ni** kōen o aruita.*
   (*Intended meaning*: I walked through the park to see cherry blossoms.)

2. *Ni* [5] can also be used with most nouns that indicate an action, such as *shigoto* "work," *kaimono* "shopping" and *shitsumon* "question," as in (2).

   (2) a. 学生が**質問に**来た。
   *Gakusei ga **shitsumon ni** kita.*
   (A student came to ask questions.)

   b. 今日は日曜日だけど、父は**仕事に**行った。
   *Kyō wa nichiyōbi da kedo, chichi wa **shigoto ni** itta.*
   (Although today is Sunday, my father went to work.)

【Related Expression】

Vplain·non-past *tame ni* is also used to express purpose in an action. However, the uses of Vplain·non-past *tame ni* and V*masu ni* differ in some ways. First, unlike V*masu ni*, Vplain·non-past *tame ni* can be used with any kind of verbs. [1] and [2] provide examples.

[1] 私は家族とキャンプをするためにテントを買った。
Watashi wa kazoku to kyanpu o suru ***tame ni*** *tento o katta.*
(I bought a tent to camp with my family.)

[2] 私は外国の友達と話すために英語を勉強している。
Watashi wa gaikoku no tomodachi to hanasu ***tame ni*** *eigo o benkyō-shite iru.*
(I'm studying English in order to speak with my friends abroad.)

Second, when V*masu ni* and Vplain·non-past *tame ni* are used with verbs of motion, V*masu ni* can be used without a directional phrase as in [3], whereas Vplain·non-past *tame ni* cannot as in [4], unless that information is clear from the context.

[3] 私は飲み物を買いに行った。
Watashi wa nomimono o kai ***ni*** *itta.*
(I went (somewhere) to buy a drink.)

[4] a. 私は飲み物を買うためにコンビニへ行った。
Watashi wa nomimono o kau ***tame ni*** *konbini e itta.*
(I went to the convenience store to buy a drink.)

b. × 私は飲み物を買うために行った。
× *Watashi wa nomimono o kau* ***tame ni*** *itta.*
(*Intended meaning*: I went (somewhere) to buy a drink.)

N

Third, when Vplain·non-past *tame ni* and V*masu ni* are used with verbs of motion, Vplain·non-past *tame ni* usually expresses a rather important purpose, while V*masu ni* can be used even to express something insignificant. [5] provides examples. (⇒ ***tame ni***[1])

[5] a. カフェへコーヒーを飲みに行った。
Kafe e kōhī o nomi ***ni*** *itta.*
(I went to a café to drink coffee.)

b. ??カフェへコーヒーを飲むために行った。
??*Kafe e kōhī o nomu* ***tame ni*** *itta.*
(*Intended meaning*: I went to a café in order to drink coffee.)

ni[6] **に**[6] *prt.*

a particle that indicates the location where s.o./s.t. exists

in; at; on
【REL. *de*[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Noun (location)		Verb (existence)
パーカーさん *Pākā-san*	は *wa*	今 *ima*	**日本** ***Nihon***	に *ni*	いる / います。 *iru / imasu.*
(Parker-san is in Japan now.)					

(B)

Topic (location)			Subject			Verb (existence)
私の大学 ***Watashi no daigaku***	に *ni*	は *wa*	留学生 *ryūgakusei*	が *ga*	たくさん *takusan*	いる / います。 *iru / imasu.*
(There are many international students at my university.)						

N

Examples

(a) その本はこの図書館にあります。
Sono hon wa kono toshokan ni arimasu.
(That book is in this library.)

(b) この学校にはプールがない。
Kono gakkō ni wa pūru ga nai.
(There is no swimming pool at this school.)

(c) A: トイレはどこにありますか。
Toire wa doko ni arimasu ka.
(Where is the restroom?)

B: 地下にあります。
Chika ni arimasu.
(It's in the basement.)

Notes

1. *Ni*[6] is used to indicate the location where someone or something exists. Thus, the verbs *iru* "(animate things) exist" and *aru* "(inanimate things) exist" typically occur with this particle. (⇒ ***aru***[1]; ***iru***[1])

2. The verb *aru* often takes *ni*, but when *aru* is used for an event, *ni* cannot be used. In this case, *de* is used. (See Related Expression I.)

3. In sentences with *aru* and *iru*, locations are often presented as topics, in which case the double particle *ni wa* occurs, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b).

4. Sentences with *aru* can be used to express possession. In this case, *ni* marks possessors rather than locations, as in (1).

   (1) a. 大橋夫妻には子供がいない。
   *Ōhashi-fusai **ni** wa kodomo ga **inai**.*
   (The Ohashis don't have children.)

   b. 植松さんには大きな財産がある。
   *Uematsu-san **ni** wa ōki na zaisan ga **aru**.*
   (Uematsu-san has a large fortune.)

5. *Mieru* "be visible" and *mirareru* "can be seen" can also be used with *ni*[6] as in (2). (⇒ ***mieru***)

   (2) a. 遠くに大きい山が見える。
   *Tōku **ni** ōkii yama ga **mieru**.*
   (I can see a large mountain in the distance. (lit., A large mountain is visible in the distance.))

   b. この作文には文法の間違いがたくさん見られる。
   *Kono sakubun **ni** wa bunpō no machigai ga takusan **mirareru**.*
   (There are a lot of grammatical mistakes in this composition. (lit., A lot of grammatical mistakes can be seen in this composition.))

6. "N *ni*" cannot modify a noun. For example, to say "an apartment *in New York*" in Japanese, *no* is used instead of *ni*, as in (3). (⇒ ***no***[1])

   (3) ニューヨーク{の / ×に}アパート
   *Nyūyōku{**no** / ×**ni**} apāto*
   (an apartment in New York)

[Related Expressions]

I. *De*[1] also indicates location, but not a location where someone/something exists. Thus, in the following sentences *de* is ungrammatical. (⇒ ***de***[1])

   [1] a. 私のうち{に / ×で}はテレビがない。
   *Watashi no uchi{**ni** / ×**de**} wa terebi ga nai.*
   (There is no TV set in my house.)

b. ウィリアムズさんは今会議室{に / ×で}いる。
*Wiriamuzu-san wa ima kaigi-shitsu{**ni** / ×**de**} iru.*
(Williams-san is in the conference room now.)

On the other hand, *ni* is used only to indicate the location where someone/something exists, but not the location where someone does something, someone/something is in a state, or an event takes place. Thus, in the following sentences, *ni* is ungrammatical.

[2] a. 私はいつも図書館{で / ×に}勉強する。
*Watashi wa itsumo toshokan{**de** / ×**ni**} benkyō-suru.*
(I always study at the library.)

b. マリファナは日本{で / ×に}は違法だ。
*Marifana wa Nihon{**de** / ×**ni**} wa ihō da.*
(Marijuana is illegal in Japan.)

c. そのパーティーはガルシアさんの家{で / ×に}あった。
*Sono pātī wa Garushia-san no ie{**de** / ×**ni**} atta.*
(The party was held at Garcia-san's.)

II. In some sentences, both the locational *ni* and the locational *de* can be used, as in [3].

N

[3] 私は京都{に / で}いい家を見つけた。
*Watashi wa Kyōto{**ni** / **de**} ii ie o mitsuketa.*
(I found a good house in Kyoto.)

However, the nuances of a sentence with *ni* and one with *de* are different. Namely, the sentence with *ni* implies that "I found a good house, which is in Kyoto," while the one with *de* means "In Kyoto I found a good house." Similarly, in [4] the *ni* version and the *de* version mean different things.

[4] 私は東京{に / で}仕事を見つけた。
*Watashi wa Tōkyō{**ni** / **de**} shigoto o mitsuketa.*
(I found a job in Tokyo.)

Namely, in the sentence with *ni*, the job is in Tokyo and the place where the speaker found it might not have been Tokyo. On the other hand, the sentence with *de* means that the place where the speaker found the job was Tokyo and the place where he is going to work is not necessarily Tokyo.

ni[7] **に**[7] *prt.*

a particle that indicates a place to or toward which s.o./s.t. moves

to; into; in
【REL. ***e***】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			Noun (direction)		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	昨日 *kinō*	サンフランシスコ ***Sanfuranshisuko***	に *ni*	行った / 行きました。 *itta / ikimashita.*
(I went to San Francisco yesterday.)					

Examples

(a) アダムスさんは来年アメリカに帰る。
Adamusu-san wa rainen Amerika ni kaeru.
(Adams-san is going back to America next year.)

(b) いつか私のうちに来ませんか。
Itsu-ka watashi no uchi ni kimasen ka.
(Wouldn't you like to come to my house sometime?)

(c) 山内さんは広島に引っ越した。
Yamauchi-san wa Hiroshima ni hikkoshita.
(Yamauchi-san moved to Hiroshima.)

N

Notes

1. *Ni*[7] is used with verbs that indicate a movement from one place to another. Besides the verbs in KS and Exs.(a)–(c), verbs such as *tsuku* "arrive," *utsuru* "move" or "shift," *shuppatsu-suru* "depart" and *mukau* "head" belong to this group of verbs.

2. Verbs that indicate a change, such as *naru* "become," *suru* "make" or "change," *kawaru* "(s.t.) changes (to s.t.)" and *kaeru* "(s.o.) changes (s.t. to s.t.)," take *ni*, as in (1). This use of *ni* is considered to be an extended use of *ni*[7].
(⇒ ***naru***; ***suru***[5])

(1) a. ロバートは弁護士になった。
Robāto wa bengoshi ***ni*** *natta.*
(Robert became a lawyer.)

b. 日本の年号が「平成」から「令和」に変わった。
Nihon no nengō ga "Heisei" kara "Reiwa" ***ni*** *kawatta.*
(The era of Japan has changed from "Heisei" to "Reiwa.")

3. As another extended use of *ni*[7], *ni* is also used to indicate an enclosed space into which something or someone enters, as in (2).

(2) a. 私たちはフレンチレストランに入った。
Watashi-tachi wa Furenchi-resutoran ***ni*** *haitta.*
(We entered a French restaurant.)

b. 私たちは急いでタクシーに乗った。
Watashi-tachi wa isoide takushī ***ni*** *notta.*
(We hurriedly climbed into the taxi.)

c. スキーを押入れにしまった。
Sukī o oshiire ni *shimatta.*
(I put my skis away in the closet.)

Other verbs of this category include: *ireru* "put (s.t. in s.t.)," *nyūgaku-suru* "enter a school," *moguru* "dive" and *tsukkomu* "dive" or "stick (s.t. into s.t.)."

ni[8] **に**[8] *prt.*

N

a particle that indicates an agent in passive, causative, V*te morau* and V*te hoshii* constructions — by

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Agent			Verb (passive)
良二 *Ryōji*	は *wa*	**ルームメート** ***rūmumēto***	に *ni*	メールを *mēru o*	**読まれた / 読まれました。** ***yomareta / yomaremashita.***
(Ryoji's roommate read his (= Ryoji's) emails (and Ryoji was unhappy).)					

(B)

Topic (subject)		Agent			Verb (causative)
コーチ *Kōchi*	は *wa*	**選手** ***senshu***	に *ni*	ウエートトレーニングを *uēto-torēningu o*	させた / させました。 *saseta / sasemashita.*
(The coach made the players do weight training.)					

(C)

Topic (subject)		Agent			Vte	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	**父** ***chichi***	に *ni*	車を *kuruma o*	**買って** ***katte***	もらった / もらいました。 *moratta / moraimashita.*
(My father bought me a car. (lit., I had my car bought by my father.))						

(D)

Topic (subject)		Agent			Vte	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	**彼** ***kare***	に *ni*	今の仕事を *ima no shigoto o*	**続けて** ***tsuzukete***	ほしい / ほしいです。 *hoshii / hoshiidesu.*
(I want my boyfriend to stay with his current job.)						

Examples

(a) 友美はお母さんにしかられた。
Tomomi wa o-kāsan ni shikarareta.
(Tomomi was scolded by her mother.)

(b) 高木先生は学生にプロジェクトをさせて、それを発表させました。
Takagi-sensei wa gakusei ni purojekuto o sasete, sore o happyō-sase-mashita.
(Prof. Takagi had her students do a project and give a presentation on it.)

(c) 私はオーストラリア人の先生に日本語を教えてもらった。
Watashi wa ōsutorariajin no sensei ni nihongo o oshiete moratta.
(I had an Australian teacher teach me Japanese.)

(d) 私は母にもっと自分の好きなことをしてほしい。
Watashi wa haha ni motto jibun no suki na koto o shite hoshii.
(I want my mother to spend more time on doing what she wants to do (lit., to do what she wants to do more often).)

Note

Ni[8] is used to mark the agent (i.e., the performer of the action represented by a verb) in the passive, causative, V*te morau* and V*te hoshii* constructions. (1)–(4) represent who did (or will do) what in KSs(A)–(D).

(⇒ ***~rareru***[1]; ***~saseru***; ***morau***[2]; ***hoshii***[2])

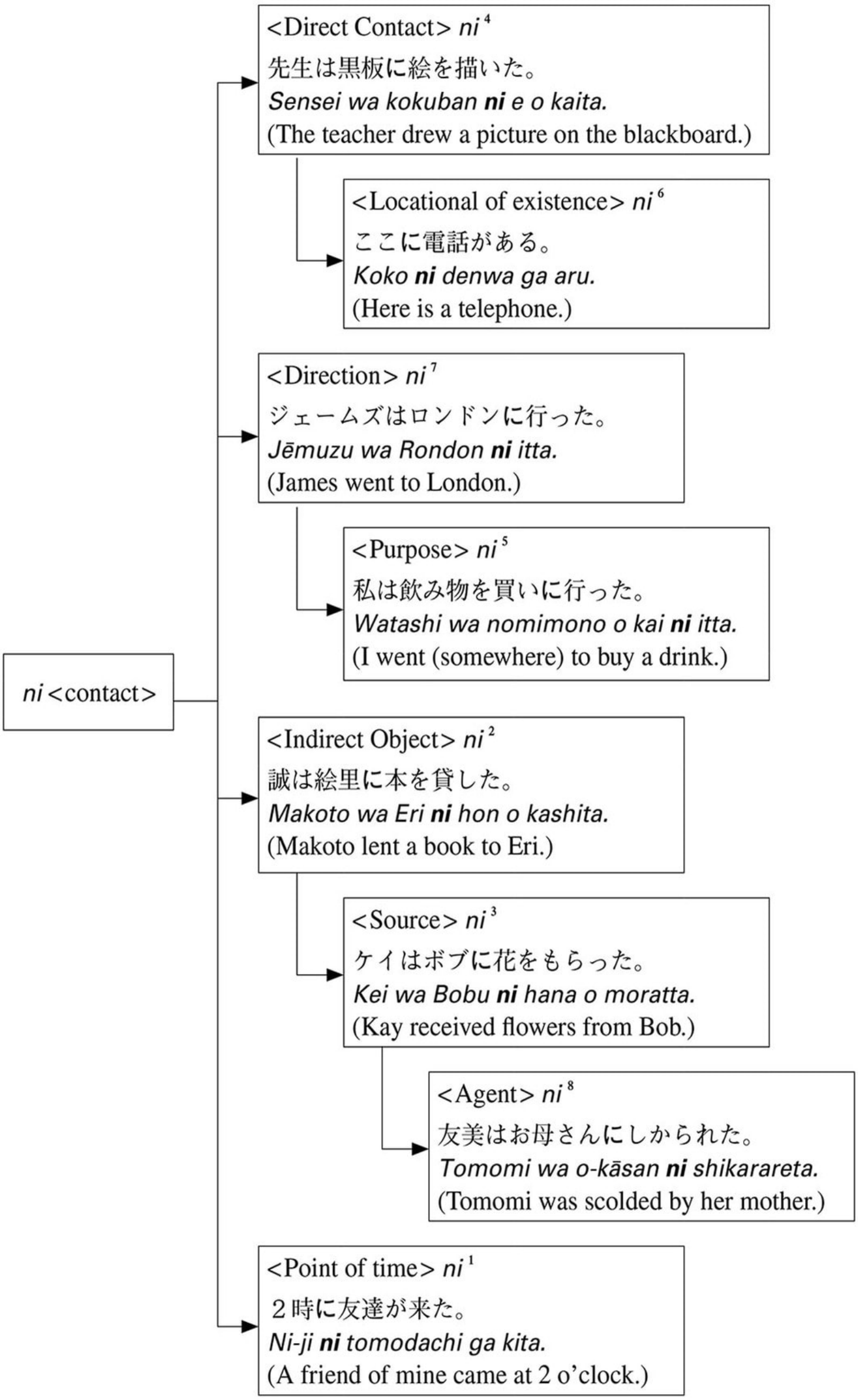
(1) (良二の)ルームメートがメールを読んだ。(cf. KS(A))
(Ryōji no) rūmumēto ga mēru o yonda.
(Ryoji's roommate read his (= Ryoji's) emails.)

(2) 選手がウエートトレーニングをした。(cf. KS(B))
Senshu ga uēto-torēningu o shita.
(The players did weight training.)

(3) 父が車を買った。(cf. KS(C))
Chichi ga kuruma o katta.
(My father bought a car.)

(4) 彼が今の仕事を続ける。(cf. KS(D))
Kare ga ima no shigoto o tsuzukeru.
(My boyfriend will stay with his current job.)

★ Semantic Derivations of *Ni*



～ ni chigai nai ～にちがいない *phr.*

The speaker is convinced that there is no mistake on his/her part in guessing something.

There is no doubt that ~; must be ~; no doubt; I'm certain that ~; I'm sure that ~
【REL. ~ *darō*; ***hazu***; ~ *kamoshire-nai*】

◆ Key Sentence

Splain*		
ローラは今の彼と**結婚する** *Rōra wa ima no kare to* ***kekkon-suru***	に *ni*	ちがいない / ありません。 *chigai nai / arimasen.*
(There is no doubt that Laura will marry her current boyfriend.)		

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N drops.

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } にちがいない
ni chigai nai

{ 話す / 話した } にちがいない (s.o. { will no doubt talk / no doubt talked })
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *ni chigai nai*

{ 高い / 高かった } にちがいない (s.t. must { be / have been } expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *ni chigai nai*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { ø / だった } にちがいない
{ ø / *datta* } *ni chigai nai*

静か { ø / だった } にちがいない (s.t. must { be / have been } quiet)
shizuka { ø / *datta* } *ni chigai nai*

先生 { ø / だった } にちがいない (s.o. must { be / have been } a teacher)
sensei { ø / *datta* } *ni chigai nai*

Examples

(a) あの二人は今ごろハワイで楽しく泳いでいるにちがいありません。
Ano futari wa imagoro Hawai de tanoshiku oyoide iru ni chigai arimasen.
(Those two must be enjoying swimming in Hawaii now.)

(b) 北山さんはメールアドレスを変えたにちがいない。
Kitayama-san wa mēru-adoresu o kaeta ni chigai nai.
(Kitayama-san must have changed his email address.)

(c) ジョーは近くに友達がいなくてさびしいにちがいない。
Jō wa chikaku ni tomodachi ga inakute sabishii ni chigai nai.
(Joe is no doubt lonely with no friends nearby.)

(d) ラリーは長いお礼のメールを送ってきました。とてもうれしかったにちがいありません。
Rarī wa nagai o-rei no mēru o okutte kimashita. Totemo ureshikatta ni chigai arimasen.
(Larry sent me a long thank-you email. He must have been very happy.)

(e) 知らない国で一人で仕事をするのは大変にちがいない。
Shiranai kuni de hitori de shigoto o suru no wa taihen ni chigai nai.
(It must be hard to work alone in an unfamiliar country.)

(f) 美和は圭介が好きだったにちがいない。
Miwa wa Keisuke ga suki datta ni chigai nai.
(Miwa must have loved Keisuke.)

(g) これはトンプソンさんの車にちがいありません。
Kore wa Tonpuson-san no kuruma ni chigai arimasen.
(This must be Thompson-san's car.)

Note

Ni chigai nai cannot be used with declarative sentences about the speaker. Thus, (1) is ungrammatical.

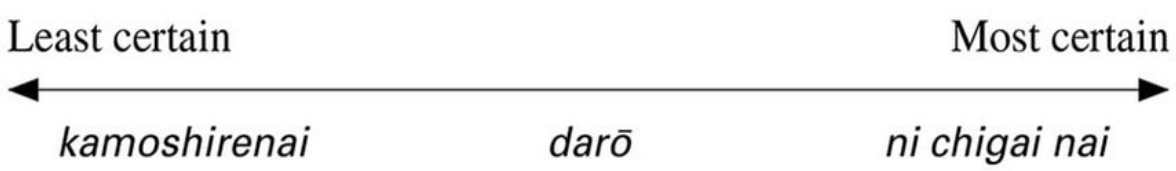
(1) ×私はコンピュータ工学を専攻するにちがいありません。
× *Watashi wa konpyūta-kōgaku o senkō-suru* ***ni chigai arimasen.***
(*Intended meaning*: I'm certain that I will major in computer engineering.)

To express the intended meanings above, *kitto ~ to omou* "I think that ~ without doubt" can be used, as in (2).

(2) 私はきっとコンピュータ工学を専攻すると思います。
Watashi wa ***kitto*** *konpyūta-kōgaku o senkō-suru* ***to omoimasu.***
(I think I'll major in computer engineering without doubt.)

【Related Expressions】

Darō, *kamoshirenai* and *ni chigai nai* express different degrees of the speaker's conviction as shown below:



～ nikui にくい　aux. adj. (i)

⇒ ~ ***yasui*** / ***nikui***

～ ni shite wa ～にしては　comp. prt.

a phrase that indicates a standard to which s.o./s.t. is compared

for; considering that ~
【REL. ~ ***to shite wa***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun		
高田さん *Takada-san*	は *wa*	80歳 ***hachijus-sai***	にしては *ni shite wa*	元気だ / です。 *genki da / desu.*
(Takada-san is healthy for an eighty-year-old.)				

N

(B)

Topic (subject)		Verb Phrase		
マシュー *Mashū*	は *wa*	よく勉強している *yoku* ***benkyō-shite iru***	にしては *ni shite wa*	成績がよくない / よくないです。 *seiseki ga yokunai / yokunaidesu.*
(Considering that Matthew is studying hard, his grades are not good.)				

Formation

(i) N (だった) にしては
(datta) ni shite wa

先生 (だった) にしては　(considering that s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei (datta) ni shite wa

(ii) Vplain にしては
ni shite wa

{ 話す / 話した } にしては　(considering that s.o. { will talk / talks / talked })
{ *hanasu* / *hanashita* } *ni shite wa*

Examples

(a) 今日は８月にしては涼しいですね。
Kyō wa hachi-gatsu ni shite wa suzushiidesu ne.
(For August it is cool today, isn't it?)

(b) この部屋は日本のビジネスホテルにしては広いですね。
Kono heya wa Nihon no bijinesu-hoteru ni shite wa hiroidesu ne.
(For a Japanese business hotel (room), this room is spacious, isn't it?)

(c) 青木さんはアメリカに半年しかいなかったにしては英語が上手だ。
Aoki-san wa Amerika ni hantoshi shika inakatta ni shite wa eigo ga jōzu da.
(Considering that Aoki-san spent only half a year in America, his English is good.)

(d) 彼は昔バスケットボールの選手だったにしては背が低い。
Kare wa mukashi basukettobōru no senshu datta ni shite wa se ga hikui.
(Considering that he was a basketball player at one time, he is short.)

Note

When *ni shite wa* is used with a noun, it indicates a typical or average entity to which someone/something is compared, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b). When *ni shite wa* is used with a verb phrase or a noun followed by *datta*, it indicates the fact one takes into consideration when one makes a statement, as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d).

~ ni suru ～にする *phr.*

S.o. has decided on s.t.

decide on; make it ~
【REL. ~ *ni kimeru*】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Noun		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	このアパート ***kono apāto***	に *ni*	する / します。 *suru / shimasu.*
(I've decided on this apartment.)				

Examples

(a) [At a restaurant]

A: 何にしますか。
Nan ni shimasu ka.
(What will you have? (lit., What have you decided on?))

B: 私はピザにします。
Watashi wa piza ni shimasu.
(I'll have pizza. (lit., I've decided on pizza.))

(b) ジェリーはドイツの車にしました。
Jerī wa Doitsu no kuruma ni shimashita.
(Jerry (has) decided on an German car.)

Notes

1. *Ni suru* is usually preceded by a noun or a noun equivalent. However, a noun with a particle is also possible, as in (1).

   (1) 今度の旅行はニューヨークまでにします。
   Kondo no ryokō wa Nyūyōku ***made ni shimasu.***
   (Next trip, I'll make it as far as New York.)

2. If the tense is non-past, *ni suru* implies that a decision has just been made, as in KS and Ex.(a). However, if the past tense is used, it means either that a decision has been made but no action has been taken or that a decision was made and an action was also taken. For example, Ex.(b) means either that Jerry has made a decision to buy an American car but hasn't bought one yet or that he made a decision to buy an American car and bought one.

3. To express the idea that someone decides to do something, the verb or verb phrase should be used with *ni suru*, and must be nominalized using *koto*.
(⇒ ~ ***koto ni suru***)

[Related Expression]

Ni kimeru also means "decide on" and is interchangeable with *ni suru* in most situations. However, *ni kimeru* is usually used in situations where a decision is considered significant or important. Thus, in situations like Ex.(a), *ni kimeru* would sound odd.

no[1] **の**[1] *prt.*

a particle that, with the preceding non-conjugational element, forms a phrase to modify the following noun

's; of; in; at; about; on; for; by

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Noun 1		Noun 2	
これは *Kore wa*	池上先生 ***Ikegami-sensei***	の *no*	本 *hon*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(This is Prof. Ikegami's book.)				

(B)

	Noun 1	Prt		Noun 2	
これは *Kore wa*	友達 ***tomodachi***	から ***kara***	の *no*	プレゼント *purezento*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(This is a present from my friend.)					

N

Formation

(i) N_1 の N_2
no

北田さんの家　(Kitada-san's house)
Kitada-san no ie

アメリカの大学　(a university in America)
Amerika no daigaku

(ii) N_1 + Prt の N_2
no

日本での仕事　(a job in Japan)
Nihon de no shigoto

母へのプレゼント　(a present for my mother)
Haha e no purezento

Examples

(a) 私の本
watashi no hon
(my book)

学校の名前
gakkō no namae
(the name of the school)

(b) 日本の寺
Nihon no tera
(a temple in Japan)

駅の電話
eki no denwa
(a telephone at the station)

(c) 美術の本
bijutsu no hon
(a book on fine arts)

日本語の試験
nihongo no shiken
(an exam on Japanese)

(d) 桜の花
sakura no hana
(a cherry blossom)

桃の木
momo no ki
(a peach tree)

バスの切符
basu no kippu
(a bus ticket)

風邪の薬
kaze no kusuri
(cold medicine)

(e) 日本語の先生
nihongo no sensei
(a teacher of Japanese)

音楽の学生
ongaku no gakusei
(a student of music)

(f) ピカソの絵
Pikaso no e
(a picture by Picasso)

ベートーベンの音楽
Bētōben no ongaku
(music by Beethoven)

フォードの車
Fōdo no kuruma
(a car made by Ford)

N

(g) 友達の木本さん
tomodachi no Kimoto-san
(my friend Kimoto-san)

医者の戸村さん
isha no Tomura-san
(Tomura-san, a medical doctor)

カラーの写真
karā no shashin
(a photo in color)

10 歳の子供
jus-sai no kodomo
(a ten-year-old child)

(h) 絹のドレス
kinu no doresu
(a silk dress)

れんがの家
renga no ie
(a brick house)

(i) ８時からのパーティー
hachi-ji kara no pātī
(a party that starts at eight o'clock)

先生との話し合い
sensei to no hanashiai
(a discussion with the teacher)

Notes

1. In "A *no* B," *no* indicates that A modifies B, which is always a noun. In many cases, nouns occur in A, but other non-conjugational elements can also occur. (See Note 5.)

2. The semantic relationship between A and B in "A *no* B" varies depending on what A and B represent and in what context or situation this phrase is used. Some common relationships are listed below.

	Relationship between A and B	English equivalent
Ex.(a)	A is the possessor of B.	B of A; A's B
Ex.(b)	A is the location where B exists.	B in/at A
Ex.(c)	B is about/on A.	B about A; B on A
Ex.(d)	A is a specific kind of B.	AB; B of A; B for A
Ex.(e)	A is the direct object and B is the subject.	AB; B of A
Ex.(f)	A created B.	A's B; B by A; B created by A
Ex.(g)	A is an attribute of B.	AB; B, A; B, who/which is A
Ex.(h)	B is made of/from A.	AB

3. The "A *no* B" construction can be extended as in A *no* B *no* C *no* ..., as in (1).

(1) a. 私の先生の本
watashi ***no*** *sensei* ***no*** *hon*
(my teacher's book)

b. 日本語の先生の田中先生
nihongo ***no*** *sensei* ***no*** *Tanaka-sensei*
(the Japanese-language teacher, Prof. Tanaka)

4. In "A *no* B," a noun with a particle can occur in the position of A, as in KS(B) and the phrases in Ex.(i). Note that *no* cannot be omitted in this case, because it indicates that the preceding noun with a particle modifies the following noun. Without *no*, the noun with the particle is interpreted as an adverbial phrase to modify the predicate in the clause. For example, in (2a), *ni-ji kara no* "from two o'clock" modifies *kaigi* "meeting," while in (2b), *ni-ji kara* modifies *de-mashita* "attended."

(2) a. **2時からの** **会議**に 出ました。
Ni-ji kara no ***kaigi*** *ni* *demashita.*

(I attended the meeting which had started at (lit., from) two o'clock.)

b. **2時から** 会議に **出ました。**
Ni-ji kara *kaigi ni* ***demashita.***

(I attended the meeting at (lit., from) two o'clock.)

Note that the particle *ni* cannot occur before *no*. When "X *ni*" has to modify

a noun using *no*, *ni* changes to another particle whose meaning is close or simply drops, as in (3) and (4).

(3) 母{への / ×にの}プレゼント
haha{***e no*** / ×***ni no***} *purezento*
(A present for my mother)

(4) 朝9時{の / ×にの}出発
asa ku-ji{***no*** / ×***ni no***} *shuppatsu*
(departure at nine o'clock in the morning)

5. Although not as common as nouns and particles, other non-conjugational elements, such as certain adverbs, onomatopoeias and quantifiers can be used in the position of A in "A *no* B," as in (5), (6) and (7).

(5) a. さっそくのお返事をありがとうございました。
Sassoku no *o-henji o arigatōgozaimashita.*
(Thank you for your prompt reply.)

b. 至急の翻訳の仕事が入った。
Shikyū no *hon'yaku no shigoto ga haitta.*
(I got an urgent translation job.)

(6) a. その部屋にはガタガタのいすしかなかった。
Sono heya ni wa ***gatagata no*** *isu shika nakatta.*
(There were only battered chairs in that room.)

b. フワフワのクッションに座った。
Fuwafuwa no *kusshon ni suwatta.*
(I sat on a soft airy cushion.)

(7) a. 台風でたくさんの家が壊れた。
Taifū de ***takusan no*** *ie ga kowareta.*
(Many houses were destroyed by the typhoon.)

b. 私たちは2台のマイクロバスで空港に向かった。
Watashi-tachi wa ***ni-dai no*** *maikurobasu de kūkō ni mukatta.*
(We headed for the airport in two minibuses.)

6. In "A *no* B," B can be omitted if it is apparent from context or situation, as in (8).

(8) a. これは私の(本)です。
Kore wa watashi ***no*** *(hon) desu.*
(This is mine (= my book).)

b. このレストランの(ステーキ)はおいしくないです。
Kono resutoran ***no*** *(sutēki) wa oishikunaidesu.*
(This restaurant's (steak) doesn't taste good.)

no² **の**² *pronoun*

a dependent indefinite pronoun — one
【REL. *no*³】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

A:				
どんなスーツケースを買いましたか。 *Donna sūtsukēsu o kaimashita ka.*				
(What kind of suitcase did you buy?)				
B:				
	Adj(*i*)plain・non-past			
たくさん買い物をしたいので *Takusan kaimono o shi-tai node*	**大きい** ***ōkii***	の *no*	を *o*	買いました。 *kaimashita.*
(Because I want to buy many things, I bought a big one.)				

(B)

A:				
今晩のパーティーにどのお皿を使いましょうか。 *Konban no pātī ni dono o-sara o tsukaimashō ka.*				
(Which plates shall we use for the party tonight?)				
B:				
Relative Clause				
	Vplain			
去年私が日本で *Kyonen watashi ga Nihon de*	**買った** ***katta***	の *no*	を *o*	使いましょう。 *tsukaimashō.*
(Let's use the ones I bought in Japan last year.)				

Formation

(i) Adj(*i*)plain·non-past の
no

高い**の** (expensive one)
takai no

(ii) Adj(*na*) なの
na no

丈夫なの (durable one)
jōbu na no

(iii) Vplain の
no

サラが{買う / 買った}の (the one Sarah {is going to buy / bought})
Sara ga {kau / katta} no

Examples

(a) A: どんなイヤリングが欲しいですか。
Donna iyaringu ga hoshiidesu ka.
(What kind of earrings do you want?)

B: かわいいのが欲しいです。
Kawaii no ga hoshiidesu.
(I want a cute pair (lit., cute ones).)

(b) ケーキはあまり甘くないのが好きです。
Kēki wa amari amakunai no ga suki desu.
(Talking about cakes, I like ones that are not very sweet.)

N

(c) 時計が欲しかったので、オンラインショップで見つけたのを買った。
Tokei ga hoshikatta node, onrain-shoppu de mitsuketa no o katta.
(I wanted a clock, so I bought one I found in an online shop.)

Notes

1. Because the indefinite pronoun *no* (= *no*²) is a dependent pronoun, it cannot be used by itself. It must be modified by an adjective, as in KS(A), Exs.(a)-B and (b), a relative clause, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c), or a demonstrative adjective (e.g., *konna* "like this," *sonna* "like that" or "such," *donna* "what kind of"), as in (1).

(1) この自転車はいいですね。私も**こんなの**が欲しいです。
*Kono jitensha wa ii desu ne. Watashi mo **konna no** ga hoshiidesu.*
(This bike is great. I'd like to have one like this, too.)

2. *No*² is used in place of a noun when what it refers to is clear to the listener from the context or the situation.

3. Things referred to by *no*² are not necessarily tangible, as in (2).

(2) 今まで聞いたアイデアの中では杉山さんが言った**の**が一番よさそうです。
*Ima made kiita aidea no naka de wa Sugiyama-san ga itta **no** ga ichiban yosa-sō desu.*
(Among the ideas we've heard so far, the one Sugiyama-san told us seems the best.)

4. When *no*² is preceded by *no*¹, *no*² drops, as in (3).

(3) a. 歌は日本の歌が好きです。
Uta wa Nihon no uta ga suki desu.
(Regarding songs, I like Japanese songs.)

→ 歌は日本の~~の~~が好きです。
Uta wa Nohon no ~~no~~ ga suki desu.
(Regarding songs, I like Japanese ones.)

b. 私の車は古いが、ヤングさんの車は新車だ。
Watashi no kuruma wa furui ga, Yangu-san no kuruma wa shinsha da.
(My car is old, but Young-san's car is brand new.)

→ 私の車は古いが、ヤングさんの~~の~~は新車だ。
Watashi no kuruma wa furui ga, Yangu-san no ~~no~~ wa shinsha da.
(My car is old, but Young-san's is brand new.)

【Related Expression】

N

In some cases, the meaning of *no* is ambiguous without context. For example, in [1], *no* can be interpreted as either the indefinite pronoun *no* (= *no*²) or the nominalizer *no* (= *no*³). (⇒ ***no***³)

[1] 西村さんが使っていた**の**を覚えていますか。
*Nishimura-san ga tsukatte ita **no** o oboete imasu ka.*
((A) [Indefinite pronoun] Do you remember *the one* Nishimura-san was using?
(B) [Nominalizer] Do you remember *that* Nishimura-san was using (it)?)

384 *no*[3]

no[3] の[3] *nom.*

a nominalizer that is used when the speaker directly perceives or empathizes with the event or action represented in the nominalized sentence or phrase

that ~; to do s.t.; doing s.t.
【REL. ***koto***[2]; ***no***[2]; ***~ no wa ~ da***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Noun Phrase			
Splain*			
日本語を**教える** *Nihongo o **oshieru***	の *no*	は *wa*	難しい / 難しいです。 *muzukashii / muzukashiidesu.*
(Teaching Japanese is difficult.)			

(B)

Topic (subject)		Noun Phrase			
		Splain*			
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	香が哲也の部屋に**入る** *Kaori ga Tetsuya no heya ni **hairu***	の *no*	を *o*	見た / 見ました。 *mita / mimashita.*
(I saw Kaori enter Tetsuya's room.)					

N

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na*.

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } の
no

{ 話す / 話した } の (that s.o. talks/talked)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *no*

{ 高い / 高かった } の (that s.t. is/was expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *no*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { な / だった } の
{ *na / datta* } *no*

静か { な / だった } の (that s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *na / datta* } *no*

先生 { な / だった } の (that s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei { *na / datta* } *no*

Examples

(a) すしを作るのはそれほど難しくないです。
Sushi o tsukuru no wa sore hodo muzukashikunaidesu.
(Making sushi is not that difficult.)

(b) ここは交通が不便なのが問題です。
Koko wa kōtsū ga fuben na no ga mondai desu.
(That transportation is inconvenient is a problem here.)

(c) 私は弟が自分の部屋でギターを弾いているのを聞いた。
Watashi wa otōto ga jibun no heya de gitā o hiite iru no o kiita.
(I heard my younger brother playing the guitar in his room.)

(d) クラークさんがフランスへ行くのを知っていますか。
Kurāku-san ga Furansu e iku no o shitte imasu ka.
(Do you know that Clark-san is going to France?)

(e) 彼女がボストンの人なのをすっかり忘れていた。
Kanojo ga Bosuton no hito na no o sukkari wasurete ita.
(I had totally forgotten that she is a Bostonian.)

Notes

1. The nominalizer *no* makes a noun equivalent from a sentence or a verb/adjective phrase. In KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b), the nominalized sentences occur as subjects (in KS(A) and Ex.(a), the subjects are also topics), and in KS(B) and Exs.(c)–(e), the nominalized sentences are used as direct objects. In either case, *no* is used when the speaker directly perceives an action or event or is empathetic with it.

2. Sentences and phrases nominalized by *no* cannot be used in the position of B in the "A *wa* B *da*" construction. In that situation, the nominalizer *koto* must be used, as in (1). (⇒ ***koto***[2])

   (1) 問題は社長が来られない{こと / ×の}だ。
   *Mondai wa shachō ga korarenai{**koto** / ×**no**} da.*
   (The problem is that our president can't come.)

3. Nominalized sentences are subordinate clauses; therefore, the topic marker *wa* cannot occur in them, as seen in (2). (⇒ ***ga***[1])

   (2) 私は弟{**が** / ×**は**}自分の部屋でギターを弾いているのを聞いた。
   (= Ex.(c))
   *Watashi wa otōto{**ga** / ×**wa**} jibun no heya de gitā o hiite iru no o kiita.*
   (I heard my younger brother playing the guitar in his room.)

386 *no*[4]

no[4] **の**[4] *prt.*

a sentence-final particle that indicates that the preceding sentence is asking for or providing an explanation or that the speaker is telling something with emotive emphasis

It is that ~

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

A:			B:		
	Vplain			Vplain	
どうしてパーティーに *Dōshite pātī ni*	**行かない** ***ikanai***	の？ *no?*	宿題がたくさん *Shukudai ga takusan*	**ある** ***aru***	の。 *no.*
(How come you're not going to the party?)			(Because I have a lot of homework.)		

(B)

N

Topic (subject)			Adj(*i*)plain	
あの人 *Ano hito*	は *wa*	とても *totemo*	**やさしい** ***yasashii***	の。 *no.*
(He is so gentle, you know.)				

(C)

Topic (subject)			Adj(*na*)		
母 *Haha*	は *wa*	まだとても *mada totemo*	**元気** ***genki***	な *na*	の。 *no.*
(My mother is still quite fine.)					

(D)

Topic (subject)		Noun		
私の夫は *Watashi no otto*	は *wa*	エンジニア ***enjinia***	な *na*	の。 *no.*
(My husband is an engineer.)				

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } の
no

{ 話す / 話した } の (s.o. { will talk / talks / talked })
{ *hanasu* / *hanashita* } *no*

{ 大きい / 大きかった } の (s.t. is/was big)
{ *ōkii* / *ōkikatta* } *no*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { な / だった } の
{ *na* / *datta* } *no*

静か { な / だった } の (s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *na* / *datta* } *no*

先生 { な / だった } の (s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei { *na* / *datta* } *no*

Examples

(a) A: どうして食べないの？
Dōshite tabenai no?
(How come you don't eat it?)

B: 今、何も食べたくないの。
Ima, nani mo tabe-takunai no.
(I don't feel like eating anything right now.)

(b) A: どうしたの？
Dō shita no?
(What's the matter?)

B: 頭が痛いんだ。
Atama ga itai n da.
(My head is aching.)

(c) A: 英語が上手だね。
Eigo ga jōzu da ne.
(You speak good English.)

B: ありがとう。大学がオーストラリアだったの。
Arigatō. Daigaku ga Ōsutoraria datta no.
(Thanks. I went to a university in Australia. (lit., My university was an Australian one.))

(d) うちの子はスポーツが得意なの。
Uchi no ko wa supōtsu ga tokui na no.
(My child is good at sports.)

Notes

1. The sentence-final *no* is derived from *no da / no desu* through deletion of *da / desu*. Thus, the situations in which *no* is used are basically the same as those when *no da / no desu* is used. (⇒ ~ ***no da***)

2. *No*[4] is used only in casual speech. While *no*[4] is used in questions by both male and female speakers (KS(A)-A, Exs.(a)-A and (b)-A), it is used in declarative sentences primarily by female speakers and small children (KS(A)-B, KSs(B)–(D), Exs.(a)-B, (c)-B and (d)).

～no da　～のだ　*phr.*

a sentence ending that indicates that the speaker is explaining or asking for an explanation about some information shared with the listener, or is providing information to share with the listener before saying something that requires him/her to act

The explanation is that ~; The reason is that ~; The fact is that ~; It is that ~

N

◆ Key Sentences

Tom:				Jane:		
Splain*				Splain*		
何を読んでいる *Nani o yonde* ***iru***	の / ん *no / n*	です *desu*	か。 *ka.*	日本の小説を読んでいる *Nihon no shōsetsu o yonde* ***iru***	の / ん *no / n*	です。 *desu.*
(What are you reading?)				(I'm reading a Japanese novel.)		

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na*.

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } のだ
no da

{ 話す / 話した } のだ　(s.o. { will talk / talks / talked })
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *no da*

{高い / 高かった}のだ (s.t. is/was expensive)
{*takai* / *takakatta*} *no da*

(ii) {Adj(*na*) / N} {な / だった}のだ
{*na* / *datta*} *no da*

静か{な / だった}のだ (s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka{*na* / *datta*} *no da*

先生{な / だった}のだ (s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei{*na* / *datta*} *no da*

Examples

(a) Lisa: まだ帰らないんですか。
Mada kaeranai n desu ka.
(Are you not going home yet?)

Ken: ええ、まだ仕事が終わらないんです。
Ee, mada shigoto ga owaranai n desu.
(No, the work is not done yet.)

(b) 顔色が悪いですね。気分が悪いんですか。
Kaoiro ga warui desu ne. Kibun ga warui n desu ka.
(You look pale. Are you feeling unwell?)

(c) 今日のパーティーに行けません。宿題がたくさんあるんです。
Kyō no pātī ni ikemasen. Shukudai ga takusan aru n desu.
(I can't go to today's party. I have a lot of homework.)

(d) A: 明日の夜、映画に行きませんか。
Ashita no yoru, eiga ni ikimasen ka.
(Would you like to go to a movie tomorrow night?)

B: あ、すみません。明日の夜は予定があるんです。
A, sumimasen. Ashita no yoru wa yotei ga aru n desu.
(Oh, I'm sorry. I already have plans for tomorrow night.)

(e) 先生、質問があるんですが、今よろしいですか。
Sensei, shitsumon ga aru n desu ga, ima yoroshii desu ka.
(Professor, I have a question. May I ask it now? (lit., Would it be all right now?))

(f) あなたと結婚したいんです。
Anata to kekkon-shitai n desu.
(I want to marry you.)

Notes

1. In conversation, *n da/desu* is commonly used rather than *no da/desu*, as in Exs.(a)–(f). In casual speech, male speakers use *n da* and female speakers use *no* in declarative sentences, as in (1)-B, and in questions, *no* with rising intonation is used by both male and female speakers, as in (1)-A. (⇒ ***no***[4])

   (1) A: どうしたの？
   Dō shita ***no?***
   (What's the matter?)

   B: 頭が痛い{んだ / の}。
   Atama ga itai {***n da*** / ***no***}.
   (My head is aching.)

2. As one of the most common situations, *no da* and its variations are used when the speaker is explaining or asking for an explanation about information shared with the listener. The information is often situationally shared by the speaker and the listener. For example, in KSs, Tom uses *no/n desu* because he is asking for an explanation about what he sees Jane doing. Jane also uses *no/n desu* because she is explaining her action. In this situation, (2) is odd.

   (2) Tom: ？何を読んでいますか。
   ? *Nani o yonde imasu ka.*
   (What are you reading?)

   Jane: ？日本の小説を読んでいます。
   ? *Nihon no shōsetsu o yonde imasu.*
   (I'm reading a Japanese novel.)

   If, however, Tom is only assuming that Jane is reading something, he can ask the question in (3), and she can answer as in (2).

   (3) 今、何を読んでいますか。
   Ima, nani o yonde imasu ka.
   (What are you reading now?)

   Similarly, in Ex.(a), Lisa uses *n desu* because she observes that Ken is still working when it's time to go home and wants an explanation for that, and Ken also uses *n desu* because he is explaining about what Lisa observed. Likewise, in Ex.(b), the speaker notices that the listener looks pale and asks for an explanation of that.

   Exs.(c) and (d)-B present different situations. Here, the speaker uses *n desu* in the second sentence because it is an explanation about the information that has been given in the first sentence.

3. *No/n da* is also used when the speaker wants to share some information with the listener before the speaker says something that requires the listener to act in some way. Ex.(e) is an example of this use. Here, the speaker says "S *n desu*" before asking the listener a question. (4) and (5) provide addtional examples of this use.

   (4) 今日サッカーの試合があるんですが、一緒に行きませんか。
   Kyō sakkā no shiai ga aru ***n desu*** *ga, issho ni ikimasen ka.*
   (There is a football game today. Wouldn't you like to go (together) with me?)

   (5) 先生、困っているんです。助けてください。
   Sensei, komatte iru ***n desu****. Tasukete kudasai.*
   (Teacher, I'm in trouble. Please help me.)

   When "S *no/n desu*" is used as a lead-in sentence like these, the conjuncton *ga* (or its equivalent like *kedo*) is commonly used after *no/n desu*, as in Ex.(e) and (4).

   In this use, S_2 in "S_1 *no/n desu ga*, S_2" is often omitted when it can be understood from the context or situation, as in (6) and (7).

   (6) コピー機が動かないんですが。
   Kopīki ga ugokanai ***n desu ga****.*
   (The copier is not working. (Could you check it?))

   (7) この仕事をお願いしたいんですが。
   Kono shigoto o onegai-shi-tai ***n desu ga****.*
   (I'd like to ask you to do this job. (Would it be all right?))

   Without saying the main sentences (= S_2), the requests sound less direct, and thus, more polite.

4. *No/n desu* is also used when the speaker wants to emphasize his/her idea emotively, as in Ex.(f) and (8).

   (8) 日本語の文法は難しいですが、おもしろいんですよ。
   Nihongo no bunpō wa muzukashiidesu ga, omoshiroi ***n desu*** *yo.*
   (Japanese grammar is difficult, but it is interesting, you know.)

node ので *conj.*

a subordinate conjunction that indicates a reason or a cause

so; because; since
【REL. *de*[3]; *kara*[3]; ***sorede***; ***tame ni***[2]】

◆ Key Sentence

Subordinate Clause (reason / cause)		Main Clause
Splain*		
文法がよく**分からなかった** *Bunpō ga yoku **wakaranakatta***	ので *node*	先生に聞いた / 聞きました。 *sensei ni kiita / kikimashita.*
(I didn't understand the grammar very well, so I asked my teacher.)		

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na*.

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } ので
node

{ 話す / 話した } ので (because s.o. { will talk / talks / talked })
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *node*

{ 高い / 高かった } ので (because s.t. is/was expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *node*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { な / だった } ので
{ *na / datta* } *node*

静か { な / だった } ので (because s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *na / datta* } *node*

先生 { な / だった } ので (because s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei { *na / datta* } *node*

Examples

(a) 宿題がたくさんあるのでパーティーに行けません。
Shukudai ga takusan aru node pātī ni ikemasen.
(Since I have a lot of homework, I can't go to the party.)

(b) この店は量が多くて安いので若い人たちに人気がある。
Kono mise wa ryō ga ōkute yasui node wakai hito-tachi ni ninki ga aru.
(Because this restaurant serves voluminous and reasonably priced dishes (lit., this restaurant is voluminous and reasonably priced), it is popular among young people.)

(c) その本は高かったので買わなかった。
Sono hon wa takakatta node kawanakatta.
(I didn't buy that book because it was expensive.)

(d) 私の部屋は静かなのでよく勉強できます。
Watashi no heya wa shizuka na node yoku benkyō-dekimasu.
(My room is quiet, so I can study (there) well.)

(e) ヘザーはまだ中学生なので車を運転できない。
Hezā wa mada chūgakusei na node kuruma o unten-dekinai.
(Because Heather is still a junior high student, she can't drive a car.)

(f) たまごがセールだったので３パック買いました。
Tamago ga sēru datta node san-pakku kaimashita.
(Because eggs were on sale, I bought three cases of them.)

Notes

1. Etymologically, *node* is the *te*-form of *no da*. However, in modern Japanese it is used as a conjunction to indicate reason or cause. (⇒ ~ ***no da***)

2. "S_1 *node* S_2" is used when the speaker assumes that the information he/she provides in S_1 as the reason for S_2 is valid and evident, and therefore, that this reasoning is acceptable to the listener. Because of this, *node* sounds unnatural in situations in which such an assumption is not appropriate. (A) and (B) present situations in which *node* is unnatural or sounds rather odd.

(A) When S_1 ends with *darō*:

(1) ×人がたくさん来る<u>だろう</u>ので食べ物をたくさん買っておいた。
× *Hito ga takusan kuru <u>darō</u>* ***node*** *tabemono o takusan katte oita.*
(*Intended meaning*: Because many people will probably come, I've bought a lot of food.)

"S *darō*" indicates that the speaker states S with no certainty. The unnaturalness of (1) seems to be due to the fact that the speaker presents an uncertain prediction as the valid and evident reason for S_2 and assumes that his/her reasoning is acceptable to the listener.

(B) When S_2 is a command:

(2) ？この映画はためになるので見に<u>行きなさい</u>。
? *Kono eiga wa tame ni naru* ***node*** *mini <u>iki-nasai</u>.*
(Because this movie is good for you, go see it.)

It seems that (2) is odd because the speaker assumes that S_1 is a valid and evident reason for his/her command despite the fact that S_1 represents only the speaker's subjective opinion. If S_1 represents a fact rather than the speaker's subjective opinion, a command in S_2 is not odd, as in (3).

(3) ここは撮影禁止なので写真を撮るのはやめなさい。
*Koko wa satsuei kinshi na **node** shashin o toru no wa yame-nasai.*
(Photography is prohibited here, so stop taking pictures.)

3. Although plain forms usually precede *node*, polite forms can occur before *node* in very polite speech, as in (4).

(4) [An announcement on the plane]
ゆれますのでシートベルトをお締めください。
*Yuremasu **node** shītoberuto o o-shime-kudasai.*
([The plane] will shake, so please fasten your seat belt.)

【Related Expressions】

I. The conjunction *kara* also expresses reason or cause. However, *kara* and *node* differ in the following ways.

(A) While "S_1 *node* S_2" involves the assumption that the speaker's reasoning is acceptable to the listener for the reason noted in Note 2, "S_1 *kara* S_2," does not involve such an assumption. Therefore, *node* is unnatural or odd in the following sentence, while *kara* is totally natural in the same sentences.

[1] 人がたくさん来るだろう｛から / ×ので｝食べ物をたくさん買っておいた。(= (1))
*Hito ga takusan kuru darō｛**kara** / × **node**｝tabemono o takusan katte oita.*
(Because many people will probably come, I've bought a lot of food.)

[2] この映画はためになる｛から / ?ので｝見に行きなさい。(= (2))
*Kono eiga wa tame ni naru｛**kara** / ?**node**｝mi ni iki-nasai.*
(Because this movie is good for you, go see it.)

(B) "S *kara da*" is an acceptable form, but "S *node da*" is not, as in [3] and [4].

[3] A: どうして仕事を変えたのですか。
Dōshite shigoto o kaeta no desu ka.
(Why did you change your job?)

B: 前の仕事は給料が悪かった｛から / ×ので｝です。
*Mae no shigoto wa kyūryō ga warukatta｛**kara** / × **node**｝desu.*
(Because the previous job didn't pay me well.)

[4] 日本に来たのはここの大学でいい仕事があった｛から / ×ので｝だ。
*Nihon ni kita no wa koko no daigaku de ii shigoto ga atta｛**kara** / × **node**｝da.*
(The reason why I came to Japan is because there was a good job at a university here.)

As seen in the above examples, "S *kara da*" is used when the reason is under focus, while "S *node*" cannot be used when the reason is under focus. It seems that this is because "S *node*" indicates that the speaker assumes his/her reasoning is acceptable to the listener. (⇒ ~ ***no wa*** ~ ***da***)

(C) "S_1 *kara* S_2" is preferred when the speaker wants the listener's attention to the reason part (i.e., S_1 *kara*). However, *kara* is not appropriate in request situations like [5] because the "S_1 *kara* S_2" construction usually focuses on the reason part, and therefore, it sounds like the main part (i.e., the part that asks a favor of the listener) is less important, which make the sentence sound rude to the listener. (⇒ ***kara***[3])

[5] 日本へ留学したい{**ので** / ??**から**}、推薦状を書いていただけませんか。
Nihon e ryūgaku-shi-tai {***node*** / ??***kara***}, *suisenjō o kaite itadake-masen ka.*
(I'd like to study abroad in Japan, so could I ask you to write a letter of recommendation for me?)

II. The particle *de*[3] is also used to express a reason or cause. *De*[3], however, can be used only with nouns, while *node* and *kara* are used only with sentences, as in [6] and [7]. (⇒ ***de***[3])

[6] 台風{**で** / ×**から** / ×**ので**}家がたくさん倒れた。
Taifū {***de*** / ×***kara*** / ×***node***} *ie ga takusan taoreta.*
(Many houses fell down due to the typhoon.)

[7] 強い風が吹いた{**から** / **ので** / ×**で**}家がたくさん倒れた。
Tsuyoi kaze ga fuita {***kara*** / ***node*** / ×***de***} *ie ga takusan taoreta.*
(Many houses fell down because a strong wind blew.)

N

noni のに *conj.*

a subordinate conjunction that indicates that something happened or is the case contrary to what is naturally expected from a certain fact

in spite of the fact that ~; despite the fact that ~; although; even though; but
【REL. *keredo(mo)*; ***temo***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Vplain		
毎日ギターを *Mai-nichi gitā o*	**練習している** ***renshū-shite iru***	のに *noni*	上手にならない / なりません。 *jōzu ni naranai / narimasen.*
(I'm practicing the guitar every day, but my skills don't improve. (lit., In spite of the fact that I'm practicing the guitar every day, I don't get better.))			

(B)

Topic (subject)		Subordinate Clause		Main Clause
		Adj(*i*) plain		
このレストラン *Kono resutoran*	は *wa*	**高い** ***takai***	のに *noni*	あまりおいしくない / おいしくないです。 *amari oishikunai / oishikunaidesu.*
(This restaurant is expensive, but it's not very good. (lit., In spite of the fact that this restaurant is expensive, it's not very delicious.))				

N

(C)

Topic (subject)		Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
		Adj(*na*)			
清水さん *Shimizu-san*	は *wa*	**下手** ***heta***	な *na*	のに *noni*	ゴルフが大好きだ / です。 *gorufu ga dai-suki da / desu.*
(Although Shimizu-san is not good at golf, he loves it.)					

(D)

Topic (subject)		Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
		Noun			
ジャスティン *Jasutin*	は *wa*	**大学院生** ***daigakuinsei***	な *na*	のに *noni*	あまり勉強しない / しません。 *amari benkyō-shinai / shimasen.*
(Justin is a graduate student, but he doesn't study much. (lit., In spite of the fact that Justin is a graduate student, he doesn't study much.))					

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } のに
noni

{ 話す / 話した } のに (although s.o. talks/talked)
{ *hanasu* / *hanashita* } *noni*

{ 高い / 高かった } のに (although s.t. is/was expensive)
{ *takai* / *takakatta* } *noni*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { な / だった } のに
{ *na* / *datta* } *noni*

静か { な / だった } のに (although s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *na* / *datta* } *noni*

先生 { な / だった } のに (although s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei { *na* / *datta* } *noni*

Examples

(a) 中学と高校と大学で８年間も英語を勉強したのにまだ英語が話せません。
Chūgaku to kōkō to daigaku de hachi-nenkan mo eigo o benkyō-shita noni mada eigo ga hanasemasen.
(In spite of the fact that I studied English for as many as eight years in junior high, senior high and college, I still cannot speak it.)

(b) 寒かったのに弟はコートを着ないで出かけていった。
Samukatta noni otōto wa kōto o kinaide dekakete-itta.
(Although it was cold, my younger brother went out without wearing a coat.)

(c) カトリーナはピアノが上手なのにめったに人前で弾きません。
Katorīna wa piano ga jōzu na noni metta ni hitomae de hikimasen.
(Although Katorina is good at piano, she seldom plays in front of people.)

(d) 祖父は 90 歳なのにまだ働いています。
Sofu wa kyūjus-sai na noni mada hataraite imasu.
(My grandfather is ninety years old, but he's still working. (lit., In spite of the fact that my grandfather is ninety years old, he's still working.))

Notes

1. "S_1 *noni* S_2" is used when S_2 happened or is the case contrary to what is naturally expected from S_1 (or in some situations, contrary to what the speaker expects from S_1). For this reason, *noni* sentences imply the speaker's emotion, such as surprise, disappointment, frustration and discontent.

2. S_2 in "S_1 *noni* S_2" must represent a fact. Thus, this construction cannot be used when S_2 represents a future action, a future event, an uncertain state, or such, as in (1a)–(1h).

(1) a. ×時間があまりない**のに**今週中にそのレポートを｛出しなさい / 出してください / 出してくれませんか｝。[Command/Request]
×*Jikan ga amari nai* ***noni*** *konshū-chū ni sono repōto o｛dashinasai / dashite kudasai / dashite kuremasen ka｝.*
(*Intended meaning*: Although there is not much time,｛turn in / please turn in / could you turn in｝ that report by the end of this week.)

b. ×寒い**のに**公園を｛散歩しましょう / 散歩しませんか｝。[Invitation]
×*Samui* ***noni*** *kōen o｛sanpo-shimashō / sanpo-shimasen ka｝.*
(*Intended meaning*: Although it's cold,｛let's take a walk in the park. / would you like to take a walk in the park?｝)

c. ×いい仕事があるか分からない**のに**日本で仕事を探したらどうですか。[Suggestion/Advice]
×*Ii shigoto ga aru ka wakaranai* ***noni*** *Nihon de shigoto o sagashitara dō desu ka.*
(*Intended meaning*: Although I'm not certain that there is a good job (for you) in Japan, why don't you look for a job there?)

d. ×断られるかもしれない**のに**理香子をデートに｛誘うつもりです / 誘おうと思います｝。[Intention]
×*Kotowarareru kamoshirenai* ***noni*** *Rikako o dēto ni｛sasou tsumori desu / sasoō to omoimasu｝.*
(*Intended meaning*: Although I might be turned down,｛I'm going to ask Rikako / I'm thinking of asking Rikako｝ to go out on a date.)

e. ×天気が悪い**のに**パレードはたぶんあります。[Future event]
×*Tenki ga warui* ***noni*** *parēdo wa tabun arimasu.*
(*Intended meaning*: Although the weather is bad, the parade will probably be held.)

f. ×このレストランは高い**のに**おいしくない｛でしょう / と思います｝。[Uncertain state]
×*Kono resutoran wa takai* ***noni*** *oishikunai｛deshō / to omoimasu｝.*
(*Intended meaning*: Although this restaurant is expensive,｛it is probably not good / I don't think it is good｝.)

g. ×お金がない**のに**家が欲しいです。[Desire]
×*O-kane ga nai* ***noni*** *ie ga hoshiidesu.*
(*Intended meaning*: Although I don't have any money, I want a house.)

h. ×時間がない**のに**ヨーロッパ旅行をしたいです。[Desire]
×*Jikan ga nai* ***noni*** *Yōroppa-ryokō o shi-taidesu.*
(*Intended meaning*: Although I don't have time, I want to travel in Europe.)

Note, however, that in (1g) and (1h), if the subject is a third person, the sentences are grammatical, as in (2). This is because from the speaker's point of view, that the speaker's younger sister wants a house ((2a)) and that she wants to travel in Europe ((2b)) are both facts. (⇒ ~ ***garu***; ***hoshii***[1]; ~ ***tai***)

(2) a. 妹はお金がない**のに**家を欲しがっています。
*Imōto wa o-kane ga nai **noni** ie o hoshi-gatte imasu.*
(My younger sister wants a house even though she doesn't have any money.)

b. 妹は時間がない**のに**ヨーロッパ旅行をしたがっています。
*Imōto wa jikan ga nai **noni** Yōroppa-ryokō o shi-ta-gatte imasu.*
(My younger sister wants to travel in Europe even though she doesn't have time.)

3. In "S_1 *noni* S_2," S_1 cannot express a conjecture based on no direct observation or reliable information, as in (3).

(3) a. ×妹はお金がない**だろうのに**家を欲しがっています。(cf. (2a))
× *Imōto wa o-kane ga nai **darō noni** ie o hoshi-gatte imasu.*
(*Intended meaning*: My younger sister wants a house even though she probably doesn't have any money.)

b. ×妹は**たぶん**時間がない**のに**ヨーロッパ旅行をしたがっています。
(cf. (2b))
× *Imōto wa **tabun** jikan ga nai **noni** Yōroppa-ryokō o shi-ta-gatte imasu.*
(*Intended meaning*: My younger sister wants to travel in Europe even though she probably doesn't have time.)

However, if S_1 expresses a conjecture based on the speaker's direct observation or reliable information, *noni* can be used, as in (4).

(4) a. この料理は**おいしそうなのに**だれも食べない。
*Kono ryōri wa **oishi-sō na noni** dare mo tabenai.*
(No one eats this dish even though it looks tasty.)

b. 彼女は日本語が**話せるようなのに**英語しか使わない。
*Kanojo wa nihongo ga **hanaseru yō na noni** eigo shika tsukawanai.*
(Although she seems to be able to speak Japanese, she only speaks English.)

4. In casual conversation, the main clause is sometimes omitted, as in (5). The speaker's emotions, such as surprise, disappointment, frustration, discontent, anger, etc., are conveyed more clearly in such incomplete forms.

(5) A: ごめん。急に仕事が入って今晩映画に行けないんだ。
Gomen. Kyū ni shigoto ga haitte konban eiga ni ikenai n da.
(Sorry. I've got a job to do unexpectedly and can't make it for the movie tonight.)

B: えーっ！楽しみにしていたのに。
Ēh! Tanoshimi ni shite ita ***noni.***
(Oh, no! I was so looking forward to it, you know?)

【Related Expression】

Keredo and its variations (e.g., *kedo*, *keredomo*) are basically contrastive expressions, but can also be used in situations similar to those in which *noni* is used, as in [1].

[1] a. 中学と高校と大学で８年間も英語を勉強した{**けれど / のに**}まだ英語が話せません。(cf. Ex.(a))
Chūgaku to kōkō to daigaku de hachi-nenkan mo eigo o benkyō-shita{ ***keredo / noni****} mada eigo ga hanasemasen.*
(Although I studied English for as many as eight years in junior high, senior high and college, I still cannot speak it.)

b. 寒かった{**けれど / のに**}弟はコートを着ないで出かけていった。
(cf. Ex.(b))
Samukatta{ ***keredo / noni****} otōto wa kōto o kinaide dekakete-itta.*
(Although it was cold, my younger brother went out without wearing a coat.)

c. カトリーナはピアノが上手{だ**けれど / なのに**}めったに人前で弾きません。(cf. Ex.(c))
Katorīna wa piano ga jōzu{ da ***keredo*** */ na* ***noni****} metta ni hitomae de hikimasen.*
(Although Katorina is good at piano, she seldom plays in front of people.)

The difference in meaning between the *keredo* sentences and the *noni* sentences above is that while the *noni* sentences convey the speaker's emotion, such as surprise, disappointment, frustration and discontent, the *keredo* sentences are neutral with no such emotional overtone.

Another difference between *keredo* and *noni* is that *keredo* can be used when S_2 represents a non-factual action, event or state (e.g., a future action or event or an uncertain state), as in [2a]–[2h], while *noni* cannot be used in such situations. (See Note 2.)

[2] a. 時間があまりない{**けれど** / ×**のに**}、今週中にそのレポートを{出しなさい / 出してください / 出してくれませんか}。(= (1a) in Note 2)
Jikan ga amari nai{***keredo*** / ×***noni***}*, konshū-chū ni sono repōto o* {*dashi-nasai / dashite kudasai / dashite kuremasen ka*}*.*
(Although there is not much time, {turn in / please turn in / could you turn in} that report by the end of this week.)

b. 寒い{**けれど** / ×**のに**}公園を{散歩しましょう / 散歩しませんか}。
(= (1b) in Note 2)
Samui{***keredo*** / ×***noni***}*kōen o*{*sanpo-shimashō / sanpo-shimasen ka*}*.*
(Although it's cold, {let's take a walk in the park. / would you like to take a walk in the partk?})

c. いい仕事があるか分からない{**けれど** / ×**のに**}、日本で仕事を探したらどうですか。(= (1c) in Note 2)
Ii shigoto ga aru ka wakaranai{***keredo*** / ×***noni***}*, Nihon de shigoto o sagashitara dō desu ka.*
(Although I'm not certain that there is a good job (for you) in Japan, why don't you look for a job there?)

d. 断られるかもしれない{**けれど** / ×**のに**}、理香子をデートに{誘うつもりです / 誘おうと思います}。(= (1d) in Note 2)
Kotowarareru kamoshirenai {***keredo*** / ×***noni***}*, Rikako o dēto ni* {*sasou tsumori desu / sasoō to omoimasu*}*.*
(Although I might be turned down, {I'm going to ask Rikako / I'm thinking of asking Rikako} to go out on a date.)

e. 天気が悪い{**けれど** / ×**のに**}パレードはたぶんあります。
(= (1e) in Note 2)
Tenki ga warui{***keredo*** / ×***noni***} *parēdo wa tabun arimasu.*
(Although the weather is bad, the parade will probably be held.)

f. このレストランは高い{**けれど** / ×**のに**}おいしくない{でしょう / と思います}。(= (1f) in Note 2)
Kono resutoran wa takai{***keredo*** / ×***noni***} *oishikunai* {*deshō / to omoimasu*}*.*
(Although this restaurant is expensive, {it is probably not good / I don't think it is good}.)

g. お金がない{**けれど** / ×**のに**}家が欲しいです。(= (1g) in Note 2)
O-kane ga nai{***keredo*** / ×***noni***} *ie ga hoshiidesu.*
(Although I don't have any money, I want a house.)

h. 時間がない{**けれど / ×のに**}ヨーロッパ旅行をしたいです。

(= (1h) in Note 2)

*Jikan ga nai{**keredo** / × **noni**} Yōroppa-ryokō o shi-taidesu.*
(Although I don't have time, I want to travel in Europe.)

In addition, *keredo* can also be used when S_1 and S_2 simply represent contrastive information, as in [3], whereas *noni* cannot be used in such situations.

[3] a. 弟はロックは聞く{**けれど / ??のに**}、クラシックは聞かない。
*Otōto wa rokku wa kiku{**keredo** / ??**noni**}, kurashikku wa kikanai.*
(My younger brother listens to rock, but doesn't listen to classical music.)

b. フレッドは背が高い{**けれど / ??のに**}、ジョージは背が低い。
*Fureddo wa se ga takai{**keredo** / ??**noni**}, Jōji wa se ga hikui.*
(Fred is tall, but George is short.)

Noni is unnatural in [3b] if it is said when Fred and George are biologically unrelated. However, if Fred and George are biological brothers and the speaker is surprised that George is short unlike his brother, *noni* is natural. (⇒ ***keredomo***)

N

～ no ni ～のに *phr.*

in the process or for the purpose of doing what is expressed in the clause before *no*

to do s.t.; for (the purpose of); in (the process of)
【REL. *ni*[5]; *tame ni*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
			Vplain・non-past		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	日本語の新聞を *nihongo no shinbun o*	**読む** ***yomu***	のに *no ni*	オンライン辞書を使う / 使います。 *onrain-jisho o tsukau / tsukaimasu.*
(I use an online dictionary to read Japanese newspapers.)					

Formation

Vplain·non-past のに
no ni

話すのに (to talk; in talking)
hanasu no ni

食べるのに (to eat; in eating)
taberu no ni

Examples

(a) 会社に行くのにバスと電車を使っている。
Kaisha ni iku no ni basu to densha o tsukatte iru.
(I am using the bus and the train to get to work (lit., my company).)

(b) すきやきを作るのに何がいりますか。
Sukiyaki o tsukuru no ni nani ga irimasu ka.
(What do you need to make sukiyaki?)

(c) このレポートを書くのに１か月かかりました。
Kono repōto o kaku no ni ik-kagetsu kakarimashita.
(It took me a month to write this paper.)

(d) このアプリは単語を覚えるのに便利だ。
Kono apuri wa tango o oboeru no ni benri da.
(This app is useful for memorizing words.)

(e) このワークブックは日本語の文法を復習するのに役に立つ。
Kono wākubukku wa nihongo no bunpō o fukushū-suru no ni yaku ni tatsu.
(This workbook is useful for reviewing Japanese grammar.)

Notes

1. *No ni* is a phrase consisting of the nominalizer *no* (= *no*[3]) and the particle *ni*. In the "Vplain·non-past *no ni*" construction, only volitional verbs can occur before *no*. Thus, non-volitional verbs such as *dekiru* "can do," *wakaru* "understand" and *mieru* "can see" cannot be used in this construction.

2. The "Vplain·non-past *no ni*" construction is usually used to express the idea that something is used to perform an action (KS and Ex.(a)), that something is necessary to perform an action (Exs.(b) and (c)), or that something is useful for/in performing an action (Exs.(d) and (e)).

3. *No ni* in some sentences carries the meaning of "in the process of" as well. When this meaning is dominant, *no ni* can be paraphrased using *toki*, as in (1). (⇒ ***toki***)

(1) a. このアプリは単語を覚える｛**のに / 時、**｝便利だ。(cf. Ex.(d))
Kono apuri wa tango o oboeru ｛***no ni* / *toki,***｝ *benri da.*
(This app is useful ｛for memorizing / when you memorize｝ words.)

b. このワークブックは日本語の文法を復習する｛**のに / 時、**｝役に立つ。(cf. Ex.(e))
Kono wākubukku wa nihongo no bunpō o fukushū-suru ｛***no ni* / *toki,***｝ *yaku ni tatsu.*
(This workbook is useful ｛for reviewing / when you review｝ Japanese grammar.)

4. When the *no ni* clause is presented as the topic (i.e., S *no ni wa*), *no* is often deleted in conversation, as in (2).

(2) すきやきを作る(**の**)**には**何がいりますか。(cf. Ex.(b))
*Sukiyaki o tsukuru (**no**) **ni wa** nani ga irimasu ka.*
(What do you need to make sukiyaki?)

【Related Expressions】

I. Vplain·non-past *tame ni* can also be used to express purpose. Thus, Exs.(a)–(c) can be paraphrased using *tame ni*, as in [1]. (⇒ ***tame ni***[1])

[1] a. 会社に行く｛**のに / ために**｝バスと電車を使っている。(cf. Ex.(a))
Kaisha ni iku ｛***no ni* / *tame ni***｝ *basu to densha o tsukatte iru.*
(I am using the bus and the train to get to work.)

b. すきやきを作る｛**のに / ために**｝何がいりますか。(cf. Ex.(b))
Sukiyaki o tsukuru ｛***no ni* / *tame ni***｝ *nani ga irimasu ka.*
(What do you need to make sukiyaki?)

c. このレポートを書く｛**のに / ために**｝１か月かかりました。(cf. Ex.(c))
Kono repōto o kaku ｛***no ni* / *tame ni***｝ *ik-kagetsu kakarimashita.*
(It took me a month to write this paper.)

However, *tame ni* does not carry the meaning of "in the process of." Thus, Exs.(d) and (e) are unnatural with *tame ni*, as in [2]. (See Note 3.)

[2] a. このアプリは単語を覚える｛**のに / ??ために**｝便利だ。(= Ex.(d))
Kono apuri wa tango o oboeru ｛***no ni* / ??*tame ni***｝ *benri da.*
(This app is useful for memorizing words.)

b. このワークブックは日本語の文法を復習する｛**のに / ??ために**｝役に立つ。(= Ex.(e))
Kono wākubukku wa nihongo no bunpō o fukushū-suru ｛***no ni* / ??*tame ni***｝ *yaku ni tatsu.*
(This workbook is useful for reviewing Japanese grammar.)

In [3], on the other hand, *tame ni* is natural but *no ni* is not. This is because Vplain·non-past *no ni* is used to express the idea that something is used to perform an action, that something is necessary to perform an action, that something is useful for performing an action, and so on. However, the sentences in [3] do not express such ideas. (See Note 2.)

[3] a. ルイスの住所を聞く｛**ために** / ×**のに**｝コナーにメールした。
*Ruisu no jūsho o kiku｛**tame ni** / × **no ni**｝Konā ni mēru-shita.*
(I emailed Connor to get Lewis's address.)

b. 体を強くする｛**ために** / ??**のに**｝毎日プールで泳いでいる。
*Karada o tsuyoku suru｛**tame ni** / ??**noni**｝mai-nichi pūru de oyoide iru.*
(I swim in the pool every day to strengthen my body.)

II. V*masu ni* can also be used to express purpose, as in [4]. (⇒ ***ni*** [5])

[4] 映画を見に銀座へ行った。
*Eiga o mi **ni** Ginza e itta.*
(I went to Ginza to see a movie.)

However, V*masu ni* can be used only when the main verb is a motion verb. Thus, for example, Ex.(a) cannot be paraphrased using V*masu ni* because the main verb *tsukau* "use" is not a motion verb.

[5] 会社に｛行くのに / ×行きに｝バスと電車を使っている。(= Ex.(a))
*Kaisha ni｛iku **no ni** / × iki **ni**｝basu to densha o tsukatte iru.*
(I am using the bus and the train to get to work.)

N

On the other hand, when the main verb is a motion verb, *no ni* is unnatural for expressing purpose, as in [6].

[6] a. 図書館へ本を｛返しに / ×返すのに｝行った。
*Toshokan e hon o｛kaeshi **ni** / × kaesu **no ni**｝itta.*
(I went to the library to return books.)

b. 昼ご飯を｛食べに / ×食べるのに｝家に帰った。
*Hiru-gohan o｛tabe **ni** / × taberu **no ni**｝ie ni kaetta.*
(I went home to have lunch.)

～ no wa ～ da　～のは ～だ　*str.*

a structure that indicates that what is said before *no wa* is known and what is said between *no wa* and *da* is the new information the speaker wants to convey most

It is ~ that ~; The one who ~ is ~; The place where ~ is ~; The reason why ~ is ~; The time when ~ is ~; What ~ is ~
【REL. *no*[3]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Known Information			New Information	
	Vplain			
私がオーストラリアに *Watashi ga Ōsutoraria ni*	行った ***itta***	のは *no wa*	３年前 *san-nen mae*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(It was three years ago that I went to Australia. / The time when I went to Australia was three years ago.)				

(B)

N

Known Information			New Information	
	Adj(*i*)plain			
このクラスで一番頭が *Kono kurasu de ichiban atama ga*	いい ***ii***	のは *no wa*	松村さん *Matsumura-san*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(It is Matsumura-san who is the brightest in this class. / The brightest one in this class is Matsumura-san.)				

(C)

Known Information				New Information	
	Adj(*na*)				
私たちの中で歌が一番 *Watashi-tachi no naka de uta ga ichiban*	上手 ***jōzu***	な *na*	のは *no wa*	千佳 *Chika*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(It is Chika who is the best at singing among us. / The one who is the best at singing among us is Chika.)					

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } のは～だ
no wa ~ *da*

{ 話す / 話した } のは～だ (It is ~ who talks/talked.)
{ *hanasu* / *hanashita* } *no wa* ~ *da*

{ 高い / 高かった } のは～だ (It is ~ that is/was expensive.)
{ *takai* / *takakatta* } *no wa* ~ *da*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { な / だった } のは～だ
{ *na* / *datta* } *no wa* ~ *da*

静か { な / だった } のは～だ (It is ~ that is/was quiet.)
shizuka { *na* / *datta* } *no wa* ~ *da*

先生 { な / だった } のは～だ (It is ~ who is/was a teacher.)
sensei { *na* / *datta* } *no wa* ~ *da*

Examples

(a) 吉野さん、あなたがシカゴに行ったのはいつですか。
Yoshino-san, anata ga Shikago ni itta no wa itsu desu ka.
(Yoshino-san, when was it that you went to Chicago?)

(b) 今付き合っているのは会社の同僚です。
Ima tsukiatte iru no wa kaisha no dōryō desu.
(It is a colleague at my company whom I'm going out with now.)

(c) モーツァルトが大好きになったのは大学１年の時だ。
Mōtsuaruto ga dai-suki ni natta no wa daigaku ichi-nen no toki da.
(It was during my freshman year that I became very fond of Mozart.)

(d) 日本でおもしろいのは食べ物の文化だ。
Nihon de omoshiroi no wa tabemono no bunka da.
(What I find interesting in Japan is food culture.)

(e) 母が好きなのはイタリア料理です。
Haha ga suki na no wa Itaria-ryōri desu.
(It is Italian cuisine that my mother likes.)

(f) 私の学生だったのはチェンさんです。
Watashi no gakusei datta no wa Chen-san desu.
(It was Chen-san who was my student.)

Notes

1. The "~ *no wa* ~ *da*" construction is used to highlight a certain element in a sentence. For example, if John is highlighted in (1), (2a) is obtained, and if Jane is highlighted in (1), (2b) is obtained, and so on.

(1) ジョンが８月に東京でジェーンに会った。
Jon ga hachi-gatsu ni Tōkyō de Jēn ni atta.
(John met Jane in August in Tokyo.)

(2) a. ８月に東京でジェーンに会ったのはジョンだ。
*Hachi-gatsu ni Tōkyō de Jēn ni atta no wa **Jon** da.*
(It was John who met Jane in August in Tokyo.)

b. ジョンが８月に東京で会ったのはジェーンだ。
*Jon ga hachi-gatsu ni Tōkyō de atta no wa **Jēn** da.*
(It was Jane whom John met in August in Tokyo.)

c. ジョンが東京でジェーンに会ったのは**８月**だ。
*Jon ga Tōkyō de Jēn ni atta no wa **hachi-gatsu** da.*
(It was in August that John met Jane in Tokyo.)

d. ジョンが８月にジェーンに会ったのは**東京**(**で**)だ。
*Jon ga hachi-gatsu ni Jēn ni atta no wa **Tōkyō** (**de**) da.*
(It was in Tokyo that John met Jane in August.)

Here, *no* is an indefinite pronoun (*no*[2]) that replaces *hito* "person," *toki* "time," and *tokoro* "place." Note that the subject in the clause before *no wa* is marked by *ga* because this clause is a subordinate clause. (⇒ ***ga***[1]: Note 6)

N

2. The particles *ga* and *o* do not occur after the noun between *no wa* and *da*, as in (3a) and (3b).

(3) a. 昨日うちに来たのは藤村さん{ø / ×**が**}だ。
*Kinō uchi ni kita no wa Fujimura-san {ø / × **ga**} da.*
(It was Fujimura-san who came to my house yesterday.)

b. 藤村さんが持ってきたのはケーキ{ø / ×**を**}だ。
*Fujimura-san ga motte-kita no wa kēki {ø / × **o**} da.*
(It was cake that Fujimura-san brought (here).)

If the particle after the noun between *no wa* and *da* is recoverable from the context, it is optional, as in (4a)–(4c).

(4) a. 藤村さんがチョコレートをくれたのは娘(**に**)だ。
*Fujimura-san ga chokorēto o kureta no wa musume (**ni**) da.*
(It was to my daughter whom Fujimura-san gave chocolate.)

b. 藤村さんが出発したのは東京(**から**)だ。
*Fujimura-san ga shuppatsu-shita no wa Tōkyō (**kara**) da.*
(It was from Tokyo that Fujimura-san departed.)

c. 藤村さんが一緒に飲んだのは田山さん(**と**)だ。
*Fujimura-san ga issho ni nonda no wa Tayama-san (**to**) da.*
(It was with Tayama-san that Fujimura-san drank together.)

If the particle after the noun between *no wa* and *da* is not recoverable from the context, it must be present, as in (5a)–(5c).

(5) a. 藤村さんがうちに来たのは車｛で / ×ø｝だ。
Fujimura-san ga uchi ni kita no wa kuruma ｛***de*** / ×ø｝ *da.*
(It was by his car that Fujimura-san came to my house.)

b. 藤村さんが飲んだのは田山さん｛と / ×ø｝だ。
Fujimura-san ga nonda no wa Tayama-san ｛***to*** / ×ø｝ *da.*
(It was with Tayama-san that Fujimura-san drank.)

c. 藤村さんが来たのは東京｛から / ??ø｝だ。
Fujimura-san ga kita no wa Tōkyō ｛***kara*** / ??ø｝ *da.*
(It was from Tokyo that Fujimura-san came.)

3. Adverbs usually do not occur between *no wa* and *da*. The following sentences are all unacceptable.

(6) a. ×ゆかりが歩いたのはゆっくりだ。
× *Yukari ga aruita no wa* ***yukkuri*** *da.*
(lit., It was slowly that Yukari walked.)

b. ×太郎が字を書いたのはきれいにだ。
× *Tarō ga ji o kaita no wa* ***kirei ni*** *da.*
(lit., It was beautifully that Taro wrote characters.)

c. ×明が授業に遅刻するのはよくだ。
× *Akira ga jugyō ni chikoku-suru no wa* ***yoku*** *da.*
(lit., It is often that Akira comes late for class.)

4. While in English, the tense of *is* after *it* changes to *was* when the predicate of the "that" clause is in the past tense, in Japanese, *da* in the "~ *no wa* ~ *da*" construction is normally in the present tense when the *no* clause is in the past tense, as in KS(A), Exs.(a), (c) and (f). (7) provides an additional example.

(7) 昨日買ったのはタブレット｛です / ??でした｝。
Kinō katta no wa taburetto ｛***desu*** / ??***deshita***｝.
(It was a tablet that I bought yesterday.)

5. Normally the *no* clause takes *wa*, marking the entire clause as presupposed (i.e., old, and therefore, less important) information, and the element between *no wa* and *da* represents a new, important piece of information. However, in some situations, the *no* clause takes *ga*, as in (8).

(8) 寺田さんが作っているのが魚ロボットです。
Terada-san ga tsukutte iru no ***ga*** *sakana-robotto desu.*
(What *Terada-san* is making is a fish robot.)

(8) implies that what Terada-san is making (not what other people are making) is a fish robot. In this case, the sentence that underlies (8) is (9), in which *Terada-san* is marked by *ga*. (8) was derived from (9) by placing *sakana robotto* between *no ga* and *da*.

(9) 寺田さんが魚ロボットを作っています。
Terada-san ***ga*** *sakana-robotto o tsukutte imasu.*
(*Terada-san* is making a fish robot.)

Because in (9) *Terada-san ga* is under focus and carries a new, important piece of information, *Terada-san ga tsukutte iru no* in (8) is also marked by *ga* rather than *wa*. (⇒ ***ga***[1]: Note 4)

[Related Expression]

No in the "~ *no wa* ~ *da*" construction should not be confused with the nominalizer *no*. For example, [1] is a sentence of the "~ *no wa* ~ *da*" construction and [2] is a sentence with the nominalizer *no*. (⇒ ***no***[3])

[1] 本を読むのはたいてい夜だ。
Hon o yomu ***no*** *wa taitei yoru da.*
(It is usually at night that I read books. / The time when I read books is usually at night.)

N

[2] 本を読むのはいいことだ。
Hon o yomu ***no*** *wa ii koto da.*
(Reading books is a good thing.)

One way to differentiate between the two constructions is to see if the sentence can be restated by deleting *no wa* and *da* and placing the element between *no wa* and *da* in an appropriate position. If the original sentence is that of the "~ *no wa* ~ *da*" construction, this rephrasing is possible, as seen in [3]. If the original sentence is that of the nominalizer construction, the rephrasing is not possible, as seen in [4].

[3] 本を読む~~のは~~［たいてい夜］~~だ~~。(= [1]) → ［たいてい夜］本を読む。
Hon o yomu ~~no wa~~ [taitei yoru] ~~da~~. *[Taitei yoru] hon o yomu.*
(I read books usually at night.)

[4] 本を読む~~のは~~［いいこと］~~だ~~。(= [2]) →
a. ×［いいこと］本を読む。
× *[Ii koto] hon o yomu.*
b. ×本を［いいこと］読む。
× *Hon o [ii koto] yomu.*
c. ×本を読む［いいこと］。
× *Hon o yomu [ii koto].*

o[1] を[1] *prt.*

a particle that marks a direct object

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			Direct Object		Transitive Verb
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	今 *ima*	日本語 ***nihongo***	を *o*	勉強している / います。 *benkyō-shite iru / imasu.*
(I'm studying Japanese now.)					

Examples

(a) 安川さんは昨日車を買った。
Yasukawa-san wa kinō kuruma o katta.
(Yasukawa-san bought a car yesterday.)

(b) A: 週末、ピエールさんと何をしましたか。
Shūmatsu, Piēru-san to nani o shimashita ka.
(What did you do with Pierre-san last weekend?)

B: 映画を見ました。その後、ピザを食べてビールを飲みました。
Eiga o mimashita. Sono ato, piza o tabete bīru o nomimashita.
(We watched a movie. After that, we had pizza and drank beer.)

Notes

1. *O* marks the direct object. It is noted, however, that the direct object in English is not always marked by *o* in Japanese. Compare Japanese and English in the following sentences, for example.

   (1) a. 私は英語**が**分かる。 (⇒ ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***; ***wakaru***)
   *Watashi wa eigo **ga** wakaru.*
   (I understand English.)

   b. ブレイクはエリン**に**電話した。
   *Bureiku wa Erin **ni** denwa-shita.*
   (Blake called Erin.)

   c. 僕は昨日加山さん{**に / と**}会った。
   *Boku wa kinō Kayama-san {**ni / to**} atta.*
   (I met Kayama-san yesterday.)

2. In some constructions, the direct object marker *o* can be replaced by the subject marker *ga*.

(2) a. ミルクを飲む → ミルク{を / が}飲みたい (⇒ ~ ***tai***)
miruku ***o*** *nomu* *miruku* {***o*** / ***ga***} *nomi-**tai***
(drink milk) (I want to drink milk.)

b. 日本語を話す → 日本語{を / が}話せる (⇒ ~***rareru***^{2})
nihongo ***o*** *hanasu* *nihongo* {***o*** / ***ga***} *hana**seru***
(speak Japanese) (S.o. can speak Japanese.)

c. 窓を開ける → 窓{を / が}開けてある (⇒ ***aru***^{2})
mado ***o*** *akeru* *mado* {***o*** / ***ga***} *akete **aru***
(open the window) (The window has been opened.)

3. *O* cannot occur more than once in a clause, whether it is the direct object marker (= o^1) or the space marker (= o^2). Thus, in the causative construction, for example, the causee can be marked only by *ni* if another element in the same clause is marked by *o*. (⇒ ~***saseru***)

(3) a. 父は弟{に / ×を}ゲームをやめさせた。
Chichi wa otōto {***ni*** / ×***o***} *gēmu* ***o*** *yamesaseta.*
(My father made my younger brother stop playing games.)

b. コーチは私たち{に / ×を}急な坂をのぼらせた。
Kōchi wa watashi-tachi {***ni*** / ×***o***} *kyū na saka* ***o*** *noboraseta.*
(Our (cycling) coach made us go up a steep slope.)

4. If the direct object is presented as a topic or a contrastive element, *o* is replaced by *wa*. (⇒ ***wa***)

(4) a. その本はもう読みました。
Sono hon ***wa*** *mō yomimashita.*
(I already read that book.)

b. アニーは肉は食べませんが魚は食べます。
Anī wa niku ***wa*** *tabemasen ga sakana* ***wa*** *tabemasu.*
(Annie does not eat meat but does eat fish.)

0

o^2 を^2 *prt.*

a particle that indicates a space in/on/across/through/along/over which s.o./s.t. moves

in; on; across; through; along; over
【REL. *de*^{1}】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Noun (space)		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	**五番街** ***Goban-gai***	を *o*	歩いた / 歩きました。 *aruita / arukimashita.*
(I walked along Fifth Avenue.)				

Examples

(a) 公園を通って帰りましょう。
Kōen o tōtte kaerimashō.
(Let's go home through the park (lit., passing through the park).)

(b) ツルが湖の上を飛んでいます。
Tsuru ga mizuumi no ue o tonde imasu.
(Cranes are flying over the lake.)

(c) 日本では車は道の左側を走る。
Nihon de wa kuruma wa michi no hidarigawa o hashiru.
(In Japan they drive (lit., cars run) on the left side of the street.)

(d) そこの交差点を右に曲がってください。
Soko no kōsaten o migi ni magatte kudasai.
(Please turn to the right at the intersection there.)

Notes

1. O^2 is used with verbs that indicate the movement of someone or something. As seen in KS and Exs.(a)–(d), these verbs are continual verbs (i.e., verbs that indicate an action with some duration). The other common verbs that are used with o^2 include the following.

0

(1) a. (公園**を**)散歩する (take a walk (in a park))
*(kōen **o**) sanpo-suru*

b. ({交差点 / 橋}**を**)渡る (cross (over an intersection / a bridge))
*({kōsaten / hashi} **o**) wataru*

c. ({坂道 / 階段}**を**)のぼる (climb (a slope/stairs))
*{sakamichi / kaidan} **o**) noboru*

d. (ろうか**を**)走る (run (in a hall))
*(rōka **o**) hashiru*

e. (空**を**)飛ぶ (fly (in the sky))
*(sora **o**) tobu*

f. (ヨーロッパ**を**)旅行する (travel (in Europe))
*(Yōroppa **o**) ryokō-suru*

2. When a sentence involves the verb *noboru* "climb," there is an important difference between the use of the particle *o* and that of *ni*, as seen in the English translations in (2).

(2) a. ドンは東京タワーをのぼった。
*Don wa Tōkyō Tawā **o** nobotta.*
(Don scaled Tokyo Tower.)

b. ドンは東京タワーにのぼった。
*Don wa Tōkyō Tawā **ni** nobotta.*
(Don went up Tokyo Tower.)

【Related Expression】

The particle *de*¹ also marks the space in which an action takes place. The difference between *o*² and *de*¹ is that *o*² is used only with verbs that indicate a way of moving from one place to another, such as *aruku* "walk," *hashiru* "run," *tobu* "fly" and *ryokō-suru* "travel," while *de*¹ is commonly not used with this type of verb. (⇒ ***de***¹)

In most cases in which a location is indicated, either *de*¹ or *o*² can be used, but not both, as in [1] and [2].

[1] a. 私は図書館{で / ×を}勉強した。
*Watashi wa toshokan{**de** / ×**o**} benkyō-shita.*
(I studied at the library.)

0

b. 美里はコンビニ{で / ×を}アルバイトをしている。
*Misato wa konbini{**de** / ×**o**} arubaito o shite iru.*
(Misato works part-time at a convenience store.)

[2] a. 私は五番街{を / ×で}歩いた。(= KS)
*Watashi wa Goban-gai{**o** / ×**de**} aruita.*
(I walked along Fifth Avenue.)

b. 日本では車は道の左側{を / ×で}走る。(= Ex.(c))
*Nihon de wa kuruma wa michi no hidarigawa{**o** / ×**de**} hashiru.*
(In Japan they drive (lit., cars run) on the left side of the street.)

However, there are a handful of verbs that can take both *de*¹ and *o*², as in [3].

[3] a. そこの交差点{を / で}右に曲がってください。(cf. Ex.(d))
*Soko no kōsaten{**o** / **de**} migi ni magatte kudasai.*
(Please turn to the right at the intersection there.)

b. 私は新しい氷の上{を / で}滑った。
*Watashi wa atarashii kōri no ue{**o** / **de**} subetta.*
(I skated on the new ice.)

The difference between the *de* version and the *o* version is very subtle. For some speakers, the *de* version may sound like there are other possible places than those mentioned (i.e., other intersections where the listener can turn ([3a]) and other ice rinks where the speaker can skate ([3b])). The *de* version in [3b] can also mean "I slipped on the new ice and fell."

o[3] **を**[3] *prt.*

a particle that marks the location from which s.o./s.t. moves away	from; out of 【REL. *kara*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			Noun (place to leave)		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	毎朝７時半に *mai-asa shichi-ji-han ni*	うち *uchi*	を *o*	出る / 出ます。 *deru / demasu.*
(I leave home at 7:30 every morning.)					

0

Examples

(a) 電車がトンネルを出た。
Densha ga tonneru o deta.
(A train came out of the tunnel.)

(b) 私は駅前でタクシーを降りた。
Watashi wa ekimae de takushii o orita.
(I got off the taxi in front of the station.)

(c) 娘は日本を離れて外国で暮らしている。
Musume wa Nihon o hanarete gaikoku de kurashite iru.
(My daughter left Japan and is living abroad.)

(d) 周平は去年大学を卒業した。
Shūhei wa kyonen daigaku o sotsugyō-shita.
(Shuhei graduated from college last year.)

Notes

1. *O*[3] is used with verbs that indicate the movement of someone/something away from a place (in some cases, out of an enclosed space such as a room and a vehicle). The verbs that occur with *o*[3] are momentary verbs (i.e., verbs that indicate an action that completes in a moment).

2. In English, the corresponding verbs are used with a direct object (e.g., KS and Ex.(c)), or prepositional phrases, such as "out of X" (Ex.(a)), "off X" (Ex.(b)), and "from X" (Ex.(d)).

[Related Expression]

O[3] can be replaced by *kara*[1] "from" in some situations, as in [1]. (⇒ ***kara***[1])

[1] a. 電車がトンネル{**を / から**}出た。(cf. Ex.(a))
Densha ga tonneru {***o*** / ***kara***} *deta.*
(A train came out of the tunnel.)

b. 私は駅前でタクシー{**を / から**}降りた。(cf. Ex.(b))
Watashi wa ekimae de takushī {***o*** / ***kara***} *orita.*
(I got off the taxi in front of the station.)

c. 娘は日本{**を / から**}離れて外国で暮らしている。(cf. Ex.(c))
Musume wa Nihon {***o*** / ***kara***} *hanarete gaikoku de kurashite iru.*
(My daughter left Japan and is living abroad.)

0

Kara[1] can be used in lieu of *o*[3] when the initial place (= Place A) and the place to which the movement was made (= Place B) are implied or indicated. For example, in [1a], Place A is the space inside the tunnel and Place B is the space outside the tunnel. Similarly, in [1b], Place A is the space inside the taxi and Place B is the space outside the taxi. In [1c], Place A is Japan and Place B is the country where the speaker's daughter lives.

In [2], however, *kara*[1] cannot be used in place of *o*[3], because in these situations Place B is not implied.

[2] a. 私は毎朝７時半にうち{**を / ×から**}出る。(= KS)
Watashi wa mai-asa shichi-ji-han ni uchi {***o*** / × ***kara***} *deru.*
(I leave home at 7:30 every morning.)

b. 周平は去年大学{**を / ×から**}卒業した。(= Ex.(d))
Shūhei wa kyonen daigaku {***o*** / × ***kara***} *sotsugyō-shita.*
(Shuhei graduated from college last year.)

[3] provides another example to show the usage difference between *o*[3] and *kara*[1].

[3] a. 昨日は朝８時ごろ家{**を** / ×**から**}出た。
*Kinō wa asa hachi-ji-goro ie{**o** / ×**kara**} deta.*
(Yesterday I left my house at about eight in the morning.)

b. 昨日は家{**から** / ×**を**}外に出なかった。
*Kinō wa ie{**kara** / ×**o**} soto ni denakatta.*
(Yesterday I didn't go outside.)

In [3a], *o* is acceptable but *kara* is not because Place B is not implied here. In [3b], on the other hand, *kara* is acceptable but *o* is not because Place B (i.e., outside of the house) is indicated.

o[4] **を**[4] *prt.*

a particle that marks the cause of an emotion

◆ Key Sentences

0

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun		Verb (emotive)
和人 *Kazuto*	は *wa*	**父の死** ***chichi no shi***	を *o*	悲しんだ / 悲しみました。 *kanashinda / kanashimimashita.*
(Kazuto was saddened by his father's death.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Splain*	Nom		Verb (emotive)
和人 *Kazuto*	は *wa*	**父が死んだ** ***chichi ga shinda***	こと / の *koto / no*	を *o*	悲しんだ / 悲しみました。 *kanashinda /* *kanashimimashita.*
(Kazuto was sad that his father died.)					

*When the nominalizer *koto* follows, *da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *de aru*, respectively. When the nominalizer *no* follows, *da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na*.

Examples

(a) 両親は私の大学入学をとても喜んだ。
Ryōshin wa watashi no daigaku-nyūgaku o totemo yorokonda.
(My parents were very happy about my entrance into college.)

(b) パティーは京都での１年をなつかしんだ。
Patī wa Kyōto de no ichi-nen o natsukashinda.
(Patty missed her year in Kyoto.)

(c) 父は姉の結婚をあまり喜んでいません。
Chichi wa ane no kekkon o amari yorokonde imasen.
(My father is not very happy about my elder sister's marriage.)

(d) この国の人はまた無差別テロが起きるのを恐れています。
Kono kuni no hito wa mata musabetsu-tero ga okiru no o osorete imasu.
(People in this country are afraid that there will be further acts of indiscriminate terrorism.)

(e) お金がないことを恥じる必要はない。
O-kane ga nai koto o hajiru hitsuyō wa nai.
(You don't have to be ashamed of being poor (lit., ashamed that you don't have money).)

Notes

0

1. O^4 marks nouns that indicate an event, fact, experience, etc. that triggers someone's emotion. Thus, o^4 occurs with verbs that indicate emotions such as *kanashimu* "sadden," *yorokobu* "rejoice," *osoreru* "fear," *natsukashimu* "nostalgically recollect" and *hajiru* "be ashamed."

2. O^4 with an emotive verb sounds formal and is not commonly used in spoken language. The more informal expressions that correspond to some emotive verbs are as follows.

(1)

	X o^4 + emotive verb	More informal expression
a.	(父の死) を**悲しむ** *(chichi no shi) o* ***kanashimu*** (be saddened by (my father's death))	(父の死) が**悲しい** *(chichi no shi) ga* ***kanashii*** (be sad about (my father's death))
b.	(無差別テロが起きる{こと / の}) **を恐れる** *(musabetsu-tero ga okiru{koto / no})* ***o osoreru*** (be frightened by (the possibility of indiscriminate terrorism))	(無差別テロが起きるの) が **{恐ろしい / こわい}** *(musabetsu-tero ga okiru no) ga* ***{osoroshii / kowai}*** (be fearful that (acts of indiscriminate terrorism may occur))

c.	(京都での１年)を**なつかしむ** *(Kyōto de no ichi-nen) o* ***natsukashimu*** (miss (one's year in Kyoto))	(京都での１年)が**なつかしい** *(Kyōto de no ichi-nen) ga* ***natsukashii*** (miss (one's year in Kyoto))

3. Emotive verbs normally occur in the stative *te iru* form, as in Exs.(c) and (d), or in the past form, as in KSs, Exs.(a) and (b). In a generic statement, however, the verb can be in the non-stative, non-past form as in (2).

(2) だれでも親の死を**悲しむ**。
Dare demo oya no shi o ***kanashimu.***
(Everybody is saddened by their parents' death.)

4. If the emotive verb consists of the stem of an *i*-adjective and the suffix *mu*, as in *kanashi-mu* "sadden," *natsukashi-mu* "nostalgically recollect," *oshi-mu* "regret" and *tanoshi-mu* "enjoy," the suffix *-garu* "show signs of ~" can be used in place of *mu*, as in *kanashi-garu*, *natsukashi-garu*, *oshi-garu* and *tanoshi-garu*. (3) provides an example. (⇒ ~ ***garu***)

(3) 和人は父の死を**悲しがった**。(cf. KS(A))
Kazuto wa chichi no shi o ***kanashi-gatta.***
(Kazuto was saddened by his father's death. (lit., Kazuto showed signs of being sad about his father's death.))

It is noted that as the literal meaning indicates, the *-garu* version is used when the third person subject shows some signs of the emotion mentioned in the sentence.

0

o- お *pref.*

a prefix that expresses politeness 【REL. *go-*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

		V*masu*		
大島先生は英語で *Ōshima-sensei wa eigo de*	お *o-*	**話し** ***hanashi***	に *ni*	なった / なりました。 *natta / narimashita.*
(Prof. Oshima talked in English.)				

(B)

		Vmasu	
私は昨日山崎先生に *Watashi wa kinō Yamazaki-sensei ni*	お *o-*	会い ***ai***	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(I met Prof. Yamazaki yesterday.)			

(C)

		Adj(*i*)
上田先生はまだ *Ueda-sensei wa mada*	お *o-*	若い / 若いです。 ***wakai/wakaidesu.***
(Prof. Ueda is still young.)		

(D)

		Adj(*na*)	
杉森さんはゴルフが *Sugimori-san wa gorufu ga*	お *o-*	好き ***suki***	だ / です。 ***da/desu.***
(Sugimori-san likes golf.)			

(E)

	Noun	
お *O-*	飲み物 ***nomimono***	は何がよろしいですか。 *wa nani ga yoroshiidesu ka.*
(What would you like to drink? (lit., As for drinks, what would be good?))		

0

Formation

(i) お Vmasu になる (⇒ ***o ~ ni naru***)
o- *ni naru*

お書きになる (s.o. will write)
o-kaki ni naru

(ii) お Vmasu する (⇒ ***o ~ suru***)
o- *suru*

お貸しする (s.o. will lend)
o-kashi suru

(iii) お Adj(*i*)
o-

お忙しい (s.o. is busy)
o-isogashii

(iv) お Adj(*na*) だ
o- *da*

お上手だ (s.o. is good at ~)
o-jōzu da

(v) お N
o-

お食事 (meal)
o-shokuji

Examples

(a) お客様は４時にホテルにお着きになります。
O-kyaku-sama wa yo-ji ni hoteru ni o-tsuki ni narimasu.
(The guest will arrive at the hotel at four.)

(b) タクシーをお呼びしましょうか。
Takushī o o-yobi shimashō ka.
(Shall I call a taxi for you?)

(c) 池内先生は今とてもお忙しい。
Ikeuchi-sensei wa ima totemo o-isogashii.
(Prof. Ikeuchi is very busy now.)

(d) 木本先生はテニスがお上手です。
Kimoto-sensei wa tenisu ga o-jōzu desu.
(Prof. Kimoto is good at tennis.)

(e) 毎日お暑いですね。
Mai-nichi o-atsuidesu ne.
(It's hot day after day, isn't it?)

(f) 南田さんからお電話がありました。
Minamida-san kara o-denwa ga arimashita.
(There was a phone call from Minamida-san.)

(g) お昼ご飯はもう食べましたか。
O-hiru-gohan wa mō tabemashita ka.
(Have you had your lunch yet?)

Notes

1. The polite prefix *o-* is used with verbs, adjectives and nouns to express the speaker's respect, modesty or politeness.

2. When *o-* is prefixed to verbs, verbs are always the *masu*-stems, and *o*-V*masu* is used as part of honorific and humble polite expressions. That is, *o*-V*masu ni naru* (KS(A) and Ex.(a)) is an honorific polite expression and *o*-V*masu suru* (KS(B) and Ex.(b)) is a humble polite expression. (⇒ ***o ~ ni naru***; ***o ~ suru***)

3. *O*-Adj can be either an honorific polite expression, as in KSs(C), (D) and Exs.(c) and (d), or a courteous polite expression, as in Ex.(e).
(⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 6**. *Keigo*: Extra-polite Expressions)

4. *O*-Noun is used in various ways.

(1) 先生が**お**手紙をくださいました。[Honorific polite expression]
Sensei ga o-tegami o kudasaimashita.
(My teacher wrote me a letter.)

(2) 明日**お**電話をさしあげます。[Humble polite expression]
Myōnichi o-denwa o sashiagemasu.
(I'll call you tomorrow.)

(3) **お**野菜が高くなりましたねえ。[Simple polite expression]
O-yasai ga takaku narimashita nē.
(Vegetables have become expensive, haven't they?)

O

5. *O-* cannot be attached to the following words.

(4) Adjectives and nouns that begin with the [*o*] sound

× **お**おもしろい (interesting) × **お**おいしい (delicious) × **お**大きい (big)
× ***o-omoshiroi*** × ***o-oishii*** × ***o-ōkii***

× **お**おばあさん (grandmother) × **お**おじさん (uncle) × **お**おび (belt; sash)
× ***o-obāsan*** × ***o-oji-san*** × ***o-obi***

This rule does not apply to verbs, as seen in the following examples.

お起きになる (get up [honorific]) **お**泳ぎになる (swim [honorific])
o-oki ni naru ***o-oyogi ni naru***

お教えする (teach [humble]) **お**起こしする (wake up [humble])
o-oshie suru ***o-okoshi suru***

(5) Long words

× **お**じゃがいも (potato) × **お**ほうれん草 (spinach)
× ***o-jagaimo*** × ***o-hōrensō***

× **お**生魚 (uncooked fish)
× ***o-namazakana***

However, there are some exceptions to this rule, which include:

お台所 (kitchen)
o*-daidokoro*

お心づかい (thoughtfulness)
o*-kokorozukai*

お心当たり (s.o./s.t. in mind)
o*-kokoroatari*

(6) Foreign words

× おドア (door)
× ***o****-doa*

× おピアノ (piano)
× ***o****-piano*

× おバター (butter)
× ***o****-batā*

× おキー (key)
× ***o****-kī*

However, there are some exceptions to this rule, which include:

おたばこ (tobacco)
o*-tabako*

おトイレ (restroom)
o*-toire*

おビール (beer)
o*-bīru*

6. There are a few words that are always used with the polite prefix *o-* or *go-*. (For *go-*, see Related Expression.)

(7) おなか (stomach)
o*-naka*

ご飯 (cooked rice; meal)
go*-han*

【Related Expression】

There is another polite prefix, *go-*. Basically, *go-* is used for Chinese-origin words and *o-* for Japanese-origin words, as in [1] and [2].

[1] *Na*-adjectives (*I*-adjectives are all Japanese-origin words; therefore, they are all preceded by *o-*.)

a. Chinese-origin words

ご親切 (kind)
go*-shinsetsu*

ご丁寧 (polite)
go*-teinei*

ご不便 (inconvenient)
go*-fuben*

ご無事 (safe)
go*-buji*

ご立派 (admirable)
go*-rippa*

ご熱心 (enthusiastic)
go*-nesshin*

b. Japanese-origin words

お静か (quiet)
o*-shizuka*

おしあわせ (happy)
o*-shiawase*

お好き (fond)
o*-suki*

お嫌い (unfond)
o*-kirai*

お暇 (free)
o*-hima*

お気の毒 (sorry)
o*-kinodoku*

[2] Nouns

a. Chinese-origin words

ご研究 (research)
go*-kenkyū*

ご結婚 (marriage)
go*-kekkon*

ご本 (book)
go*-hon*

b. Japanese-origin words

お肉 (meat)	お魚 (fish)	おはし (chopsticks)
***o**-niku*	***o**-sakana*	***o**-hashi*

There are, however, some Chinese-origin words that require *o-*. These exceptions are words that have become assimilated to the point that native speakers no longer consider them to be "borrowed" words. The words in [3] are examples of such exceptions.

[3] a. *Na*-adjectives

お上手 (skillful)	お元気 (healthy)	おきれい (pretty)
***o**-jōzu*	***o**-genki*	***o**-kirei*
お得意 (good (at something))		
***o**-tokui*		

b. Nouns

お電話 (telephone)	お料理 (cuisine)	お時間 (time)
***o**-denwa*	***o**-ryōri*	***o**-jikan*
お勉強 (study)	お菓子 (confectionery)	
***o**-benkyō*	***o**-kashi*	

There are very few examples of Japanese-origin words that require *go-*, as in [4].

[4] ごゆっくり (slowly; taking time) ***go**-yukkuri*
ごもっとも (reasonable) ***go**-mottomo*

0

ōi 多い *adj. (i)*

(of quantity or number) a lot

There are many ~; There are/is a lot of ~; There is much ~
【REL. *ōzei*; *takusan*】
(ANT. *sukunai*)

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (location)		Subject		
東京 (に) *Tōkyō (ni)*	は *wa*	**大学** ***daigaku***	が *ga*	多い / 多いです。 *ōi / ōidesu.*
(There are a lot of universities in Tokyo. (lit., In Tokyo universities are many.))				

Examples

(a) 京都(に)はお寺が多いです。
Kyōto (ni) wa o-tera ga ōidesu.
(There are many temples in Kyoto.)

(b) ロスさんの作文(に)は間違いが多いです。
Rosu-san no sakubun (ni) wa machigai ga ōidesu.
(There are many mistakes in Ross-san's compositions.)

(c) １月(に)は雪が多い。
Ichi-gatsu (ni) wa yuki ga ōi.
(We have (lit., There is) a lot of snow in January.)

Note

Ōi cannot be used in front of a noun as a noun-modifier. To modify a noun, *ōku no* (= the adverbial form of *ōi* with the noun-modifying particle *no* (= *no*[1])) can be used, as in (1), although it is used only in written language or formal speech.

(1) 毎年{**多くの** / ×**多い**}学生がアジアから日本の大学に来る。
Mai-toshi {***ōku no*** / ×***ōi***} *gakusei ga Ajia kara Nihon no daigaku ni kuru.*
(Every year many students come to Japanese universities from Asia.)

In (2), *ōi* occurs in front of the noun *machi* "town" and it looks like it modifies *machi*. However, this *ōi* is the predicate of the relative clause that modifies *machi*. In other words, this *ōi* does not modify *machi* directly. (⇒ **Relative clause**)

(2) [お寺が**多い**] 町は京都です。([ ] indicates the relative clause.)
*[O-tera ga **ōi**] machi wa Kyōto desu.*
(The town in which there are many temples is Kyoto.)

[Related Expressions]

I. *Ōi* and *ōku no* can be replaced by *takusan aru/iru* and *takusan no*, respectively, as in [1a]–[1c].

[1] a. 京都(に)はお寺が{**多い** / **たくさんある**}。(cf. Ex.(a))
Kyōto (ni) wa o-tera ga {***ōi*** / ***takusan aru***}.
(There are many temples in Kyoto.)

b. 京都(に)は学生が{**多い** / **たくさんいる**}。
Kyōto (ni) wa gakusei ga {***ōi*** / ***takusan iru***}.
(There are many students in Kyoto.)

c. 京都(に)は{**多くの** / **たくさんの**}お寺がある。
Kyōto (ni) wa {***ōku no*** / ***takusan no***} *o-tera ga aru.*
(There are many temples in Kyoto.)

Takusan can also be used with other verbs that can occur with quantifiers, but *ōku* (i.e., the adverbial form of *ōi*) cannot be used with such verbs, as in [2].

[2] a. 今年は雪が{**たくさん** / ×**多く**}降った。
Kotoshi wa yuki ga {***takusan*** / ×***ōku***} *futta.*
(It snowed a lot this year.)

b. ケントはおみやげを{**たくさん** / ×**多く**}買った。
Kento wa o-miyage o {***takusan*** / ×***ōku***} *katta.*
(Kent bought a lot of souvenirs.)

II. *Ōi* and *ōku no* can also be replaced by *ōzei iru* and *ōzei no*, respectively if *ōi* and *ōku no* are used for human beings, as in [3a] and [3b]. Note that unlike *takusan*, *ōzei* is used only for people.

[3] a. 京都(に)は学生が{**多い** / **大勢いる**}。(cf. [1b])
Kyōto (ni) wa gakusei ga {***ōi*** / ***ōzei iru***}.
(There are a lot of students in Kyoto.)

b. 京都(に)は{**多くの** / **大勢の**}学生がいる。
Kyōto (ni) wa {***ōku no*** / ***ōzei no***} *gakusei ga iru.*
(There are a lot of students in Kyoto.)

Ōzei can also be used with other verbs that can occur with quantifiers, as in [4].

[4] このイベントには学生が{**大勢** / ×**多く**}来ました。
Kono ibento ni wa gakusei ga {***ōzei*** / ×***ōku***} *kimashita.*
(Many students came to this event.)

0

III. *Ōku* can be used as a noun but *ōzei* and *takusan* cannot, as in [5].

[5] この学科の学生の{**多く** / ×**大勢** / ×**たくさん**}は男だ。
Kono gakka no gakusei no {***ōku*** / ×***ōzei*** / ×***takusan***} *wa otoko da.*
(The majority of the students in this department are male.)

～ oku ～おく *aux. v. (Gr. 1)*

do s.t. in advance for future convenience

do s.t. in advance; go ahead and do s.t.; leave s.o./s.t. as he/she/it is
【REL. ***aru***[2]】

◆ Key Sentence

	V*te*	
明日パーティーをするので飲み物を *Ashita pātī o suru node nomimono o*	買って ***katte***	おいた / おきました。 *oita / okimashita.*
(Since we are having a party tomorrow, I bought some drinks for it.)		

Formation

V*te* おく
oku

話しておく (talk in advance)
hanashite oku

食べておく (eat s.t. in advance)
tabete oku

Examples

(a) 今日は昼に客が来るので昼ご飯を早めに食べておいた。
Kyō wa hiru ni kyaku ga kuru node hiru-gohan o haya-me ni tabete oita.
(Since I'm having a guest at noon today, I had my lunch early.)

(b) 来年ドイツへ行くから少しドイツ語を勉強しておきます。
Rainen Doitsu e iku kara sukoshi doitsugo o benkyō-shite okimasu.
(Since I'm going to Germany next year, I will study a little German ahead of time.)

(c) 暑いので窓を開けておいた。
Atsui node mado o akete oita.
(I left the windows open because it was hot.)

(d) これは大事な書類なので金庫に入れておきます。
Kore wa daiji na shorui na node kinko ni irete okimasu.
(This is an important document, so I'll put it in the safe.)

Notes

1. The auxiliary verb *oku* is used with V*te*, and adds the meaning of "do something in advance for future convenience," as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b), or "do

something and leave the object that receives the action (i.e., the direct object) as it is," as in Exs.(c) and (d).

2. V*te oku* is often used with causative verbs, as in (1). In this case, the causative verbs are usually interpreted as "let someone do something" rather than "make someone do something." (⇒ ***~saseru***)

(1) a. 春菜は疲れているからしばらく**寝させて**おこう。
*Haruna wa tsukarete iru kara shibaraku **nesasete** okō.*
(Since Haruna is tired, let's let her sleep (and leave her that way) for a while.)

b. 飲みたいと言うのなら好きなだけ**飲ませて**おきなさい。
*Nomi-tai to iu no nara suki na dake **nomasete** oki-nasai.*
(If he says he wants to drink, let him drink as much as he likes (and leave him that way).)

3. V*te oku* may be contracted into *toku* or *doku* in casual conversation.

(2) a. 見ておく → 見とく (see ~ in advance)
mite oku → *mi**t-oku***

b. 読んでおく → 読んどく (read ~ in advance)
yonde oku → *yon**d-oku***

0

o ～ ni naru お～になる *phr.*

a phrase that expresses the speaker's respect for someone when describing that person's action

【REL. *o ~ da*; ***o ~ suru***; *~rareru*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)				V*masu*		
野中先生	は	もう	お	帰り	に	なった / なりました。
Nonaka-sensei	*wa*	*mō*	*o-*	***kaeri***	*ni*	*natta / narimashita.*
(Prof. Nonaka already went home.)						

Formation

お V*masu* になる
o- *ni naru*

お話しになる (s.o. { will talk / talks })
o-hanashi ni naru

お教えになる (s.o. { will teach / teaches })
o-oshie ni naru

Examples

(a) この本をもうお読みになりましたか。
Kono hon o mō o-yomi ni narimashita ka.
(Have you read this book yet?)

(b) グッドマン先生は今日の授業で日本のアニメについてお話しになった。
Guddoman-sensei wa kyō no jugyō de Nihon no anime ni tsuite o-hanashi ni natta.
(Prof. Goodman talked about Japanese anime in today's class.)

(c) ウォーカー先生はこの大学で日本史をお教えになっています。
Wōkā-sensei wa kono daigaku de nihonshi o o-oshie ni natte imasu.
(Prof. Walker teaches Japanese history at this university.)

Notes

1. In general, *o*-V*masu ni naru* is used when the speaker describes someone's action with respect. However, if a social norm requires the use of honorific language (e.g., when hotel clerks talk to their guests, when shop attendants talk to their customers, etc.) this form is used even if the speaker does not respect the person he/she talks about.
   (⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 6**. *Keigo*: Extra-polite Expressions)

2. Some verbs have special honorific forms, as in (1). For those verbs, the "*o*-V*masu ni naru*" form is not used.

   (1) a. いる (be; stay) / 行く (go) / 来る (come) → いらっしゃる
   iru *iku* *kuru* *irassharu*

   b. する (do) → なさる
   suru *nasaru*

   c. 言う (say) → おっしゃる
   iu *ossharu*

   d. 食べる (eat) / 飲む (drink) → 召し上がる
   taberu *nomu* *meshiagaru*

(For more special honorific verbs, see Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 6. *Keigo*: Extra-polite Expressions.)

3. When a verb is a *suru*-verb (i.e., a verb that has the form "N *suru*" like *kekkon-suru* "marry" and *denwa-suru* "call"), its honorific form is "*go/o*-N-*nasaru*," as in (2).

(2) a. 大内先生は4月にご結婚**なさいます**。
*Ōuchi-sensei wa shi-gatsu ni **go**-kekkon-**nasaimasu**.*
(Prof. Ouchi will get married in April.)

b. 小杉さんに**お**電話**なさいました**か。
*Kosugi-san ni **o**-denwa-**nasaimashita** ka.*
(Did you call Kosugi-san?)

Here, *nasaru* is the honorific form of *suru* "do" and a Gr. 1 verb. Note that the polite form of *nasaru* is *nasaimasu*, not *nasarimasu*.

For most *suru*-verbs, *go*- precedes N. The *suru*-verbs that require *o*- in the honorific form include: *denwa-suru* "call," *benkyō-suru* "study," *ryōri-suru* "cook," *sentaku-suru* "do laundry," *sōji-suru* "clean" and *sanpo-suru* "take a walk." (⇒ ***o-***: Related Expression)

4. The "*o*-V*masu ni naru*" form is commonly used with action verbs. Some stative verbs can also take this form, as in (3), but some sounds odd with it, as in (4).

0

(3) a. 森村先生はスキーが**おできになる**。
*Morimura-sensei wa sukī ga **o**-deki **ni naru**.*
(Prof. Morimura can ski.)

b. 社長はフランス語が**お**分かり**になる**。
*Shachō wa furansugo ga **o**-wakari **ni naru**.*
(Our president understands French.)

(4) a. ?? 村木さんは耳がよく**お**聞こえに**ならない**。
?? *Muraki-san wa mimi ga yoku **o**-kikoe ni **naranai**.*
(*Intended meaning*: Muraki-san cannot hear well.)

b. ? 南先生は新しいコンピュータが**おいり**になる。
? *Minami-sensei wa atarashii konpyūta ga **o**-iri **ni naru**.*
(Prof. Minami needs a new computer.)

【Related Expressions】

I. *O*-V*masu da* is another form of honorific expressions. However, this form is less polite that *o*-V*masu ni naru*. [1] provides examples.

[1] a. 部長が会議室で**お待ちです**。
*Buchō ga kaigi-shitsu de **o**-machi **desu**.*
(The department chief is waiting for you in the conference room.)

b. 身分証明書を**お持ちですか**。
*Mibun-shōmeisho o **o**-mochi **desu** ka.*
(Do you have an ID?)

c. 古川先生はまだ研究室に**お帰りではありません**。
*Furukawa-sensei wa mada kenkyū-shitsu ni **o**-kaeri **de wa arimasen**.*
(Prof. Furukawa is not back to his office yet.)

II. *Rareru*[1] can also be used to describe respectfully someone's action, as seen in [2], although the degree of politeness is not as high. (⇒ ~***rareru***[1]: Note 12)

[2] a. 野中先生はもう**帰られました**か。
*Nonaka-sensei wa mō **kaeraremashita** ka.*
(Did Prof. Nonaka go home already?)

b. この本をもう**読まれました**か。
*Kono hon o mō **yomaremashita** ka.*
(Have you read this book yet?)

0

o ～ suru　お～する　*phr.*

a phrase that humbly expresses the speaker's politeness to someone when describing the speaker's action that involves or affects that person

【REL. *o ~ ni naru*】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)				V*masu*	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	先生のスーツケースを *sensei no sūtsukēsu o*	お *o-*	持ち ***mochi***	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(I carried my teacher's suitcase.)					

Formation

お Vmasu する
o- *suru*

お話しする (s.o. { will talk / talks })
o-hanashi suru

お教えする (s.o. { will teach / teaches } ; s.o. { will inform / informs })
o-oshie suru

Examples

(a) そのことは私がお話ししましょう。
Sono koto wa watashi ga o-hanashi shimashō.
(*I* will tell you about that matter.)

(b) 先生に新しい漢字アプリの使い方をお教えしました。
Sensei ni atarashii kanji-apuri no tsukai-kata o o-oshie shimashita.
(I showed my teacher how to use a new kanji app.)

(c) 佐藤君は先生に本をお借りした。
Satō-kun wa sensei ni hon o o-kari shita.
(Sato-kun borrowed a book from his teacher.)

(d) サンプルは明日うちの営業マンがお届けします。
Sanpuru wa ashita uchi no eigyōman ga o-todoke shimasu.
(Our salesperson will bring the sample to you tomorrow.)

0

Notes

1. *O*-V*masu suru* is used when the speaker wants to be polite when talking about his/her action or that of his/her in-group member. KS, Exs.(a) and (b) are examples when the subject is the speaker and Exs.(c) and (d) are examples when the subject is the speaker's in-group member.
(⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 6**. *Keigo*: Extra-polite Expressions)

2. *O*-V*masu suru* is used only when the speaker's (or his/her in-group member's) action involves or affects the person the speaker wants to be polite to. Thus, (1) is unacceptable under ordinary circumstances.

(1) ×私は駅までお歩きしました。
×*Watashi wa eki made o-aruki shimashita.*
(*Intended meaning*: I walked to the station.)

3. Some verbs have special humble forms, as in (2). For those verbs, the "*o*-V*masu suru*" form is not used except for *kariru* "borrow," *au* "meet" and *kiku* "ask," which have two humble forms, i.e., *haishaku-suru* and *o-kari-suru* for

kariru, *o-me ni kakaru* and *o-ai suru* for *au*, and *ukagau* and *o-kiki-suru* for *kiku*.

(2) a. 借りる (borrow) → 拝借する
kariru *haishaku-suru*

b. 会う (meet) → お目にかかる
au *o-me ni kakaru*

c. 聞く (ask) → うかがう
kiku *ukagau*

d. 見る (look at) → 拝見する
miru *haiken-suru*

e. あげる (give) → さしあげる
ageru *sashiageru*

f. もらう (receive; get) → いただく
morau *itadaku*

g. する (do) → いたす
suru *itasu*

The rule in Note 2 does not apply to these special humble verbs.

4. The humble form of a *suru*-verb (i.e., a verb that has the form "N *suru*" like *shōkai-suru* "introduce" and *denwa-suru* "call") is *go/o*-N-*suru* or, more politely, *go/o*-N-*itasu*, as in (3). (*Itasu* is the humble form of the verb *suru* "do.")

(3) a. 大石さんをご紹介{します / いたします}。
Ōishi-san o ***go-shōkai-{shimasu / itashimasu}***.
(Let me (lit., I will) introduce Oishi-san.)

b. 明日お電話{します / いたします}。
Ashita ***o-denwa-{shimasu / itashimasu}***.
(I will call you tomorrow).

For most *suru*-verbs, *go-* precedes N. The *suru*-verbs that require *o-* in the humble form include *denwa-suru* "call" and *sōji-suru* "clean." (⇒ ***o-***: Related Expression)

[Related Expression]

O-V*masu ni naru* is also used to express politeness. However, *o*-V*masu ni naru* and *o*-V*masu suru* are different in that the former is used when the speaker talks about someone else's action with respect, while the latter is used when the speaker talks about his/her own action.

(⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 6**. *Keigo*: Extra-polite Expressions)

～ owaru ～終わる *aux. v. (Gr. 1)*

finish doing ~

finish; end
【REL. ~ ***shimau***】
(ANT. ~ *dasu*; ~ *hajimeru*)

◆ Key Sentence

	Vmasu	
『源氏物語』をやっと *"Genji-monogatari" o yatto*	**読み** ***yomi***	終わった / 終わりました。 *-owatta / owarimashita.*
(I finally finished reading *The Tale of Genji*.)		

Formation

V*masu* 終わる
-owaru

話し終わる (finish talking)
hanashi-owaru

食べ終わる (finish eating)
tabe-owaru

0

Examples

(a) やっとレポートを書き終わった。
Yatto repōto o kaki-owatta.
(I finally finished writing my report.)

(b) ちょうど昼ご飯を食べ終わったところです。
Chōdo hiru-gohan o tabe-owatta tokoro desu.
(I've just finished eating my lunch.)

(c) 今週中にこの資料を全部チェックし終わるつもりです。
Konshū-chū ni kono shiryō o zenbu chekku-shi-owaru tsumori desu.
(I'm planning to finish checking all of these documents by the end of this week.)

Notes

1. *Owaru* in V*masu owaru* is an auxiliary verb derived from the main verb *owa-ru* meaning "end; comes to a close."

2. V*masu owaru* can be replaced by V*masu oeru* in written Japanese. *Oeru*, however, conjugates as a Gr. 2 verb.

Question word (Prt) demo　Question word (Prt) でも　*phr.*

any ~

anything/anyone/anywhere/etc.;
whatever/whoever/wherever/etc.;
no matter what/who/where/etc.

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Q-word		
私は *Watashi wa*	何 ***nan***	でも *demo*	食べる / 食べます。 *taberu / tabemasu.*
(I have no food that I cannot eat. (lit., I eat anything.))			

(B)

	Q-word	Prt		
いい仕事があったら *Ii shigoto ga attara*	どこ ***doko***	へ ***e***	でも *demo*	行く / 行きます。 *iku / ikimasu.*
(I'll go anywhere if there is a good job.)				

Formation

(i)　Q-word でも
demo

だれでも (使える)　(anyone (can use s.t.))
dare demo (tsukaeru)

いつでも (始められる)　((can begin s.t.) anytime)
itsu demo (hajimerareru)

(ii)　Q-word + Prt でも
demo

だれとでも (話す)　((talk) with anyone)
dare to demo (hanasu)

どこででも (買える)　((can buy s.t.) anywhere)
doko de demo (kaeru)

(iii)　何 Suffix (+ Prt) でも
nani *demo*

何語でも　(any language)
nani-go demo

(iv) {何* / いく} Counter でも (*Nani* becomes *nan* before counters.)
{*nan / iku*} *demo*

何人でも (any number of people)
nan-nin demo

いくつでも (any number of objects)
iku-tsu demo

(v) Q-word の Noun (+ Prt) でも
no *demo*

だれの本でも (any person's book)
dare no hon demo

どこの学校ででも (at any school (lit., at a school at any place))
doko no gakkō de demo

(vi) Adjectival Q-word + Noun (+ Prt) でも
demo

どの車でも (any one of the cars)
dono kuruma demo

どんな人とでも (with any kind of person)
donna hito to demo

Examples

(a) この図書館はだれでも自由に入れる。
Kono toshokan wa dare demo jiyū ni haireru.
(Anyone can enter this library freely.)

(b) 西岡さんは何でもよく知っています。
Nishioka-san wa nan demo yoku shitte imasu.
(Nishioka-san is knowledgeable about anything.)

(c) A: ミーティングはいつがいいですか。
Mītingu wa itsu ga iidesu ka.
(When is good (for you) to have a meeting?)

B: いつでもいいですよ。
Itsu demo iidesu yo.
(Any time would be fine.)

(d) ここにあるものはどれでも 200 円です。
Koko ni aru mono wa dore demo nihyaku-en desu.
(Anything here is 200 yen.)

(e) 絵里はだれとでもすぐ友達になる。
Eri wa dare to demo sugu tomodachi ni naru.
(Eri makes fast friends with anyone.)

(f) このクラスはいつからでも参加できる。
Kono kurasu wa itsu kara demo sanka-dekiru.
(You can join this class anytime (lit., starting at anytime).)

(g) いくらでも食べたいだけ食べてください。
Ikura demo tabe-tai dake tabete kudasai.
(Please eat as much as you want. (lit., Please eat as much as you want to eat no matter how much it may be.))

(h) いつの時代でも人は同じようなことを考える。
Itsu no jidai demo hito wa onaji yō na koto o kangaeru.
(In whatever period of time (people may live), they think the same thoughts (lit., think a similar thing).)

(i) 私は与えられた仕事はどんなことでもやるつもりです。
Watashi wa ataerareta shigoto wa donna koto demo yaru tsumori desu.
(I intend to do any work when it is assigned to me (lit., do a given work whatever kind it may be).)

Notes

1. The particles *ga* and *o* do not occur between a question word and *demo*, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(d). The following sentences are ungrammatical.

(1) a. ×私は何**を**でも食べます。(cf. KS(A))
×*Watashi wa nani **o** demo tabemasu.*

b. ×この図書館はだれ**が**でも自由に入れる。(cf. Ex.(a))
×*Kono toshokan wa dare **ga** demo jiyū ni haireru.*

2. The time marker *ni* (= *ni*[1]), the directional *ni* (= *ni*[7]) and *e*, and the place marker *de* (= *de*[1]) are optional in the "Q-word + Prt *demo*" construction, as in (2).

(2) a. 何時(**に**)でも来られます。
*Nan-ji (**ni**) demo koraremasu.*
(I can come any time.)

b. 必要ならどこ(**に** / **へ**)でも行きますよ。
*Hitsuyō nara doko (**ni** / **e**) demo ikimasu yo.*
(If necessary, I'll go anywhere.)

c. ユーロはヨーロッパのどこ(**で**)でも使えますか。
*Yūro wa Yōroppa no doko (**de**) demo tsukaemasu ka.*
(Can you use euros anywhere in Europe?)

3. *Ni* other than *ni*[1] and *ni*[7], *de* other than *de*[1], *to*, *kara*, *made* are usually present in the "Q-word + Prt *demo*" construction, as in Exs.(e), (f) and (3) below.

(3) a. 他人の気持ちが分からない人はどこ{に / ×ø}でもいますよ。
*Tanin no kimochi ga wakarani hito wa doko{**ni** / ×ø} demo imasu yo.*
(There are people anywhere who don't understand others' feelings.)

b. 由美はだれ{に / ?ø}でも気軽に話しかけます。
*Yumi wa dare {**ni** / ?ø} demo kigaru ni hanashikakemasu.*
(Yumi talks to anyone casually.)

c. 美術館には(バスでもモノレールでも地下鉄でも)何{で / ??ø}でも行けます。
*Bijutsukan ni wa (basu demo monorēru demo chikatetsu demo) nan {**de** / ??ø} demo ikemasu.*
(You can go to the art museum by anything (whether bus, monorail or subway).)

d. ジミーは両親が何も言わなかったらいつ{まで / ×ø}でもゲームをしている。
*Jimī wa ryōshin ga nani mo iwanakattara itsu {**made** / ×ø} demo gēmu o shiteiru.*
(Jimmy plays games forever (lit., until any time) if his parents don't say anything.)

Q

Question word ka　Question word か　*indefinite pronoun*

pronouns that refer to an unidentified person, thing or place

some~
【REL. Q-word + Question marker *ka*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Q-word		
もう12時ですね。 *Mō jūni-ji desu ne.*	何 ***Nani***	か *-ka*	食べましょう。 *tabemashō.*
(It's twelve now. Let's eat something.)			

(B)

Q-word		Prt	
だれ ***Dare***	か *-ka*	に *ni*	引っ越しを手伝ってもらうつもりです。 *hikkoshi o tetsudatte morau tsumori desu.*
(I'm planning to get someone's help to move (lit., to get someone help me move).)			

(C)

Q-word		Adjective	N	
何 ***Nani***	か *-ka*	おもしろい *omoshiroi*	ゲーム *gēmu*	はありませんか。 *wa arimasen ka.*
(Do you have any fun games?)				

Examples

(a) だれか玄関に来たようだ。
Dare-ka genkan ni kita yō da.
(It looks like someone came to the entrance.)

(b) 飲み物は途中どこかで買えると思います。
Nomimono wa tochū doko-ka de kaeru to omoimasu.
(I think we can buy drinks somewhere on the way.)

(c) ホテルはすぐにどれかに決めたほうがいいですよ。
Hoteru wa sugu ni dore-ka ni kimeta hō ga iidesu yo.
(You'd better decide which hotel (you want to stay at) soon. (lit., Talking about hotels, you'd better decide which one soon.))

(d) どこか安くておいしい店を知りませんか。
Doko-ka yasukute oishii mise o shirimasen ka.
(Do you know a restaurant where we can have reasonable and tasty foods (lit., a reasonable and tasty store)?)

(e) パーティーのメインディッシュは何か簡単に作れるものにしましょう。
Pātī no mein-disshu wa nani-ka kantan ni tsukureru mono ni shimashō.
(As for the main dish for the party, let's make something simple (lit., let's decide on something that we can make easily).)

Notes

1. The question words *nani*, *dare*, *doko* and *dore* become indefinite pronouns when followed by *ka*, as in (1).

(1) a. 何 (what) → 何か (something)
nani *nani-ka*

b. だれ (who) → だれか (someone)
dare *dare-ka*

c. どこ (what place; where) → どこか (some place; somewhere)
doko *doko-ka*

d. どれ (which one) → どれか (one (of those, these, etc.))
dore *dore-ka*

Itsu and *naze* become adverbs when followed by *ka*, as in (2) and (3).

(2) a. いつ (when) → いつか (sometime)
itsu *itsu-ka*

b. またいつか会いましょう。
*Mata **itsu-ka** aimashō.*
(Let's get together again sometime.)

(3) a. なぜ (why) → なぜか (for some reason; somehow)
naze *naze-ka*

b. あの人と話す時、なぜかいつも緊張します。
*Ano hito to hanasu toki, **naze-ka** itsumo kinchō-shimasu.*
(When I talk to him (lit., that person), I always get nervous for some reason.)

Itsu with *ka* is also used as an indefinite pronoun in some contexts, as in (4).

(4) 来週のいつかから夏時間が始まるはずです。
*Raishū no **itsu-ka** kara natsu-jikan ga hajimaru hazu desu.*
(I understand that daylight saving time begins sometime next week (lit., starting sometime next week).)

Q

2. *Nan* with counters can also be used with *ka*, as in (5). (*Nani* becomes *nan* before counters.)

(5) a. 同僚の何人かが私の考えに賛成してくれた。
*Dōryō no **nan-nin-ka** ga watashi no kangae ni sansei-shite kureta.*
(Some of my colleagues agreed to my idea.)

b. もらったリンゴのうち何個かが傷んでいた。
*Moratta ringo no uchi **nan-ko-ka** ga itande ita.*
(Some of the apples I got were spoiled.)

3. In general, indefinite pronouns cannot be marked by the topic marker *wa*, as in (6).

(6) a. だれか{が / ×は}この仕事をしなければならない。
***Dare-ka**{**ga** / × **wa**} kono shigoto o shinakereba naranai.*
(Someone has to do this job.)

b. 彼の話はおかしい。**何か**｛**が** / ×**は**｝間違っていると思う。
Kare no hanashi wa okashii. ***Nani-ka*** ｛***ga*** / × ***wa***｝ *machigatte iru to omou.*
(What he says doesn't make sense. I think something is wrong / I think it's wrong somewhere.)

However, *dore-ka* "one (of these, those, etc.)" can be marked by *wa* in some contexts, as in (7). It seems that this is because *dore-ka* refers to one of the identified entities, i.e., it is not entirely indefinite.

(7) その作品のうちの**どれか**｛**は** / **が**｝石井さんが作ったものだと思います。
Sono sakuhin no uchi no ***dore-ka*** ｛***wa*** / ***ga***｝ *Ishii-san ga tsukutta mono da to omoimasu.*
(I think Ishii-san made one of those works (lit., one of those works is what Ishii-san made).)

When *ga* is used, *dore-ka* comes under focus. In English, *one* would be pronounced with stress.

"*Nan* + Counter + *ka*" can also be marked by either *ga* or *wa*, as in (8). Here again, "*nan* + Counter + *ka*" is not entirely indefinite.

(8) a. 同僚の**何人か**｛**が** / **は**｝私の考えに賛成してくれた。(cf. (5a))
Dōryō no ***nan-nin-ka*** ｛***ga*** / ***wa***｝ *watashi no kangae ni sansei-shite kureta.*
(Some of my colleagues agreed to my idea.)

b. もらったリンゴのうち**何個か**｛**が** / **は**｝傷んでいた。(cf. (5b))
Moratta ringo no uchi ***nan-ko-ka*** ｛***ga*** / ***wa***｝ *itande ita.*
(Some of the apples I got were spoiled.)

4. The use of the subject marker *ga* and the direct object maker *o* after indefinite pronouns depends on the situation. That is, when the indefinite pronoun is under focus, *ga/o* must be present, and when the indefinite pronoun is not under focus, *ga/o* is usually dropped. For example, in (9), *dore-ka* "one of them" and *doko-ka* "some place" are under focus, and the *ga* and *o* after these indefinite pronouns must be present.

(9) a. このうちの**どれか**｛**が** / ×ø｝あなたの研究プロジェクトになるでしょう。
Kono uchi no ***dore-ka*** ｛***ga*** / ×ø｝ *anata no kenkyū-purojekuto ni naru deshō.*
(One of these research projects will be yours. (lit., One among these will be your research project.))

b. どこか｛を / ×ø｝休憩室にします。
Doko-ka ｛***o*** / ×ø｝ *kyūkei-shitsu ni shimasu.*
(We'll use some place as a lounge.)

On the other hand, in (10a), the focal information is *tabemashō* "let's eat" and not what to eat, and in (10b), the focal point of the question is whether or not the listener is going to have a visitor at night and not who is visiting the listener. In these sentences, the particles *o* and *ga* are usually dropped.

(10) a. もう12時ですね。**何か**｛ø / ?? **を**｝食べましょう。(= KS(A))
Mō jūni-ji desu ne. ***Nani-ka*** ｛ø / ?? ***o***｝ *tabemashō.*
(It's twelve now. Let's eat something.)

b. 今晩**だれか**｛ø / ?? **が**｝来ますか。
Konban ***dare-ka*** ｛ø / ?? ***ga***｝ *kimasu ka.*
(Will someone come to see you tonight?)

In (11), the *ga* and *o* after indefinite pronouns can be either present or absent. If the particles are present, the indefinite pronouns become focal information.

(11) a. 彼の議論は**どこか**｛**が** / ø｝おかしい。
Kare no giron wa ***doko-ka*** ｛***ga*** / ø｝ *okashii.*
(Something (lit., Some place) is wrong in his argument.)

b. 生き残るためには**何か**｛**を** / ø｝犠牲にしなければならない。
Ikinokoru tame ni wa ***nani-ka*** ｛***o*** / ø｝ *gisei ni shinakereba naranai.*
(We have to sacrifice something to survive.)

5. The direction markers *e* and *ni* are optional after question words with *ka*, as in (12).

Q

(12) a. 週末**どこか**(**へ** / **に**)行きましたか。
Shūmatsu ***doko-ka*** ***(e / ni)*** *ikimashita ka.*
(Did you go somewhere over the weekend?)

b. 夏休みに**どこか**(**へ** / **に**)行きたいです。
Natsu-yasumi ni ***doko-ka*** ***(e / ni)*** *iki-taidesu.*
(I want to go somewhere during summer vacation.)

6. The particles *ni* (other than the directional *ni*), *de*, *to* and *kara* cannot be omitted after quesion words with *ka*, as in (13).

(13) a. 病院には**だれかと**行くつもりです。
Byōin ni wa ***dare-ka to*** *iku tsumori desu.*
(I'm planning to go to the hospital with someone.)

b. 旅行先で**だれかに**会うかもしれない。
*Ryokō-saki de **dare-ka ni** au kamoshirenai.*
(I may see someone I know at the travel destination.)

c. その本はこの大学の図書館の**どこかに**あるはずです。
*Sono hon wa kono daigaku no toshokan no **doko-ka ni** aru hazu desu.*
(You should be able to find that book somewhere in this university's library. (lit., That book should be somewhere in this university's library.))

d. 血液検査の結果が分かったらメールか**何かで**知らせます。
*Ketsueki-kensa no kekka ga wakattara mēru ka **nani-ka de** shirase-masu.*
(When I've learned the blood test result, I'll let you know via email or something.)

e. 詳しいことは後で**だれかから**聞いてください。
*Kuwashii koto wa ato de **dare-ka kara** kiite kudasai.*
(For details, please ask someone (lit., hear from someone) later.)

Made cannot be used after question words with *ka*, as in (14).

(14) a. ×**いつかまで**待たないといけません。
× ***Itsu-ka made** matanai to ikemasen.*
(*Intended meaning*: We have to wait until sometime.)

b. ×**どこかまで**一緒に行きましょう。
× ***Doko-ka made** issho ni ikimashō.*
(*Intended meaning*: Let's go together up to some place.)

Q

7. Question words with *ka* are often followed by a noun with a noun modifier (e.g., an adjective, a relative clause, etc.), as in KS(C), Exs.(d) and (e). (15) provides more examples.

(15) a. **いつか**暇な時に一緒に食事をしましょう。
***Itsu-ka** hima na toki ni issho ni shokuji o shimashō.*
(Let's eat together sometime when we have free time.)

b. **何か**重いものが倒れる音がした。
***Nani-ka** omoi mono ga taoreru oto ga shita.*
(I heard something heavy fall down.)

c. **だれか**この仕事を頼める人を紹介してくれませんか。
***Dare-ka** kono shigoto o tanomeru hito o shōkai-shite kuremasen ka.*
(Could you introduce me someone whom I can ask to do this job?)

【Related Expression】

A question word with *ka* as an indefinite pronoun should not be confused with a question word with the question marker *ka*. In [1a], for example, *dare ka* is the question word *dare* "who" with the question marker, not an indefinite pronoun, and in [1b], *dare-ka* is an indefinite pronoun (i.e., someone) and *doko ka* is the question word *doko* "what place; where" with the question marker.

[1] a. この人が**だれか**分かりますか。
*Kono hito ga **dare ka** wakarimasu ka.*
(Do you know who this person is?)

b. **だれか**に次の会議が**どこか**聞いてみます。
***Dare-ka** ni tsugi no kaigi ga **doko ka** kiite mimasu.*
(I'll ask someone where (lit., in what place) the next conference is going to be.)

～rareru[1] ～られる[1] *verb ending (Gr. 2)*

a verb ending that indicates that s.o./s.t. is affected by someone's action or an event directly or indirectly

be V-ed; get V-ed
【REL. ***o ~ ni naru***; *~rareru*[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Agent		Transitive Verb (passive)
一樹 *Kazuki*	は *wa*	由香 *Yuka*	に *ni*	だまされた / だまされました。 ***damasa**reta / **damasa**remashita.*
(Kazuki was deceived by Yuka.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Agent			Intransitive Verb (passive)
ジーナ *Jīna*	は *wa*	ウィル *Wiru*	に *ni*	夜遅くアパートに *yoru osoku apāto ni*	来られた / 来られました。 ***ko**rareta / **ko**raremashita.*
(Will came to Gina's apartment late at night (and Gina was unhappy).)					

(C)

Topic (subject)		Agent		Direct Object		Transitive Verb (passive)
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	弟 *otōto*	に *ni*	ケーキ *kēki*	を *o*	食べられた / 食べられました。 ***tabe**rareta / **tabe**raremashita.*
(My younger brother ate my cake (and I was unhappy). (lit., I got my cake eaten by my younger brother.))						

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg れる
reru

話される (be spoken)
hanasareru

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem られる
rareru

食べられる (be eaten)
taberareru

(iii) Irr. verbs:

来る	→	来られる	(X comes to Y, which makes Y unhappy)
kuru		*korareru*	
する	→	される	(X does s.t., which makes Y unhappy)
suru		*sareru*	

Examples

(a) 結衣は大樹にプロポーズされた。
Yui wa Daiki ni puropōzu-sareta.
(Yui was proposed to by Daiki.)

(b) このビルは２年前に建てられました。
Kono biru wa ni-nen mae ni tateraremashita.
(This building was built two years ago.)

(c) この本は 1965 年にアメリカで出版された。
Kono hon wa sen-kyūhyaku-rokujū-go-nen ni Amerika de shuppan-sareta.
(This book was published in America in 1965.)

(d) 私は２年前妻に死なれた。
Watashi wa ni-nen mae tsuma ni shinareta.
(My wife died two years ago (and I was sad).)

(e) ステファニーはルームメートに無断でアルバムを見られた。
Sutefanī wa rūmumēto ni mudan de arubamu o mirareta.
(Stephanie's roommate looked at her album without permission (and she was annoyed).)

(f) 早田さんは奥さんに高いコートを買われました。
Hayata-san wa okusan ni takai kōto o kawaremashita.
(Hayata-san's wife bought an expensive coat (and he was unhappy).)

R

Notes

1. Sentences that involve the passive forms of verbs are called "passive sentences." Basically, there are two types of passive sentences in Japanese: direct passive sentences and indirect passive sentences. KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c) present examples of direct passive, and KSs(B), (C) and Exs.(d)–(f) present examples of indirect passive. The structure of Japanese direct passive sentences corresponds to the English passive sentence structure "X is V-ed by Y," but there is no sentence structure in English that correspond to the structure of Japanese indirect passive sentences. Direct passive sentences are explained in Notes 2–6 and indirect passive sentences, in Notes 7–10.

2. Direct passive sentences have corresponding active sentences. For example, (1a) is the active sentence that corresponds to KS(A), which is repeated in (1b) for convenience. (⇒ **Grammatical Terms**: Active Sentence)

(1) a. 由香は一樹をだました。[Active sentence]
Yuka wa Kazuki o damashita.
(Yuka deceived Kazuki.)

b. 一樹は由香にだまされた。[Direct passive sentence] (= KS(A))
Kazuki wa Yuka ni damasareta.
(Kazuki was deceived by Yuka.)

In general, the direct object of an active sentence (e.g., Kazuki in (1a)) becomes the subject of the corresponding direct passive sentence (often presented as the topic), and the subject of an active sentence (often presented as the topic, e.g., Yuka in (1a)) occurs with the particle *ni* in the corresponding direct passive sentence, as seen in (1a) and (1b). (⇒ ***ni***[8])

An important difference between active sentences and direct passive sentences is the viewpoint. For example, (1a) describes the event from the viewpoint of Yuka (= the agent), while (1b) describes the same event from the viewpoint of Kazuki (= the recipient of the action).

3. Most active sentences involving a noun with a human referent marked by *ni* (e.g., Yui in (2a)) also have corresponding direct passive sentences, in which the noun marked by *ni* in the active sentence becomes the subject (often presented as the topic) and the subject in the active sentence (often presented as the topic, e.g., Daiki in (2a)) occurs with *ni*, as in (2)–(4).

(2) a. 大樹は結衣にプロポーズした。[Active sentence]
*Daiki **wa** Yui **ni** puropōzu-shita.*
(Daiki proposed to Yui.)

b. 結衣は大樹にプロポーズされた。[Direct passive sentence] (= Ex.(a))
*Yui **wa** Daiki **ni** puropōzu-sareta.*
(Yui was proposed to by Daiki.)

(3) a. エリックはキャシーにうそをついた。[Active sentence]
*Erikku **wa** Kyashī **ni** uso o tsuita.*
(Eric lied to Kathy.)

b. キャシーはエリックにうそをつかれた。[Direct passive sentence]
*Kyashī **wa** Erikku **ni** uso o tsukareta.*
(Kathy was lied to by Eric.)

(4) a. お母さんはカイルにゲームをやめるように言った。[Active sentence]
*O-kāsan **wa** Kairu **ni** gēmu o yameru yō ni itta.*
(Kyle's mother told him to stop playing games.)

b. カイルはお母さんにゲームをやめるように言われた。

[Direct passive sentence]

*Kairu **wa** o-kāsan **ni** gēmu o yameru yō ni iwareta.*
(Kyle was told by his mother to stop playing games.)

It is noted that active sentences that involve giving-receiving verbs (e.g., *ageru* "give," *kureru* "give," *morau* "receive") do not have corresponding direct passive sentences, as in (5)–(7). This is because the same situations can be described from a different person's point of view using a different giving/receiving verb, and therefore, it is not necessary to use the passive structure.
(⇒ ***ageru***[1]; ***kureru***[1]; ***morau***[1])

(5) a. ケイティーはダニエラにチョコレートをあげた。
Keitī wa Daniera ni chokorēto o ageta.
(Katie gave Danielle some chocolates.)

b. ダニエラはケイティーにチョコレートを{×あげられた / もらった}。
*Daniera wa Keitī ni chokorēto o {× **agerareta** / **moratta**}.*
(Danielle got some chocolates from Katie.)

(6) a. ダニエラはケイティーにチョコレートをもらった。
Daniera wa Keitī ni chokorēto o moratta.
(Danielle got some chocolates from Katie.)

b. ケイティーはダニエラにチョコレートを{×もらわれた / あげた}。
*Keitī wa Daniera ni chokorēto o {× **morawareta** / **ageta**}.*
(Katie gave Danielle some chocolates.)

(7) a. ケイティーは私にチョコレートをくれた。
Keitī wa watashi ni chokorēto o kureta.
(Katie gave me some chocolates.)

R

b. 私はケイティーにチョコレートを{×くれられた / もらった}。
*Watashi wa Keitī ni chokorēto o {× **kurerareta** / **moratta**}.*
(I got some chocolates from Katie.)

4. In many cases, the *ni* that marks the agent in direct passive sentences can be replaced by *kara*, as in (8). (⇒ ***kara***[1])

(8) a. 孝之は今学期よく頑張ったので先生{に / から}ほめられた。
*Takayuki wa kongakki yoku ganbatta node sensei {**ni** / **kara**} homerareta.*
(Because Takayuki worked hard this term, he was praised by his teacher.)

b. 徹はクラスメート{に / から}いじめられた。
*Tōru wa kurasumēto {**ni** / **kara**} ijimerareta.*
(Toru was bullied by his classmates.)

c. 麻美はだれにも親切だったので、みんな{**に / から**}好かれた。
*Asami wa dare ni mo shinsetsu datta node, minna{**ni / kara**} suka-reta.*
(Asami was kind to anyone, so she was liked by everybody.)

In fact, *kara* is more likely chosen when the agent is some kind of source (i.e., something is transferred from the agent to the subject of the direct passive sentence), as in (9).

(9) a. 結衣は大樹{**から / に**}プロポーズされた。(cf. Ex.(a))
*Yui wa Daiki{**kara / ni**} puropōzu-sareta.*
(Yui was proposed to by Daiki.)

b. カイルはお母さん{**から / に**}ゲームをやめるように言われた。(cf. (4b))
*Kairu wa o-kāsan{**kara / ni**} gēmu o yameru yō ni iwareta.*
(Kyle was told by his mother to stop playing games.)

c. 金井さんは社長{**から / に**}新しい研究所の所長のポストを与えられた。
*Kanai-san wa shachō{**kara / ni**} atarashii kenkyūjo no shochō no posuto o ataerareta.*
(Kanai-san was given the position of director of the new research center by the company president.)

However, *kara* cannot be used when nothing is transferred from the agent to the subject of the direct passive sentence, as in (10).

(10) a. 村井さんはトラック{**に / × から**}ひかれた。
*Murai-san wa torakku{**ni / × kara**} hikareta.*
(Murai-san was run over by a truck.)

b. 私は知らない人{**に / × から**}ぶつかられた。
*Watashi wa shiranai hito{**ni / × kara**} butsukarareta.*
(I was bumped into by a stranger.)

c. 一樹は由香{**に / × から**}だまされた。(= KS(A))
*Kazuki wa Yuka{**ni / × kara**} damasareta.*
(Kazuki was deceived by Yuka.)

5. In some situations, the agent in direct passive sentences is marked by *ni yotte* "by means of" or "owing to," as in (11) and (12).

(11) a. この絵はピカソ**によって**描かれた。
*Kono e wa Pikaso **ni yotte** kakareta.*
(This picture was painted by Picasso.)

b. 電話はベル**によって**発明された。
*Denwa wa Beru **ni yotte** hatsumei-sareta.*
(The telephone was invented by Bell.)

(12) a. 先の戦争によって多くの人の命がうばわれた。
Saki no sensō ***ni yotte*** *ōku no hito no inochi ga ubawareta.*
(Numerous people's lives were claimed by the last war.)

b. 津波によってたくさんの建物や家が壊された。
Tsunami ***ni yotte*** *takusan no tatemono ya ie ga kowasareta.*
(Many buildings and houses were destroyed by the tsunami.)

Ni yotte, which is usually used in written form or formal speech, is used when X did something significant, as in (11a) and (11b), or when X caused something serious, as in (12a) and (12b). Thus, in the following sentences, *ni yotte* is unnatural.

(13) a. 私は絵里｛に / ×によって｝ぶたれた。
Watashi wa Eri ｛***ni*** */* × ***ni yotte***｝ *butareta.*
(I was hit by Eri.)

b. 田口さんはいつも仕事｛に / ×によって｝追われている。
Taguchi-san wa itsumo shigoto ｛***ni*** */* × ***ni yotte***｝ *owarete iru.*
(Taguchi-san is always swamped with work.)

In (12a) and (12b), the *de* that means "because of" or "due to" (= *de*[3]) can also be used in place of *ni yotte*, as in (14). (⇒ ***de***[3])

(14) a. 先の戦争｛によって / で｝多くの人の命がうばわれた。
Saki no sensō ｛***ni yotte*** */* ***de***｝ *ōku no hito no inochi ga ubawareta.*
(Numerous people's lives were lost due to the last war.)

b. 津波｛によって / で｝たくさんの建物や家が壊された。
Tsunami ｛***ni yotte*** */* ***de***｝ *takusan no tatemono ya ie ga kowasareta.*
(Many buildings and houses were destroyed by the tsunami.)

R

6. Direct passive sentences are also used when sentences are about something or someone that receives an action (i.e., the direct object of the corresponding active sentence) and it is not necessary to mention the agent of the action, as in Exs.(b) and (c). In such direct passive sentences, the focus is often when and/or where the action was performed.

7. Indirect passive sentences are used when someone is affected by someone else's action or an event in some way, as in KSs(B), (C) and Exs.(d)–(f). In indirect passive sentences, the affected person is presented as the subject (often the topic as well), and the agent of the action or event is marked by *ni*.

The sentences in (15) illustrate the above point. That is, the active sentence (15a) simply describes what Koichi did. On the other hand, the indirect passive sentence (15b) describes the same event from the viewpoint of Shogo, who was affected by Koichi's action. (In many situations, indirect passive sentences

do not have a natural English translation. The English translations are provided here simply for the purpose of conveying the nuance of the Japanese indirect passive sentences.)

(15) a. 孝一は正吾のメールを読んだ。
Kōichi wa Shōgo no mēru o yonda.
(Koichi read Shogo's emails.)

b. 正吾は孝一にメールを読まれた。
Shōgo wa Kōichi ni mēru o yomareta.
(Shogo was annoyed by Koichi's reading his emails.)

8. Because indirect passive sentences are often used when the subject is negatively affected by someone's action or an event, this construction is sometimes referred to as "adversity passive" or "suffering passive." However, whether the subject is affected negatively or positively depends on the situation. For example, in (16a), the subject is affected negatively, while in (16b), the subject is affected positively.

(16) a. 私は隣の人に足を踏まれた。
Watashi wa tonari no hito ni ashi o fumareta.
(The person next to me stepped on my foot (and it hurt me).)

b. 私は先生に作文をほめられた。
Watashi wa sensei ni sakubun o homerareta.
(My teacher praised my essay (and I was happy).)

9. The indirect passive is different from the direct passive and the English passive in the following ways:

(i) The verb can be intransitive, as in KS(B) and Ex.(d).

(ii) When the verb is transitive, the direct object remains as the direct object, as in KS(C), Exs.(e) and (f).

R

The commonality of direct passive and indirect passive is that both types of sentences describe someone's action or an event from the subject's viewpoint and that the subject has no control over that action or event.

10. In indirect passive sentences, the agent is usually a human. Thus, the sentences in (17) are ungrammatical.

(17) a. ×私は高速道路で**タイヤに**パンクされた。
× *Watashi wa kōsoku-dōro de **taiya ni** panku-sareta.*
(*Intended meaning*: I had a flat tire on a freeway (and I was troubled).)

b. ×テッドは**コンピュータに**何度もクラッシュされた。
× *Teddo wa **konpyūta ni** nan-do mo kurasshu-sareta.*
(*Intended meaning*: Ted's computer crashed many times (and he was annoyed).)

An exceptional case is when the agent is nature, as in (18).

(18) 今日私は仕事の帰りに**雨に**降られた。
*Kyō watashi wa shigoto no kaeri ni **ame ni** furareta.*
(I was rained on today on my way home from work.)

11. In some situations, passive sentences involve causative forms. In this case, the passive element always follows the causative element, as in (19).
(⇒ ~ ***saseru***: Note 7)

(19) 私は両親にアルバイトを**辞めさせられた**。
*Watashi wa ryōshin ni arubaito o **yamesaserareta.***
(I was made to quit my part-time job by my parents.)

12. Passive verbs are also used as honorific expressions, although the degree of politeness is lower than that of the "*o*-V*masu ni naru*" form and special honorific verbs. (20) provides examples.
(⇒ ***o*** ~ ***ni naru***; **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 6**. *Keigo*: Extra-polite Expressions)

(20) a. 石橋先生は日本へ**帰られました**。
*Ishibashi-sensei wa Nihon e **kaeraremashita.***
(Prof. Ishibashi went back to Japan. [Honorific])

b. 宮口先生は日本の大学のことを**話された**。
*Miyaguchi-sensei wa Nihon no daigaku no koto o **hanasareta.***
(Prof. Miyaguchi talked about Japanese universities. [Honorific])

R

13. The passive forms of verbs conjugate like Gr. 2 verbs. (21) shows the basic conjugations of the passive form of *hanasu*.

(21)

話される *hanasare**ru***	(is spoken)	[plain, non-past, affirmative]
話されない *hanasare**nai***	(is not spoken)	[plain, non-past, negative]
話されます *hanasare**masu***	(is spoken)	[polite, non-past, affirmative]
話された *hanasare**ta***	(was spoken)	[plain, past, affirmative]
話されて *hanasare**te***	(is spoken and)	[*te*-form]

【Related Expression】

The potential forms of Gr. 2 verbs are the same as their passive forms. Potential, passive or honorific sentences with Gr. 2 verbs are identified through syntax and context. For example, in [1], the direct object is marked by *ga*, which indicates that the *taberareru* here is a potential form. [2] has the agent *gakusei ni* and the direct object *sashimi o*; thus, this is an indirect passive sentence. (⇒ ~**rareru**[2])

[1] 先生は刺身が食べられる。[Potential]
Sensei wa sashimi ***ga*** *taberareru.*
(My teacher can eat sashimi.)

[2] 先生は学生に刺身を食べられた。[Indirect passive]
Sensei wa ***gakusei ni sashimi o*** *taberareta.*
(The teacher had (his) sashimi eaten by his students.)

In [3], there is no explicit agent and the direct object is marked by *o*; thus, it is ambiguous in three ways as the English translations show.

[3] 先生は刺身を食べられた。
Sensei wa sashimi ***o*** *taberareta.*
((A) My teacher ate sashimi. [Honorific]
(B) My teacher was able to eat sashimi. [Potential]
(C) Someone ate sashimi and my teacher was unhappy. [Indirect passive])

～rareru[2]　～られる[2]　*verb ending (Gr. 2)*

R

a verb ending that indicates potential

be able to do s.t.; can; be -able; can be done
【REL. ~ ***koto ga dekiru***; ~***rareru***[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (experiencer)		Noun (object of action)		Verb (potential)
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	日本語 *nihongo*	が *ga*	読める / 読めます。 ***yome****ru* / ***yome****masu.*
(I can read Japanese.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Verb (potential)
この水 *Kono mizu*	は *wa*	飲めない / 飲めません。 ***nome**nai / **nome**masen.*
(This water is not drinkable.)		

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vcond る
ru

話せる (can talk)
hanaseru

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem られる* (*See Note 9 for another form.)
rareru

食べられる (can eat)
taberareru

(iii) Irr. verbs: 来る → 来られる* (can come)
kuru *korareru* (*See Note 10 for another form.)

する → できる (can do)
suru *dekiru*

Examples

(a) ハンターさんは日本語が話せます。
Hantā-san wa nihongo ga hanasemasu.
(Hunter-san can speak Japanese.)

R

(b) 寺田さんはテニスができる。
Terada-san wa tenisu ga dekiru.
(Terada-san can play tennis.)

(c) この字は読めない。
Kono ji wa yomenai.
(This character is not readable.)

(d) ここはWiFiが使えます。
Koko wa waifai ga tsukaemasu.
(You can use Wi-Fi here.)

Notes

1. The potential forms of verbs express ability as their core meaning, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b), but they are also used when something can be done because

the given condition or situation allows someone to do that, as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d). As seen in these examples, if the experiencer is clear from the context or situation, or if the experiencer is a person in general, he/she is usually omitted and the direct object of the verb is presented as a topic.

2. In sentences that involve the potential form of a verb, if there is an experiencer (i.e., a person who can do something), that noun phrase is usually marked by *wa* and the direct object of the verb by either *ga* or *o*. Compare (1a) and (1b).
(⇒ ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

(1) a. 私は英語**を**話します。[Non-potential]
*Watashi wa eigo **o** hanashimasu.*
(I speak English.)

b. 私は英語｛**が** / **を**｝話せます。[Potential]
*Watashi wa eigo ｛**ga** / **o**｝ hanasemasu.*
(I can speak English.)

In general, the choice between *ga* and *o* seems to depend on the degree of volition expressed in the action the experiencer takes. That is, if his/her volition is high, *o* is preferable. Thus, in the following sentences, *ga* is unnatural.

(2) a. 私は辞めようと思えばいつでも今の仕事｛**を** / ×**が**｝辞められる。
*Watashi wa yameyō to omoeba itsu demo ima no shigoto ｛**o** / ×**ga**｝ yamerareru.*
(I can quit my current job whenever I want to quit (lit., whenever I think I will quit it).)

b. 僕はなんとか自分｛**を** / ×**が**｝おさえられた。
*Boku wa nantoka jibun ｛**o** / ×**ga**｝ osaerareta.*
(I managed to contain myself. (lit., I could somehow contain myself.))

3. *Dekiru*, the potential form of *suru*, always requires the object of an action to be marked by *ga*, as in Ex.(b) and (3).

R

(3) 私はチェス｛**が** / ×**を**｝できる。
*Watashi wa chesu ｛**ga** / ×**o**｝ dekiru.*
(I can play chess.)

The potential forms of *suru*-verbs (i.e., a verb that has the form "VN-*suru*") are VN-*dekiru*. When VN-*dekiru* is used, the direct object of a *suru*-verb can be marked by either *o* or *ga*, as in (4).

(4) この大学ではアラビア語｛**を** / **が**｝勉強できる。
*Kono daigaku de wa arabiago ｛**o** / **ga**｝ benkyō-dekiru.*
(You can study Arabic at this university.)

4. The detachment *o* (= *o*[3]) does not change into *ga* in potential expressions. (⇒ ***o***[3])

(5) a. 今日はうち｛を / × が｝出られません。
Kyō wa uchi ｛***o*** / × ***ga***｝ *deraremasen.*
(I can't leave home today.)

b. テッドは大学｛を / ?? が｝卒業できなかった。
Teddo wa daigaku ｛***o*** / ?? ***ga***｝ *sotsugyō-dekinakatta.*
(Ted couldn't graduate from college.)

5. Non-volitional verbs like *wakaru* "understand" or "be understandable," *iru* "need" or "be necessary," *aru* "exist," *aku* "open (v.i.)" and *kusaru* "rot (v.i.)" do not have potential forms.

6. The potential forms of *miru* "see" (i.e., *mirareru*) and *kiku* "hear" (i.e., *kikeru*) are similar in meaning to the verbs *mieru* "be visible" and *kikoeru* "be audible," respectively, but their uses are different. (⇒ ***kikoeru***; ***mieru***)

7. The idea of potentiality can also be expressed by Vplain·non-past *koto ga dekiru.* (⇒ ~ ***koto ga dekiru***)

8. Potential verbs are all Gr. 2 verbs. The basic conjugations are as follows.

(6) 話せる (can talk) [plain, non-past, affirmative]
*hanase**ru***

話せない (cannot talk) [plain, non-past, negative]
*hanase**nai***

話せます (can talk) [polite, non-past, affirmative]
*hanase**masu***

話せて (can talk and,) [*te*-form]
*hanase**te***

話せた (could talk) [plain, past, affirmative]
*hanase**ta***

9. There is another potential form for Group 2 verbs. This form is used only in casual conversation.

(7) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem れる
reru

a. 食べる → 食べれる
taberu *tabereru*

b. 見る → 見れる
miru *mireru*

This form cannot be used for Gr. 2 verbs whose stems end with *re* (e.g., *ireru* "put ~ in," *kakureru* "hide," *nareru* "get used to," *wakareru* "leave a relationship," *wasureru* "forget").

(8) a. 入れる → ×入れれる
ireru ×*irereru*
b. 忘れる → ×忘れれる
wasureru ×*wasurereru*

10. *Kuru* also has the shortened potential form *koreru* in addition to the regular potential form *korareru*. *Koreru* is used only in casual conversation.

(9) 明日のパーティーに**来れる**？
Ashita no pātī ni ***koreru****?*
(Can you come to tomorrow's party?)

～ rashii ～らしい *aux. adj. (i)*

an auxiliary adjective that indicates that the preceding sentence is the speaker's conjecture based on secondary information

It seems that ~; It looks like; I heard that ~; typical of
【REL. ~ *sō da*[1]; ~ *sō da*[2]; ~ ***yō da***[1]】

R

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Splain*	
松田さんはイタリアへ行く *Matsuda-san wa Itaria e* ***iku***	らしい / らしいです。 *rashii* / *rashiidesu*.
(It seems that Matsuda-san is going to Italy.)	

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N drops.

(B)

Topic (subject)			Noun	
このプレゼント *Kono purezento*	は *wa*	本当に *hontō ni*	**お母さん** ***o-kāsan***	らしい / らしいです。 *rashii / rashiidesu.*
(This present is so typical of my mother.)				

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } らしい
rashii

{ 話す / 話した } らしい (It seems that s.o. { will talk / talks / talked } .)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *rashii*

{ 高い / 高かった } らしい (It seems that s.t. is/was expensive.)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *rashii*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { ø / だった } らしい
{ ø / *datta* } *rashii*

静か { ø / だった } らしい (It seems that s.t. is/was quiet.)
shizuka { ø / *datta* } *rashii*

先生 { ø / だった } らしい (It seems that s.o. is/was a teacher.)
sensei { ø / *datta* } *rashii*

Examples

(a) 西野さんは一人で暮らしているらしい。
Nishino-san wa hitori de kurashite iru rashii.
(It seems that Nishino-san is living alone.)

R

(b) 杉本さんはもう帰ったらしいです。
Sugimoto-san wa mō kaetta rashiidesu.
(It looks like Sugimoto-san went home already.)

(c) あの学校の入学試験は難しいらしい。
Ano gakkō no nyūgaku-shiken wa muzukashii rashii.
(That school's entrance exam seems difficult.)

(d) ジーナはジェフが好きらしいです。
Jīna wa Jefu ga suki rashiidesu.
(It looks like Gina is in love with Jeff.)

(e) 彼が言っていることは本当らしい。
Kare ga itte iru koto wa hontō rashii.
(It seems that what he's saying is true.)

(f) ここは空き家らしい。
Koko wa akiya rashii.
(It looks like this is an abandoned house.)

Notes

1. *Rashii* is primarily used when the speaker makes a conjecture based on some information that he/she has heard or read (i.e., secondary information). However, in some situations, *rashii* is used when the speaker's conjecture is based on what he/she sees, as in Exs.(b) and (f).

2. Negative conjecture is expressed by a negative predicate and *rashii*, as in (1).

   (1) a. 田口さんはパーティーに**行かない**らしい。
   *Taguchi-san wa pātī ni **ikanai** rashii.*
   (It seems that Taguchi-san is not going to the party.)

   b. ローレルはアンドリューが**好きじゃない**らしい。
   *Rōreru wa Andoryū ga **suki ja nai** rashii.*
   (It seems that Laurel doesn't like Andrew.)

3. As another use of *rashii*, "N *rashii*" is used when the referent of the noun exhibits its typical characteristic, as in KS(B). (2) provides another example.

   (2) このコメントは、短いけれどポイントを突いていて、スナイダーさん**らしい**。
   *Kono komento wa, mijikai keredo pointo o tsuite ite, Sunaidā-san **rashii**.*
   (Being brief but hitting the point, this comment is typical of Snyder-san.)

4. When "N *rashii*" modifies a noun, it usually means "typical of," as in (3). (See Note 3.)

   (3) この数日は秋**らしい**気持ちのいい天気が続いている。
   *Kono sūjitsu wa aki **rashii** kimochi no ii tenki ga tsuzuite iru.*
   (We've had pleasant weather typical of autumn for the past several days.)

   Also, when *rashii* is used in the negative form, it always means "typical of," as in (4).

   (4) このコメントはスナイダーさん**らしくない**。
   *Kono komento wa Sunaidā-san **rashikunai**.*
   (This comment is unlike Snyder-san.)

【Related Expressions】

I. *Sō da*[2] is another conjecture expression. However, while *rashii* expresses the speaker's conjecture based on secondary information (i.e., what the speaker

has heard, read or seen), ***sō da***[2] expresses the speaker's impression of something or someone the speaker is seeing at the moment of speech. The following examples demonstrate the difference between the two expressions.

[1] a. このラーメンは辛そうだ。
*Kono rāmen wa kara-**sō da**.*
(This ramen looks spicy.)

b. このラーメンは辛いらしい。
*Kono rāmen wa karai **rashii**.*
(I heard that this ramen is spicy.)

[1a] is said, for example, when the speaker looks at a bowl of ramen with a lot of red pepper all over the noodles. [1b] cannot be used in this situation. On the other hand, [1b] is said, for example, when the ramen the speaker is looking at does not look spicy, but he/she has heard or read that it is spicy. [1a] cannot be used in this situation.

[2] provides another set of sentences that demonstrate the difference between ***sō da***[2] and ***rashii***.

[2] a. 雨が降りそうだ。
*Ame ga furi-**sō da**.*
(It looks like rain.)

b. 午後から雨が降るらしい。
*Gogo kara ame ga furu **rashii**.*
(I heard that it will rain in the afternoon (lit., starting this afternoon).)

[2a] can be used when the speaker sees a lot of dark clouds in the sky. [2b] cannot be used in this situation. On the other hand, [2b] can be used after the speaker has heard or read a weather report. [2a] cannot be used in this situation. (⇒ ***~ sō da***[2])

R

II. If there has been relatively little conjecture in the speaker's mind, ***rashii*** is almost the same as the hearsay expression ***sō da***[1]. For example, [3a] and [4a] convey almost the same meaning as [3b] and [4b], respectively. (⇒ ***~ sō da***[1])

[3] a. あの学校の入学試験は難しいらしい。(= Ex.(c))
*Ano gakkō no nyūgaku-shiken wa muzukashii **rashii**.*

b. あの学校の入学試験は難しいそうだ。
*Ano gakkō no nyūgaku-shiken wa muzukashii **sō da**.*
(I heard that that school's entrance exam is difficult.)

[4] a. ジーナはジェフが好きらしいです。(= Ex.(d))
*Jīna wa Jefu ga suki **rashiidesu**.*

b. ジーナはジェフが好きだそうです。
Jīna wa Jefu ga suki da ***sō desu.***
(I heard that Gina is in love with Jeff.)

Relative clause

【REL. appositive clause】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Predicate
Relative Clause	Noun		
カレンが食べた *Karen ga tabeta*	ステーキ *sutēki*	は *wa*	高かった / 高かったです。 *takakatta / takakattadesu.*
(The steak that Karen ate was expensive.)			

(B)

Direct Object			Transitive Verb
Relative Clause	Noun		
ステーキがおいしい *Sutēki ga oishii*	レストラン *resutoran*	を *o*	知らない？ / 知りませんか。 *shiranai? / shirimasen ka.*
(Do you know a restaurant that has good steak (lit., in which steak is good)?)			

R

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } + N

{ 話す / 話した } 人 (a person who { will talk / talks / talked)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *hito*

{ 高い / 高かった } 本 (a book that is/was expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *hon*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } N
{ *na / datta* }

静か { な / だった } 家 (a house that is/was quiet)
shizuka { *na / datta* } *ie*

(iii) N { の / だった } N
{ *no* / *datta* }

(趣味が) ゴルフ { の / だった } 人 (a person whose (hobby) is/was golf)
(shumi ga) goruhu { no / datta } hito

Examples

(a) 日本語を教えている先生は小林先生だ。
Nihongo o oshiete iru sensei wa Kobayashi-sensei da.
(The teacher who is teaching Japanese is Prof. Kobayashi.)

(b) 私が苦手な学科は数学です。
Watashi ga nigate na gakka wa sūgaku desu.
(The subject I'm weak in is math.)

(c) 私のクラスにはお父さんが医者の学生が３人います。
Watashi no kurasu ni wa o-tōsan ga isha no gakusei ga san-nin imasu.
(There are three students in my class whose fathers are doctors.)

(d) 私が住んでいた町は病院がなかった。
Watashi ga sunde ita machi wa byōin ga nakatta.
(There was no hospital in the town where I lived.)

(e) 春菜が行く学校は東京にあります。
Haruna ga iku gakkō wa Tōkyō ni arimasu.
(The school where Haruna is going is in Tokyo.)

(f) これがあの写真を撮ったカメラですか。
Kore ga ano shashin o totta kamera desu ka.
(Is this the camera with which you took that picture?)

(g) 私の息子が結婚する女性は看護師さんです。
Watashi no musuko ga kekkon-suru josei wa kangoshi-san desu.
(The woman my son is going to marry is a nurse.)

R

Notes

1. Relative clauses are used to specify or explain the nouns that follow. The relative clause construction can make messages more concise and thus can make communication more efficient. For example, the idea of KS(A) presents the ideas of the two sentences in (1) in one sentence.

(1) a. カレンは**ステーキ**を食べました。
*Karen wa **sutēki** o tabemashita.*
(Karen ate a steak.)

b. その**ステーキ**は高かったです。
*Sono **sutēki** wa takakattadesu.*
(The steak was expensive.)

2. The procedure for relativizing a noun (X) in a sentence (i.e., making a noun phrase consisting of a relative clause and X as the modified noun) consists of several steps. The following steps show how to relativize *sutēki* "steak" in (1a).

Step 1: Delete the noun to relativize. ([ ] indicates the boundary of the relative clause.)

(2) [カレンは~~ステーキ~~を食べました] ステーキ
[Karen wa ~~sutēki~~ o tabemashita] sutēki

Step 2: Delete the particle that remains.

(3) [カレンは~~を~~食べました] ステーキ
[Karen wa ~~o~~ tabemashita] sutēki

Step 3: Change the predicate into the noun modification form. (For verbs and *i*-adjectives, change the polite forms into the corresponding plain forms. For *na*-adjectives and noun, see Formation.)

(4) [カレンは**食べた**] ステーキ
*[Karen wa **tabeta**] sutēki*

Step 4: If the clause contains a topic (i.e., X *wa*) and it is the subject, change *wa* to *ga*. (⇒ ***ga***[1]; ***wa***)

(5) [カレン**が**食べた] ステーキ
*[Karen **ga** tabeta] sutēki*
(the steak that Karen ate)

If the clause contains a topic in the form of "X Prt *wa*," simply delete *wa*. For example, if *eigakan* "movie theater" is relativized in (6a), *wa* is simply deleted in the relative clause in (6b).

(6) a. この建物**には**映画館があります。
*Kono tatemono **ni wa** eigakan ga arimasu.*
(There is a movie theater in this building.)

b. [この建物に~~は~~ある] 映画館
*[kono tatemono **ni** ~~wa~~ aru] eigakan*
(the movie theater in this building (lit., the movie theater that exists in this building))

If the clause contains "X *wa*" and it is not the subject, it is not a topic but a contrastive element. In this case, *wa* remains in the relative clause. For example, if *hito* "person" is relativized in (7a), *wa* after *niku* "meat" remains in the relative clause, as in (7b).

(7) a. その人は肉**は**食べません。
*Sono hito wa niku **wa** tabemasen.*
(That person does not eat meat.)

b. [肉は食べない] 人
*[niku **wa** tabenai] hito*
(the person who does not eat meat)

3. As seen in the procedure for relativization in Note 2, the relative clause construction in Japanese has several characteristics:

   (i) Relative clauses precede the modified nouns.

   (ii) There are no relative pronouns like *which*, *that* and *who* in English.

   (iii) Particles that were affixed to relativized nouns are deleted.

   (iv) The topic marker *wa* does not appear in relative clauses. (Note that *wa* does appear in relative clauses if it marks a contrastive element, as seen in (7b) in Note 2.)

4. The particle *ga* in relative clauses can be replaced by *no*, as in (8).

   (8) a. カレン{**が / の**}食べたステーキ
   *Karen {**ga / no**} tabeta sutēki*
   (the steak that Karen ate)

   b. 飛行機{**が / の**}嫌いな人
   *hikōki {**ga / no**} kirai na hito*
   (people who don't like planes)

   However, *no* cannot be used in place of *ga* if *no* changes the meaning of the clause. For example, if the subject of the sentence is followed by a noun, the use of *no* changes the meaning of the clause, as in (9).

   (9) a. イアン**が**コンサートのチケットをあげた女の子
   *Ian **ga** konsāto no chiketto o ageta onna no ko*
   (the girl to whom Ian gave a concert ticket)

   b. イアン**の**コンサートのチケットをあげた女の子
   *Ian **no** konsāto no chiketto o ageta onna no ko*
   (the girl to whom (someone) gave {a ticket for Ian's concert / Ian's ticket for a concert})

Another situation in which *no* cannot be used in place of *ga* is when "X *ga*" is distant from the main predicate (i.e., the verb), as in (10).

(10) a. 真希**が**昨日新宿のレストランで食べたパスタ
*Maki **ga** kinō Shinjuku no resutoran de tabeta pasuta*
(the pasta that Maki ate at a restaurant in Shinjuku yesterday)

b. ??真希**の**昨日新宿のレストランで食べたパスタ
??*Maki **no** kinō Shinjuku no resutoran de tabeta pasuta*

5. As seen in Note 2, in general, in the relative clause construction, the relativized noun (= the modified noun) is part of the original sentence from which the relative clause was derived. However, there are instances whose modified nouns are not part of the original sentences in spite of the fact that they look like the relative clause construction. For example, in (11), the modified noun is *nioi* "smell," but there is no original sentence containing *nioi* from which (11) is derived.

(11) 魚がこげるにおい
sakana ga kogeru nioi
(the smell of burning fish (lit., the smell that fish burns))

As seen in the example in (11), in Japanese, a "clause + noun" construction can be used if the noun (e.g., *nioi* in (11)) refers to something that is brought about as the result of the action or event represented by the clause (e.g., *sakana ga kogeru* in (11)). Note that in this case, the noun is not part of the orginal sentence from which the clause was derived. (12) provides more examples of this kind.

(12) a. だれかがろうかを走る音
dare-ka ga rōka o hashiru oto
(the sound of someone running in the hall (lit., the sound that someone runs in the hall))

b. ゴミを燃やしたけむり
gomi o moyashita kemuri
(the smoke that came out when someone burned the trash (lit., the smoke that someone burned the trash))

c. 山に登った疲れ
yama ni nobotta tsukare
(fatigue that was caused from climbing a mountain (lit., fatigue that (someone) climbed a mountain))

R

6. In relative clauses in Japanese, the restrictive use and the non-restrictive use cannot be distinguished from the structure. It is usually determined from the context and/or the situation. The following examples are ambiguous with no context.

(13) a. 私が日本語を教えたパーマーさんはよく勉強する。
Watashi ga nihongo o oshieta Pāmā-san wa yoku benkyō-suru.
((A) Palmer-san, to whom I taught Japanese, studies hard. (B) (Among those Palmers we know) the Palmer-san to whom I taught Japanese studies hard.)

b. よく働く日本人は嫌われる。
Yoku hataraku nihonjin wa kirawareru.
((A) Japanese people, who work hard, are hated. (B) Japanese people who work hard are hated.)

7. The ease of relativization of a noun in a sentence differs depending on the particle that marks the noun and the content of the sentence. More specifically, the relativization of a noun in a sentence is easy when the noun is marked by *ga*, *o*, *ni* (except for *ni*[5] (purpose)), *e* or *de*[1] (location of an action/event), as in (14)–(24).

(14) *Ga*

a. その友達が私のケーキを食べた。 ***Sono tomodachi ga** watashi no kēki o tabeta.* (That friend ate my cake.)	私のケーキを食べた**友達** *watashi no kēki o tabeta **tomodachi*** (the friend who ate my cake)
b. 私はそのセーターが好きだ。 *Watashi wa **sono sētā ga** suki da.* (I like that sweater.)	私{が / の}好きな**セーター** *watashi{ga / no}suki na **sētā*** (the sweater I like)

(15) *O*[1] (direct object)

妹はそのケーキを焼いた。 *Imōto wa **sono kēki o** yaita.* (My younger sister baked that cake.)	妹が焼いた**ケーキ** *imōto ga yaita **kēki*** (the cake my younger sister baked)

(16) *O*[2] (space)

私はその公園を歩いた。 *Watashi wa **sono kōen o** aruita.* (I walked in that park.)	私が歩いた**公園** *watashi ga aruita **kōen*** (the park where I walked)

R

(17) *O*[3] (detachment)

スティーブはその大学を卒業した。 *Sutību wa **sono daigaku o** sotsugyō-shita.* (Steve graduated from that university.)	スティーブが卒業した**大学** *Sutību ga sotsugyō-shita **daigaku*** (the university from which Steve graduated)

(18) *Ni*[1] (time)

私はその日に東京に行った。 *Watashi wa **sono hi ni** Tōkyō ni itta.* (I went to Tokyo that day.)	私が東京に行った**日** *watashi ga Tōkyō ni itta **hi*** (the day when I went to Tokyo)

(19) *Ni*[2] (indirect object)

ローラは**その友達に**プレゼントをあげた。 *Rōra wa **sono tomodachi ni** purezento o ageta.* (Laura gave that friend a present.)	ローラがプレゼントをあげた**友達** *Rōra ga purezento o ageta **tomodachi*** (the friend Laura gave a present)

(20) *Ni*[3] (souce / agent)

私は**その先生に**しかられた。 *Watashi wa **sono sensei ni** shikarareta.* (I was scolded by the teacher.)	私がしかられた**先生** *watashi ga shikarareta **sensei*** (the teacher by whom I was scolded)

(21) *Ni*[4] (direct contact)

リンは**その紙に**イラストを描いた。 *Rin wa **sono kami ni** irasuto o kaita.* (Lynn drew an illustration on that paper.)	リンがイラストを描いた**紙** *Rin ga irasuto o kaita **kami*** (the paper on which Lynn drew an illustration)

(22) *Ni*[6] (location of existence)

森本さんは**そのコーヒーショップに**いた。 *Morimoto-san wa **sono kōhī-shoppu ni** ita.* (Morimoto-san was in that coffee shop.)	森本さんがいた**コーヒーショップ** *Morimoto-san ga ita **kōhī-shoppu*** (the coffee shop where Morimoto-san was)

(23) *Ni*[7] / *E* (direction)

かおりは友達と**その公園**｛**に**／**へ**｝行った。 *Kaori wa tomodachi to **sono kōen** {**ni** / **e**} itta.* (Kaori went to that park with her friend.)	かおりが友達と行った**公園** *Kaori ga tomodachi to itta **kōen*** (the park Kaori went to with her friend)

(24) *De*[1] (location of an action/event)

私はいつも**その図書館で**勉強している。 *Watashi wa itsumo **sono toshokan de** benkyō-shite iru.* (I always study in that library.)	私がいつも勉強している**図書館** *watashi ga itsumo benkyō-shite iru **toshokan*** (the library where I always study)

R

Relativization is difficult when the noun is marked by *kara*[1] (starting point), *de*[3] (cause) or *yori*. With the other particles, including *de*[2] (instrument; medium; material), *kara*[1] (source) and *to*[2] (reciprocal relation), the ease of relativization of the preceding noun depends on the context and/or situation.

[Related Expression]

The appositive clause construction also has a "clause + noun" structure, in which the clause explains the specific content of the noun that follows, as in [1] and [2].

(⇒ **Grammatical Terms**: Appositive Clause)

[1] 日本へ行く{計画 / 考え / 夢}
Nihon e iku{keikaku / kangae / yume}
(a plan to go to Japan / an idea of going to Japan / a dream about going to Japan)

[2] 日本で英語を教えた{事実 / 経験 / 思い出}
Nihon de eigo o oshieta{jijitsu / keiken / omoide}
(the fact that (I) taught English in Japan / (my) experience in teaching English in Japan / (my) memory of having taught English in Japan)

However, the appositive construction is different from the relative clause construction in the following ways:

(i) With a noun phrase consisting of a relative clause and a noun, there is a sentence from which the noun phrase was derived, except for the type of relative clauses explained in Note 5. For example, it is considered that (5) in Note 2 was derived from a sentence like (1a) in Note 1. (5) and (1a) are provided as [3a] and [3b], respectively.

[3] a. [カレンが食べた] ステーキ (= (5))
[Karen ga tabeta] sutēki
(the steak that Karen ate)

b. カレンはステーキを食べました。(= (1a))
Karen wa sutēki o tabemashita.
(Karen ate a steak.)

Note that [3b] contains the modified noun in the noun phrase in [3a] as an element. On the other hand, with a noun phrase consisting of an appositive clause and a noun, there is no sentence from which the noun phrase was derived.

R

(ii) Semantically, an appositive clause represents a specific content of the following noun. For example, in [1], *Nihon e iku* "(I) will go to Japan" is the specific content of *keikaku* "plan." However, this type of semantic relationship does not exist between a relative clause and the following noun. For example, in [3a], *Karen ga tabeta* "Karen ate" is not the specific content of *stēki* "steak."

-sa さ *suf.*

a suffix that makes a noun out of an adjective

-ness; -ty
【REL. *-mi*】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)				
	Adj(*i*)stem			
このアパートの	広	さ	は	ちょうどいい / いいです。
Kono apāto no	***hiro***	*-sa*	*wa*	*chōdo ii / iidesu.*
(The size of this apartment is just right.)				

Formation

(i) Adj(*i*)stem さ
-sa

高い → 高さ (height)
takai *taka-sa*

Exception: いい → よさ
ii *yo-sa* (good point; merit; charm)

(ii) Adj(*na*) さ
-sa

静か → 静かさ (quietness)
shizuka *shizuka-sa*

Examples

(a) 富士山の高さはどのぐらいですか。
Fujisan no taka-sa wa dono gurai desu ka.
(What is the approximate height of Mt. Fuji?)

(b) 外国生活の難しさは実際に経験してみないとなかなか分からない。
Gaikoku-seikatsu no muzukashi-sa wa jissai ni keiken-shite minai to naka-naka wakaranai.
(You can hardly understand how difficult living abroad is (lit., the difficulty of living abroad) without actually experiencing it.)

(c) アメリカのよさの１つはパイオニア・スピリットでしょう。
Amerika no yo-sa no hito-tsu wa paionia-supiritto deshō.
(One of America's good qualities is perhaps its pioneering spirit.)

(d) スマホの便利さが危険なこともある。
Sumaho no benri-sa ga kiken na koto mo aru.
(There are times when the convenience of smartphones brings about dangers.)

Notes

1. The suffix *-**sa*** makes a noun out of an adjective. Some typical examples are given below.

(1) 大きさ (size) *ōki-**sa***	新しさ (newness; freshness) *atarashi-**sa***
速さ (speed) *haya-**sa***	強さ (strength) *tsuyo-**sa***
長さ (length) *naga-**sa***	よさ (good point; advantage; merit) *yo-**sa***
高さ (height) *taka-**sa***	重さ (weight) *omo-**sa***

2. The suffix *-**sa*** cannot be used with all *na*-adjectives. The *na*-adjectives that commonly occur with *-**sa*** include the following.

(2) 便利さ (convenience) *benri-**sa***	正確さ (accuracy) *seikaku-**sa***
大切さ (importance) *taisetsu-**sa***	大変さ (difficulty) *taihen-**sa***
まじめさ (seriousness) *majime-**sa***	にぎやかさ (liveliness) *nigiyaka-**sa***

The following are examples of the *na*-adjectives that are not commonly used with *-sa*.

(3) 有名 (famous) *yūmei*	大丈夫 (all right) *daijōbu*	いろいろ (various) *iroiro*
変 (strange) *hen*	得意 (be good at) *tokui*	苦手 (be bad at) *nigate*
安全 (safe) *anzen*	幸せ (happy) *shiawase*	親切 (kind) *shinsetsu*

Na-adjectives that end with *-teki* are usually not used with *-sa*. They are used with the suffix *-sei* instead:

(4) × 経済的さ × *keizaiteki-sa*	→	経済**性** (economicalness; economy) *keizai-**sei***
× 社会的さ × *shakaiteki-sa*	→	社会**性** (sociality) *shakai-**sei***

× 一般的さ → 一般**性** (generality)
× *ippanteki-sa* *ippan-**sei***

× 国際的さ → 国際**性** (internationality)
× *kokusaiteki-sa* *kokusai-**sei***

3. *Nai*, the negative form of *aru*, is an *i*-adjective in terms of its conjugation pattern, and *-sa* can be attached to it (i.e., *nai* → *na-sa* "lack"). (5) provides some examples.

(5) a. 自信の**なさ** (lack of confidence; insecurity)
*jishin no **na-sa***

b. やる気の**なさ** (lack of enthusiasm; lack of drive)
*yaruki no **na-sa***

4. When an adjective can be paired with another adjectival antonym as in *ōkii* "large" vs. *chīsai* "small," the positive counterpart (i.e., *ōkii*) tends to acquire a meaning of absolute degree when *-sa* is attached, as in *ōki-sa* "size." The following table provide examples.

Positive	Negative
大きさ (size) *ōki-**sa***	小ささ (smallness) *chīsa-**sa***
広さ (size of space) *hiro-**sa***	狭さ (smallness of space) *sema-**sa***
長さ (length) *naga-**sa***	短さ (shortness) *mijika-**sa***
高さ (height) *taka-**sa***	低さ (lowness) *hiku-**sa***
深さ (depth) *fuka-**sa***	浅さ (shallowness) *asa-**sa***
厚さ (thickness of a flat object) *atsu-**sa***	薄さ (thinness of a flat object) *usu-**sa***
太さ (thickness of a long, roundish object) *futo-**sa***	細さ (thinness of a long, roundish object) *hoso-**sa***
重さ (weight) *omo-**sa***	軽さ (lightness) *karu-**sa***
固さ (hardness) *kata-**sa***	柔らかさ (softness) *yawaraka-**sa***
強さ (strength) *tsuyo-**sa***	弱さ (weakness) *yowa-**sa***

速さ (speed) *haya-**sa***	遅さ (slowness) *oso-**sa***
明るさ (brightness) *akaru-**sa***	暗さ (darkness) *kura-**sa***
難しさ (difficulty) *muzukashi-**sa***	やさしさ (easiness) *yasashi-**sa***

【Related Expression】

-mi is another suffix that changes an adjective into a noun. *-mi* is used with the stems of a limited number of *i*-adjectives. Very few *na*-adjectives occur with *-mi*. [1] and [2] provide examples.

[1] *I*-adjective + *mi*

強み (strength) *tsuyo-**mi***	弱み (weakness) *yowa-**mi***
悲しみ (sorrow) *kanashi-**mi***	苦しみ (suffering) *kurushi-**mi***
甘み (sweetness) *ama-**mi***	苦み (bitterness) *niga-**mi***
厚み (thickness) *atsu-**mi***	赤み (reddishness) *aka-**mi***
暖かみ (warmth) *atataka-**mi***	深み (depth; richness) *fuka-**mi***

[2] *Na*-adjective + *mi*

真剣み (seriousness) *shinken-**mi***	憐れみ (pity; compassion) *aware-**mi***

S

In general, an adjective with *-sa* describes a state in an objective manner (e.g., *chiisa-sa* "smallness," *hiku-sa* "lowness") or denotes the degree of a state (e.g., *ōki-sa* "size," *taka-sa* "height"), while an adjective with *-mi* represents a concrete and/or emotive aspect of a state based primarily on direct perception. Thus, in [3] and [4], for example, *-mi* is used, but *-sa* is unacceptable.

[3] あの人は{おもしろ**み** / ×おもしろ**さ**}がないね。
*Ano hito wa{ omoshiro-**mi** / × omoshiro-**sa**} ga nai ne.*
(He just lacks something that attracts people.)

[4] 彼に{弱**み** / ×弱**さ**}を見せないように気をつけています。
*Kare ni{ yowa-**mi** / × yowa-**sa**} o misenai yō ni ki o tsukete imasu.*
(I'm careful not to reveal my soft spot to him.)

-sama 様 *suf.*

a suffix that indicates the speaker's/writer's politeness toward s.o.

Mr.; Miss; Ms.; Mrs.
【REL. *-chan*; *-san*】

Examples

(a) 下村様、お待たせしました。[At a bank]
Shimomura-sama, o-matase shimashita.
(Thank you for waiting, Mr./Ms. Shimomura. (lit., We made you wait, Mr./Ms. Shimomura.))

(b) 王様の耳はろばの耳だ。
Ō-sama no mimi wa roba no mimi da.
(The King's ears are donkey's ears.)

(c) 神様を信じますか。
Kami-sama o shinjimasu ka.
(Do you believe in God?)

Notes

1. *-sama* after a personal name shows the speaker's/writer's respect or politeness toward that person. A personal name + *sama* is usually not used in conversational Japanese except when clerks or attendants of hotels, banks, high-class restaurants, etc. talk to their guests and customers.

2. *-sama* is commonly used after the addressee's name in letters, emails, etc.

   (1) 内田直人**様** 川村美和**様**
   *Uchida Naoto-**sama*** *Kawamura Miwa-**sama***
   (Mr. Naoto Uchida) (Ms. Miwa Kawamura)

3. *-sama* attached to a personified object shows more endearment than respect, as in (2).

   (2) [Talking to a child]
   舞ちゃん、今夜はお月**様**もお星**様**もきれいねえ。
   *Mai-chan, kon'ya wa o-tsuki-**sama** mo o-hoshi-**sama** mo kirei nē.*
   (Mai, aren't the moon and the stars beautiful tonight!)

4. *-sama* is also attached to some action or state related to the listener, as in (3).

   (3) a. [After finishing a meal]
   ごちそう**様**(でした)。
   *Gochisō-**sama** (deshita).*
   (Thank you for the meal. (lit., It was such a treat.))

b. [In thanking someone for his/her help]
お世話**様**でした。
*O-sewa-**sama** deshita.*
(Thank you for all that you've done for me.)

c. [Showing sympathy for the listener or someone mentioned]
お気の毒**様**でした。
*O-ki no doku-**sama** deshita.*
((That's too bad. (lit., It was a pitiful matter.))

d. [To a colleage who's going home after work]
お疲れ**様**(でした)。
*O-tsukare-**sama** (deshita).*
(lit., You must be very tired.)

e. [In response to the question: *Ikaga desu ka.* (How are you?)]
おかげ**様**で元気です。
*Okage-**sama** de genki desu.*
(I'm fine, thank you. (lit., Thanks to you, I'm fine.))

[Related Expressions]

I. *-san*, which was derived from *-sama* through phonetic modifications, is the informal version of *-sama* and therefore is less polite and more intimate than *-sama*. Except for Exs.(b) and (c), in which the highest superiors appear, *-sama* can be replaced by *-san*. *-san* can also be attached to the names of shops, occupations and titles, as well as kinship terms, as in [1]–[4].

[1] Shop + *san*

花屋さん (florist shop; florist)	本屋さん (bookstore; bookstore owner)
*hana-ya-**san***	*hon-ya-**san***
パン屋さん (bakery; baker)	肉屋さん (butcher shop; butcher)
*pan-ya-**san***	*niku-ya-**san***

[2] Occupation + *san*

お医者さん (doctor)	看護師さん (nurse)
*o-isha-**san***	*kangoshi-**san***
(お)坊さん (buddist monk)	弁護士さん (lawyer)
*(o-)bō-**san***	*bengoshi-**san***

[3] Title + *san*

市長さん (mayor)	社長さん (company president)
*shichō-**san***	*shachō-**san***

[4] Kinship term + *san*

お父さん (father)	お母さん (mother)
***o-tō**san*	***o-kā**san*
お兄さん (elder brother)	お姉さん (elder sister)
***o-nī**san*	***o-nē**san*
おじいさん (grandfather)	おばあさん (grandmother)
***o-jī**san*	***o-bā**san*
おじさん (uncle)	おばさん (aunt)
oji-san	***oba-san***

II. Another derived form is *-chan*, which is commonly used with children's first names and kinship terms, as in [5] and [6]. Kinship terms with *-chan* are usually used by young children.

[5] (Part of) first name + *chan*

理子ちゃん (Riko)	健ちゃん (Ken)
Riko-chan	***Ken-chan***

[6] Kinship term + *chan*

お父ちゃん (daddy)	お母ちゃん (mommy)
o-tō-chan	***o-kā-chan***
おじいちゃん (grandpa)	おばあちゃん (grandma)
o-jī-chan	***o-bā-chan***
おじちゃん (uncle)	おばちゃん (auntie)
oji-chan	***oba-chan***

～saseru　～させる　　*verb ending (Gr. 2)*

cause s.o./s.t. to do s.t. or cause s.t. to happen

make s.o./s.t. do s.t.; cause s.o./s.t. to do s.t.; let s.o./s.t. do s.t.; allow s.o./s.t. to do s.t.; have s.o./s.t. do s.t.; get s.o./s.t. to do s.t.

S

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (causer)		Causee		Direct Object		Transitive Verb (causative)
私	は	娘	に	ピアノ	を	習わせた / 習わせました。
Watashi	*wa*	*musume*	*ni*	*piano*	*o*	***narawa**seta* / ***narawa**semashita.*
(I made/let my daughter take piano lessons.)						

(B)

Topic (causer)		Causee			Intransitive Verb (causative)
小田さん *Oda-san*	は *wa*	子供 *kodomo*	を / に *o / ni*	外国の大学に *gaikoku no daigaku ni*	行かせた / 行かせました。 ***ika**seta / **ika**semashita.*
(Oda-san made/let his child go to a foreign university.)					

Formation

Type 1:

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg せる
seru

話させる (cause s.o. to talk)
hanasaseru

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem させる
saseru

食べさせる (cause s.o. to eat)
tabesaseru

(iii) Irr. verbs:
来る → 来させる (cause s.o. to come)
kuru *kosaseru*

する → させる (cause s.o. to do)
suru *saseru*

Type 2:

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Vneg す
su

話さす (cause s.o. to talk)
hanasasu

S

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem さす
sasu

食べさす (cause s.o. to eat)
tabesasu

(iii) Irr. verbs:
来る → 来さす (cause s.o. to come)
kuru *kosasu*

する → さす (cause s.o. to do)
suru *sasu*

Type 1 causative verbs are all Gr. 2 verbs, and Type 2 causative verbs are all Gr. 1 verbs. The basic conjugations are as follows:

Dictionary form	話す *hanasu*	食べる *taberu*	来る *kuru*	する *suru*
Type 1 causative (Gr. 2)				
Plain, non-past, affirmative	話させる *hanasaseru*	食べさせる *tabesaseru*	来させる *kosaseru*	させる *saseru*
Plain, non-past, negative	話させない *hanasasenai*	食べさせない *tabesasenai*	来させない *kosasenai*	させない *sasenai*
Polite non-past, affirmative	話させます *hanasasemasu*	食べさせます *tabesasemasu*	来させます *kosasemasu*	させます *sasemasu*
Plain, past, affirmative	話させた *hanasaseta*	食べさせた *tabesaseta*	来させた *kosaseta*	させた *saseta*
Te-form	話させて *hanasasete*	食べさせて *tabesasete*	来させて *kosasete*	させて *sasete*
Type 2 causative (Gr. 1)				
Plain, non-past, affirmative	話さす *hanasasu*	食べさす *tabesasu*	来さす *kosasu*	さす *sasu*
Plain, non-past, negative	話ささない *hanasasanai*	食べささない *tabesasanai*	来ささない *kosasanai*	ささない *sasanai*
Polite non-past, affirmative	話さします *hanasashimasu*	食べさします *tabesashimasu*	来さします *kosashimasu*	さします *sashimasu*
Plain, past, affirmative	話さした *hanasashita*	食べさした *tabesashita*	来さした *kosashita*	さした *sashita*
Te-form	話さして *hanasashite*	食べさして *tabesashite*	来さして *kosashite*	さして *sashite*

Examples

(a) 友達は私にチップを払わせた。
Tomodachi wa watashi ni chippu o harawaseta.
(My friend made me leave (lit., pay) a tip.)

(b) コーチは選手たちを夜遅くまで練習させた。
Kōchi wa senshu-tachi o yoru osoku made renshū-saseta.
(The coach made the players practice until late at night.)

(c) お母さんは子供たちに好きなだけアイスクリームを食べさせました。
O-kāsan wa kodomo-tachi ni suki na dake aisukurīmu o tabesasemashita.
(The mother let her children eat as much ice cream as they liked.)

(d) この仕事は私にさせてください。
Kono shigoto wa watashi ni sasete kudasai.
(As for this job, let me do it.)

(e) みそは大豆を発酵させて作ります。
Miso wa daizu o hakkō-sasete tsukurimasu.
(We make miso by fermenting soybeans (lit., by causing soybeans to ferment).)

Notes

1. The basic idea that the causative construction expresses is that someone (= the causer) causes or allows someone (= the causee) to do something or that someone causes something to happen. Specific situations this construction can express include the following.
(The order is according to the degree of the causer's direct involvement in the action of causing someone to do something or causing something to happen. In (A), the causer's involvement is none, and in (G), it is maximum.)

(A) Someone has no control over an event. [Uncontrollable]

(1) a. 私は息子を戦争で**死なせた**。
*Watashi wa musuko o sensō de **shinaseta**.*
(I lost my son in the war. (lit., I had my son die in the war.))

b. 豆腐を**腐らせて**しまった。
*Tōfu o **kusarasete** shimatta.*
(I spoiled the tofu. (lit., I got the tofu to go bad.))

c. 真里子は肩を**震わせて**泣いた。
*Mariko wa kata o **furuwasete** naita.*
(Mariko cried with her shoulders shaking.)

S

In these examples, the causer has no control over the event and has no intention to cause it. In many cases, the causer is negatively affected by the event (e.g., (1a) and (1b)). (1c) is an example in which the event involves the causeer's spontaneous bodily reaction to something. In this case, the causer is not necessarily negatively affected.

(B) Someone leaves someone to do something or leaves something so that something happens. [Hands-off]

(2) a. とても疲れているようなので、正人は由美を静かに**寝かせて**おいた。
*Totemo tsukarete iru yō na node, Masato wa Yumi o shizuka ni **nekasete** oita.*
(Because Yumi looked very tired, Masato left her to sleep quietly.)

b. 私はわざと植木を**枯れさせた**。
*Watashi wa waza to ueki o **karesaseta**.*
(I killed the tree on purpose. (lit., I intentionally made the tree die.))

Like the uncontrollable situations in (1), the causer does not act on the causee in "hands-off" situations. The difference is that in "hands-off" situations, the causer could do something to stop the event from happening if he/she wanted. In other words, the causer's doing nothing is intentional.

(C) Someone allows someone to do something. [Permissive]

(3) 娘がピアノを習いたいと言うので、私は彼女にピアノを**習わせた**。
*Musume ga piano o narai-tai to iu node, watashi wa kanojo ni piano o **narawaseta**.*
(Because my daughter said she wanted to take piano lessons, I let her take piano lessons.)

Exs.(c) and (d) are also examples of permissive causative sentences. Causative sentences with giving/receiving verbs are always permissive causative. (See Note 5.) In permissive causative situations, the causer is more involved in that he/she gives the causee permission to do something, e.g., by saying "you can eat it as much as you want" or even by finding a piano teacher for the causee.

(D) Someone does something so that something happens. [Manipulative]

(4) 薬が安全かどうかを心配している人たちに詳しい説明をして**安心させた**。
*Kusuri ga anzen ka dō ka o shinpai-shite iru hito-tachi ni kuwashii setsumei o shite **anshin-saseta**.*
(I relieved the people (lit., made the people feel relieved) who were anxious about the safety of the drug (lit., who were worrying whether the drug was safe or not) by giving them a detailed explanation.)

Ex.(e) is also an example of this category. In manipulative situations, the causer is involved, but the causee's action is not voluntary. Manipulative situations include those in which the causee is non-human, as in Ex.(e).

(E) Someone directs someone to do something. [Directive]

(5) 先生は遠慮している学生をいすに**座らせた**。
*Sensei wa enryo-shite iru gakusei o isu ni **suwaraseta**.*
(The teacher directed the hesitant student to sit on the chair.)

In directive situations, the causer is more directly involved in the causee's action than in the situations in (D). Situations in which the causer encourages or persuades the causee to do something also belong to this category.

(F) Someone assists someone in doing something. [Assistive]

(6) 看護師は患者にご飯を**食べさせた**。
*Kangoshi wa kanja ni gohan o **tabesaseta**.*
(The nurse fed the patient (lit., got the patient to eat).)

In assistive situations, the causer is involved in helping the causee do something while the causee is doing nothing or very little.

(G) Someone makes someone do something. [Coercive]

(7) 息子は大学に行きたくないと言ったが、私は彼を大学に**行かせた**。
*Musuko wa daigaku ni iki-takunai to itta ga, watashi wa kare o daigaku ni **ikaseta**.*
(My son said that he didn't want to go to college, but I made him go to college.)

Exs.(a) and (b) are also examples of this category. Causative-passive sentences always express coercive causative. (See Note 7.)

2. In the causative construction, the causer is usually marked by *wa* in main clauses and by *ga* in subordinate clauses. (8) shows an example in which the causer is marked by *ga*.

(8) 早田さん**が**子供をスポーツクラブに行かせているので、私もそうしようと思う。
*Hayata-san **ga** kodomo o supōtsu-kurabu ni ikasete iru node, watashi mo sō shiyō to omou.*
(Because Hayata-san made her child go to a sports club, I think I'll do the same.)

3. The way the causee is marked differs depdending on whether the verb is transitive or intransitive. When the verb is transitive, the causee is always marked by *ni*, as in KS(A), and when the verb is intransitive, the causee is marked by either *o* or *ni*, as in KS(B).

S

When the verb is transitive, the causee can be marked only by *ni*, as in (9). This is because *o* cannot appear more than once in a clause and, in this case, there is already a direct object marked by *o* in the clause. (⇒ ***o***[1])

(9) 私は娘｛**に** / × **を**｝ピアノを習わせた。(= KS(A))
*Watashi wa musume ｛**ni** / × **o**｝ piano o narawaseta.*
(I made/let my daughter take piano lessons.)

4. When the verb is intransitive, *ni* is preferred when the causee has willingly taken the action. For example, in situations like (10), *ni* is not as natural as *o*.

(10) 小田さんは子供｛**を** / ?**に**｝無理やり外国の大学に行かせた。(cf. KS(B))
Oda-san wa kodomo ｛***o*** / ?***ni***｝ *muriyari gaikoku no daigaku ni ikase-ta.*
(Oda-san forced his child to go (lit., forcefully made his child go) to a foreign university.)

Note that when the causee's action is not volitional, *ni* is ungrammatical, as in (11a) and (11b), which also indicates that the choice between *ni* and *o* depends on the causee's willingness or volition.

(11) a. 私の離婚は母｛**を** / ×**に**｝悲しませた。
Watashi no rikon wa haha ｛***o*** / ×***ni***｝ *kanashimaseta.*
(My divorce saddened my mother (lit., made my mother sad).)

b. 私はハンカチ｛**を** / ×**に**｝しめらせた。
Watashi wa hankachi ｛***o*** / ×***ni***｝ *shimeraseta.*
(I dampened my handkerchief (lit., made my handkerchief get damp).)

O, on the other hand, can be used regardless of the causee's willingness or volition, as seen in (12).

(12) a. 私は嫌がる息子｛**を** / ?**に**｝無理やり泳がせた。
Watashi wa iya-garu musuko ｛***o*** / ?***ni***｝ *muriyari oyogaseta.*
(lit,. I forced my son, who resisted swimming, to swim.)

b. 私は息子｛**を** / **に**｝好きなだけ泳がせた。
Watashi wa musuko ｛***o*** / ***ni***｝ *suki na dake oyogaseta.*
(I let my son swim as much as he wanted.)

5. Causative verbs are often used with giving-receiving verbs, as in (13)–(15).

(13) 私は病気で休んだ友達に私の講義ノートを**コピーさせてあげた**。
Watashi wa byōki de yasunda tomodachi ni watashi no kōgi-nōto o ***kopī-sasete ageta.***
(I let my friend, who missed the class because of illness, photo-copy my lecture notes.)

(14) 両親は私を私立の大学に**行かせてくれた**。
Ryōshin wa watashi o shiritsu no daigaku ni ***ikasete kureta.***
(My parents sent me (lit., let me go) to a private college.)

(15) では、発表を**始めさせていただきます**。
Dewa, happyō o ***hajimesasete itadakimasu.***
(Now, I'd like to begin my presentation. (lit., I'm going to have you let me begin my presentation.))

As shown in the above examples, in causative sentences with giving-receiving verbs, the situation is always permissive causative, i.e., the causee is always willing to perform the action. (⇒ ***ageru***[2]; ***kureru***[2]; ***morau***[2])

6. In causative sentences, the causer should be equal to or higher than the causee in terms of status. Thus, the following sentence is unacceptable if it is used by one of the teacher's students.

   (16) ×**私は先生**{に / を}パーティーに来させるつもりだ。
   × ***Watashi*** *wa* ***sensei*** {*ni / o*} *pātī ni kosaseru tsumori da.*
   (*Intended meaning*: I'm going to let (or make) my teacher come to the party.)

7. Causative-passive forms are used in the causative-passive construction. There are two types of causative-passive forms. Type 1 causative-passive forms are constructed by affixing the passive ending *rareru* to the stems of Type 1 causative forms (e.g., *nomase* of *nomaseru*, *tabesase* of *tabesaseru*). Type 2 causative-passive forms are constructed by affixing the passive ending *reru* to the negative stems of the Type 2 causative forms (e.g., *nomasa* of *nomasa-nai*). Note that in standard dialect Type 2 causative-passive forms are used only for Gr. 1 verbs, which means that forms like *tabesasareru* "be made to eat," *kosasareru* "be made to come," *sasareru* "be made to do" are not used. The following table summarizes the two types of causative and causative-passive forms.

Type 1

	Causative	Causative-passive
飲む *nomu*	飲ませる (make/let s.o. drink) *nomaseru*	飲ませ**られる** (be made to drink) *nomase**rareru***
食べる *taberu*	食べさせる (make/let s.o. eat) *tabesaseru*	食べさせ**られる** (be made to eat) *tabesase**rareru***
来る *kuru*	来させる (make/let s.o. come) *kosaseru*	来させ**られる** (be made to come) *kosase**rareru***
する *suru*	させる (make/let s.o. do) *saseru*	させ**られる** (be made to do) *sase**rareru***

Type 2

	Causative	Causative-passive
飲む *nomu*	飲ます (make/let s.o. drink) *nomasu*	飲ま**される** (be made to drink) *nomasa**reru***
食べる *taberu*	食べさす (make/let s.o. eat) *tabesasu*	

来る *kuru*	来さす (make/let s.o. come) *kosasu*	
する *suru*	さす (make/let s.o. do) *sasu*	

Note also that Type 2 causative-passive forms are not used when the dictionary forms of verbs end with *su* (e.g., *hanasu* (talk), *sagasu* (search)).

		(Type 2 causative)	(causative-passive)
(17) a.	話す： *hanasu*	話さす *hanasasu*	×話さされる × *hanasasareru*
b.	探す： *sagasu*	探さす *sagasasu*	×探さされる × *sagasasareru*

(18) and (19) show causative sentences and their corresponding causative-passive sentences.

(18) a. 父は私を歩いて**帰らせた**。[Causative]
*Chichi wa watashi o aruite **kaeraseta**.*
(My father had me walk home.)

b. 私は父に歩いて{**帰らせられた / 帰らされた**}。[Causative-passive]
*Watashi wa chichi ni aruite {**kaeraserareta / kaerasareta**}.*
(My father made me walk home. (lit., I was made to walk home by my father.))

(19) a. 営業マンは私に高い車を**買わせた**。[Causative]
*Eigyōman wa watashi ni takai kuruma o **kawaseta**.*
(The salesperson made me buy an expensive car.)

b. 私は営業マンに高い車を{**買わせられた / 買わされた**}。[Causative-passive]
*Watashi wa eigyōman ni takai kuruma o {**kawaserareta / kawasareta**}.*
(I was made to buy an expensive car by the salesperson.)

Note that the causative-passive sentences do not express the idea of "be allowed to do something." In other words, the causee in causative-passive sentences is not willing to perform the action (i.e., coercive passive).

It is also noted that in causative sentences, Type 1 causative forms are more commonly used than Type 2 forms, while in causative-passive sentences, Type 2 causative-passive forms are more commonly used than Type 1 forms, although they are used only for Gr. 1 verbs.

sekkaku せっかく *adv.*

an adverb that indicates that the action was taken with effort or difficulty or that the occasion, skill, object, etc. is not easy to obtain or is precious

with (much) effort; with difficulty; at great expense; take the trouble to do s.t.; precious
【REL. *wazawaza*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Verb Phrase		
せっかく *Sekkaku*	チケットを**買った** *chiketto o **katta***	のに *noni*	コンサートがキャンセルになった / なりました。 *konsāto ga kyanseru ni natta / narimashita.*
(I took the trouble to get a ticket, but the concert was canceled.)			

(B)

Subordinate Clause				Main Clause
	Verb Phrase			
せっかく *Sekkaku*	いい大学に**入った** *ii daigaku ni **haitta***	のだ *no da*	から *kara*	しっかり勉強するつもりだ / です。 *shikkari benkyō-suru tsumori da / desu.*
(Because I entered a good college with great effort, I intend to study hard.)				

S

(C)

Subordinate Clause					Main Clause
		Noun			
せっかく *Sekkaku*	の *no*	**日曜日** ***nichiyōbi***	な *na*	のに *noni*	今日は仕事をしなければならない / なりません。 *kyō wa shigoto o shinakereba naranai / narimasen.*
(Although today is a precious Sunday, I have to work.)					

Formation

(i) せっかく VP{のに / のだから / ので / が}
sekkaku {*noni* / *no da kara* / *node* / *ga*}

せっかく車を買った{のに / のだから / ので / が}
sekkaku kuruma o katta {*noni* / *no da kara* / *node* / *ga*}
({In spite of the fact that / Because / Because / Although} s.o. bought a car with great effort)

(ii) せっかくの N
sekkaku no

せっかくの機会 (a precious opportunity)
sekkaku no kikai

Examples

(a) せっかく日本に行ったのに京都に行けなくて残念だった。
Sekkaku Nihon ni itta noni Kyōto ni ikenakute zannen datta.
(I went to Japan at great expense, but, to my regret, I couldn't make it to Kyoto.)

(b) せっかく日本語を３年間も勉強したのだから、ぜひ日本へ行ってみたいです。
Sekkaku nihongo o san-nenkan mo benkyō-shita no da kara, zehi Nihon e itte mi-tai desu.
(Because I studied Japanese for (as many as) three years, I'd really like to go to Japan.)

(c) せっかく来ていただきましたが、今日は担当者が休んでいます。
Sekkaku kite itadakimashita ga, kyō wa tantōsha ga yasunde imasu.
(Although you took the trouble to come here (for some business), the person in charge took a day off today.)

(d) せっかく京都まで来たので、ついでに奈良も観光することにした。
Sekkaku Kyōto made kita node, tsuide ni Nara mo kankō-suru koto ni shita.
(Because I took the trouble to come to as far as Kyoto, I've decided to sightsee Nara as well.)

(e) せっかくサインしてもらったCDをなくしてしまった。
Sekkaku sain-shite moratta shīdī o nakushite shimatta.
(I lost the CD I'd had (the performer) autograph.)

(f) せっかくの旅行が病気でだめになった。
Sekkaku no ryokō ga byōki de dame ni natta.
(My long-awaited trip had to be canceled because of my illness.)

(g) せっかくのチャンスだからデートしたらどうですか。
Sekkaku no chansu da kara dēto-shitara dō desu ka.
(It's a good chance, so why don't you date him?)

(h) あなたのせっかくのバイリンガルの能力を生かしてもらいたいです。
Anata no sekkaku no bairingaru no nōryoku o ikashite morai-taidesu.
(We'd like you to utilize your precious bilingual skills.)

(i) A: コンサートのチケットが２枚あるんですが、一緒に行きませんか。
Konsāto no chiketto ga ni-mai aru n desu ga, issho ni ikimasen ka.
(I have two tickets for a concert. Would you like to come with me (lit., go together)?)

B: せっかくですが、今日は忙しくて行けません。
Sekkaku desu ga, kyō wa isogashikute ikemasen.
(I appreciate your kind offer, but I'm busy today and cannot make it.)

(j) A: これ、京都のお菓子です。
Kore, Kyōto no o-kashi desu.
(This is (a box of) sweets from Kyoto.)

B: どうもすみません。じゃ、せっかくですから、遠慮なくいただきます。
Dōmo sumimasen. Ja, sekkaku desu kara, enryo naku itadakimasu.
(Thank you very much. Since you took the trouble to bring it to me, I'll take it without hesitation.)

Notes

1. Sentences with *sekkaku* generally convey the following ideas:

   (i) Someone did something with much effort or difficulty, or someone was given something that is not easy to obtain.

   (ii) Because of (i), someone makes a good use of this occasion, or despite (i), someone fails to make a good use of this occasion.

   Because of the above, when *sekkaku* is in subordinate clauses, the subordinate clauses are usually followed by *noni* "in spite of the fact that ~," *no da kara* "because (it is that) ~," *node* "because" or *ga* "although" or "but," as in KSs(A)–(C) and Exs.(a)–(d).

S

2. *Sekkaku* is commonly used to modify either verb phrases, as in KSs(A) and (B), or nouns, as in KS(C). When *sekkaku* modifies nouns, *no* is necessary after *sekkaku*. *Sekkaku* can also modify adjective phrases, as in (1) and (2), but this structure is not as common as those with verb phrases and nouns.

   (1) せっかく高校の成績がよかったのに、アレックスは大学に行かなかった。
   Sekkaku *kōkō no seiseki ga yokatta noni, Arekkusu wa daigaku ni ikanakatta.*
   (Alex didn't go to college despite the fact that his high school grades were good.)

(2) せっかく歌が上手なんだから、みんなに歌って聴かせてください。
Sekkaku *uta ga jōzu na n da kara, minna ni utatte kikasete kudasai.*
(Because you are such a good singer, please let us listen to you sing.)

3. *Sekkaku* may be used without a verb phrase or a noun, as in Exs.(i)-B and (j)-B. These sentences are in fact abbreviated sentences. The unabbreviated versions would be (3) and (4), respectively. In Exs.(i) and (j), the unsaid part is clear from the context or situation.

(3) a. せっかく誘っていただいたのですが、今日は忙しくて行けません。
Sekkaku *sasotte itadaita no desu ga, kyō wa isogashikute ikemasen.*
(Although you kindly invited me (to go to the concert), I'm busy today and cannot make it.)

b. せっかくのお誘いですが、今日は忙しくて行けません。
Sekkaku *no o-sasoi desu ga, kyō wa isogashikute ikemasen.*
(Despite your kind invitation (to go to the concert), I'm busy today and cannot make it.)

(4) a. せっかく持ってきていただいたのですから、遠慮なくいただきます。
Sekkaku *motte kite itadaita no desu kara, enryo naku itadakimasu.*
(Because you took the trouble to bring this to me, I'll take it without hesitation.)

b. せっかくの贈り物ですから、遠慮なくいただきます。
Sekkaku *no okurimono desu kara, enryo naku itadakimasu.*
(Because (this is) a gift (you took the trouble to bring to me), I'll take it without hesitation.)

4. Although *sekkaku* is commonly used to describe factual actions, it can also be used for future actions or hypothetical actions, as in (5) and (6).

(5) せっかくギターを買うのなら、いいのを買ったほうがいいですよ。
Sekkaku *gitā o kau no nara, ii no o katta hō ga ii desu yo.*
(If you buy a guitar at all, you should buy a good one.)

(6) せっかく助けてあげても、あの人はたぶん感謝しませんよ。
Sekkaku *tasukete agetemo, ano hito wa tabun kansha-shimasen yo.*
(Even if you take the troube to help him out, he probably won't appreciate it.)

S

【Related Expression】

The adverb *wazawaza* also has the meaning of "to take the trouble to do s.t." Thus, in some situations, *wazawaza* and *sekkaku* can be used interchangeably, as in [1].

[1] a. {**わざわざ / せっかく**}来たのにレストランは閉まっていた。
{***Wazawaza* / *Sekkaku***} *kita noni resutoran wa shimatte ita.*
(We took the trouble to come to the restaurant, but it was closed.)

b. これは両親が{**わざわざ / せっかく**}イタリアで買ってくれたカバンだから、大切にしています。
Kore wa ryōshin ga{***wazawaza* / *sekkaku***} *Itaria de katte kureta kaban dakara, taisetsu ni shite imasu.*
(My parents took the trouble to buy this bag for me in Italy (lit., This is a bag my parents took the trouble to buy in Italy), so I treasure it.)

The critical differences between *wazawaza* and *sekkaku* are the following.

First, "*wazawaza* + Verb Phrase" can be a main clause predicate, but "*sekkaku* + Verb Phrase" cannot, as in [2].

[2] a. そのレストランはとてもおいしいと聞いたので、ちょっと遠かったが{**わざわざ / ×せっかく**}行ってみた。(cf. [1a])
Sono resutoran wa totemo oishii to kiita node, chotto tōkatta ga,{***wazawaza* / × *sekkaku***} *itte mita.*
(We heard that that restaurant serves very good dishes, so although it was far, we took the trouble to go there.)

b. 両親が私のために{**わざわざ / ×せっかく**}イタリアでカバンを買ってくれました。(cf. [1b])
Ryōshin ga watashi no tame ni{***wazawaza* / × *sekkaku***} *Itaria de kaban o katte kuremashita.*
(My parents took the trouble to buy a bag in Italy for me.)

c. 図書館にある事件のことを問い合わせたら、{**わざわざ / ×せっかく**}そのニュースの記事のコピーを送ってくれた。
Toshokan ni aru jiken no koto o toiawasetara,{***wazawaza* / × *sekkaku***} *sono nyūsu no kiji no kopī o okutte kureta.*
(When I contacted the library about a certain incident, they kindly took the trouble to send me a copy of the news article on it.)

S

Second, *wazawaza* is used when someone does something that he/she doesn't have to or when he/she could do it in an easier way, but ***sekkaku*** is not used in such situations, as in [3].

[3] a. 遠いのに{**わざわざ / ×せっかく**}来てくれてありがとう。
Tōi noni{***wazawaza* / × *sekkaku***} *kite kurete arigatō.*
(Thank you for coming all the way to see me.)

b. これは{**わざわざ** / ×**せっかく**}店に行かなくてもネットで買えますよ。
*Kore wa{**wazawaza** / ×**sekkaku**}mise ni ikanakutemo netto de kaemasu yo.*
(You can buy this on the Internet without taking the trouble to go to the store.)

c. パンは近くの店でも買えるのだが、駅前の店のほうがおいしいので、いつも{**わざわざ** / ×**せっかく**}そこまで行って買っている。
*Pan wa chikaku no mise demo kaeru no da ga, ekimae no mise no hō ga oishii node, itsumo{**wazawaza** / ×**sekkaku**}soko made itte katte iru.*
(We can buy bread at a nearby store, but because the bread at the store in front of the station is tastier, we always go all the way to that store to buy it.)

Third, *sekkaku* is used in the form of "*sekkaku no* Noun (= X)" when someone was given (or has) X, which is not easy to obtain, as in KS(C), Exs.(g) and (h). *Wazawaza*, on the other hand, is usually not used in the form of "*wazawaza no* Noun" and is not used when someone was given (or has) something which is not easy to obtain, either. Thus, *sekkaku* in KS(C), Exs.(g) and (h) cannot be replaced with *wazawaza*, as in [4].

[4] a. ×**わざわざ**の日曜日なのに今日は仕事をしなければなりません。 (cf. KS(C))
×***Wazawaza** no nichiyōbi na noni kyō wa shigoto o shinakereba narimasen.*

b. ×**わざわざ**のチャンスだからデートしたらどうですか。(cf. Ex.(g))
×***Wazawaza** no chansu da kara dēto-shitara dō desu ka.*

c. ×あなたの**わざわざ**のバイリンガルの能力を生かしてもらいたいです。(cf. Ex.(h))
×*Anata no **wazawaza** no bairingaru no nōryoku o ikashite morai-taidesu.*

S

shi し *conj.*

a conjunction for presenting multiple examples or reasons in sentence forms

and what's more; not only ~ but also; so
【REL. ***sorekara***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic	Sentence 1		Sentence 2
今日は *Kyō wa*	テニスも**した** *tenisu mo **shita***	し、 *shi,*	映画も見た / 見ました。 *eiga mo mita / mimashita.*
(I not only played tennis but also saw a movie today.)			

(B)

Topic	Sentence 1		Sentence 2	
ここは *Koko wa*	夏は**暑い** *natsu wa **atsui***	し、 *shi,*	冬は**寒い** *fuyu wa **samui***	し、 *shi,*
Sentence 3 (Main clause)				
私はあまり好きじゃない / ないです。 *watashi wa amari suki ja nai / naidesu.*				
(Here it's hot in summer, and what's more, it's cold in winter, so I don't like this place so much.)				

(C)

Sentence 1	Sentence 2		Sentence 3	
このアパートはとてもいいです。 *Kono apāto wa totemo ii desu.*	部屋が**きれいだ** *Heya ga **kirei da***	し、 *shi,*	家賃も**安い** *yachin mo **yasui***	し。 *shi.*
(This apartment is very good—the rooms are clean, and what's more, the rent is reasonable.)				

S

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } し
shi

{ 話す / 話した } し (s.o. { will talk / talks / talked } and what's more)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *shi*

{ 高い / 高かった } し (s.t. is/was expensive and what's more)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *shi*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { だ / だった } し
{ *da / datta* } *shi*

静か{だ / だった}し　(s.t. is/was quiet and what's more)
shizuka {*da* / *datta*} *shi*

先生{だ / だった}し　(s.o. is/was a teacher and what's more)
sensei {*da* / *datta*} *shi*

Examples

(a) あの人は仕事がよくできるし、人にも親切だ。
Ano hito wa shigoto ga yoku dekiru shi, hito ni mo shinsetsu da.
(That person is good at her job and is also kind to people.)

(b) 今度の夏休みは本も読みたいし、旅行もしたいし、やりたいことがたくさんあります。
Kondo no natsu-yasumi wa hon mo yomi-tai shi, ryokō mo shi-tai shi, yari-tai koto ga takusan arimasu.
(I have many things I want to do this coming summer vacation; I want to read, and I also want to travel.)

(c) A: 今年はどうでしたか。
Kotoshi wa dō deshita ka.
(How was this year?)

B: 仕事も見つかったし、結婚もできたし、とてもいい年でした。
Shigoto mo mitsukatta shi, kekkon mo dekita shi, totemo ii toshi deshita.
(Not only did I find a job, but I was also able to get married, so it was a very good year.)

(d) 今日は天気もいいし、どこかへ行きましょうか。
Kyō wa tenki mo ii shi, doko-ka e ikimashō ka.
(It's a nice day, so shall we go out somewhere?)

(e) A: 今晩一緒にゲームしない？
Konban issho ni gēmu-shinai?
(How about playing games together tonight?)

B: したいんだけど、明日試験だし……
Shi-tai n da kedo, ashita shiken da shi...
(I want to, but I have an exam tomorrow, so...)

Notes

1. In general, *shi* is used to present multiple examples of something in sentence forms. Something for which examples are provided may not be stated explicitly, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a). If the unsaid statements in them are explicitly stated, the whole sentences would be like (1) and (2), respectively.

(1) 今日はテニスもしたし、映画も見たし、楽しいことをたくさんした。
*Kyō wa tenisu mo shita **shi**, eiga mo mita **shi**, tanoshii koto o takusan shita.*
(I did many fun things today; I not only played tennis but also saw a movie.)

(2) あの人は仕事がよくできるし、人にも親切だし、素晴らしい人だ。
*Ano hito wa shigoto ga yoku dekiru **shi**, hito ni mo shinsetsu da **shi**, subarashii hito da.*
(That person is great—good at her job, and what's more, kind to people.)

Note that when the statement for which examples are provided is explicitly presented, *shi* also follows each example right before the statement.

2. *Shi* is often used to present specific reasons for something in a sentence form, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c)-B. For example, in KS(B), Sentence 1 and Sentence 2 are presented as reasons for Sentence 3. In this situation, the *shi* in the last reason sentence (i.e., Sentence 2) can be replaced with *node* or *kara*, as in (3).

(3) ここは夏は暑いし、冬は寒い{し / ので / から}、私はあまり好きじゃない。
*Koko wa natsu wa atsui **shi**, fuyu wa samui {**shi** / **node** / **kara**}, watashi wa amari suki ja nai.*
(Here it's hot in summer, and what's more, it's cold in winter, so I don't like this place so much.)

Note that *shi* is not natural after the last reason sentence when the main sentence represents an action, as in (4). In this case, *node* or *kara* should be used.

(4) 昨日は疲れていたし、少し頭も痛かった{??し / ので / から}、早めに寝た。
*Kinō wa tsukarete ita **shi**, sukoshi atama mo itakatta {??**shi** / **node** / **kara**}, haya-me ni neta.*
(Not only was I tired yesterday, but I also had a slight headache, so I went to bed earlier.)

S

However, if the main clause represents a state, *shi* is natural, as in (5).

(5) 昨日は疲れていたし、少し頭も痛かった{し / ので / から}、あまり状態がよくなかった。
*Kinō wa tsukarete ita **shi**, sukoshi atama mo itakatta {**shi** / **node** / **kara**}, amari jōtai ga yokunakatta.*
(Not only was I tired yesterday, but I also had a slight headache, so I was not in a very good condition.)

3. KS(C) is the inverted construction. (6) is the normal form.

   (6) このアパートは部屋がきれいだし、家賃も安いし、とてもいいです。
   Kono apāto wa heya ga kirei da shi, yachin mo yasui shi, totemo ii desu.
   (The rooms of this apartment are clean, and what's more, the rent is reasonable, so it's very good.)

4. When S *shi* represents a reason, *shi* is sometimes used only once, implying that there are more, as in Exs.(d) and (e)-B.

5. There are times when a sentence ends with *shi* in order to soften the impact that the message might give to the listener, e.g., when the speaker declines the listener's invitation by giving a reason, as in Ex.(e)-B. (7) provides another example.

   (7) A: 今晩映画に行きませんか。
   Konban eiga ni ikimasen ka.
   (Would you like to go see a movie this evening?)

   B: え？ 今晩ですか。今晩は宿題があるし……
   E? Konban desu ka. Konban wa shukudai ga aru ***shi****...*
   (Oh, this evening? I have homework to do this evening, so...)

6. The clauses before *shi* are usually in the plain form regardless whether the main clauses are in the polite form or in the plain form. However, when the speaker wants to be more polite, the clause before *shi* can be in the polite form, as in (8).

   (8) 今日は天気もいい**です**し、どこかへ行きましょうか。(cf. Ex.(d))
   *Kyō wa tenki mo ii****desu shi****, doko-ka e ikimashō ka.*
   (It's a nice day, so shall we go out somewhere?)

S

shika しか *prt.*

a particle that indicates a strong denial of the proposition in terms of the entities other than X or the amount/number beyond X

nothing/nobody/nowhere/no ~ but; (not) anything/anybody/anywhere/any ~ but; only
【REL. *bakari*; *dake*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Subject			Predicate (negative)
私の友達では *Watashi no tomodachi de wa*	マリア ***Maria***	しか *shika*	肉を *niku o*	食べない / 食べません。 *tabenai / tabemasen.*
(Among my friends, only Maria eats meat.)				

(B)

	Direct Object		Predicate (negative)
弟は *Otōto wa*	マンガ ***manga***	しか *shika*	読まない / 読みません。 *yomanai / yomimasen.*
(My younger brother reads nothing but manga.)			

(C)

	Noun	Prt		Predicate (negative)
それは *Sore wa*	江口さん ***Eguchi-san***	に ***ni***	しか *shika*	話していない / いません。 *hanashite inai / imasen.*
(I haven't told it to anybody but Eguchi-san.)				

(D)

	Quantifier		Predicate (negative)
私はご飯を *Watashi wa gohan o*	1杯 ***ip-pai***	しか *shika*	食べなかった / 食べませんでした。 *tabenakatta / tabemasendeshita.*
(I had only one bowl of rice.)			

Formation

(i) N しか
shika

先生が [Subject] → 先生しか (no one but the teacher)
sensei ga *sensei shika*

肉を [Direct Object] → 肉しか (nothing but meat)
niku o *niku shika*

(ii) N (+ Prt) しか
shika

東京{へ / に} [Direction] → 東京(へ / に)しか (to nowhere but Tokyo)
Tōkyō {e / ni} *Tōkyō (e / ni) shika*

先生に [Indirect Object, Agent] → 先生(に)*しか (no one but the teacher)
sensei ni *sensei (ni) shika*

(**Ni* cannot drop if N before *shika* represents as the agent.)

日曜日に [Time] → 日曜日(に)しか (only on Sunday)
nichiyōbi ni *nichiyōbi (ni) shika*

東京に [Location of existence] → 東京(に)しか (only in Tokyo)
Tōkyō ni *Tōkyō (ni) shika*

(iii) N + Prt しか
shika

東京で [Location of action] → 東京でしか (only in Tokyo)
Tōkyō de *Tōkyō de shika*

車で [Means] → 車でしか (only by car)
kuruma de *kuruma de shika*

西野さんと [Accompaniment] → 西野さんとしか (only with Nishino-san)
Nishino-san to *Nishino-san to shika*

東京から [Starting point] → 東京からしか (only from Tokyo)
Tōkyō kara *Tōkyō kara shika*

5時まで [Ending point] → 5時までしか (only till five o'clock)
go-ji made *go-ji made shika*

(iv) Quantifier しか
shika

3つしか (only three)
mit-tsu shika

少ししか (only a little)
sukoshi shika

Examples

(a) パーティーには学生しか来ませんでした。
Pātī ni wa gakusei shika kimasendeshita.
(Only students came to the party.)

(b) 川野さんはサラダしか食べなかった。
Kawano-san wa sarada shika tabenakatta.
(Kawano-san ate only salad.)

(c) 私は日曜日(に)しか来られません。
Watashi wa nichiyōbi (ni) shika koraremasen.
(I can come only on Sunday.)

(d) この本はこの図書館(に)しかありません。
Kono hon wa kono toshokan (ni) shika arimasen.
(Only this library has this book.)

(e) そこは車でしか行けない。
Soko wa kuruma de shika ikenai.
(The only way you can go there is by car. (lit., You can go there only by car.))

(f) 私は藤井さんとしか話をしない。
Watashi wa Fujii-san to shika hanashi o shinai.
(I talk only with Fujii-san.)

(g) この学校は学生が 100 人しかいません。
Kono gakkō wa gakusei ga hyaku-nin shika imasen.
(This school has only a hundred students.)

Notes

1. When *shika* is attached to "N *ga*" or "N *o*," *ga* and *o* drop. When *shika* is attached to "N *ni*" or "N *e*," *ni* and *e* may drop if the meaning is clear from the context or the situation. The paticles *de*, *to*, *kara* and *made* do not drop when *shika* is attached to them.

2. When *shika* is attached to quantifiers, it indicates that the number of people/ things or the amount of something is small.

3. When *shika* is attached to N (+ Prt), it strongly denies the proposition in terms of the entities other than N. For example, KS(A) strongly denies that the speaker's friends eat meat except for Maria. Likewise, KS(C) strongly denies that the speaker has told something to people other than Eguchi-san.

   When *shika* is attached to the quantifier Q, it strongly denies the proposition in terms of the amount or number beyond Q. For example, KS(D) strongly denies that the speaker had more than one bowlful of rice.

S

4. *Shika* usually occurs with negative-form predicates, but it may occur with affirmative-form predicates with a negative meaning, as in (1).

   (1) a. この店は現金しか**だめだ**。
   *Kono mise wa genkin shika **dame da**.*
   (This store accepts only cash. (lit., At this store anything other than cash is no good.))

   b. そこへ行くにはこのルートしか**無理だ**。
   *Soko e iku ni wa kono rūto shika **muri da**.*
   (To get there, this route is the only possible way. (lit., To get there, any routes other than this one is impossible.))

5. *Shika* is sometimes used with *dake*, another particle that means "only," for emphasis, as in "{ N (Prt) / Quantifier } *dake shika*."

[Related Expressions]

I. *Dake* also means "only." However, *dake* and *shika* differ in a number of ways as follows: (⇒ ***dake***)

(A) "X *dake*" means "only X" in neutral fashion, while "X ***shika***" indicates a strong denial of the proposition in terms of the entities other than X or in terms of the amount/number beyond X. For example, [1a] simply means that only Nishiguchi and Ogawa came to the party, while [1b] means the same thing with the emphasis on the fact that no one else came to the party, which, in this context, usually implies that it was unexpected and/or disappointing.

[1] a. パーティーには西口さんと小川さん**だけ**来ました。
*Pātī ni wa Nishiguchi-san to Ogawa-san **dake** kimashita.*
(Only Nishiguchi-san and Ogawa-san came to the party.)

b. パーティーには西口さんと小川さん**しか**来ませんでした。
*Pātī ni wa Nishiguchi-san to Ogawa-san **shika** kimasendeshita.*
(Nobody came to the party but Nishiguchi-san and Ogawa-san.)

Similarly, [2a] means that there is only one chair that is usable in a neutral sense, while [2b] means the same thing, but with the implication that the situation is unexpected and/or undesirable.

[2] a. 使えるいすが１つ**だけ**あります。
*Tsukaeru isu ga hito-tsu **dake** arimasu.*
(There is just one chair that is usable.)

b. 使えるいすが１つ**しか**ありません。
*Tsukaeru isu ga hito-tsu **shika** arimasen.*
(There is no chair that is usable but one.)

Note, however, that it is not always the case that *shika* indicates that the situation is undesirable. For example, the situation in [3] is desirable under normal circumstances.

[3] 私は今日の漢字テストで１つ**しか**間違えなかった。
*Watashi wa kyō no kanji-tesuto de hito-tsu **shika** machigaenakatta.*
(I made only one mistake in today's kanji test.)

As seen in the above examples, whether *shika* sentences imply something desirable or undesirable depends on the context. The point is that *dake* sentences describe a situation in a neutral sense, while *shika* sentences

describe a situation with the implication that the situation is unexpected and/or desirable or undesirable depending on the context or the situation.

(B) *Dake* can occur with both affirmative and negative predicates, as in [4], while ***shika*** occurs only with negative predicates in form or meaning, as in [5].

[4] a. ミーティングにはグリフィンさん**だけ来た**。
*Mītingu ni wa Gurifin-san **dake kita**.*
(Only Griffin-san came to the meeting.)

b. ミーティングにはグリフィンさん**だけ来なかった**。
*Mītingu ni wa Gurifin-san **dake konakatta**.*
(Only Griffin-san didn't come to the meeting.)

[5] a. ×ミーティングにはグリフィンさん**しか来た**。
× *Mītingu ni wa Gurifin-san **shika kita**.*
(*Intended meaning*: Nobody but Griffin-san came to the meeting.)

b. ミーティングにはグリフィンさん**しか来なかった**。
*Mītingu ni wa Gurifin-san **shika konakatta**.*
(Nobody came to the meeting but Griffin-san.)

(C) Verbs and adjectives can occur before *dake*, while they cannot occur before *shika*, as in [6].

[6] a. あの町はおもしろくないですよ。大きいショッピングモールがある{**だけ** / ×**しか**}です。
*Ano machi wa omoshirokunaidesu yo. Ōkii shoppingu-mōru ga aru{**dake** / ×**shika**} desu.*
(That town is not interesting. There's a large shopping mall and that's all.)

b. この店は安い{**だけ** / ×**しか**}で、全然おいしくない。
*Kono mise wa yasui{**dake** / ×**shika**} de, zenzen oishikunai.*
(The only good thing about this shop is that the food is cheap. It isn't tasty at all.)

(D) When a predicate is in the negative form, both *dake* and *shika* can be used, but the meanings are entirely different, as in [7].

[7] a. この文章にある漢字の中でこの漢字**だけ**読み方が**分からない**。
*Kono bunshō ni aru kanji no naka de kono kanji **dake** yomi-kata ga **wakaranai**.*
(The only kanji whose reading I cannot tell in this passage is this one. (lit., I cannot tell the reading of only this kanji in this passage.))

b. この文章にある漢字の中でこの漢字**しか**読み方が**分からない**。
*Kono bunshō ni aru kanji no naka de kono kanji **shika** yomi-kata ga **wakaranai.***
(I cannot tell the readings of any kanji in this passage but this one.)

(E) The verb *kakaru* "it takes (time); it costs" can be used with *shika*, but not with *dake*, as in [8].

[8] a. 私の家から学校までは車で５分**しかかからない**。
*Watashi no ie kara gakkō made wa kuruma de go-fun **shika kakaranai.***
(It takes only five minutes by car from my house to school.)

b. ×私の家から学校までは車で５分**だけかかる**。
×*Watashi no ie kara gakkō made wa kuruma de go-fun **dake kakaru.***

II. *Bakari* also means "only" in some situations. Unlike "X *shika*" or "X *dake*," however, "X *bakari*" emphasizes the positive proposition in terms of X, often with the implication that s.o. does s.t. a lot or does the same thing repeatedly. For example, [9a] emphasizes the fact that Blake drank only tea, implying that he kept drinking the same thing, whereas [9b] emphasizes the fact that Blake drank tea but didn't drink anything else. [9c] is a neutral statement. (⇒ ***bakari***)

[9] a. ブレイクはお茶**ばかり**飲んだ。
*Bureiku wa o-cha **bakari** nonda.*
(Blake drank only tea (and a lot).)

b. ブレイクはお茶**しか**飲まなかった。
*Bureiku wa o-cha **shika** nomanakatta.*
(Blake drank nothing but tea.)

c. ブレイクはお茶**だけ**飲んだ。
*Bureiku wa o-cha **dake** nonda.*
(Blake drank only tea.)

S

Note that "X *bakari*" cannot be used if X refers to a specific individual, while "X *dake*" and "X *shika*" do not have such a restriction, as in [10] and [11].

[10] a. 昨日のパーティーには学生｛**だけ / ばかり**｝来た。
*Kinō no pātī ni wa gakusei｛**dake / bakari**｝kita.*
(Only students came to yesterday's party.)

b. 昨日のパーティーには学生**しか**来なかった。
*Kinō no pātī ni wa gakusei **shika** konakatta.*
(Only students came to yesterday's party. (lit., Nobody came to yesterday's party but students.))

[11] a. 昨日のパーティーにはリディアとソフィー｛**だけ / ×ばかり**｝来た。
Kinō no pātī ni wa Ridia to Sofī ｛***dake*** */ ×* ***bakari***｝ *kita.*
(Only Lydia and Sophie came to yesterday's party.)

b. 昨日のパーティーにはリディアとソフィー**しか**来なかった。
Kinō no pātī ni wa Ridia to Sofī ***shika*** *konakatta.*
(Nobody came to yesterday's party but Lydia and Sophie.)

Note also that *bakari* cannot be used with negative predicates, as in [12].

[12] パトリシアはデザート｛**だけ / ×ばかり**｝食べなかった。
Patorishia wa dezāto ｛***dake*** */ ×* ***bakari***｝ *tabenakatta.*
(The only thing Patricia didn't eat was the dessert.)

～ shimau ～しまう *aux. v. (Gr. 1)*

an auxiliary verb that indicates the completion of an action

have done s.t.; finish doing s.t.; finish s.t. up; do s.t. regrettably/by mistake
【REL. V (past); ~ *owaru*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

S

Topic (subject)			Vte	
池田さん *Ikeda-san*	は *wa*	３日でその本を *mik-ka de sono hon o*	読んで ***yonde***	しまった / しまいました。 *shimatta / shimaimashita.*
(Ikeda-san finished reading the book in three days.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)			Vte	
エレン *Eren*	は *wa*	ルームメートのジュースを *rūmumēto no jūsu o*	飲んで ***nonde***	しまった / しまいました。 *shimatta / shimaimashita.*
(Ellen (mistakenly) drank her roommate's juice.)				

Formation

V*te* しまう
shimau

話してしまう (have talked; talk by mistake)
hanashite shimau

食べてしまう (finish eating s.t.; eat s.t. by mistake)
tabete shimau

Examples

(a) もう宿題をしてしまいましたか。
Mō shukudai o shite shimaimashita ka.
(Have you done your homework yet?)

(b) 私は今日中にそのレポートを書いてしまおうと思っている。
Watashi wa kyōjū ni sono repōto o kaite shimaō to omotte iru.
(I think I will finish (writing) the report today.)

(c) 早くご飯を食べてしまいなさい。
Hayaku gohan o tabete shimai-nasai.
(Finish (eating) your meal quickly.)

(d) シチューを作りすぎてしまった。
Shichū o tsukuri-sugite shimatta.
(I made too much stew (to my regret).)

(e) 私は違うバスに乗ってしまった。
Watashi wa chigau basu ni notte shimatta.
(I got on the wrong bus.)

(f) 大事な約束を忘れてしまった。
Daiji na yakusoku o wasurete shimatta.
(I forgot an important appointment.)

(g) コピー機が故障してしまったのでコピーができない。
Kopīki ga koshō-shite shimatta node kopī ga dekinai.
(Because the copier broke down, we cannot make copies.)

Notes

1. The auxiliary verb *shimau* is used with V*te* to express the completion of an action, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c). Adverbs such as *sukkari* "completely," *zenbu* "all" and *kanzen ni* "completely" often occur with V*te shimau*, as in (1).

(1) a. マットは**すっかり**日本語を忘れてしまった。
*Matto wa **sukkari** nihongo o wasurete shimatta.*
(Matt has completely forgotten Japanese.)

b. ジェームズは持っていたお金を**全部**ギャンブルに使ってしまった。
*Jēmuzu wa motte ita o-kane o **zenbu** gyanburu ni tsukatte shimatta.*
(James spent all the money he had on gambling.)

2. V*te shimau* is also used when someone did something that he/she shouldn't have done, as in KS(B) and Exs.(d)–(f), or something unwanted happened, as in Ex.(g). In this case, V*te shimau* implies the agent's regret about what he/she has done or the speaker's regret or criticism about the agent's action or about something that has happened.

In this use of V*te shimau*, the sentence is often about an action/event in the past, but the sentence can be used for a non-past action/event as well, as in (2).

(2) a. 私はいつもこの漢字の読み方を間違え**てしまう**。
*Watashi wa itsumo kono kanji no yomi-kata o machigae**te shimau**.*
(I always make a mistake with the reading of this kanji.)

b. 今月はとても忙しいので美和さんの誕生日を忘れ**てしまいそうだ**。
*Kongetsu wa totemo isogashii node Miwa-san no tanjōbi o wasure**te shimai-sō da**.*
(Because I'm so busy this month that I feel like I'll forget Miwa-san's birthday.)

c. この建物は地震が起きたら壊れ**てしまうかもしれない**。
*Kono tatemono wa jishin ga okitara koware**te shimau kamoshirenai**.*
(This building might collapse if an earthquake hits.)

3. *Te shimau* and *de shimau* are contracted as *chau* and *jau*, respectively, in casual conversation, as in (3).

(3) a. 話してしまう → 話し**ちゃう** (have talked)
hanashite shimau *hanashi**chau***

b. 飲んでしまう → 飲ん**じゃう** (have drunk)
nonde shimau *non**jau***

S [Related Expressions]

I. The past tense of a verb can also express the completion of an action. However, it is different from V*te shimau* in that it expresses the completion of an action in the past, while V*te shimau* expresses completion regardless of the time of completion. Thus, [1a] is grammatical, but [1b] is not.

[1] a. ここにおいておくとコナーが**食べてしまう**よ。
*Koko ni oite oku to Konā ga **tabete shimau** yo.*
(If you leave it here, Connor will eat it up.)

b. × ここにおいておくとコナーが**食べた**よ。
× *Koko ni oite oku to Konā ga* ***tabeta*** *yo.*
(*Intended meaning*: If you leave it here, Connor will eat it up.)

II. V*masu owaru* also means "finish doing ~." The core difference between V*masu owaru* and V*te shimau* is that V*masu owaru* indicates the action of finishing something, while V*te shimau* indicates the completed state of the action. Thus, these two expressions correspond to the English expressions *finish doing* and *have done*. For this reason, V*masu owaru* can occur with a specific time phrase, but V*te shimau* cannot.

[2] a. 昨日その本を{**読み終わった** / ×**読んでしまった**}。
Kinō sono hon o {***yomi-owatta*** / × ***yonde shimatta***}.
(I finished reading the book yesterday.)

b. 今朝９時にやっとレポートを{**書き終わった** / ×**書いてしまった**}。
Kesa ku-ji ni yatto repōto o {***kaki-owatta*** / × ***kaite shimatta***}.
(I finally finished writing the report at nine o'clock this morning.)

Another difference between V*te shimau* and V*masu owaru* is that V*te shimau* can be used for unintentional actions and events, while V*masu owaru* cannot, as in [3] and [4].

[3] a. ナンシーの住所を{**忘れてしまった** / ×**忘れ終わった**}。
Nanshī no jūsho o {***wasurete shimatta*** / × ***wasure-owatta***}.
(I've forgotten Nancy's address.)

b. スマホを{**なくしてしまった** / ×**なくし終わった**}。
Sumaho o {***nakushite shimatta*** / × ***nakushi-owatta***}.
(I lost my smartphone.)

[4] a. コピー機が{**壊れてしまった** / ×**壊れ終わった**}。
Kopīki ga {***kowarete shimatta*** / × ***koware-owatta***}.
(The copier broke down.)

b. 親友がカナダに{**帰ってしまった** / ×**帰り終わった**}ので、とても寂しい。
Shin'yū ga Kanada ni {***kaette shimatta*** / × ***kaeri-owatta***} *node, totemo sabishii.*
(Because my best friend went back to Canada, I feel very lonely.)

Note that in situations like the above, the action/event represented by V*te shimau* is interpreted as a regrettable action or an unwanted event.

(⇒ ~ ***owaru***)

shiru 知る *v. (Gr. 1)*

S.o. gets information from some outside source.

learn of; get to know
【REL. ***wakaru***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

A:		
Direct Object		
木下さん *Kinoshita-san*	を *o*	知っていますか。 *shitte imasu ka.*
(Do you know Kinoshita-san?)		
B:		
はい、知っています。/ いいえ、知りません。 *Hai, shitte imasu. / Īe, shirimasen.*		
(Yes, I do. / No, I don't.)		

(B)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		
		Splain*		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	ニコルが今、日本で仕事をしている *Nikoru ga ima, Nihon de shigoto o **shite iru***	こと *koto*	を *o*
知らなかった / 知りませんでした。 *shiranakatta / shirimasendeshita.*				
(I didn't know that Nicole is working in Japan now.)				

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *de aru*, respectively.

(C)

Embedded Question		
Splain*		
明日のパーティーにだれが来る *Ashita no pātī ni dare ga **kuru***	か *ka*	知っていますか。 *shitte imasu ka.*
(Do you know who's coming to tomorrow's party?)		

*Da after Adj(*na*) and N usually drops.

Examples

(a) 池上さんの電話番号を知っていますか。
Ikegami-san no denwa-bangō o shitte imasu ka.
(Do you know Ikegami-san's telephone number?)

(b) デービスさんは中東のことをよく知っている。
Dēbisu-san wa Chūtō no koto o yoku shitte iru.
(Davis-san knows a lot about the Middle East.)

(c) A: メリッサさんが結婚したことを知っていますか。
Merissa-san ga kekkon-shita koto o shitte imasu ka.
(Do you know that Melissa got married?)
B: 本当ですか。全然知りませんでした。
Hontō desu ka. Zenzen shirimasendeshita.
(Really? I didn't know that at all.)

(d) 次のミーティングはいつか知っていますか。
Tsugi no mītingu wa itsu ka shitte imasu ka.
(Do you know when the next meeting is?)

(e) 台風が近づいていますが、明日授業があるか(どうか)知っていますか。
Taifū ga chikazuite imasu ga, ashita jugyō ga aru ka (dō ka) shitte imasu ka.
(The typhoon is approaching. Do you know if there are classes tomorrow?)

Notes

1. *Shiru* is not a stative verb. That is, it represents the act of acquiring information about someone or something. Therefore, in order to mean "know," which is a stative expression, *shitte iru* is used. *Shitte iru* refers to the resultant state after someone got to know (i.e., learned of) something. (⇒ ***iru***[2])

2. When answering in the negative to the question "X *o shitte imasu ka*" (Do you know X?) the negative form *shirimasen* is used instead of *shitte imasen*, as in KS(A)-B and Ex.(c)-B.

3. To express the idea "to know about X," X *no koto o shitte iru* is used, as in Ex.(b). In formal conversation or writing, X *ni tsuite* is commonly used instead of X *no koto o*, as in (1).

   (1) 日本の大学入試**について**知っていますか。
   Nihon no daigaku-nyūshi ***ni tsuite*** *shitte imasu ka.*
   (Do you know about the college extrance examinations in Japan?)

4. S *koto* can be used as the direct object of *shitte iru*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c)-A. (⇒ ***koto***[2])

5. Embedded questions can be used before ***shitte iru***, as in KS(C), Exs.(d) and (e). Note that in this case, the direct object marker ***o*** is not used.

(⇒ ***ka***[2]; ~ ***ka dō ka***)

～ sō da[1]　～そうだ[1]　*aux.*

an auxiliary that indicates that the information expressed by the preceding sentence is what the speaker heard or read

I hear that ~; I heard that ~; It is said that ~; They say that ~
【REL. ~ ***rashii***; ~ ***sō da***[2]; ~ *to iu*[1]; ~ *to kiita*; ***tte***】

◆ Key Sentence

Splain	
小西さんは大学でタイ語を勉強した *Konishi-san wa daigaku de taigo o* ***benkyō-shita***	そうだ / です。 *sō da / desu.*
(I heard that Konishi-san studied Thai at college.)	

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } そうだ
sō da

S

{ 話す / 話した } そうだ　(I heard that s.o. { will talk / talks / talked }.)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *sō da*

{ 高い / 高かった } そうだ　(I heard that s.t. is/was expensive.)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *sō da*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { だ / だった } そうだ
{ *da / datta* } *sō da*

静か { だ / だった } そうだ　(I heard that s.t. is/was quiet.)
shizuka { *da / datta* } *sō da*

先生 { だ / だった } そうだ　(I heard that s.o. is/was a teacher.)
sensei { *da / datta* } *sō da*

Examples

(a) 水木さんはコーラを飲まないそうです。
Mizuki-san wa kōra o nomanai sō desu.
(I heard Mizuki-san doesn't drink coke.)

(b) 日本の牛肉はおいしいが、とても高いそうだ。
Nihon no gyūniku wa oishii ga, totemo takai sō da.
(I heard that beef in Japan is delicious but very expensive.)

(c) 芽衣さんはピアノがとても上手だそうです。
Mei-san wa piano ga totemo jōzu da sō desu.
(I heard that Mei-san is a very good pianist (lit., very good at playing the piano).)

(d) キングさんは昔、英語の先生だったそうだ。
Kingu-san wa mukashi, eigo no sensei datta sō da.
(I heard that King-san was a teacher of English before.)

Notes

1. "Splain *sō da*" expresses hearsay. That is, this pattern is used when the speaker conveys information obtained from some information source without altering it. (⇒ ~ ***rashii***)

2. Information sources are expressed by N *ni yoru to* "according to N," as in (1).

   (1) ニュースによると、フロリダで雪が降ったそうだ。
   *Nyūsu **ni yoru to**, Furorida de yuki ga futta sō da.*
   (According to the news, it snowed in Florida (lit., I heard that it snowed in Florida).)

3. *Da* in the hearsay *sō da* (= ~ *sō da*[1]) does not occur in the past form even when the sentence before *sō da* is in the past form, as in (2).

   (2) ダグは昨日授業を休んだそう{だ / ×だった}。
   *Dagu wa kinō jugyō o yasunda sō {**da** / × **datta**}.*
   (I heard that Doug was absent from class yesterday.)

S

[Related Expressions]

I. ~ *to kiita* "I heard that ~" and its variation ~ *to kiite iru* "lit., I've heard that ~" can also be used as a hearsay expression, as in [1].

   [1] 小西さんは大学でタイ語を勉強したと{聞いた / 聞いている}。 (cf. KS)
   *Konishi-san wa daigaku de taigo o benkyō-shita **to** {**kiita** / **kiite iru**}.*
   (I heard that Konishi-san studied Thai at college.)

However, ~ *to kiita* and ~ *to kiite iru* cannot be used with *ni yoru to* "according to," as in [2].

[2] ×ニュースによると、フロリダで雪が降ったと聞いた。(cf. (1))
× *Nyūsu* ***ni yoru to****, Furorida de yuki ga futta* ***to kiita****.*
(*Intended meaning*: According to the news, it snowed in Florida (lit., I heard that it snowed in Florida).)

II. ~ *to iu*[1] can also be used as a hearsay expression, as in [3]. As seen in this example, *ni yoru to* can be used with ~ *to iu.*

[3] 学生によると、吉田先生は教え方が非常に上手だという。
Gakusei ***ni yoru to****, Yoshida-sensei wa oshie-kata ga hijō ni jōzu da* ***to iu****.*
(According to the students, Prof. Yoshida's teaching method is very skillful.)

Note that ~*to iu* is used only in written Japanese. (⇒ ~ ***to iu***[1])

~ sō da[2] ～そうだ[2] *phr. (aux. adj. (na) + da)*

an auxiliary *na*-adjective that expresses the speaker's impression of s.o./s.t.

look; It looks like; appear; seem; sound; feel like
【REL. ~ ***kamoshirenai***; ~ ***rashii***; ~ *sō da*[1]; ~ ***yō da***[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

S

Subject		Vmasu	
雨 *Ame*	が *ga*	降り ***furi***	そうだ / です。 *-sō da / desu.*
(It looks like rain.)			

(B)

Topic (subject)		Adj(*i*)stem	
ヒューズさんの車 *Hyūzu-san no kuruma*	は *wa*	高 ***taka***	そうだ / です。 *-sō da / desu.*
(Hughes-san's car looks expensive.)			

(C)

	Adj(*i*)stem		Noun		
マリーナは *Marīna wa*	**暖か** ***atataka***	そうな *-sō na*	セーター *sētā*	を *o*	着ている / います。 *kite iru / imasu.*
(Marina is in a snug sweater (lit., is dressed in a sweater that looks warm.)					

(D)

	Adj(*i*)stem		Verb
公園で子供たちが *Kōen de kodomo-tachi ga*	**楽し** ***tanoshi***	そうに *-sō ni*	遊んでいる / います。 *asonde iru / imasu.*
(Children are playing happily (lit., in a happy-looking manner) in the park.)			

Formation

(i) V*masu* そうだ
-sō da

話しそうだ (It looks like s.o. will talk.)
hanashi-sō da

(ii) Adj(*i*)stem そうだ
-sō da

高そうだ (S.t. looks expensive.)
taka-sō da

Exception: いい → よさそうだ (S.t. looks good.)
ii *yosa-sō da*

(iii) Adj(*na*) そうだ
-sō da

静かそうだ (S.t. looks quiet.)
shizuka-sō da

S

Examples

(a) この家は強い風が吹いたら倒れそうです。
Kono ie wa tsuyoi kaze ga fuitara taore-sō desu.
(It looks like this house would fall down when there's a strong wind (lit., a strong wind blows).)

(b) あのステーキはおいしそうだった。
Ano sutēki wa oishi-sō datta.
(That steak looked delicious.)

(c) このあたりは静かそうですね。
Kono atari wa shizuka-sō desu ne.
(This neighborhood looks quiet, doesn't it?)

(d) 台風が近づいているので、野外パーティーは中止になりそうだ。
Taifū ga chikazuite iru node, yagai-pātī wa chūshi ni nari-sō da.
(Because a typhoon is approaching, it looks like the outdoor party will be canceled.)

(e) 今日は何かいいことが起こりそうな気がする。
Kyō wa nani-ka ii koto ga okori-sō na ki ga suru.
(I feel like something good will happen today.)

(f) ゆうべあまり寝なかったので、今日の授業で寝てしまいそうだ。
Yūbe amari nenakatta node, kyō no jugyō de nete shimai-sō da.
(Because I didn't sleep much last night, I feel like I'll fall asleep in today's class.)

Notes

1. The primary function of *sō da*[2] is to express the speaker's impression of someone or something based on what the speaker has just seen, as in KSs(A)–(D) and Exs.(a)–(c), or in some situations, based on what the speaker has just heard or read, as in (1).

(1) a. [Having just heard the listener's description of an app]
そのアプリは便利そうだね。
Sono apuri wa benri-sō da ne.
(It sounds like that app is useful.)

b. [Having just read a movie review]
この映画はおもしろそうだ。
Kono eiga wa omoshiro-sō da.
(This movie seems interesting,)

S In addition, in some situations, *sō da*[2] expresses the speaker's feeling that something will (or will not) happen, as in Exs.(d)–(f).

2. The negative *nai* "do not exist" or "be/do not ~" changes to *nasa* before *sō da*[2]. (2) provides examples.

(2) a. このビルにレストランは**なさ**そうだ。
*Kono biru ni resutoran wa **nasa**-sō da.*
(It looks like there are no restaurants in this building.)

b. ここのすしはあまりおいしく**なさ**そうだ。
*Koko no sushi wa amari oishiku**nasa**-sō da.*
(The sushi here doesn't look so tasty.)

c. ウォーカーさんは料理が上手じゃ**なさ**そうだ。
*Wōkā-san wa ryōri ga jōzu ja **nasa**-sō da.*
(It doesn't look like Walker-san is a good cook (lit., Walker-san is good at cooking).)

Although the negative forms of verbs are not commonly used before ***sō da***[2] except for the negative form of *aru* "exist," as in (2a) above, when they are used before ***sō da***[2], there are two forms: *~nasa-sō da* and *~na-sō da*, as in (3).

(3) a. コリンズさんは魚を食べな(さ)そうだ。
*Korinzu-san wa sakana o tabe**na(sa)-sō da.***
(It doesn't look like Collins-san eats fish.)

b. 曇っているが、雨は降らな(さ)そうだ。
*Kumotte iru ga, ame wa fura**na(sa)-sō da.***
(It's cloudy, but it doesn't look like rain.)

More natural forms that involve the negative forms of verbs are V*masu sō ni nai* and V*masu sō mo nai*, as in (4).

(4) a. フィルは車を売りそう{に / も}ない。
*Firu wa kuruma o uri-**sō** {**ni** / **mo**} nai.*
(Phil doesn't seem to (want to) sell his car.)

b. 友達はお金を貸してくれそう{に / も}ない。
*Tomodachi wa o-kane o kashite kure-**sō** {**ni** / **mo**} nai.*
(It doesn't seem that my friends will lend me money.)

3. N or N *da* cannot be used with ***sō da***[2], as seen in (5), but N *ja nasa* can, as seen in (6).

(5) a. × あの人はこの大学の学生ø そうだ。
× *Ano hito wa kono daigaku no gakusei ø sō da.*
(*Intended meaning*: That person looks like a student at this university.)

b. × あの人はこの大学の学生だそうだ。
× *Ano hito wa kono daigaku no gakusei **da**-sō da.*
(*Intended meaning*: That person looks like a student at this university.)

(6) あの人はこの大学の学生じゃ**なさ**そうだ。
*Ano hito wa kono daigaku no gakusei **ja nasa**-sō da.*
(That person doesn't look like a student at this university.)

To express the intended meaning in (5), *rashii* is used. (5b) is grammatical if *sō da* means hearsay. (⇒ ~ ***rashii***; ~ ***sō da***[1])

S

4. ***Sō da***² cannot be used in some situations in which "look" is used in English, as in (7).

(7) [Looking at your friend in a new dress]
×そのドレス、きれいそうだよ。
× *Sono doresu, kirei-**sō da** yo.*
(*Intended meaning*: That dress looks pretty on you.)

Here, how the dress appears to the speaker is what it actually is (or at least, what the speaker thinks it is). In this case, ***sō da***² cannot be used. To express the intended meaning in (7), (8) is used.

(8) そのドレス、きれいだよ。
Sono doresu, kirei da yo.

5. X *sō da* can be used to modify nouns. Because ***sō da***² is a *na*-adjective, the prenominal form is ***sō na***, as in KS(C) and Ex.(e). (9) provides additional examples.

(9) a. 高そうな車
*taka-**sō na** kuruma*
(a car that looks expensive (= an expensive-looking car))

b. 雨が降りそうな空
*ame ga furi-**sō na** sora*
(lit., the sky that looks like it will bring rain)

6. The preverbal form of *sō da* is ***sō ni***. KS(D) is an example with this form. (10) provides additional examples.

(10) a. 歩道の縁につまずいて転びそうになった。
*Hodō no fuchi ni tsumazuite korobi-**sō ni natta**.*
(I stumbled over a curb and almost fell down.)

b. 友達が寒そうにしていたので、コートを貸してあげた。
*Tomodachi ga samu-**sō ni shite ita** node, kōto o kashite ageta.*
(Because my friend looked cold (lit., was acting like she was cold), I gave (lit., lent) her my coat.)

S

[Related Expression]

The hearsay *sō da* (= *sō da*¹) and the conjecture *sō da* (= *sō da*²) are two different expressions, and their connection patterns are also different, as follows.

(⇒ ~ ***sō da***¹)

	sō da[1] (hearsay)	*sō da*[2] (conjecture)
Verb + *sō da*	Vplain *sō da* {食べる / 食べた}そうだ {*taberu* / *tabeta*} *sō da*	V*masu sō da* 食べそうだ *tabe-sō da*
I-adj. + *sō da*	Adj(*i*)plain *sō da* {高い / 高かった}そうだ {*takai* / *takakatta*} *sō da*	Adj(*i*)stem *sō da* 高そうだ *taka-sō da*
Na-adj. + *sō da*	Adj(*na*){ *da* / *datta* } *sō da* 静か{だ / だった}そうだ *shizuka* { *da* / *datta* } *sō da*	Adj(*na*) *sō da* 静かそうだ *shizuka-sō da*
Noun + *sō da*	N{ *da* / *datta* } *sō da* 先生{だ / だった}そうだ *sensei* { *da* / *datta* } *sō da*	
~*nai* + *sō da*	~{ *nai* / *nakatta* } *sō da* {食べない / 食べなかった}そうだ {*tabenai* / *tabenakatta*} *sō da* {高くない / 高くなかった}そうだ {*takakunai* / *takakunakatta*} *sō da* 静かじゃ{ない / なかった}そうだ *shizuka ja* { *nai* / *nakatta* } *sō da* 先生じゃ{ない / なかった}そうだ *sensei ja* { *nai* / *nakatta* } *sō da*	~*nasa-sō da* 食べなさそうだ *tabenasa-sō da* 高くなさそうだ *takakunasa-sō da* 静かじゃなさそうだ *shizuka ja nasa-sō da* 先生じゃなさそうだ *sensei ja nasa-sō da*
sō da + Noun		V*masu* Adj(*i*)stem Adj(*na*) } *sō na* N 高そうな本 *taka-sō na hon*
sō da + Verb		V*masu* Adj(*i*)stem Adj(*na*) } *sō ni* V おいしそうに食べる *oishi-sō ni taberu*

sorede それで *conj.*

a conjunction to indicate that what is stated in the preceding sentence is the reason for or the cause of what is stated in the following sentence

that is why; because of that; so
【REL. *dakara*; *node*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Sentence 1		Sentence 2
昨日は風邪を引きました。 *Kinō wa kaze o hikimashita.*	それで *Sorede*	学校を休んだんです。 *gakkō o yasunda n desu.*
(I had a cold yesterday. That's why I took a day off from school.)		

(B)

A:		
昨日は９時まで残業をしました。 *Kinō wa ku-ji made zangyō o shimashita.*		
(I worked overtime until nine yesterday.)		
B:		
ああ、 *Ā,*	それで、 *sorede,*	パーティーに来なかったんですね。 *pātī ni konakatta n desu ne.*
(Oh, that's why you didn't come to the party.)		

(C)

S

A:		
昨日前野さんが自動車事故にあったそうですよ。 *Kinō Maeno-san ga jidōsha-jiko ni atta sō desu yo.*		
(I hear that Maeno-san was involved in a traffic accident yesterday.)		
B:		
ええっ！ *Eeh!*	それで、 *Sorede,*	前野さんは大丈夫だったんですか。 *Maeno-san wa daijōbu datta n desu ka.*
(Oh, no! So, was he all right?)		

Examples

(a) ちょっと大阪で用事がありました。それで昨日いなかったんです。
Chotto Ōsaka de yōji ga arimashita. Sorede kinō inakatta n desu.
(I had some business in Osaka. That's why I wasn't here yesterday.)

(b) A: 先週ハワイに行ってきました。
Senshū Hawai ni itte-kimashita.
(I went to Hawaii last week.)

B: ああ、それで日に焼けているんですね。
Ā, sorede hi ni yakete iru n desu ne.
(Oh, that's why you have a suntan.)

(c) A: 昨日彼にプロポーズされちゃった。
Kinō kare ni puropōzu-sarechatta.
(I was proposed to by my boyfriend yesterday.)

B: えっ、それで、どうしたの？
Eh, sorede, dō shita no?
(What! So, what did you do?)

A: オーケーした。
Ōkē-shita.
(I said yes.)

Notes

1. Etymologically, *sorede* consists of the demonstrative *sore* and the reason particle *de* (= *de*[3]), but it is used as a sentence-initial conjunction. *Sore* refers to either what the speaker has just mentioned, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), or what the listener has just mentioned, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b).

2. *Sorede* is also used in situations in which the speaker wants to hear more information about what he/she just heard from the listener, as in KS(C)-B and Ex.(c)-B. In this case, the equivalent English is not "that's why," but "so."

3. *Sorede* can be used alone to prompt the listener to continue his/her story to provide more information, as in (1)-B. In this case, *sorede* is pronounced with rising intonation.

(1) A: あのう、今月はアルバイトをする時間があまりなくて……。なのに、スマホが壊れたりして……
Anō, kongetsu wa arubaito o suru jikan ga amari nakute.... Nanoni, sumaho ga kowaretari shite...
(Uh, I didn't have much time to work part-time.... Despite that, my smartphone broke down, and...)

B: それで？
Sorede?
(So?)

A: それで、少しお金を貸してもらえないかなと思って……
Sorede, sukoshi o-kane o kashite moraenai ka na to omotte...
(So, I'm wondering if I can borrow some money from you...)

4. In situations like KS(C), Ex.(c) and (1), the shortened form *de* can be used instead of *sorede*, as in (2) and (3). This form is used only in conversation.

(2) A: 昨日前野さんが自動車事故にあったそうですよ。(cf. KS(C))
Kinō Maeno-san ga jidōsha-jiko ni atta sō desu yo.

B: ええっ！で、前野さんは大丈夫だったんですか。
Eeh! ***De****, Maeno-san wa daijōbu datta n desu ka.*

(3) A: あのう、今月はアルバイトをする時間があまりなくて……。なのに、スマホが壊れたりして…… (cf. (1))
Anō, kongetsu wa arubaito o suru jikan ga amari nakute... Nanoni, sumaho ga kowaretari shite...

B: で？
De*?*

【Related Expressions】

I. "S_1. *Sorede* S_2" can be rephrased using *node* if *sorede* indicates a reason or cause, as in [1]. (⇒ ***node***)

[1] ちょっと大阪で用事があったので昨日いなかったんです。(cf. Ex.(a))
Chotto Ōsaka de yōji ga atta ***node*** *kinō inakatta n desu.*
(I wasn't here yesterday because I had some business in Osaka.)

II. *Sorede* can be replaced by *dakara* if it indicates a reason or cause.

[2] ちょっと大阪で用事がありました。{**それで / だから**}昨日いなかったんです。(cf. Ex.(a))
Chotto Ōsaka de yōji ga arimashita. {***Sorede*** / ***Dakara***} *kinō inakatta n desu.*
(I had some business in Osaka. That's why I wasn't here yesterday.)

However, *sorede* and *dakara* are not interchangeable in some situations. First, *dakara* cannot be used when *sorede* does not indicate a reason or cause, as in [3].

[3] A: 昨日彼にプロポーズされちゃった。(= Ex.(c))
Kinō kare ni puropōzu-sarechatta.
(I was proposed to by my boyfriend yesterday.)

B: えっ、{**それで** / ×**だから**}どうしたの？
Eh, {***sorede*** / ×***dakara***}*, dō shita no?*
(What! So, what did you do?)

Note, however, that *dakara* can be used in place of *sorede* when it is used alone to prompt the listener to continue his/her story to provide more information, as in [4].

[4] A: あのう、今月はアルバイトをする時間があまりなくて……。なのに、スマホが壊れたりして…… (= (1))
Anō, kongetsu wa arubaito o suru jikan ga amari nakute.... Nanoni, sumaho ga kowaretari shite...
(Uh, I didn't have much time to work part-time.... Despite that, my smartphone broke down, and...)

B: {**それで** / **だから**}？
{***Sorede*** / ***Dakara***}*?*
(So?)

Second, *dakara* can be used to mean "that means," "in other words" or "that is," while *sorede* carries no such meanings, as in [5].

[5] 里奈さんは母の妹の子供です。{**だから** / ×**それで**}、私のいとこなんです。
Rina-san wa haha no imōto no kodomo desu. {***Dakara*** / ×***Sorede***}*, watashi no itoko na n desu.*
(Rina-san is a child of my mother's younger sister. That means that she is my cousin.)

Third, *sorede* cannot be used when the first sentence presents the reason for the command, request, suggestion or advice in the second sentence, as in [6] and [7].

[6] 今日は忙しいです。{**だから** / ×**それで**}明日来てください。
Kyō wa isogashii desu. {***Dakara*** / ×***Sorede***} *ashita kite kudasai.*
(I'm busy today. So, please come tomorrow.)

[7] この会社は今かなり悪いらしいよ。{**だから** / ×**それで**}、早く他の会社に変わったほうがいいよ。
Kono kaisha wa ima kanari warui rashii yo. {***Dakara*** / ×***Sorede***}*, hayaku hoka no kaisha ni kawatta hō ga ii yo.*
(People say that this company is doing quite poorly now. So, you'd better move to another company soon.)

soredewa それでは *conj.*

If that is the case

if so; then; Well then; in that case; Well; now
【REL. ***sore nara***; ***suruto***】

◆ Key Sentence

[A customer is buying a tie at a department store]

Customer:	
これはちょっと派手すぎると思います。 *Kore wa chotto hade-sugiru to omoimasu.*	
(I think this is a little too loud.)	
Salesperson:	
それでは、 *Soredewa,*	これはいかがですか。 *kore wa ikaga desu ka.*
(How about this one, then?)	

Examples

(a) A: この資料をコピーしたいんですが。
Kono shiryō o kopī-shi-tai n desu ga.
(I'd like to make a copy of this document.)

B: それでは、あそこのコピー機を使ってください。
Soredewa, asoko no kopīki o tsukatte kudasai.
(Well then, please use the copier over there.)

(b) A: 私は魚も肉も嫌いです。
Watashi wa sakana mo niku mo kirai desu.
(I don't like fish or meat.)

B: それでは、何を食べるんですか。
Soredewa, nani o taberu n desu ka.
(Then, what do you eat?)

(c) A: 村岡先生はいらっしゃいますか。
Muraoka-sensei wa irasshaimasu ka.
(May I see Prof. Muraoka? (lit., Is Prof. Muraoka in?))

B: 村岡先生は今日お休みです。
Muraoka-sensei wa kyō o-yasumi desu.
(Prof. Muraoka is not in today.)

A: そうですか。それでは、また明日来ます。
Sō desu ka. Soredewa, mata ashita kimasu.
(Is that so? Well then, I'll come again tomorrow.)

Notes

1. Etymologically, *soredewa* consists of the demonstrative *sore* and the two particles *de* and *wa*, but it is used as a sentence-initial conjunction. *Sore* refers to what the speaker has just heard from the listener.

2. *Soredewa* is often shortened to *dewa*. In casual speech, *(sore) dewa* is contracted into *(sore) jā* or *(sore) ja*, as in (1).

   (1) A: 今日の午後テニスをしませんか。
   Kyō no gogo tenisu o shimasen ka.
   (Would you like to (lit., Won't you) play tennis this afternoon?)

   B: 今日の午後はちょっと都合が悪いんですが。
   Kyō no gogo wa chotto tsugō ga warui n desu ga.
   (This afternoon is not convenient for me.)

   A: {(それ)じゃあ / (それ)じゃ}、明日の午後はどうですか。
   *{(Sore) **jā** / (Sore) **ja**}, ashita no gogo wa dō desu ka.*
   (Well then, how about tomorrow afternoon?)

3. *Soredewa* can also be used at the end of a session, a lecture, a report, etc., as in (2)–(4). In this case, *sore* does not refer to any particular statement.

   (2) [At the end of a long discussion session]
   それでは、20 分ぐらい休みましょうか。
   ***Soredewa**, nijup-pun gurai yasumimashō ka.*
   (Well, shall we take a break for about twenty minutes?)

   (3) [At the end of a lecture]
   それでは、今日はこれで終わります。
   ***Soredewa**, kyō wa kore de owarimasu.*
   (Well, this is all for today (lit., I'll finish here today).)

   (4) [When shifting from one agenda item to another]
   それでは、次の議題に移ります。
   ***Soredewa**, tsugi no gidai ni utsurimasu.*
   (We'll move on to the next agenda item now.)

sorekara それから *conj.*

a conjunction that indicates a sequence of actions or events, or presents an additional state of s.o./s.t. or an additional item

after that; and then; in addition to that; and
【REL. *kara*[2]; *shi*; *soshite*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	V*te*		
ゆうべは２時間ぐらい友達と食事を *Yūbe wa ni-jikan gurai tomodachi to shokuji o*	して、 ***shite,***	それから *sorekara*	うちに帰った / 帰りました。 *uchi ni kaetta / kaerimashita.*
(Last night I had dinner with my friend for about two hours and then went home.)			

(B)

Sentence 1		Sentence 2
昨日は友達とランチを食べた / 食べました。 *Kinō wa tomodachi to ranchi o tabeta / tabemashita.*	それから *Sorekara*	本屋に寄った / 寄りました。 *hon-ya ni yotta / yorimahsita.*
(Yesterday I had lunch with my friend. Then I stopped by a bookstore.)		

(C)

S

	Noun 1		Noun 2		
日本では *Nihon de wa*	東京 *Tōkyō*	と *to*	京都 *Kyōto*	と、 *to,*	それから *sorekara*
Noun 3					
広島 *Hiroshima*	に *ni*	行った / 行きました。 *itta / ikimashita.*			
(In Japan, I visited Tokyo, Kyoto and Hiroshima.)					

Formation

(i) {V*te* / V*masu*}、それから
sorekara

{話して / 話し}、それから (s.o. talks, and then ~)
{*hanashite* / *hanashi*}, *sorekara*

{食べて / 食べ}、それから (s.o. eats, and then ~)
{*tabete* / *tabe*}, *sorekara*

(ii) Adj(*i*)stem く(て)、それから
ku(te), *sorekara*

高く(て)、それから (s.t. is expensive, and in addition to that, ~)
*taka**ku(te)*, *sorekara*

(iii) Adj(*na*) で、それから
de, *sorekara*

静かで、それから (s.t. is quiet, and in addition to that, ~)
shizuka de, *sorekara*

(iv) N_1 と N_2 (と)、それから N_3
to *(to)*, *sorekara*

英語と日本語(と)、それから中国語 (English, Japanese and Chinese)
eigo to nihongo (to), *sorekara chūgokugo*

(v) N_1、N_2、それから N_3
sorekara

アン、ウェンディー、それからジェーン (Anne, Wendy and Jane)
An, *Wendī*, *sorekara Jēn*

Examples

(a) 今日は朝、美容院に行って、それからデパートへ買い物に行きます。
Kyō wa asa, biyōin ni itte, sorekara depāto e kaimono ni ikimasu.
(Today I'm going to the beauty salon in the morning and then go to a department store to shop.)

(b) ３時まで宿題をしました。それから映画に行きました。
San-ji made shukudai o shimashita. Sorekara eiga ni ikimashita.
(I did my home work until three o'clock. And then, I went to a movie.)

(c) 最初に家全体が激しくゆれ、それから棚の上のものが次々に床に落ちた。
Saisho ni ie zentai ga hageshiku yure, sorekara tana no ue no mono ga tsugitsugi ni yuka ni ochita.
(First, the whole house shook violently, and then things on the shelves fell on the floor one after another.)

(d) このレストランはメニューが多く(て)、それから値段も手頃なのでとても人気があります。
Kono resutoran wa menyū ga ōku(te), sorekara nedan mo tegoro na node totemo ninki ga arimasu.
(This restaurant offers many menu items, and in addition, the prices are reasonable, so it is very popular.)

(e) このアパートは静かで買い物に便利で、それから家賃も安い。
Kono apāto wa shizuka de kaimono ni benri de, sorekara yachin mo yasui.
(This apartment is quiet, convenient for shopping, and in addition, the rent is low, too.)

(f) ナタリーさんはとても頭がいいです。それから人にも親切です。
Natarī-san wa totemo atama ga ii desu. Sorekara hito ni mo shinsetsu desu.
(Natalie-san is very smart. In addition, she is kind to others.)

(g) レストランではステーキとサラダと、それからデザートにチーズケーキを食べました。
Resutoran de wa sutēki to sarada to, sorekara dezāto ni chīzukēki o tabemashita.
(At the restaurant I ate steak, salad, and (in addition,) cheesecake for dessert.)

(h) 月曜、火曜、それから木曜もとても忙しいです。
Getsuyō, kayō, sorekara mokuyō mo totemo isogashiidesu.
(I am very busy on Monday, Tuesday, and (in addition,) Thursday, too.)

Notes

1. *Sorekara* can be used either after the non-sentence final forms, including V*te*, V*masu*, Adj(*i*)stem *ku(te)*, and Adj(*na*) *de*, as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (c)–(e), or in the sentence initial position, as in KS(B), Exs.(b) and (f).

2. In many situations, *sorekara* is used to indicate a sequence of actions or events, as in KSs(A), (B) and Exs.(a)–(c). However, in some situations, it is also used to present an additional action or event without indicating a sequence of actions or events, as in (1)–(3). In this case, *sorekara* usually occurs in the sentence-initial position.

S

(1) 私は平日は毎日４キロ走ります。**それから**週末は友達とテニスをします。
Watashi wa heijitsu wa mai-nichi yon-kiro hashirimasu. ***Sorekara*** *shūmatsu wa tomodachi to tenisu o shimasu.*
(I run 4 kilometers every day on weekdays. And I play tennis with my friends on weekends.)

(2) この辺りは雨がよく降る。**それから**時々強い風が吹く。
Kono atarai wa ame ga yoku furu. ***Sorekara*** *tokidoki tsuyoi kaze ga fuku.*
(We have much rain in this area. In addition, a strong wind blows from time to time.)

(3) 来週はテストがあります。**それから**レポートの締め切りもあります。
Raishū wa tesuto ga arimasu. ***Sorekara*** *repōto no shimekiri mo arimasu.*
(There is a test next week. In addition, a report is due, too.)

3. When *sorekara* connects adjectives (or adjective phrases) or nouns, it means "in addition," as in Exs.(d)–(h).

4. The sentences in which *sorekara* is used to connect nouns can be paraphrased using the sentence-initial *sorekara*, as in (4) and (5). In this case, the noun in the *sorekara* sentence is marked with *mo*.

(4) レストランではステーキとサラダを食べました。**それから**デザートにチーズケーキ**も**食べました。(cf. Ex.(g))
Resutoran de wa sutēki to sarada o tabemashita. ***Sorekara*** *dezāto ni chīzukēki* ***mo*** *tabemashita.*
(At the restaurant I ate steak and salad. In addition, I also ate cheesecake for dessert.)

(5) 月曜と火曜はとても忙しいです。**それから**木曜**も**とても忙しいです。
(cf. Ex.(h))
Getsuyō to kayō wa totemo isogashiidesu. ***Sorekara*** *mokuyō* ***mo*** *totemo isogashiidesu.*
(I am very busy on Monday and Tuesday. And (in addition,) I'm also very busy on Thursday.)

5. *Sorekara* can be used to present additional information that the speaker almost forgot to mention, as in (6).

(6) エドとキャシーと、ああ、そうだ、**それから**ロバートが来たよ。
Edo to Kyashī to, ā, sō da, ***sorekara*** *Robāto ga kita yo.*
(Ed and Cathy and, oh yeah, Robert came, too.)

S

6. *Sorekara* can be used to elicit more information from the listener, as in (7).

(7) A: 今日はどこへ行きましたか。
Kyō wa doko e ikimashita ka.
(Where did you go today?)

B: まず東京スカイツリーにのぼりました。
Mazu Tōkyō Sukai-tsurī ni noborimashita.
(First I went up Tokyo Skytree.)

A: それから？
Sorekara?
(And then?)

B: 国立博物館に行きました。
Kokuritsu-hakubutsukan ni ikimashita.
(I went to the national museum.)

【Related Expressions】

I. *Soshite* is also used to indicate a sequence of actions or events and to present an additional item or state of something/someone. Thus, some *sorekara* sentences can be rephrased using *soshite*, as in [1]–[3].

[1] ゆうべは２時間ぐらい友達と食事をして、{それから / そして}うちに帰った。(cf. KS(A))
Yūbe wa ni-jikan gurai tomodachi to shokuji o shite, {***sorekara*** / ***soshite***} *uchi ni kaetta.*
(Last night I had dinner with my friend for about two hours and then went home.)

[2] 日本では東京と京都と、{それから / そして}広島に行った。(cf. KS(C))
Nihon de wa Tōkyō to Kyōto to, {***sorekara*** / ***soshite***} *Hiroshima ni itta.*
(In Japan, I visited Tokyo, Kyoto and Hiroshima.)

[3] このアパートは静かで買い物に便利で、{それから / そして}家賃も安い。(cf. Ex.(e))
Kono apāto wa shizuka de kaimono ni benri de, {***sorekara*** / ***soshite***} *yachin mo yasui.*
(This apartment is quiet, convenient for shopping, and in addition, the rent is low, too.)

S

Soshite can also be used in the sentence-initial position, as in [4]–[6].

[4] 昨日は友達とランチを食べた。{それから / そして}本屋に寄った。(cf. KS(B))
Kinō wa tomodachi to ranchi o tabeta. {***Sorekara*** / ***Soshite***} *hon-ya ni yotta.*
(Yesterday I had lunch with my friend. Then I stopped by a bookstore.)

[5] 私は平日は毎日４キロ走ります。{それから / そして}週末は友達とテニスをします。(cf. (1) in Note 2)
Watashi wa heijitsu wa mai-nichi yon-kiro hashirimasu. {***Sorekara*** / ***Soshite***} *shūmatsu wa tomodachi to tenisu o shimasu.*

(I run 4 kilometers every day on weekdays. And I play tennis with my friends on weekends.)

[6] ナタリーさんはとても頭がいいです。{**それから / そして**}人にも親切です。(cf. Ex.(f))
Natarī-san wa totemo atama ga ii desu. {***Sorekara / Soshite***} *hito ni mo shinsetsu desu.*
(Natalie-san is very smart. In addition, she is kind to others.)

Soshite and *sorekara* are almost always interchangeable, but there are some minor differences. First, *soshite* is more formal than *sorekara*. Thus, in casual situations like [7], *soshite* is unnatural.

[7] エドとキャシーと、ああ、そうだ、{**それから / ??そして**}ロバートが来たよ。(= (6) in Note 5)
Edo to Kyashī to, ā, sō da, {***sorekara*** / ?? ***soshite***} *Robāto ga kita yo.*

Second, *soshite* is not commonly used to elicit more information from the listener, as in [8].

[8] A: 今日はどこへ行きましたか。(= (7) in Note 6)
Kyō wa doko e ikimashita ka.
B: まず東京スカイツリーにのぼりました。
Mazu Tōkyō Sukai-tsurī ni noborimashita.
A: {**それから / ??そして**}？
{***Sorekara*** / ??***Soshite***}*?*
B: 国立博物館に行きました。
Kokuritsu-hakubutsukan ni ikimashita.

II. In most situations, "V*te, sorekara*" and "V*masu, sorekara*" can be rephrased using V*te kara*. For example, [9a] and [9b] essentially mean the same thing.
(⇒ ***kara***[2])

[9] a. 高西さんは３時間ゴルフを{**して / し**}、**それから**１時間泳いだ。
Takanishi-san wa san-jikan gorufu o {***shite / shi***}*,* ***sorekara*** *ichi-jikan oyoida.*
(Takanishi-san played golf for three hours, and then he swam for an hour.)

b. 高西さんは３時間ゴルフを**してから**１時間泳いだ。
Takanishi-san wa san-jikan gorufu o ***shite kara*** *ichi-jikan oyoida.*
(Takanishi-san swam for one hour after having played golf for three hours.)

However, when multiple events are described one by one in the chronological order, V*te kara* cannot be used, as in [10].

[10] a. 最初に家全体が激しく｛**ゆれ / ゆれて**｝、**それから**棚の上のものが次々に床に落ちた。(cf. Ex.(c))
Saisho ni ie zentai ga hageshiku ｛***yure / yurete***｝, ***sorekara*** *tana no ue no mono ga tsugitsugi ni yuka ni ochita.*
(First, the whole house shook violently, and then things on the shelves fell on the floor one after another.)

b. ×最初に家全体が激しく**ゆれてから**棚の上のものが次々に床に落ちた。
× *Saisho ni ie zentai ga hageshiku* ***yurete kara*** *tana no ue no mono ga tsugitsugi ni yuka ni ochita.*

III. When *sorekara* connects adjectives or adjective phrases, the sentence can be rephrased using *shi.* For example, [11a] and [11b] essentially mean the same thing. (⇒ ***shi***)

[11] a. このアパートは静かで買い物に便利で、**それから**家賃も安い。
(= Ex.(e))
Kono apāto wa shizuka de kaimono ni benri de, ***sorekara*** *yachin mo yasui.*

b. このアパートは静かで買い物に便利だし、家賃も安い。
Kono apāto wa shizuka de kaimono ni benri da ***shi****, yachin mo yasui.*
(This apartment is quiet, convenient for shopping, and in addition, the rent is low, too.)

S

sore nara それなら *conj.*

If that is the case

then; in that case
【REL. *soredewa*】

◆ Key Sentence

A:	
東京で安く泊まれるところを探しているんですが。 *Tōkyō de yasuku tomareru tokoro o sagashite iru n desu ga.*	
(I'm looking for a cheap place to stay in Tokyo.)	
B:	
それなら、 *Sore nara,*	このオンラインサービスで探したらどうですか。 *kono onrain-sābisu de sagashitara dō desu ka.*
(In that case, how about looking for one on this online service?)	

Examples

(a) A: 明日映画を見に行きませんか。
Ashita eiga o mi ni ikimasen ka.
(Would you like to (lit., Won't you) go see a movie tomorrow?)

B: 明日は試験があるんです。
Ashita wa shiken ga aru n desu.
(I have an exam tomorrow.)

A: それなら、あさってはどうですか。
Sore nara, asatte wa dō desu ka.
(Then, how about the day after tomorrow?)

(b) A: 東京にはどのぐらいいましたか。
Tōkyō ni wa dono gurai imashita ka.
(How long did you stay in Tokyo?)

B: ３年です。
San-nen desu.
(Three years.)

A: それなら、東京のことはよく知っているでしょうね。
Sore nara, Tōkyō no koto wa yoku shitte iru deshō ne.
(Then, you must know a lot about Tokyo.)

Notes

1. *Sore nara* consists of the demonstrative pronoun *sore* and the conditional conjunction *nara*, and literally means "if that is the case." *Sore nara* is commonly used in the sentence-initial position, as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b), but it can be used after the coordinate conjunctions, such as *ga* and *keredomo*, as in (1).

   (1) 友香は１時間くらいだったら引っ越しを手伝えると言ったが、それなら、来てもらってもしかたがない。
   Yuka wa ichi-jikan kurai dattara hikkoshi o tetsudaeru to itta ***ga, sore nara****, kite moratte mo shikata ga nai.*
   (Yuka told me that she could help me with my move for about one hour, but, if that's all she could do (lit., if that's the case), there's no use if she comes.)

2. *Sore nara* has a more formal form, *sore naraba*, and a more informal one, *sonnara*.

[Related Expression]

Sore nara and *soredewa* are very similar. However, when *sore nara* is used, there is always a statement that *sore* refers to, while *soredewa* can also be used when there is nothing specific that *sore* refers to. For example, in the situations in [1], *sore* does not refer to anything specific. In these cases, *sore nara* is ungrammatical.
(⇒ ***soredewa***)

[1] a. [When leaving someone's office]
{それでは / ×それなら}失礼します。
{***Soredewa*** / × ***Sore nara***} *shitsurei-shimasu.*
(lit., Then I must be going now.)

b. [When receiving a souvenir]
{それでは / ×それなら}遠慮なくいただきます。
{***Soredewa*** / × ***Sore nara***} *enryo naku itadakimasu.*
(lit., Then, I'll take it (without hesitation).)

c. [At the end of a long discussion session]
{それでは / ×それなら}、20分ぐらい休みましょうか。
{***Soredewa*** / × ***Sore nara***}*, nijup-pun gurai yasumimashō ka.*
(Well, shall we take a break for about twenty minutes?)

soretomo それとも *conj.*

a coordinate conjunction that connects mutually exclusive possibilities or choices

or; either ~ or ~
【REL. ***ka***[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Sentence 1 (plain)		
この本が間違っている *Kono hon ga machigatte iru*	か、 *ka,*	それとも *soretomo*
Sentence 2 (plain)		
私が間違っている *watashi ga machigatte iru*	か、 *ka,*	どちらかだ / です。 *dochira-ka da / desu.*
(It's either that this book is wrong or that I am wrong.)		

(B)

Question 1		Question 2
すしを食べますか。 *Sushi o tabemasu ka.*	それとも *Soretomo*	すきやきにしますか。 *sukiyaki ni shimasu ka.*
(Will you have sushi, or will you have sukiyaki?)		

Examples

(a) このプロジェクトは中止になるか、それともももっと小さくなるか、どちらかでしょう。
Kono purojekuto wa chūshi ni naru ka, soretomo, motto chīsaku naru ka, dochira-ka deshō.
(This project will probably be either canceled or scaled down.)

(b) あの人は先生ですか。それとも医者ですか。
Ano hito wa sensei desu ka. Soretomo isha desu ka.
(Is he a teacher or a doctor?)

(c) 日本に留学しますか。それともこの大学で日本研究を専攻しますか。
Nihon ni ryūgaku-shimasu ka. Soretomo kono daigaku de nihon-kenkyū o senkō-shimasu ka.
(Will you go to Japan to study, or (will you) major in Japanese Studies at this university?)

(d) あなたが正しいか、それとも私が正しいか、他の人に聞いてみましょう。
Anata ga tadashii ka, soretomo watashi ga tadashii ka, hoka no hito ni kiite mimashō.
(Let's ask others whether you are right or I am right.)

Notes

1. *Soretomo* connects mutually exclusive possibilities or choices of actions expressed in question forms. *Soretomo* cannot connect sentences that are not questions, as in (1).

   (1) ×この会社は近い将来、潰れる。**それとも**他の会社に買収される。
   ×*Kono kaisha wa chikai shōrai, tsubureru.* ***Soretomo*** *hoka no kaisha ni baishū-sareru.*
   (*Intended meaning*: This company will go bankrupt in the near future, or it will be bought out by another company.)

   The intended meaning can be expressed as in (2).

   (2) この会社は近い将来、潰れる**か**、**それとも**他の会社に買収される**か**、どちらかだ。
   Kono kaisha wa chikai shōrai, tsubureru ***ka, soretomo*** *hoka no kaisha ni baishū-sareru* ***ka****, dochira-ka da.*

2. In most sentences that involve *soretomo*, two possibilities/choices are presented, but there can be more than two, as in (3).

   (3) イタリア料理にしますか。日本料理にしますか。**それとも**、中華料理がいいですか。
   Itaria-ryōri ni shimasu ***ka****. Nihon-ryōri ni shimasu* ***ka****.* ***Soretomo****, chūka-ryōri ga ii desu* ***ka****.*
   (Would you like Italian (cuisine), Japanese (cuisine), or Chinese (cuisine)?)

S However, because *dochira-ka* means "either one of the two," when *dochira-ka* is used, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), no more than two possibilities/choices can be presented.

3. *Soretomo* is used in a variety of sentence patterns as follows:

   (i) "S_1 *ka, soretomo* S_2 *ka dochira-ka* ~." is used to present two mutually exclusive possibilities, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a).

   (ii) "S_1 *ka. Soretomo* S_2 *ka.*" is used to ask which one is the case between the two possibilities or which action will be taken between the two choices, as in KS(B), Exs.(b) and (c). The questions do not have to be addressed directly to the listener, as in (4).

(4) 次の課長は西原さんだろうか。**それとも**古谷さんだろうか。
Tsugi no kachō wa Nishihara-san darō ***ka. Soretomo*** *Furuya-san darō* ***ka.***
(I wonder whether the next section chief will be Nishihara-san or Furuya-san.)

(iii) "S_1 *ka, soretomo* S_2 *ka*" is used as a set of embedded questions, as in Ex.(d).

In the sentence patterns (i)–(iii), *soretomo* is optional. The use of *soretomo* makes it clear that the two possibilities or options are mutually exclusive.

(iv) "N_1*? Soretomo,* N_2*?*," which is an abbreviated form of "S_1 *ka. Soretomo* S_2 *ka*," can be used in casual situations if the unsaid part is clear from the situation or context. For example, (5) can be used instead of KS(B) in casual situations.

(5) すし？ **それとも**、すきやき？
Sushi? ***Soretomo****, sukiyaki?*
((Will you have) Sushi or sukiyaki?)

～ sugiru ～すぎる *aux. v. (Gr. 2)*

S.o./s.t. does s.t. excessively or is excessive in degree or amount. — too; do s.t. too much/often; over-

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vmasu	
マイヤーズさん *Maiyāzu-san*	は *wa*	肉を *niku o*	食べ ***tabe***	すぎる / すぎます。 *-sugiru / sugimasu.*
(Myers-san eats too much meat.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Noun		Adj(*i*)stem/ Adj(*na*)	
このアパート *Kono apāto*	は *wa*	私たち *watashi-tachi*	には *ni wa*	高 ***taka***	すぎる / すぎます。 *-sugiru / sugimasu.*
(This apartment is too expensive for us.)					

S

Formation

(i) V*masu* すぎる
-sugiru

話しすぎる (talk too much)
hanashi-sugiru

食べすぎる (eat too much)
tabe-sugiru

(ii) Adj(*i*)stem すぎる
-sugiru

高すぎる (too expensive)
taka-sugiru

Exception: いい → よすぎる (too good)
ii *yo-sugiru*

(iii) Adj(*na*) すぎる
-sugiru

静かすぎる (too quiet)
shizuka-sugiru

Examples

(a) パーティーの飲み物を買いすぎた。
Pātī no nomimono o kai-sugita.
(I bought too many drinks for the party.)

(b) この机は私の部屋には大きすぎる。
Kono tsukue wa watashi no heya ni wa ōki-sugiru.
(This desk is too big for my room.)

(c) このアパートはジェフにはよすぎます。
Kono apāto wa Jefu ni wa yo-sugimasu.
(This apartment is too good for Jeff.)

(d) 宮口先生の授業は大変すぎるのでやめました。
Miyaguchi-sensei no jugyō wa taihen-sugiru node yamemashita.
(I dropped Prof. Miyaguchi's class because it was too demanding.)

(e) 今日は歩きすぎて足が痛いです。
Kyō wa aruki-sugite ashi ga itaidesu.
(I walked too much today and my feet hurt.)

(f) 内田さんは働きすぎて体を壊してしまった。
Uchida-san wa hataraki-sugite karada o kowashite shimatta.
(Uchida-san worked too much and ended up damaging her health.)

Notes

1. *Sugiru*, which as a main verb means "pass" or "go beyond some limit," is used as an auxiliary verb with V*masu*, Adj(*i*)stem or Adj(*na*) to mean "do s.t. excessively" or "be too ~."

2. The negative *nai* "not exist / not" changes to *nasa* before *sugiru*.

   (1) ベンは力が**なさ**すぎる。
   *Ben wa chikara ga **nasa**-sugiru.*
   (Ben is too weak. (lit., Ben has too little power.))

   (2) 希美は野菜を食べ**なさ**すぎる。
   *Nozomi wa yasai o tabe**nasa**-sugiru.*
   (Nozomi eats too few vegetables.)

3. *For* in "be too ~ for someone/something" is expressed by *ni wa*, as in KS(B), Exs.(b) and (c).

4. *Sugiru* is a Gr. 2 verb; the negative form is *suginai*, the polite form is *sugimasu* and the *te*-form is *sugite*.

suki 好き *adj. (na)*

S.t./s.o. is what s.o. likes.

like; be fond of
(ANT. *kirai*)

S

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (experiencer)		Noun (liked object)			
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	ステーキ ***sutēki***	が *ga*	好き *suki*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(I like steak.)					

(B)

Topic (experiencer)		Liked Action	Vplain· non-past	Nom			
林さん *Hayashi-san*	は *wa*	イラストを *irasuto o*	描く ***kaku***	の *no*	が *ga*	好き *suki*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(Hayashi-san likes to draw illustrations.)							

Examples

(a) 僕は野球が好きだ。
Boku wa yakyū ga suki da.
(I like baseball.)

(b) コリンズさんはジャズが大好きです。
Korinzu-san wa jazu ga dai-suki desu.
(Collins-san loves jazz.)

(c) 私は人の多いところへ行くのがあまり好きじゃないです。
Watashi wa hito no ōi tokoro e iku no ga amari suki ja naidesu.
(I don't like to go to places with many people so much.)

Notes

1. *Suki* is a *na*-adjective that requires the ~ *wa* ~ *ga* construction. That is, the experiencer (i.e., the person who likes someone or something) is marked by *wa* and the liked object by *ga*. Note that the liked object is marked by *ga*, not by *o*. (⇒ ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

2. Actions can occur in the position of the liked object. In this case, Vplain·non-past has to be nominalized with *no*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c). (⇒ ***no***[3])

3. In subordinate clauses, the experiencer is also marked by *ga*, as in (1) and (2).

S

(1) 私**が**日本のアニメが好きなことはみんな知っている。
*Watashi **ga** Nihon no anime ga suki na koto wa minna shitte iru.*
(Everybody knows that I like Japanese anime.)

(2) ハリー**が**好きなスポーツはテニスです。
*Harī **ga** suki na supōtsu wa tenisu desu.*
(Harry's favorite sport is tennis. (lit., The sport Harry likes is tennis.))

4. "Like a lot" or "love" is expressed by *dai-suki da*, as in Ex.(b).

sukunai 少ない *adj. (i)*

small in number or quantity

few; a small number of; little; a small quantity of
【REL. *wazuka*】
(ANT. *ōi*)

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (location)		Subject		
この町 *Kono machi*	は *wa*	いいレストラン ***ii resutoran***	が *ga*	少ない / 少ないです。 *sukunai / sukunaidesu.*
(There aren't many good restaurants in this town. (lit., In this town good restaurants are few.))				

Examples

(a) この大学は外国人学生が少ないです。
Kono daigaku wa gaikokujin-gakusei ga sukunaidesu.
(This college has few international students. (lit., At this college international students are few.))

(b) この町は犯罪が少ない。
Kono machi wa hanzai ga sukunai.
(There are few crimes in this town. (lit., In this town crimes are few.))

(c) この本は役に立つ情報が少ない。
Kono hon wa yaku ni tatsu jōhō ga sukunai.
(This book doesn't contain much useful information (lit., contains a small amount of useful information).)

Notes

1. Like its antonym *ōi*, *sukunai* cannot be used before a noun, except in a relative clause where *sukunai* is the predicate of the relative clause. For example, (1) is ungrammatical because *sukunai* modifies the noun *hanzai* "crime," but (2) is grammatical because *sukunai* is the predicate of the relative clause *hanzai ga sukunai* "lit., crimes are few."

   (1) ×この町は**少ない**犯罪があります。(cf. Ex.(b))
   × *Kono machi wa **sukunai** hanzai ga arimasu.*
   (*Intended meaning*: There are few crimes in this town.)

   (2) 私は犯罪が**少ない**町に住みたいです。
   *Watashi wa hanzai ga **sukunai** machi ni sumi-taidesu.*
   (I want to live in a town in which there are few crimes.)

S

2. The distinction between English "few" vs. "a few" can be expressed by ***sukunai*** and ***sukoshi wa*** as in (3) below.

(3) a. うちの会社は日本語が分かる社員が**少ない**。
*Uchi no kaisha wa nihongo ga wakaru shain ga **sukunai**.*
(There are few employees in our company who understand Japanese.)

b. うちの会社は日本語が分かる社員が**少しは**いる。
*Uchi no kaisha wa nihongo ga wakaru shain ga **sukoshi wa** iru.*
(There are a few employees in our company who understand Japanese.)

【Related Expression】

I. The *na*-adjective ***wazuka*** also means "a small number/amount," but unlike ***sukunai***, ***wazuka*** can be used as a modifier of nouns as well as as a predicate, as in [1].

[1] a. 私が持っているお金は{**わずかだ / 少ない**}。
*Watashi ga motte iru o-kane wa{**wazuka da / sukunai**}.*
(I have very little money. (lit., The money I possess is very little.))

b. 妹は{**わずかな / ×少ない**}お金で暮らしている。
*Imōto wa{**wazuka na / ×sukunai**} o-kane de kurashite iru.*
(My younger sister is living with a paltry sum of money.)

In different contexts, ***wazuka*** means "insignificant" or "only," as in [2] and [3]. ***Sukunai*** does not have such meanings.

[2] あの人は{**わずかな / ×少ない**}ことですぐ怒る。
*Ano hito wa{**wazuka na / ×sukunai**} koto de sugu okoru.*
(He gets angry easily over trifling matters.)

[3] その時、私は{**わずか(に) / ×少ない**}6つでした。
*Sono toki, watashi wa{**wazuka (ni) / ×sukunai**} mut-tsu deshita.*
(At that time I was only six years old.)

S

suru[1] **する**[1] *v. (Irr.)*

S.o. does s.t., works as s.t., or wears s.t.

do; play; work as; wear
【REL. *yaru*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Direct Object		
杉内さん *Sugiuchi-san*	は *wa*	よく週末に *yoku shūmatsu ni*	**ゴルフ** ***gorufu***	を *o*	する / します。 *suru / shimasu.*
(Sugiuchi-san often plays golf on weekends.)					

(B)

Topic (subject)			VN	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	来年日本に *rainen Nihon ni*	**留学** ***ryūgaku***	する / します。 *-suru / shimasu.*
(I am going to Japan to study next year.)				

(C)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		
スチュアートさん *Suchuāto-san*	は *wa*	**英語の先生** ***eigo no sensei***	を *o*	している / います。 *shite iru / imasu.*
(Stewart-san is (lit., works as) an English teacher.)				

(D)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		
マギー *Magī*	は *wa*	**きれいなスカーフ** ***kirei na sukāfu***	を *o*	している / います。 *shite iru / imasu.*
(Maggie is wearing a beautiful scarf.)				

Examples

(a) 良平はいつもスマホでゲームをしている。
Ryōhei wa itsumo sumaho de gēmu o shite iru.
(Ryohei is always playing games on his smartphone.)

(b) 私はよくネットで本を注文します。
Watashi wa yoku netto de hon o chūmon-shimasu.
(I often order books online.)

(c) エバンズさんはニューヨークで弁護士をしています。
Ebanzu-san wa Nyūyōku de bengoshi o shite imasu.
(Evans-san is a lawyer in New York.)

S

(d) いいネクタイをしているね。
Ii nekutai o shite iru ne.
(You look good with that tie. (lit., You're wearing a nice tie, aren't you?))

Notes

1. *Suru*[1] often occurs with nouns that indicate activities (e.g., sports, games, etc.) as the direct object, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a).

2. Many activity nouns occur with *suru* without the direct object marker *o*, yielding compound verbs called *suru*-verbs, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b). In this case, the nouns are the stems of *suru*-verbs rather than the direct object of *suru*. Most *suru*-verb stems are of Chinese or English origin, but there are also ones of Japanese origin. (1)–(3) provide some examples.

(1) *Suru*-verbs with stems of Chinese origin:

勉強する (study) *benkyō-suru*	質問する (ask a question) *shitsumon-suru*
運転する (drive (a car)) *unten-suru*	散歩する (take a walk) *sanpo-suru*
結婚する (marry) *kekkon-suru*	準備する (prepare) *junbi-suru*

(2) *Suru*-verbs with stems of English origin:

サインする (sign) *sain-suru*	ノックする (knock (on a door)) *nokku-suru*
コピーする (copy) *kopī-suru*	キスする (kiss) *kisu-suru*
メールする (email) *mēru-suru*	ダウンロードする (download) *daunrōdo-suru*

(3) *Suru*-verbs with stems of Japanese origin:

買い物する (shop) *kaimono-suru*	お願いする (ask (a favor)) *o-negai suru*
引っ越しする (move) *hikkoshi-suru*	度忘れする (forget for the moment) *dowasure-suru*
長生きする (live long) *nagaiki-suru*	勘違いする (get something wrong) *kanchigai-suru*

3. When *suru*-verbs have a direct object, as in (4a), the sentence can be rephrased by changing the stem of the *suru*-verb (e.g., *benkyō* in (4a)) into the direct object and by using the verb *suru*, as in (4b). In this case, the direct object marker *o* in (4a) must be changed to *no*. Note that (4c) is ungrammatical because in

Japanese no more than one direct object marker can be used for a transitive verb.

(4) a. 私は今、中国語**を**勉強している。
*Watashi wa ima, chūgokugo **o** benkyō-shite iru.*
(I am studying Chinese now.)

b. 私は今、中国語**の**勉強**を**している。
*Watashi wa ima, chūgokugo **no** benkyō **o** shite iru.*
(I am studying Chinese now. (lit., I am doing the study of Chinese now.))

c. × 私は今、中国語**を**勉強**を**している。
× *Watashi wa ima, chūgokugo **o** benkyō **o** shite iru.*

4. *Suru*[1] can be used with nouns that indicate occupations as the direct object, as in KS(C) and Ex.(c). In this case, *suru* means that the subject's occupation is the one indicated by the direct object. Note that in this use, *shite iru* is used rather than *suru* to indicate someone's current occupation.

5. *Suru*[1] is also used to mean "wear" when the item worn is something that covers a small part of the body, as in KS(D) and Ex.(d). Other examples of such items are *iyaringu* "earrings," *nekkuresu* "necklace," *tebukuro* "gloves," *masuku* "mask" and *udedokei* "wristwatch."

[Related Expression]

In casual speech, there are times when *yaru* (Gr. 1 verb) is used in place of *suru*[1]. However, the use of *yaru* is limited to the cases in which the direct object is an activity or an occupation (e.g., KSs(A) and (C)).

[1] 私はゴルフを｛しません / やりません｝。
*Watashi wa gorufu o｛**shimasen** / **yarimasen**｝.*
(I don't play golf.)

[2] 息子は高校の先生を｛しています / やっています｝。
*Musuko wa kōkō no sensei o｛**shite imasu** / **yatte imasu**｝.*
(My son is (lit., works as) a high school teacher.)

S

Yaru cannot be used for *suru* in situations like KSs(B) and (D).

[3] 私は来年日本に留学｛する / × やる｝。(= KS(B))
*Watashi wa rainen Nihon ni ryūgaku-｛**suru** / × **yaru**｝.*
(I'm going to Japan to study next year.)

[4] マギーはきれいなスカーフを｛している / × やっている｝。(= KS(D))
*Magī wa kirei na sukāfu o｛**shite iru** / × **yatte iru**｝.*
(Maggie is wearing a pretty scarf.)

suru² する² *v. (Irr.)*

S.o./s.t. possesses a certain characteristic.

have
【REL. ~ *wa* ~ *ga*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject, possessor)		Adjective	Noun (bodily part)		
アンジェラ *Anjera*	は *wa*	長い ***nagai***	足 ***ashi***	を *o*	している / います。 *shite iru / imasu.*
(Angela has long legs.)					

(B)

Topic (subject, possessor)		Adjective	Noun (attribute)		
このリンゴ *Kono ringo*	は *wa*	きれいな ***kirei na***	色 ***iro***	を *o*	している / います。 *shite iru / imasu.*
(This apple has a pretty color.)					

Examples

(a) デニスは丈夫な体をしています。
Denisu wa jōbu na karada o shite imasu.
(Dennis has a strong body.)

(b) 森下さんはいい声をしている。
Morishita-san wa ii koe o shite iru.
(Morishita-san has a nice voice.)

S

(c) あの秘書は嫌な性格をしている。
Ano hisho wa iya na seikaku o shite iru.
(That secretary has an unpleasant personality.)

(d) あの花びんはおもしろい形をしていますね。
Ano kabin wa omoshiroi katachi o shite imasu ne.
(That vase over there has an interesting shape, doesn't it?)

(e) 西村さんは日に焼けて赤い顔をしている。
Nishimura-san wa hi ni yakete akai kao o shite iru.
(Nishimura-san is sunburned and has a red face.)

Notes

1. *Suru*[2] is used to describe someone or something by focusing on a part of his/her/its body or one of his/her/its attributes, such as color, shape or appearance. It is primarily used to describe visible characteristics, but it can also be used to describe someone's invisible characteristics, as in Exs.(b) and (c).

2. *Suru*[2] commonly occurs in the form of *shite iru* in the main clause, as in KSs(A), (B) and Exs.(a)–(e). The following sentences are ungrammatical.

   (1) a. ×アンジェラは長い足を**する**。(cf. KS(A))
   ×*Anjera wa nagai ashi o* ***suru.***

   b. ×あの花びんはおもしろい形を**した**。(cf. Ex.(d))
   ×*Ano kabin wa omoshiroi katachi o* ***shita.***

   However, when *suru* describes a temporal change in one's expression, the bare form *suru* is used rather than *shite iru*, as in (2).

   (2) 彼は子供の頃の話を始める時、いつも悲しそうな顔を**する**。
   Kare wa kodomo no koro no hanashi o hajimeru toki, itsumo kanashi-sō na kao o ***suru.***
   (He always takes on a sad look (lit., shows a sad-looking face) whenever he starts to talk about his childhood.)

   Note that in relative clauses, *shita* is used, as in (3).

   (3) a. 長い足を**した**人
   nagai ashi o ***shita*** *hito*
   (a person with long legs (lit., who has long legs))

   b. おもしろい形を**した**花びん
   omoshiroi katachi o ***shita*** *kabin*
   (a vase with an interesting shape)

3. Besides adjectives, other kinds of words can be used to modify the nouns representing body parts or attributes, as in (4).

   (4) a. ここの海岸には**ライオンの**形をした岩があります。
   Koko no kaigan ni wa ***raion no*** *katachi o shita iwa ga arimasu.*
   (There is a rock with the shape of a lion on the shore here.)

   b. 私が少しお金を貸してほしいと言うと、父は**困った**顔をした。
   Watashi ga sukoshi o-kane o kashite hoshii to iu to, chichi wa ***komatta*** *kao o shita.*
   (When I told my father that I'd like to borrow some money, he took on a troubled look (lit., showed a troubled face.))

【Related Expression】

The sentences in the pattern "Topic + Adj + N (bodily part or attribute) + *shite iru*" can be restated using the ~ *wa* ~ *ga* construction, as in [1] and [2]. (⇒ ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

[1] アンジェラは足が長い。(cf. KS(A))
*Anjera **wa** ashi **ga** nagai.*
(Angela has long legs.)

[2] このリンゴは色がきれいだ。(cf. KS(B))
*Kono ringo **wa** iro **ga** kirei da.*
(This apple has a pretty color.)

suru[3] **する**[3] *v. (Irr.)*

S.t. is perceived by s.o.'s non-visual senses. — hear; taste; smell; feel

◆ Key Sentence

Subject			
	Noun (sound, taste, etc.)		
玄関で子供たちの *Genkan de kodomo-tachi no*	声 ***koe***	が *ga*	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(I heard children's voices in the entrance hall.)			

Examples

S

(a) この肉は変な味がしますね。
Kono niku wa hen na aji ga shimasu ne.
(This meat tastes strange, doesn't it?)

(b) 彼女のバイオリンは素晴らしい音がする。
Kanojo no baiorin wa subarashii oto ga suru.
(Her violin produces wonderful sounds.)

(c) この花はいいにおいがする。
Kono hana wa ii nioi ga suru.
(This flower smells nice.)

(d) 私は寒気がします。
Watashi wa samuke ga shimasu.
(I feel a chill.)

Note

Suru[3] is used only to describe things perceived by a non-visual sense. If something is perceived visually, *ga suru* cannot be used to describe it, as in (1). In this case, either the ~ *o shite iru* structure or the ~ *wa* ~ *ga* structure is used, as in (2) and (3).
(⇒ ***suru***[2]; ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

(1) ×このリンゴはきれいな色がする。
×*Kono ringo wa kirei na iro* ***ga suru.***

(2) このリンゴはきれいな色をしている。
Kono ringo wa kirei na iro ***o shite iru.***
(This apple has a pretty color.)

(3) このリンゴは色がきれいだ。
Kono ringo ***wa*** *iro* ***ga*** *kirei da.*
(This apple has a pretty color.)

suru[4] する[4] *v. (Irr.)*

S.t. costs a certain amount of money or a certain amount of time elapses. cost; elapse

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Number + Counter (cost)	
この時計 *Kono tokei*	は *wa*	10万円 ***jūman-en***	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(This watch cost 100,000 yen.)			

(B)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Noun (duration)		
あと *Ato*	1年 ***ichi-nen***	したら *shitara*	大学を出る / 出ます。 *daigaku o deru / demasu.*
(In another year (lit., When another year has elapsed), I'll graduate from college.)			

S

Examples

(a) A: この冷蔵庫はどのぐらいしましたか。
Kono reizōko wa dono gurai shimashita ka.
(How much (lit., About how much) did this refrigerator cost?)

B: 15 万円ぐらいしました。
Jūgoman-en gurai shimashita.
(It cost about 150,000 yen.)

(b) もう少しすれば夫が帰ります。
Mō sukoshi sureba otto ga kaerimasu.
(In a short time my husband will be back.)

Notes

1. *Suru*[4] is used with quantifiers that indicate an amount of money, as in KS(A), or a duration of time, as in KS(B).

2. In the structure in KS(B), i.e., when *suru* is preceded by quantifiers that represent a duration of time, *suru* is used only in subordinate clauses. Therefore, the following sentence, in which *suru* is used in the main clause, is ungrammatical.

   (1) ×大学を出てから３年しました。
   × *Daigaku o dete kara san-nen* ***shimashita.***
   (*Intended meaning*: Three years have passed since I graduated from college.)

   In order to convey the intended meaning in (1), *tatsu* "pass" must be used, as in (2).

   (2) 大学を出てから３年経ちました。
   Daigaku o dete kara san-nen ***tachimashita.***

S

suru[5] **する**[5] *v. (Irr.)*

S.o. changes the state of s.o./s.t.

make; change
【REL. ***naru***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		Adj(*i*)stem		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	テレビの音 ***terebi no oto***	を *o*	小さ ***chīsa***	く *ku*	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(I turned down the TV. (lit., I made the TV volume small.))						

(B)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		Adj(*na*)		
アリーサ *Arīsa*	は *wa*	トイレ ***toire***	を *o*	きれい ***kirei***	に *ni*	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(Alisa cleaned the bathroom. (lit., Alisa made the bathroom clean.))						

(C)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		Noun		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	ガレージ ***garēji***	を *o*	仕事場 ***shigoto-ba***	に *ni*	している / います。 *shite iru / imasu.*
(I'm using the garage as my workplace. (lit., I've made the garage into my workplace.))						

Formation

(i) Adj(*i*)stem くする
ku suru

大きくする (s.o. makes s.t. large)
ōkiku suru

(ii) Adj(*na*) にする
ni suru

簡単にする (s.o. makes s.t. simple/easy)
kantan ni suru

(iii) N にする
ni suru

映画にする (s.o. cinematizes s.t.)
eiga ni suru

S

Examples

(a) カーテンを引いて部屋を暗くした。
Kāten o hiite heya o kuraku shita.
(I drew the curtain and made the room dark.)

(b) みんな疲れていたので会議の時間を短くしました。
Minna tsukarete ita node kaigi no jikan o mijikaku shimashita.
(Because everybody was tired, we shortened the meeting (lit., made the meeting time short).)

(c) 母はこの指輪をとても大事にしている。
Haha wa kono yubiwa o totemo daiji ni shite iru.
(My mother treasures this ring.)

(d) 今、隣の部屋でテストをしているので静かにしてください。
Ima, tonari no heya de tesuto o shite iru node shizuka ni shite kudasai.
(Please be quiet (lit., make yourself quiet) because a test is going on in the next room.)

(e) 今週中にしないといけないことをリストにしました。
Konshū-chū ni shinai to ikenai koto o risuto ni shimashita.
(I made a list of the things that I have to do this week. (lit., I made the things that I have to do this week into a list.))

(f) 弟はクッションを枕にして寝ている。
Otōto wa kusshon o makura ni shite nete iru.
(My younger brother is sleeping with a cushion as a pillow.)

Notes

1. In general, *suru*[5] is used when someone changes the state of something or someone. The sentence structures in KSs(A) and (B) are used when someone changes the state of the referent of the direct object into the state that the adjective indicates. The structure in KS(C) (i.e., N_1 *wa* N_2 *o* N_3 *ni suru*) is used when N_1 does something so that N_2 changes to N_3.

S

2. The structure "N_1 *o* N_2 *ni suru*" is also used with N_2 as nouns that represent a body part, as in (1) and (2).

   (1) 時々、自転車に乗りながらスマホで話している人を目にする。
   Tokidoki, jitensha ni nori nagara sumaho de hanashite iru hito ***o*** *me* ***ni suru.***
   (We sometimes see people talking on their smartphones while riding a bike.)

   (2) この学校について悪い評判を耳にした。
   Kono gakkō ni tsuite warui hyōban ***o*** *mimi* ***ni shita.***
   (I heard a bad thing (lit., a bad reputation) about this school.)

(3) and (4) provide more examples of this structure.

(3) a. 不満を口にする (to mention one's dissatisfaction)
fuman ***o*** *kuchi* ***ni suru***

b. すしを口にする (to put sushi in one's mouth)
sushi ***o*** *kuchi* ***ni suru***

(4) a. 本を手にする (to pick up a book)
hon ***o*** *te* ***ni suru***

b. 大金を手にする (to acquire a large sum of money)
taikin ***o*** *te* ***ni suru***

suru[6] する[6]　*v. (Irr.)*

a verb that, combined with onomatopoeias, makes a verb phrase that expresses a state of s.o/s.t. or s.o.'s manner of doing s.t.

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Onomatopoeia	
彼の話を聞いていると *Kare no hanashi o kiite iru to*	イライラ ***iraira***	する / します。 *suru / shimasu.*
(His talk irritates me. (lit., When I hear him talk, I get irritated.))		

(B)

	Onomatopoeia		
スマホが見つかって *Sumaho ga mitsukatte*	ほっ ***hot***	と *to*	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(I found my smartphone and felt relieved.)			

Formation

(i) Onomatopoeia する
suru

ワクワクする (get excited)
wakuwaku suru

うっとりする (get mesmerized)
uttori suru

(ii) Onomatopoeia とする
to suru

はっとする (get startled)
hat to suru

スカッとする (get refreshed)
sukat to suru

しんとする (become quiet)
shin to suru

Examples

(a) これから仕事の面接がある。胸がドキドキする。
Kore kara shigoto no mensetsu ga aru. Mune ga dokidoki suru.
(I have a job interview now. I'm nervous.)

(b) シャワーを浴びてさっぱりしました。
Shawā o abite sappari shimashita.
(I took a shower and felt refreshed.)

(c) テーブルが油でべとべとしていて気持ちが悪い。
Tēburu ga abura de betobeto shite ite kimochi ga warui.
(The table top is sticky with oil and feels uncomfortable.)

(d) このいすはグラグラしています。座ると危ないですよ。
Kono isu wa guragura shite imasu. Suwaru to abunaidesu yo.
(This chair is shaky. It's dangerous if you sit on it.)

(e) ビルの入り口が分からず、まごまごしていたら、親切な人が教えてくれた。
Biru no iriguchi ga wakarazu, magomago shite itara, shinsetsu na hito ga oshiete kureta.
(When I was confused not knowing where the building entrance was, a kind person showed me (where).)

(f) 彼女は今とても興奮しているので、そっとしておいたほうがいいでしょう。
Kanojo wa ima totemo kōfun-shite iru node, sot to shite oita hō ga ii deshō.
(She is very agitated, so it's better to leave her alone.)

Notes

1. Many onomatopoeias (mostly psychomimes and phenomimes) are used with *suru* to express a psychological or physiological state of a person, as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (b), a physical state of an object, as in Exs.(c) and (d), and someone's manner of doing something, as in Exs.(e) and (f). (1)–(4) provide additional examples.

(⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 7**. Sound Symbolisms)

(1) Psychological state

a. ウキウキする (be exhilarated)
ukiuki suru

ムカムカする (be angry)
mukamuka suru

ヒヤヒヤする (be scared)
hiyahiya suru

くよくよする (fret)
kuyokuyo suru

b. はっとする (be startled)
hat to suru

ムッとする (be stifling; get offended)
mut to suru

かっとする (flare up)
kat to suru

ぞっとする (shiver)
zot to suru

ムカッとする (get angry)
mukat to suru

c. がっかりする (get disappointed)
gakkari suru

うっかりする (be careless)
ukkari suru

うんざりする (get sick and tired)
unzari suru

ぼんやりする (be absent-minded)
bon'yari suru

(2) Physiological state

(頭が) ガンガンする (have a splitting headache)
(atama ga) gangan suru

(頭が) クラクラする (feel dizzy)
(atama ga) kurakura suru

(体が) ぞくぞくする (feel a chill)
(karada ga) zokuzoku suru

(3) Physical state

つるつるする (slippery)
tsurutsuru suru

ざらざらする ((a surface is) rough)
zarazara suru

ねばねばする (sticky)
nebaneba suru

ぬるぬるする (slimy)
nurunuru suru

キラキラする (glitter)
kirakira suru

ギラギラする (glare)
giragira suru

ごたごたする (troubled)
gotagota suru

じめじめする (damp)
jimejime suru

(4) Manner

うとうとする (doze)
utouto suru

うろうろする (hang/wander around)
urouro suru

もたもたする (slow)
motamota suru

だらだらする (lazy)
daradara suru

2. There are two common patterns that involve onomatopoeias and *suru*: (A) Onomatopoeia + *suru* (e.g., KS(A), Exs.(a)–(e)) and (B) Onomatopoeia + *to suru* (e.g., KS(B), Ex.(f)). When onomatopoeias contain double two-syllable sounds (e.g., *iraira*, *wakuwaku*), Pattern (A) is usually used. When they don't, Pattern (B) is often used, as in KS(B) and Ex.(f), but Pattern (A) is also used with some onomatopoeias that do not contain double two-syllable sounds, as in Ex.(b).

3. When onomatopoeia + (*to*) *suru* modifies nouns, *suru* takes various forms, as in (5)–(7).

(5) イライラする話 (an irritating talk)
iraira ***suru*** *hanashi*

ズキズキする頭 (a throbbing head)
zukizuki ***suru*** *atama*

(6) がっしりした体 (a sturdy body)
gasshiri ***shita*** *karada*

あっさりした味 (plain taste)
assari ***shita*** *aji*

ぴったりしたジーンズ (tight jeans)
pittari ***shita*** *jīnzu*

はきはきした話し方 (a crisp way of talking)
hakihaki ***shita*** *hanashi-kata*

(7) まごまごしている人 (a confused person)
magomago ***shite iru*** *hito*

ニコニコしている子供たち (smiling children)
nikoniko ***shite iru*** *kodomo-tachi*

Another way to modify nouns with onomatopoeias is to use *no* instead of *suru*, as in (8).

(8) グラグラのいす (shaky chair)
guragura ***no*** *isu*

フラフラの頭 (dizzy head)
furafura ***no*** *atama*

suruto すると *conj.*

a conjunction that precedes a statement or question triggered by what is stated in the preceding sentence

then; in that case; that means
【REL. *soredewa*; *sō suru to*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Sentence 1		Sentence 2
ジョギングを始めた。 *Jogingu o hajimeta.*	すると、 *Suruto,*	ご飯がおいしくなった。 *gohan ga oishiku natta.*
(I took up jogging. Then, I began to have a good appetite (lit., meals came to taste better).)		

(B)

A:	B:	
今日は月曜日ですよ。 *Kyō wa getsuyōbi desu yo.*	すると、 *Suruto,*	あのレストランは休みですね。 *ano resutoran wa yasumi desu ne.*
(Today is Monday, you know.)	(Then, that restaurant is closed, isn't it?)	

Examples

(a) 新しいスマホを買いました。すると、妹も欲しがりました。
Atarashii sumaho o kaimashita. Suruto, imōto mo hoshi-garimashita.
(I bought a new smartphone. Then, my younger sister wanted one, too.)

(b) 頭が痛かったので薬を飲んだ。すると、痛みがすぐおさまった。
Atama ga itakatta node kusuri o nonda. Suruto, itami ga sugu osamatta.
(I had a headache, so I took some medicine. Then, the headache disappeared right away.)

(c) A: 息子は来年大学を卒業します。
Musuko wa rainen daigaku o sotsugyō-shimasu.
(My son is going to graduate from college next year.)

B: すると、来年から仕事ですか。
Suruto, rainen kara shigoto desu ka.
(Then, is he going to work next year (lit., starting next year)?)

Notes

1 *Suruto* is used in the sentence-initial position. S_1 in "S_1. *Suruto* S_2" is the utterance either by the speaker of "*Suruto* S_2," as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b), or by another speaker, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c). In the first case, S_2 describes an event that was triggered by the action/event described in S_1. In this case, the equivalent English is "then" in the sense of "after that." In the second case, on the other hand, S_2 expresses the speaker's question triggered by S_1. In this case, the equivalent English is "in that case" or "that means."

2. *To* of *suruto* is the conjunction *to* (= *to*[4]). Therefore, just like S_2 in "S_1 *to* S_2," S_2 in "S_1. *Suruto* S_2" cannot be a command, a request, an invitation, a suggestion, a volitional action or an uncertain action, as in (1)–(4). (⇒ ***to***[4]: Note 2)

(1) A: 明日は予定があるので来られません。
Ashita wa yotei ga aru node koraremasen.
(I cannot come tomorrow because I already have plans.)

B: ×すると、あさって{来なさい / 来てください / 来てもらえませんか}。[command / request]
× ***Suruto***, *asatte* {***ki-nasai*** / ***kite kudasai*** / ***kite moraemasen ka***}.
(*Intended meanings*: Then, {come / please come} the day after tomorrow. / Then, could you come the day after tomorrow?)

(2) A: 今日は忙しいです。
Kyō wa isogashiidesu.
(I'm busy today.)

B: ×すると、明日{行きましょう / 行ったらどうですか}。
[invitation / suggestion]
× ***Suruto***, *ashita* {***ikimashō*** / ***ittara dō desu ka***}.
(*Intended meanings*: Then, {let's go (there) tomorrow. / why don't you go (there) tomorrow?})

S

(3) A: あなたが来ないと困るんです。
Anata ga konai to komaru n desu.
(We'll be in trouble if you don't come.)

B: ×すると、行きます。[volitional action]
× ***Suruto, ikimasu.***
(*Intended meaning*: In that case, I'll go.)

(4) A: 明日のレセプションはごちそうがたくさん出るそうです。
Ashita no resepushon wa gochisō ga takusan deru sō desu.
(I heard that a lot of fine food will be served for tomorrow's reception.)

B: ×すると、小川さんも行くでしょう。[uncertain action]
× ***Suruto**, Ogawa-san mo **iku deshō**.*
(*Intended meaning*: Then, Ogawa-san will go, too, I guess.)

【Related Expressions】

I. *Suruto* is the shortened form of *sō suru to*. These two expressions have identical meanings and can be used interchangeably.

II. *Soredewa* also means "then" or "in that case." However, while *suruto* has the usage restrictions stated in Note 2, *soredewa* does not have such restrictions. Thus, *soredewa* can be used in the sentences in (1)–(4) in Note 2.

(⇒ ***soredewa***)

[1] A: 明日は予定があるので来られません。
Ashita wa yotei ga aru node koraremasen.
(I cannot come tomorrow because I already have plans.)

B: {それでは / ×すると}、あさって{来なさい / 来てください / 来てもらえませんか}。[command/request] (cf. (1))
{***Soredewa*** / × ***Suruto***}, *asatte* {*ki-nasai / kite kudasai / kite moraemasen ka*}.
(Then, {come / please come} the day after tomorrow. / Then, could you come the day after tomorrow?)

[2] A: 今日は忙しいです。
Kyō wa isogashiidesu.
(I'm busy today.)

B: {それでは / ×すると}、明日{行きましょう / 行ったらどうですか}。[invitation/suggestion] (cf. (2))
{***Soredewa*** / × ***Suruto***}, *ashita* {*ikimashō / ittara dō desu ka*}.
(Then, let's go (there) tomorrow. / Then, why don't you go (there) tomorrow?)

[3] A: あなたが来ないと困るんです。
Anata ga konai to komaru n desu.
(We'll be in trouble if you don't come.)

B: {それでは / ×すると}、行きます。[volitional action] (cf. (3))
{***Soredewa*** / × ***Suruto***}, *ikimasu.*
(In that case, I'll go.)

[4] A: 明日のレセプションはごちそうがたくさん出るそうです。
Ashita no resepushon wa gochisō ga takusan deru sō desu.
(I heard that a lot of fine food will be served for tomorrow's reception.)

B: {それでは / ×すると}、小川さんも行くでしょう。

[uncertain action] (cf. (4))

{***Soredewa*** / × ***Suruto***}, *Ogawa-san mo iku deshō.*

(Then, Ogawa-san will go, too, I guess.)

On the other hand, *soredewa* cannot be used when the two sentences are uttered by the same person. Thus, in KS(A) and Ex.(a), *soredewa* is ungrammatical, as in [5] and [6].

[5] ジョギングを始めた。{すると / ×それでは}、ご飯がおいしくなった。

(= KS(A))

Jogingu o hajimeta. {***Suruto*** / × ***Soredewa***}, *gohan ga oishiku natta.*

(I took up jogging. Then, I began to have a good appetite (lit., meals came to taste better).)

[6] 新しいスマホを買いました。{すると /×それでは}、妹も欲しがりました。(= Ex.(a))

Watashi wa atarashii sumaho o kaimashita. {***Suruto*** / × ***Soredewa***}, *imōto mo hoshi-garimashita.*

(I bought a new smartphone. Then, my younger sister wanted one, too.)

-tachi たち *suf.*

a plural marker attached to personal pronouns or to human (proper) nouns

【REL. *-domo*; *-gata*; *-ra*】

Formation

(i) Personal pronoun たち
-tachi

私たち (we)
watashi-tachi

あなたたち (you [pl.])
anata-tachi

(ii) Human proper noun たち
-tachi

上村さんたち (Uemura-san and others)
Uemura-san-tachi

(iii) Human noun たち
-tachi

子供たち (children)
kodomo-tachi

男たち (men)
otoko-tachi

Note

Kanojo "she" can take *-tachi*, but *kare* "he" cannot.

(1) 彼女たち (they [female])
*kanojo-**tachi***

cf. 彼女ら (they [female])
*kanojo-**ra***

(2) ×彼たち (they [male])
× *kare-**tachi***

cf. 彼ら (they [male])
*kare-**ra***

T

【Related Expressions】

In addition to *-tachi* there are three other pluralizing suffixes: *-domo*, *-gata* and *-ra*. *-domo* is attached primarily to the formal first person pronouns *watakushi* and *watashi*, yielding a humble "we," as in [1].

[1] 私どもは何も存じません。
*Watakushi/Watashi-**domo** wa nani mo zonjimasen.*
(We don't know anything about it.)

-domo can also be attached to a very limited number of human nouns such as *otoko* "man" and *onna* "woman," yielding the rather downgrading plurals *otoko-domo* "men" and *onna-domo* "women," respectively. Although *kodomo* "child" is *ko* + *domo*, it is no longer used as a plural. Instead *-tachi* is attached to it for the plural form, as in Formation (iii).

-gata is an honorific plural marker attached to the second person pronouns *anata*, *minasama* and *minasan*, and a limited number of nouns, including *o-kāsan* "mother," *o-tōsan* "father" and *sensei* "teacher."

[2] a. あなた**方**はいついらっしゃいますか。
*Anata-**gata** wa itsu irasshaimasu ka.*
(When are you coming?)

b. 皆さん**方**にお願いがあります。
*Minasan-**gata** ni o-negai ga arimasu.*
(We have a favor to ask of you.)

c. 先生**方**はいらっしゃらないそうです。
*Sensei-**gata** wa irassharanai sō desu.*
(I was told that the teachers are not coming.)

The honorific plural form for *hito* "person" is *katagata*, which is the plural form of *kata*.

[3] この**方々**は私の母校の先生方です。
*Kono **katagata** wa watashi no bokō no sensei-gata desu.*
(These people are professors from my alma mater.)

-ra is the least formal plural marker and is normally attached to personal pronouns and names.

[4] a. 1st person

僕ら	わたしら	×わたくしら
*boku-**ra***	*watashi-**ra***	× *watakushi-**ra***

b. 2nd person

君ら	あんたら	お前ら	×あなたら
*kimi-**ra***	*anta-**ra***	*omae-**ra***	× *anata-**ra***

c. 3rd person

彼ら (male)	彼女ら (female)	高木ら (Takagi and his company)
*kare-**ra***	*kanojo-**ra***	*Takagi-**ra***

-ra can also be used with the demonstrative pronouns *kore* "this," *sore* "that," and *are* "that one over there," i.e., *kore-ra* "these," *sore-ra* "those" and *are-ra* "those over there."

～tai ～たい *aux. adj. (i)*

an auxiliary adjective that expresses a desire to do s.t.

want (to do s.t.); would like (to do s.t.)
【REL. *hoshii*[1]; *hoshii*[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vmasu	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	日本で *Nihon de*	働き ***hataraki***	たい / たいです。 *-tai / taidesu.*
(I want to work in Japan.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)			Direct Object		Vmasu	
僕 *Boku*	は *wa*	今 *ima*	ピザ ***piza***	を / が *o / ga*	食べ ***tabe***	たい / たいです。 *-tai / taidesu.*
(I want to eat pizza now.)						

(C)

Topic (subject)		Direct Object		Vmasu		
北岡さん *Kitaoka-san*	は *wa*	新しい車 ***atarashii kuruma***	を *o*	買い ***kai***	た *-ta*	がっている / います。 *-gatte iru / imasu.*
(Kitaoka-san wants to buy a new car. (lit., Kitaoka-san is showing signs of wanting to buy a new car.))						

Formation

Vmasu たい
-tai

話したい (want to talk)
hanashi-tai

食べたい (want to eat)
tabe-tai

Examples

(a) 今日は疲れているので早く寝たいです。
Kyō wa tsukarete iru node hayaku ne-taidesu.
(I'm tired today, so I want to go to bed early.)

(b) 暑いので何か冷たいもの{を / が}飲みたい。
Atsui node nani-ka tsumetai mono{o / ga} nomi-tai.
(It's hot, so I want to drink something cold.)

(c) お昼に何{を / が}食べたいですか。
O-hiru ni nani{o / ga} tabe-taidesu ka.
(What would you like to eat for lunch (lit., for noon) ?)

(d) 三木さんはスペインへ行きたがっている。
Miki-san wa Supein e iki-ta-gatte iru.
(Miki-san wants to go to Spain.)

Notes

1. *Tai* is an auxiliary *i*-adjective that expresses a person's desire to do something. Since V*masu tai* expresses a feeling that is not observable to others, it is usually used for the first person in declarative sentences and for the second person in interrogative sentences. For the third person, V*masu ta-gatte iru* "lit., is showing signs of wanting to do s.t." is commonly used, as in KS(C) and Ex.(d). However, V*masu tai* with the third person subject is acceptable in the following situations. (⇒ ~ ***garu***)

(1) Desire in the past:

浩介はサッカー選手になり**たかった**が、才能がないのであきらめた。
*Kōsuke wa sakkā-senshu ni nari-**takatta** ga, sainō ga nai node akirameta.*
(Kosuke wanted to be a soccer player, but he gave it up because he had no talent for that.)

(2) In indirect speech / hearsay: (⇒ ~ ***sō da***[1])

a. 悟もスキーに行きたい**と言っている**。
*Satoru mo sukī ni iki-tai **to itte iru.***
(Satoru says he wants to go skiing, too.)

b. 美奈は日本へ帰りたい**そうだ**。
*Mina wa Nihon e kaeri-tai **sō da.***
(I heard that Mina wants to go back to Japan.)

(3) In explanatory situations: (⇒ ~ ***no da***)

西山さんはあなたと話したい**んです**よ。
*Nishiyama-san wa anata to hanashi-tai **n desu** yo.*
((The explanation is that) Nishiyama-san wants to talk with you.)

(4) In conjecture expressions: (⇒ ~ ***rashii***; ~ ***sō da***[2])

a. 良平は真奈と踊りたいらしい。
Ryōhei wa Mana to odori-tai ***rashii.***
(It seems that Ryohei wants to dance with Mana.)

b. 早田さんは早く家族に会いたそうだ。
*Hayata-san wa hayaku kazoku ni ai-ta-****sō da.***
(It looks like Hayata-san wants to see his family soon.)

2. If the verb in V*masu tai* is transitive, the direct object can be marked either by *ga* or by *o*, as seen in KS(B), Exs.(b) and (c). When the desire to do something is strong, *ga* is preferred.

Under the following conditions, *ga* cannot be used regardless of the degree of desire.

(5) When a long element intervenes between the direct object and the verb:

私は水｛を / ×が｝出かける前に飲みたい。
Watashi wa mizu ｛***o*** / × ***ga***｝ *dekakeru mae ni nomi-tai.*
(I want to drink water before I leave home.)

(6) When the main verb is in the passive form: (⇒ ~***rareru***[1])

私は先生にこの絵｛を / ×が｝ほめられたい。
Watashi wa sensei ni kono e ｛***o*** / × ***ga***｝ *homerare-tai.*
(I want to have this picture praised by my teacher. (lit., I want this picture to be praised by my teacher.))

(7) When the preceding noun is not the direct object: (⇒ ***o***[2]; ***o***[3]; ***o***[4])

a. 私は公園｛を / ×が｝歩きたい。
Watashi wa kōen ｛***o*** / × ***ga***｝ *aruki-tai.*
(I want to walk through the park.)

b. 私は早くこの電車｛を / ×が｝降りたい。
Watashi wa hayaku kono densha ｛***o*** / × ***ga***｝ *ori-tai.*
(I want to get off this train soon.)

c. 私は彼女の結婚｛を / ×が｝喜びたい。
Watashi wa kanojo no kekkon ｛***o*** / × ***ga***｝ *yorokobi-tai.*
(I'd like to congratulate her on her marriage (lit., to be happy with her marriage).)

3. In the construction V*masu ta-gatte iru*, *ga* cannot be used to mark the direct object, as in (8).

T

(8) 北岡さんは新しい車{**を** / × **が**}買いたがっている。(= KS(C))
Kitaoka-san wa atarashii kuruma {***o*** / × ***ga***} *kai-ta-gatte iru.*
(Kitaoka-san wants to buy a new car. (lit., Kitaoka-san is showing signs of wanting to buy a new car.))

4. V*masu tai* should not be used to express an invitation. The sentences in (9) are inappropriate in invitation situations.

(9) a. × 私と一緒に行きたいですか。
× *Watashi to issho ni iki-tai desu ka.*
(*Intended meaning*: Would you like to go with me?)

b. × 明日食事に来たいですか。
× *Ashita shokuji ni ki-tai desu ka.*
(*Intended meaning*: Would you like to come to dinner tomorrow?)

In these situations negative questions are used, as seen in (10).
(⇒ ***~mashō***: Related Expression I)

(10) a. 私と一緒に**行きませんか**。
Watashi to issho ni ***ikimasen ka.***
(Would you like to (lit., Won't you) go with me?)

b. 明日食事に**来ませんか**。
Ashita shokuji ni ***kimasen ka.***
(Would you like to (lit., Won't you) come to dinner tomorrow?)

【Related Expressions】

The idea of "want" in English is expressed by either ~ *tai*, *hoshii*[1] or *hoshii*[2]. ~ *tai* is used when the subject wants to do something. *Hoshii*[1] is used when the subject wants something. *Hoshii*[2] is used when the subject wants someone to do something.
(⇒ ***hoshii***[1]; ***hoshii***[2])

T

taitei たいてい *adv.*

in most cases

in most cases; in most occasions; usually; mostly; most
【REL. *hotondo*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

			Verb
私は *Watashi wa*	たいてい *taitei*	会社の食堂で昼ご飯を *kaisha no shokudō de hiru-gohan o*	食べる / 食べます。 *taberu / tabemasu.*
(I usually eat lunch (lit., In most cases, I eat lunch) at my company's cafeteria.)			

(B)

			Noun		
今は *Ima wa*	たいてい *taitei*	の *no*	人 *hito*	が *ga*	スマホを持っている / います。 *sumaho o motte iru / imasu.*
(Most people have a smartphone now.)					

Examples

(a) 大高さんはたいてい７時ごろ家に帰る。
Ōtaka-san wa taitei shichi-ji-goro ie ni kaeru.
(Otaka-san usually returns home around seven o'clock.)

(b) 夜はたいてい暇なので、ギターを弾いたりゲームをしたりしています。
Yoru wa taitei hima na node, gitā o hiitari gēmu o shitari shite imasu.
(I'm free most evenings, so I do things like playing the guitar and playing games.)

(c) 私たちのミーティングはたいてい１時間くらいで終わる。
Watashi-tachi no mītingu wa taitei ichi-jikan kurai de owaru.
(Our meetings usually end in about one hour.)

(d) この店へ来る客はたいてい学生です。
Kono mise e kuru kyaku wa taitei gakusei desu.
(Customers who come to this store are mostly students.)

(e) この国ではたいていの店でクレジットカードが使える。
Kono kuni de wa taitei no mise de kurejitto-kādo ga tsukaeru.
(You can use credit cards at most stores in this country.)

T

Notes

1. When *taitei* modifies predicates, it means that someone does something, something happens, or something is the case in most cases or occasions, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(d). When *taitei* modifies nouns, it means "most." In this case, *no* follows *taitei*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(e).

2. *Taitei* cannot be used without any information that indicates an occasion or case, as in (1).

(1) ??私はたいていコーヒーを飲む。
??*Watashi wa taitei kōhī o nomu.*
(*Intended meaning*: I usually drink coffee.)

If information that indicates an occasion is added, (1) becomes acceptable, as in (2).

(2) a. 私は**朝は**たいていコーヒーを飲む。
*Watashi wa **asa wa** taitei kōhī o nomu.*
(I usually drink coffee in the morning.)

b. 私は**夕食の後は**たいていコーヒーを飲む。
*Watashi wa **yūshoku no ato wa** taitei kōhī o nomu.*
(I usually drink coffee after dinner.)

c. 私は**喫茶店では**たいていコーヒーを飲む。
*Watashi wa **kissaten de wa** taitei kōhī o nomu.*
(I usually drink coffee at coffee shops.)

【Related expression】

Hotondo "in most cases" or "most" is used in situations similar to those of *taitei*, as in [1].

[1] a. 私は{**ほとんど / たいてい**}会社の食堂で昼ご飯を食べる。(cf. KS(A))
*Watashi wa{**hotondo / taitei**}kaisha no shokudō de hiru-gohan o taberu.*
(I usually eat lunch (lit., In most cases, I eat lunch) at my company's cafeteria.)

b. 今は{**ほとんど / たいてい**}の人がスマホを持っている。(cf. KS(B))
*Ima wa{**hotondo / taitei**}no hito ga sumaho o motte iru.*
(Most people have a smartphone now.)

However, *hotondo* is also used with the meaning of "almost" or "almost all," while *taitei* cannot be used with such meanings, as in [2].

[2] a. 新しい家は{**ほとんど / ×たいてい**}完成している。
*Atarashii ie wa{**hotondo / ×taitei**}kansei-shite iru.*
(The new house is almost complete.)

b. 今度のテストは{**ほとんど / ×たいてい**}満点だった。
*Kondo no tesuto wa{**hotondo / ×taitei**}manten datta.*
(I almost got a perfect score on the last test.)

c. ２年前にギターを買ったが、{**ほとんど / × たいてい**}弾いていない。
Ni-nen mae ni gitā o katta ga, {***hotondo*** */ ×* ***taitei***} *hiite inai.*
(I bought a guitar two years ago, but I have almost never played it.)

d. ラーメンをたくさん買っておいたが、弟が{**ほとんど / × たいてい**}食べてしまった。
Rāmen o takusan katte oita ga, otōto ga {***hotondo*** */ ×* ***taitei***} *tabete shimatta.*
(I bought a lot of ramen, but my younger brother has eaten almost all of it.)

e. クロワッサンは{**ほとんど / × たいてい**}(全部) 売れた。
Kurowassan wa {***hotondo*** */ ×* ***taitei***} *(zenbu) ureta.*
(Almost all croissants were sold.)

tamaranai たまらない *v. (negative)*

The speaker's emotion, desire or sensation is so strong that he/she can hardly bear it.

unbearably; extremely; be dying to do s.t.; so much
【REL. *shikata ga nai*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Adj(*i*)stem		
今日は *Kyō wa*	暑 ***atsu***	くて *kute*	たまらない / たまりません。 *tamaranai / tamarimasen.*
(It is unbearably hot today.)			

(B)

	Adj(*na*)		
数学の勉強が *Sūgaku no benkyō ga*	嫌 ***iya***	で *de*	たまらない / たまりません。 *tamaranai / tamarimasen.*
(I really hate studying math.)			

Formation

(i) Adj(*i*)stem くてたまらない
kute tamaranai

痛くてたまらない (s.t. is unbearably painful)
itakute tamaranai

(ii) Adj(*na*) でたまらない
de tamaranai

不便でたまらない (s.t. is unbearably inconvenient)
fuben de tamaranai

Examples

(a) ペットのイヌが死んで、悲しくてたまりません。
Petto no inu ga shinde, kanashikute tamarimasen.
(My pet dog died and I'm awfully sad.)

(b) 初めてマラソンを走った時は苦しくてたまらなかった。
Hajimete marason o hashitta toki wa kurushikute tamaranakatta.
(When I ran a marathon for the first time, it was agonizing.)

(c) インドへ来てから毎日カレーばかり食べているので、日本料理が食べたくてたまりません。
Indo e kite kara mai-nichi karē bakari tabete iru node, nihon-ryōri ga tabe-takute tamarimasen.
(Because I've been eating curry every day since I came to India, I'm dying to eat Japanese dishes.)

(d) 私はあの人が好きでたまらない。
Watashi wa ano hito ga suki de tamaranai.
(I love him so much.)

(e) ロバートはその試験のことが心配でたまらなかった。
Robāto wa sono shiken no koto ga shinpai de tamaranakatta.
(Robert was so worried about the test.)

T

Notes

1. *~te/de tamaranai* is used to express someone's strong emotion, desire or sensation. When the sentence describes the experiencer's current state of mind, he/she is usually the speaker, as in KSs(A), (B) and Exs.(a)–(d). If the sentence describes the experiencer's past state of mind, however, he/she can be a third person, as in Ex.(e).

2. *~te/de tamaranai* is often used to express undesirable states of mind, but it can be used to express desirable states of mind as well, as in (1).

(1) a. 私は子イヌがかわいくてたまらない。
Watashi wa koinu ga kawaikute tamaranai.
(I adore puppies.)

b. ライアンは彼女ができてうれしくてたまらないみたいだ。
Raian wa kanojo ga dekite ureshikute tamaranai mitai da.
(It looks like Ryan is totally happy having a new girlfriend.)

【Related Expression】

~te shikata (ga) nai "lit., ~ and I cannot do anything about it" expresses a similar idea to *~te tamaranai*, as in [1].

[1] a. 今日は暑くて{たまらない / しかた(が)ない}。(cf. KS(A))
*Kyō wa atsukute{**tamaranai / shikata (ga) nai**}.*
(It is unbearably hot today.)

b. 数学の勉強が嫌で{たまらない / しかた(が)ない}。(cf. KS(B))
*Sūgaku no benkyō ga iya de{**tamaranai / shikata (ga) nai**}.*
(I really hate studying math.)

While both *~te tamaranai* and *~te shikata (ga) nai* are used when the experiencer's emotion, desire or sensation is strong, *~te shikata (ga) nai* has the nuance that such emotion, desire or sensation is persistent.

Another difference between the two expressions is that *~te shikata (ga) nai* can be used with V*te* as well as Adj(*i*)stem *kute* and Adj(*na*) *de*, whereas *~te tamaranai* cannot be used with V*te*, as in [2].

[2] a. 気持ちが落ち込んで{しかたがない / ×たまらない}。
*Kimochi ga ochikonde{**shikata ga nai / × tamaranai**}.*
(I cannot help feeling depressed.)

b. のどが渇いて{しかたがない / ??たまらない}。
*Nodo ga kawaite{**shikata ga nai / ??tamaranai**}.*
(I'm so thirsty (and I cannot control it).)

T

tame ni[1] **ために**[1] *comp. prt.*

a compound particle that indicates a purpose

in order to do s.t.; for (the purpose of)
【REL. *ni*[5]; ~ ***no ni***; ~ ***yō ni***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Vplain・non-past		
東京の友達に *Tōkyō no tomodachi ni*	**会う** ***au***	ために *tame ni*	日本へ行った / 行きました。 *Nihon e itta / ikimashita.*
(I went to Japan (in order) to meet with my friends in Tokyo.)			

(B)

		Noun			
私たちは *Watashi-tachi wa*	明日の *ashita no*	**発表** ***happyō***	の *no*	ために *tame ni*	スライドを準備した / しました。 *suraido o junbi-shita / shimashita.*
(We prepared some slides for tomorrow's presentation.)					

Formation

(i) Vplain·non-past ために
tame ni

話すために (in order to talk)
hanasu tame ni

(ii) N のために
no tame ni

留学のために (for studying abroad)
ryūgaku no tame ni

(iii) Demonstrative Adj ために
tame ni

{この / その}ために (for this/that)
{*kono / sono*} *tame ni*

T

Examples

(a) カレーを作るために肉や野菜を買いました。
Karē o tsukuru tame ni niku ya yasai o kaimashita.
(I bought meat and vegetables to make curry.)

(b) 体を強くするために毎日プールで泳いでいる。
Karada o tsuyoku suru tame ni mai-nichi pūru de oyoide iru.
(I'm swimming every day in the pool in order to strengthen my body.)

(c) アレンさんはウイルスの研究のためにフランスに行った。
Aren-san wa uirusu no kenkyū no tame ni Furansu ni itta.
(Allen-san went to France for the purpose of virus research.)

(d) 来年ヨーロッパ旅行をするつもりなので、そのためにお金を貯めています。
Rainen Yōroppa-ryokō o suru tsumori na node, sono tame ni okane o tamete imasu.
(I'm planning to travel in Europe next year, so I'm saving money for that.)

Notes

1. *Tame ni*[1] is a purpose expression and occurs with verbs (or verb phrases), nouns (or noun phrases) with *no*, and the demonstrative adjectives *kono* and *sono*. Verbs before *tame ni*[1] are always in the plain non-past form.

2. The *ni* of *tame ni*[1] can be dropped, as in (1) and (2).

   (1) 東京の友達に会うため(に)日本へ行った。(= KS(A))
   Tōkyō no tomodachi ni au tame (ni) Nihon e itta.
   (I went to Japan (in order) to meet with my friends in Tokyo.)

   (2) 私たちは明日の発表のため(に)スライドを準備した。(= KS(B))
   Watashi-tachi wa ashita no happyō no tame (ni) suraido o junbi-shita.
   (We prepared some slides for tomorrow's presentation.)

3. While in most cases, the nouns before *no tame ni* indicate an action (e.g., *happyō* "presentation" in KS(B) and *kenkyū* "research" in Ex.(c)), there are a handful cases in which nouns before *no tame ni* do not indicate an action, as in (3) and (4).

   (3) 健康**のために**ヨガのクラスに行っています。
   Kenkō ***no tame ni*** *yoga no kurasu ni itte imasu.*
   (I'm taking a yoga class for my health.)

   (4) 環境**のために**プラスチック製品はできるだけ使わないようにしている。
   Kankyō ***no tame ni*** *purasuchikku-seihin wa dekiru dake tsukawanai yō ni shite iru.*
   (I'm trying to use plastic goods as little as possible for our environment.)

   However, the more accurate meanings of *kenkō no tame ni* in (3) and *kankyō no tame ni* in (4) are *kenkō o iji/kaizen-suru tame ni* "to maintain/improve my health" and *kankyō o mamoru tame ni* "to protect our environment," respectively. Thus, these examples are sort of abbreviated sentences, and the *tame ni* here is considered to be the use of purpose.

【Related Expression】

V*masu ni* also expresses purpose when used with motion verbs such as *iku* "go," *kuru* "come" and *kaeru* "return." Thus, KS(A) can be rephrased using this expression, as in [1]. (⇒ ***ni***[5])

[1] 東京の友達に｛**会うために / 会いに**｝日本へ行った。(cf. KS(A))
Tōkyō no tomodachi ni ｛***au tame ni / ai ni***｝ *Nihon e itta.*
(I went to Japan (in order) to meet with my friends in Tokyo.)

The critical difference between Vplain·non-past *tame ni* and V*masu ni* is that V*masu ni* can be used only with motion verbs. Thus, in [2], V*masu ni* is ungrammatical.

[2] カレーを｛**作るために / ×作りに**｝肉や野菜を買いました。(= Ex.(a))
Karē o ｛***tsukuru tame ni / × tsukuri ni***｝ *niku ya yasai o kaimashita.*
(I bought meat and vegetables to make curry.)

When both Vplain·non-past *tame ni* and V*masu ni* can be used, Vplain·non-past *tame ni* is more formal.

tame ni[2] ために[2] *conj. / comp. prt.*

a conjunction / compound particle that indicates a reason or a cause

because; on account of; because of; due to; owing to
【REL. *kara*[3]; *node*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause (reason / cause)			Main Clause
	Vplain		
父が *Chichi ga*	**死んだ** ***shinda***	ために *tame ni*	大学に行けなかった / 行けませんでした。 *daigaku ni ikenakatta / ikemasendeshita.*
(Because my father died, I couldn't go to college.)			

(B)

Noun			
風邪 *Kaze*	の *no*	ために *tame ni*	仕事を休んだ / 休みました。 *shigoto o yasunda / yasumimashita.*
(I took a day off from work because I had a cold (lit., because of a cold.))			

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } ために
tame ni

{ 話す / 話した } ために (because s.o. talks/talked)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *tame ni*

{ 高い / 高かった } ために (because s.t. is/was high)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *tame ni*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } ために
{ *na / datta* } *tame ni*

静か { な / だった } ために (because s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *na / datta* } *tame ni*

(iii) N { の / だった } ために
{ *no / datta* } *tame ni*

学生 { の / だった } ために (because s.o. is/was a student)
gakusei { *no / datta* } *tame ni*

(iv) Demonstrative Adj ために
tame ni

{ この / その } ために (because of this/that)
{ *kono / sono* } *tame ni*

Examples

(a) 川村さんがまだ来ないために会議を始められない。
Kawamura-san ga mada konai tame ni kaigi o hajimerarenai.
(Because Kawamura-san hasn't shown up yet, we cannot begin the meeting.)

(b) 子供がまだ小さいためにあまり旅行に行けません。
Kodomo ga mada chīsai tame ni amari ryokō ni ikemasen.
(Because our child is still small, we cannot travel often.)

(c) あのうちは親が甘かったために子供がだめになった。
Ano uchi wa oya ga amakatta tame ni kodomo ga dame ni natta.
(In that family, the children got spoiled because the parents were soft.)

(d) 字が下手なために人に笑われた。
Ji ga heta na tame ni hito ni warawareta.
(I was laughed at because my handwriting was (lit., is) so poor.)

(e) 私は国籍がカナダだったためにその奨学金に応募できなかった。
Watashi wa kokuseki ga Kanada datta tame ni sono shōgakukin ni ōbo-dekinakatta.
(Because my nationality was Canadian, I couldn't apply for the scholarship.)

(f) 雪のために学校が休みになった。
Yuki no tame ni gakkō ga yasumi ni natta.
(The school was closed because of the snow.)

(g) 名古屋で地震があった。そのために新幹線が一時止まった。
Nagoya de jishin ga atta. Sono tame ni shinkansen ga ichiji tomatta.
(There was an earthquake in Nagoya. Because of this, the Shinkansen train stopped operation temporarily.)

Notes

1. *Tame ni*² is a reason expression and occurs with clauses, nouns (or noun phrases) with *no*, and the demonstrative adjectives *kono* and *sono*. The clauses before *tame ni*² (i.e., reason/cause clauses) can be in the past forms, and the predicates of the clauses can be adjective and noun. The reason/cause clauses indicate someone's habitual or past action, a habitual or past event, or a present or past state of something or someone.

2. As noted above, *tame ni*² can be used with nouns with *no* and the demonstrative adjectives *kono* and *sono*. In this case, *(no) tame ni* functions as a compound particle.

3. The *ni* of *tame ni*² can be dropped, as in (1).

   (1) a. 父が死んだため(に)大学に行けなかった。(= KS(A))
   Chichi ga shinda tame (ni) daigaku ni ikenakatta.
   (Because my father died, I couldn't go to college.)

   b. 風邪のため(に)仕事を休んだ。(= KS(B))
   Kaze no tame (ni) shigoto o yasunda.
   (I took a day off from work because I had a cold (lit., because of a cold).)

4. *Tame ni*² is usually used when the main clause indicates something undesirable. Thus, in the examples in (2)–(4), the (a) sentences are totally natural, but the (b) sentences are unnatural. (See Related Expressions below.)

   (2) a. チケットを買うのが遅かったためにいい席が取れなかった。
   Chiketto o kau no ga osokatta tame ni ii seki ga torenakatta.
   (Because I bought a ticket late, I couldn't get a good seat.)

b. ??チケットを買うのが早かったためにいい席が取れた。
??*Chiketto o kau no ga hayakatta tame ni ii seki ga toreta.*
(*Intended meaning*: Because I bought a ticket early, I could get a good seat.)

(3) a. テストの成績が悪かったために先生に注意された。
Tesuto no seiseki ga warukatta tame ni sensei ni chūi-sareta.
(I was warned by my teacher because my test grade was bad.)

b. ??テストの成績がよかったために先生にほめられた。
??*Tesuto no seiseki ga yokatta tame ni sensei ni homerareta.*
(*Intended meaning*: I was praised by my teacher because my test grade was good.)

(4) a. 石田さんはシートベルトをしていなかったために大けがをした。
Ishida-san wa shīto-beruto o shite inakatta tame ni ō-kega o shita.
(Ishida-san was seriously injured because he did not have his seatbelt on.)

b. ??高野さんはシートベルトをしていたためにけがをしなかった。
??*Takano-san wa shīto-beruto o shite ita tame ni kega o shinakatta.*
(*Intended meaning*: Takano-san was not injured because she had her seatbelt on.)

[Related Expressions]

Tame ni[2] can be replaced by *kara* "because" or *node* "because" if a clause precedes *tame ni*, as in [1]. (⇒ ***kara***[3]; ***node***)

[1] a. 父が死んだ{**ために / から / ので**}大学に行けなかった。(cf. KS(A))
Chichi ga shinda{***tame ni / kara / node***}*daigaku ni ikenakatta.*
(Because my father died, I couldn't go to college.)

b. 川村さんがまだ来ない{**ために / から / ので**}会議を始められない。(cf. Ex.(a))
Kawamura-san ga mada konai{***tame ni / kara / node***}*kaigi o hajimerarenai.*
(Because Kawamura-san hasn't shown up yet, we cannot begin the meeting.)

T

However, *kara* and *node* cannot be used with nouns and demonstrative adjectives.

Another important difference is that *tame ni* can be used only when the reason it indicates is for something undesirable, while *kara* and *node* have no such usage restriction, as in [2]. (See Note 4.)

[2] a. チケットを買うのが早かった{**から / ので / ??ために**}いい席が取れた。(cf. (2b))
*Chiketto o kau no ga hayakatta{**kara / node / ??tame ni**} ii seki ga toreta.*
(Because I bought a ticket early, I could get a good seat.)

b. テストの成績がよかった{**から / ので / ??ために**}先生にほめられた。(cf. (3b))
*Tesuto no seiseki ga yokatta{**kara / node / ??tame ni**} sensei ni homerareta.*
(I was praised by my teacher because my test grade was good.)

c. 高野さんはシートベルトをしていた{**から / ので / ??ために**}けがをしなかった。(cf. (4b))
*Takano-san wa shīto-beruto o shite ita{**kara / node / ??tame ni**} kega o shinakatta.*
(Takano-san was not injured because she had her seatbelt on.)

tame ni[3] ために[3] *comp. prt.*

a compound particle that indicates benefit

for; for the benefit of; for the good of; for the sake of; on behalf of

◆ Key Sentence

	Noun			
父は *Chichi wa*	**家族** ***kazoku***	の *no*	ために *tame ni*	一生懸命働いた / 働きました。 *isshōkenmei hataraita / hatarakimashita.*
(My father worked hard for our family.)				

Formation

N のために
no tame ni

学生のために (for the benefit of students)
gakusei no tame ni

Examples

(a) 日本人は会社のためによく働きます。
Nihonjin wa kaisha no tame ni yoku hatarakimasu.
(Japanese people work hard for the sake of their company.)

(b) 先生は私たちのためにパーティーをしてくださった。
Sensei wa watashi-tachi no tame ni pātī o shite kudasatta.
(Our teacher threw a party for us.)

Notes

1. When *no tame ni* is used with nouns that refer to a person or an organization, it means "for (the benefit/good/sake of)."

2. N *no tame ni* modifies verbs. The noun-modification form is N *no tame no*, as in (1).

   (1) 日本語学習者**のための**いい辞書アプリを探しています。
   *Nihongo-gakushūsha **no tame no** ii jisho-apuri o sagashite imasu.*
   (I'm looking for a good dictionary app for Japanese learners.)

T

tara たら *conj.*

a subordinate conjunction that indicates that the action/event represented by the main clause takes place if the action/event/state represented by the subordinate clause takes place or is the case

if; when; after
【REL. *ba*; *nara*; *to*[4]; ***toki***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause (antecedent)			Main Clause (subsequence)
	Vplain・past		
ジェイクが *Jeiku ga*	**来た** ***kita***	ら *ra*	私は帰る / 帰ります。 *watashi wa kaeru / kaerimasu.*
(If/When Jake comes, I'll go home.)			

(B)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Adj(*i*)plain・past		
気分が *Kibun ga*	**悪かった** ***warukatta***	ら *ra*	この部屋で少し休んでください。 *kono heya de sukoshi yasunde kudasai.*
(If you don't feel well, please take a rest in this room.)			

(C)

Subordinate Clause				Main Clause
	Adj(*na*)			
コンピュータが *Konpyūta ga*	**苦手** ***nigate***	だった *datta*	ら *ra*	この仕事は無理でしょう。 *kono shigoto wa muri deshō.*
(If you are not good at using computers, you probably cannot take this job.)				

Formation

(i) { Vplain・past / Adj(*i*)plain・past } ら
ra

話したら (if s.o. talks)
hanashitara

高かったら (if s.t. is expensive)
takakattara

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } だったら
dattara

静かだったら (if s.t. is quiet)
shizuka dattara

先生だったら (if s.o. is a teacher)
sensei dattara

Examples

(a) このアプリの使い方が分からなかったら聞いてください。
Kono apuri no tsukai-kata ga wakaranakattara kiite kudasai.
(If you cannot figure out how to use this app, please ask me.)

(b) 私は大学を出たら小学校の先生になります。
Watashi wa daigaku o detara shōgakkō no sensei ni narimasu.
(I'll be an elementary school teacher after graduating from college.)

(c) それは先生に聞いたらすぐ分かった。
Sore wa sensei ni kiitara sugu wakatta.
(When I asked my teacher about it, I got the answer right away.)

(d) 会議が終わったら急におなかがすいてきた。
Kaigi ga owattara kyū ni onaka ga suite kita.
(When the meeting came to an end, I suddenly began to feel hungry.)

(e) このあたりは春になったら桜がたくさん咲く。
Kono atari wa haru ni nattara sakura ga takusan saku.
(In spring (lit., When it becomes spring), many cherry blossoms bloom around here.)

(f) 私はいつも 10 時になったら寝ます。
Watashi wa itsumo jū-ji ni nattara nemasu.
(I always go to bed at ten o'clock (lit., when it becomes ten o'clock).)

(g) 暑かったらクーラーをつけましょうか。
Atsukattara kūrā o tsukemashō ka.
(If you feel (lit., If it's) hot, shall I turn on the air conditioner?)

(h) 嫌いだったら無理に食べなくてもいいですよ。
Kirai dattara muri ni tabenakutemo iidesu yo.
(If you don't like it, you don't have to force yourself to eat it.)

(i) 土曜日の午後だったら大丈夫です。
Doyōbi no gogo dattara daijōbu desu.
(I can make it on Saturday afternoon. (lit., I'm all right if it's Saturday afternoon.))

Notes

1. Although *tara* (or *dara*) consists of the final syllable of the plain past form of a verb, an *i*-adjective or *da* and the particle *ra*, *tara* (or *dara*) is conventionally treated as a conditional conjunction. (This volume follows this convention and uses "S_1 *tara* S_2" to represent the construction that involves *tara*.)

2. "S_1 *tara* S_2" is used in the following situations:

(i) S_1 represents a future or unknown action, event or state, and if (or when) S_1 takes place or is the case, the action, event or state in S_2 will take place or will be the case. KSs(A)–(C), Exs.(a), (b) and (g)–(i) are examples of this use.

(ii) S_1 represents a past action or event, and S_1 triggered the event in S_2. Exs.(c) and (d) are examples of this use.

(iii) S_1 represents a habitual action or event, and S_1 triggers the action or event in S_2. Exs.(e) and (f) are examples of this case.

3. When S_1 and S_2 in "S_1 *tara* S_2" represent actions, S_1 always represents an antecedent and S_2 a subsequence, i.e., S_1 takes place before S_2. For example, in KS(A), Jake's coming precedes the speaker's returning home. Likewise, in Ex.(c), the speaker's asking his teacher about something precedes his obtaining information from her. If this relation does not hold, this construction cannot be used. For example, in the situation in (1), *tara* cannot be used because the action in S_1 (i.e., the speaker's going to Chicago) does not precede the action in S_2 (i.e., his going there by car). In this case, *nara* is used. (⇒ ***nara***)

(1) ×シカゴへ行った**ら**バスで行きなさい。
×*Shikago e it**tara** basu de iki-nasai.*
(*Intended meaning*: If you go to Chicago, go by bus.)

4. *Tara* can be used when it is certain that S_1 will take place. Thus, "S_1 *tara* S_2" is sometimes ambiguous, as seen in KS(A), for which there are two possible interpretations: "If Jake comes, I'll go home" and "When Jake comes, I'll go home." In the first interpretation, whether Jake will come or not is not certain, whereas in the second interpretation, his coming is a certainty. KS(A) can be made unambiguous by using the conditional adverb *moshi*, as in (2).

(2) **もし**ジェイクが来**たら**私は帰ります。
***Moshi** Jeiku ga ki**tara** watashi wa kaerimasu.*
(If Jake comes, I'll go home.)

The sentence in (3) is not ambiguous because the event in S_1 is always a certainty.

T

(3) 12 時になっ**たら**帰ります。
*Jūni-ji ni nat**tara** kaerimasu.*
(I'll go home at twelve o'clock (lit., when it becomes twelve o'clock).)

5. When S_2 in "S_1 *tara* S_2" represents a past action, the action cannot be one intentionally taken by the agent. Thus, the (a) sentences in (4) and (5) are acceptable, but the (b) sentences are not.

(4) a. 学校へ行った**ら**偶然上田さんに会った。
*Gakkō e itt**ara**, gūzen Ueda-san ni atta.*
(When I went to school, I ran into Ueda-san.)

b. ×学校へ行った**ら**上田さんと話をした。
× *Gakkō e itt**ara**, Ueda-san to hanashi o shita.*
(*Intended meaning*: When I went to school, I talked with Ueda-san.)

(5) a. ワインを飲ん**だら**寝てしまった。
*Wain o non**dara** nete shimatta.*
(After I drank wine, I fell asleep.)

b. ×ワインを飲ん**だら**寝た。
× *Wain o non**dara** neta.*
(*Intended meaning*: After I drank wine, I went to bed.)

6. "S_1 *tara* S_2" can also be used in counterfactual situations, as in (6).

(6) a. お金があった**ら**こんなアパートにはいない。
*O-kane ga att**ara** konna apāto ni wa inai.*
(If I had money, I wouldn't be in an apartment like this.)

b. あの時お金があった**ら**日本に行っていたでしょう。
*Ano toki o-kane ga att**ara** Nihon ni itte ita deshō.*
(If I had had money at that time, I would probably have gone to Japan.)

c. 学生の時もっと勉強していた**ら**、今こんなに苦労しなかったと思う。
*Gakusei no toki motto benkyō-shite it**ara**, ima konna ni kurō-shi-nakatta to omou.*
(If I had studied harder when I was a student, I wouldn't have this much trouble now, I think.)

[Related Expressions]

Tara, *to*[4], *ba* and *nara* all function as a conditional conjunction. Among the four conjunctions, *tara* has the fewest usage restrictions, and it can be used in most situations in which *if* is used in English. The major differences among the four conditional expressions are the following.

T

(Here, S_1 represents the conditional clause and S_2 the main clause. For the forms that precede *to*[4], *ba* and *nara*, see the Formation section of each item.)

(⇒ ***ba***; ***nara***; ***to***[4])

I. *Tara* and *to*[4] can be used when S_1 represents a past action or event, while *ba* and *nara* cannot, as in [1].

[1] a. それは先生に{聞いたら / 聞くと / ×聞けば / ×聞いた(の)なら}すぐ分かった。(cf. Ex.(c))
*Sore wa sensei ni{kii**tara** / kiku **to** / × kike**ba** / × kiita **(no) nara**} sugu wakatta.*
(When I asked my teacher about it, I got the answer right away.)

b. 会議が{終わったら / 終わると / ×終われば / ×終わった(の)なら}急におなかがすいてきた。(cf. Ex.(d))
*Kaigi ga{owat**tara** / owaru **to** / × oware**ba** / × owatta **(no) nara**} kyū ni onaka ga suite kita.*
(When the meeting came to an end, I suddenly began to feel hungry.)

II. *Tara*, *ba* and *nara* allow S_2 to be a command, a request, a suggestion, an invitation or a volitional sentence, but *to*[4] doesn't, as in [2].

[2] {安かったら / 安ければ / 安い(の)なら / ×安いと}
{*Yasukat**tara** / Yasukere**ba** / Yasui **(no) nara** / × Yasui **to***}
(If it's cheap,)

a. 買いなさい。[command]
kai-nasai.
(buy it.)

b. 買ってください。[polite command / request]
katte kudasai.
(please buy it.)

c. 買ったらどうですか。[suggestion]
kattara dō desu ka.
(why don't you buy it?)

d. 買いませんか。[invitation]
kaimasen ka.
(wouldn't you like to buy it?)

e. 買います。[volition]
kaimasu.
(I'll buy it.)

T

III. Although in "S_1 *tara* S_2," "S_1 *ba* S_2" and "S_1 *nara* S_2," S_2 can be a command, a request, a suggestion, an invitation or a volitional sentence, the meanings are not exactly the same. The following examples show the differences.

[3] a. ジェイクが来たら、私は帰ります。(= KS(A))
*Jeiku ga ki**tara**, watashi wa kaerimasu.*
(When/If Jake comes, I'll go home.)

b. ジェイクが来れ**ば**、私は帰ります。
*Jeiku ga kure**ba**, watashi wa kaerimasu.*
(If Jake comes, I'll go home. (If not, I'll stay here.))

c. ジェイクが来る(**の**)**なら**、私は帰ります。
*Jeiku ga kuru (**no**) **nara**, watashi wa kaerimasu.*
(If it is true that Jake is coming, I'll go home.)

As seen above, [3a] is ambiguous; it is not clear from this sentence alone whether Jake's coming is a certainty or not. In either case, however, Jake's coming precedes the speaker's leaving. [3b] is similar to [3a] with the "if" interpretation. However, [3b] focuses more on the condition. That is, [3b] implies something like "the condition under which I go home is Jake's coming here." In [3b] also, Jake's coming precedes the speaker's leaving. S_1 in [3c] also indicates the condition under which the speaker returns home. In this case, however, Jake's coming does not precede the speaker's leaving because the condition under which the speaker goes home is that Jake's coming is true, not that Jake actually comes (to a certain place).

IV. *Tara*, *to*[4] and *ba* can be used when the event in S_1 will happen without fail, where as *nara* cannot be used in this situation, as in [4].

[4] このあたりは春に{なっ**たら** / なる**と** / なれ**ば** / ×なる(**の**)**なら**}桜がたくさん咲く。(cf. Ex.(e))
*Kono atari wa haru ni{nat**tara** / naru **to** / nare**ba** / × naru **(no) nara**} sakura ga takusan saku.*
(In spring (lit., When it becomes spring), many cherry blossoms bloom around here.)

Note, however, *ba* is unnatural if S_2 represents a controllable action, as in [5].

[5] 私はいつも10時に{なっ**たら** / なる**と** / ??なれ**ば** / ×なる(**の**)**なら**}寝ます。(cf. Ex.(f))
*Watashi wa itsumo jū-ji ni{nat**tara** / naru **to** / ??nare**ba** / × naru **(no) nara**} nemasu.*
(I always go to bed at ten o'clock (lit., when it becomes ten o'clock).)

Note also that *to*[4] and *ba* cannot be used if S_1 represents a one-time event, as in [6]. In other words, *to*[4] and *ba* can be used when the event in S_1 will happen without fail, but only when S_2 represents a habitual action or a recurring event.

[6] 私は今日10時に{なっ**たら** / ×なる**と** / ×なれ**ば** / ×なる(**の**)**なら**}寝ます。
*Watashi wa kyō jū-ji ni{nat**tara** / × naru **to** / × nare**ba** / × naru **(no) nara**} nemasu.*
(Today I'm going to bed at ten o'clock (lit., when it becomes ten o'clock).)

V. *Tara*, *ba* and *nara* can be used in counterfactual situations, but *to*[4] cannot, as in [7].

[7] あの時お金が{あったら / あれば / あったなら / ×あると}日本に行っていたでしょう。(cf. (6b))
*Ano toki o-kane ga{at**tara** / are**ba** / atta **nara** / × aru **to**} Nihon ni itte ita deshō.*
(If I had had money at that time, I would have gone to Japan.)

~tara dō desu ka　~たらどうですか　*phr.*

a phrase that expresses a suggestion

Why don't you do s.t.?; What about doing s.t.?; How about doing s.t.?
【REL. ~ *hō ga ii*】

◆ Key Sentence

	Vplain·past		
仕事を *Shigoto o*	変えた ***kaeta***	ら *ra*	どうですか。 *dō desu ka.*
(Why don't you change your job?)			

Formation

Vplain·past らどうですか
ra dō desu ka

話したらどうですか　(Why don't you talk ~?)
hanashitara dō desu ka

食べたらどうですか　(Why don't you eat ~?)
tabetara dō desu ka

T

Examples

(a) 宮崎さんに聞いたらどうですか。
Miyazaki-san ni kiitara dō desu ka.
(Why don't you ask Miyazaki-san?)

(b) もっと運動をしたらどうですか。
Motto undō o shitara dō desu ka.
(Why don't you exercise more?)

Notes

1. Vplain·past *ra dō desu ka* "lit., How is it if you do ~?" is an idiomatic phrase that involves the "S_1 *tara* S_2" construction, and is used to express a suggestion. (⇒ ***tara***)

2. In casual situations, "Vplain·past *ra dō?*" or simply "Vplain·past *ra?*" is used, as in (1).

   (1) 宮崎さんに聞いたら（どう）？ (cf. Ex.(a))
   *Miyazaki-san ni kii**tara (dō)?***
   (Why don't you ask Miyazaki-san?)

3. In order to express more polite suggestions, an honorific form of Vplain·past is used. *Ikaga* in place of *dō* makes the suggestion even more polite. (2) and (3) provide examples. (⇒ ***o ~ ni naru***; ***~rareru***[1])

   (2) 宮崎さんに**お聞きになったら**｛どう / いかが｝ですか。(cf. Ex.(a))
   *Miyazaki-san ni **o-kiki ni natta**ra* ｛***dō** / **ikaga***｝ *desu ka.*

   (3) 宮崎さんに**聞かれたら**｛どう / いかが｝ですか。
   *Miyazaki-san ni **kikareta**ra* ｛***dō** / **ikaga***｝ *desu ka.*

4. Using *dō deshō ka* instead of *dō desu ka* makes the suggestion less direct and more polite, as in (4).

   (4) 宮崎さんに｛お聞きになったら / 聞かれたら｝**どうでしょうか。**
   (cf. Ex.(a))
   Miyazaki-san ni ｛*o-kiki ni nattara / kikaretara*｝ ***dō deshō ka.***
   (How about asking Miyazaki-san? (lit., I'm wondering what will happen if you ask Miyazaki-san.))

   Dō deshō ka can also be used to suggest an action that involves both the speaker and the listener, as in (5).

   (5) この仕事は私たちにはできないので、原さんに頼んだら**どうでしょうか。**
   *Kono shigoto wa watashi-tachi ni wa dekinai node, Hara-san ni tanondara **dō deshō ka.***
   (Because we cannot do this job, why don't we ask Hara-san to do it?)

T

[Related Expression]

~ hō ga ii also expresses suggestion. The difference between this phrase and *~tara dō desu ka* is that *~ hō ga ii* is the speaker's assertion; therefore, it sounds speaker-centered and direct. *~tara dō desu ka*, on the other hand, is a question; therefore, it sounds listener-centered and less direct. [1] and [2] provide examples.

[1] 仕事を{変えたほうがいいです / 変えたらどうですか}。(cf. KS(A))
*Shigoto o{**kaeta hō ga ii desu** / **kaetara dō desu ka**}.*
(You'd better change your job. / Why don't you change your job?)

[2] 風邪だったら早く{寝たほうがいいですよ / 寝たらどうですか}。
*Kaze dattara hayaku{**neta hō ga ii desu yo** / **netara dō desu ka**}.*
(If you have a cold, {you'd better go to bed early. / why don't you go to bed early?})

In some situations ~ *hō ga ii* may sound too imposing, and therefore, may not be appropriate. The sentence particle *yo* in [2] softens the tone of the suggestion and makes it sound less imposing. (⇒ ***~ hō ga ii***)

~tari ~tari suru ～たり～たりする *str.*

a structure that expresses an non-exhaustive listing of actions or states

do things like ~ and ~; sometimes ~ and sometimes ~
【REL. ***toka***[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vplain・past		Vplain・past		
私たち *Watashi-tachi*	は *wa*	パーティーで *pātī de*	歌った ***utatta***	り *ri*	踊った ***odotta***	り *ri*	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(We did things like singing and dancing at the party.)							

(B)

Topic (subject)		Adj(*i*)plain・past		Adj(*i*)plain・past		
このレストランのステーキ *Kono resutoran no sutēki*	は *wa*	大きかった ***ōkikatta***	り *ri*	小さかった ***chīsakatta***	り *ri*	する / します。 *suru / shimasu.*
(Steaks at this restaurant are sometimes big and sometimes small.)						

(C)

A:					
毎朝、朝ご飯を食べますか。 *Mai-asa, asa-gohan o tabemasu ka.*					
(Do you eat breakfast every day?)					
B:					
	Vplain・past		Vplain・past		
いいえ、 *Īe,*	**食べた** ***tabeta***	り *ri*	**食べなかった** ***tabenakatta***	り *ri*	です。 *desu.*
(No, I don't always eat it. (lit., No, I sometimes eat and sometimes don't eat.))					

Formation

(i) { Vplain·past / Adj(*i*)plain·past } りする
ri suru

話したりする (s.o. does things like talking)
hanashitari suru

高かったりする (s.t. is sometimes expensive)
takakattari suru

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } だったりする
dattari suru

静かだったりする (s.t. is sometimes quiet)
shizuka dattari suru

先生だったりする (s.o. is sometimes a teacher)
sensei dattari suru

Examples

(a) 私はニューヨークでミュージカルを見たりコンサートを聞いたりした。
Watashi wa Nyūyōku de myūjikaru o mitari konsāto o kiitari shita.
(In New York I did things like seeing a musical and listening to a concert.)

(b) 週末はたいてい友達とテニスをしたり映画に行ったりして過ごします。
Shūmatsu wa taitei tomodachi to tenisu o shitari eiga ni ittari shite sugo-shimasu.
(I usually spend my weekends by doing things like playing tennis and going to movies with my friends.)

T

(c) 明日は雨が降ったりやんだりするでしょう。
Ashita wa ame ga futtari yandari suru deshō.
(It will probably rain off and on tomorrow.)

(d) この店の魚は新しかったり古かったりする。
Kono mise no sakana wa atarashikattari furukattari suru.
(This shop's fish is sometimes fresh and sometimes old.)

(e) 私たちの日本語クラスの先生は日本人だったりアメリカ人だったりします。
Watashi-tachi no nihongo-kurasu no sensei wa nihonjin dattari amerikajin dattari shimasu.
(The teachers of our Japanese classes are sometimes Japanese and sometimes American.)

(f) 原田さんは来たり来なかったりであてにならない。
Harada-san wa kitari konakattari de ate ni naranai.
(Harada-san doesn't come regularly and we can't count on him.)

Notes

1. The "X *tari* Y *tari suru*" construction generally expresses a non-exhaustive listing of actions or states. "Non-exhaustive" means that in a given situation there may be additional, unstated actions or states. (The exhaustive listing of actions or states is expressed by the *te*-form.) (⇒ ***~te***)

2. In "X *tari* Y *tari suru*," X and Ycan be any parts of speech, and *suru* indicates the tense, the aspect (e.g., progressive, perfect) and the formality level of the sentence.

3. In some situations, "X *tari* Y *tari*" is used with *da*, as in KS(C) and Ex (f). This pattern is used when a speaker describes someone's (or something's) inconstant action or state. Thus, in situations like Exs.(a) and (b), *da* cannot be used.

   (1) ×私はニューヨークでミュージカルを見**たり**コンサートを聞い**たり**だった。(cf. Ex.(a))
   × *Watashi wa Nyūyōku de myūjikaru o mi**tari** konsāto o kii**tari datta**.*

   (2) ×週末はたいてい友達とテニスをし**たり**映画に行っ**たり**で過ごします。(cf. Ex.(b))
   × *Shūmatsu wa taitei tomodachi to tenisu o shi**tari** eiga ni it**tari de** sugoshimasu.*

4. In the "X *tari* Y *tari suru/da*" construction, X and Y sometimes represent opposite actions or states. In this case, Y is either X's antonym or negative form, as in KSs(B), (C), Exs.(c), (d) and (f).

5. The "X *tari* Y *tari suru/da*" construction usually lists two actions or two states, but it can list more than two actions or two states, as in (3).

(3) 本を読んだり、アニメを見たり、日本人の友達と話したりして、日本語を勉強している。
*Hon o yon**dari**, anime o mi**tari**, nihonjin no tomodachi to hanashi**tari shite**, nihongo o benkyō-shite iru.*
(I'm studying Japanese by doing things like reading books, watching anime and speaking with my Japanese friends.)

On the other hand, there are situations in which only one action or state is listed, as in (4) and (5).

(4) 私はスマホでメールを読んだりして友達が来るのを待った。
*Watashi wa sumaho de mēru o yon**dari shite** tomodachi ga kuru no o matta.*
(I waited for my friend to come, doing things like reading emails on my smartphone.)

(5) お金を借りたりしたらきっと後で困るよ。
*O-kane o kari**tari shitara** kitto ato de komaru yo.*
(If you borrow money (lit., do things like borrowing money), I'm sure you'll be in trouble later.)

6. If "X *tari* Y *tari suru*" is not the final segment of a sentence and the predicate is an adjective, *suru* may be omitted, as in (6).

(6) 昨日のパーティーでは歌ったり踊ったり(して)とても楽しかった。
*Kinō no pātī de wa utat**tari** odot**tari** (**shite**) totemo tanoshikatta.*
(At yesterday's party, we did things like singing and dancing, and it was a lot of fun.)

If the predicate is a verb, however, *suru* cannot be omitted, as in (7).

(7) 私たちは泳いだりゲームをしたり{して / ×ø}楽しんだ。
*Watashi-tachi wa oyoi**dari** gēmu o shi**tari** {**shite** / ×ø} tanoshinda.*
(We had a good time doing things like swimming and playing games.)

T

~te ~て *te-form ending*

the *te*-form ending of verbs, *i*-adjectives and "X *da*," where X is a *na*-adjective or noun (The *te*-form of *da* is *de*.)

and; V-ing
【REL. ***kara***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Vte	
レイは図書館へ *Rei wa toshokan e*	行って ***itte***	勉強した / しました。 *benkyō-shita / shimashita.*
(Ray went to the library and studied (there).)		

(B)

	Adj(*i*)te	
この店のすしは *Kono mise no sushi wa*	安くて ***yasukute***	おいしい / おいしいです。 *oishii / oishiidesu.*
(Sushi at this restaurant is inexpensive and delicious.)		

(C)

	Adj(*na*)		
このアパートは *Kono apāto wa*	静か ***shizuka***	で *de*	いい / いいです。 *ii / iidesu.*
(This apartment is quiet and good.)			

(D)

	Noun		
私の父は *Watashi no chichi wa*	先生 ***sensei***	で *de*	高校で数学を教えている / います。 *kōkō de sūgaku o oshiete iru / imasu.*
(My father is a teacher and teaches math at a high school.)			

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs:

(a) *su*-verbs: 話す → 話して (s.o. talks and)
hanasu *hanashite*

(b) *ku*-verbs: 歩く → 歩いて (s.o. walks and)
aruku *aruite*

Exception: 行く → 行って (s.o. goes and)
iku *itte*

(c) *gu*-verbs: 泳ぐ → 泳いで (s.o. swims and)
oyogu *oyoide*

(d) *mu/bu/nu*-verbs: 飲む → 飲んで (s.o. drinks s.t. and)
nomu *nonde*

遊ぶ → 遊んで (s.o. plays and)
asobu *asonde*

死ぬ → 死んで (s.o. dies and)
shinu *shinde*

(e) *tsu/u/ru*-verbs: 待つ → 待って (s.o. waits and)
matsu *matte*

買う → 買って (s.o. buys s.t. and)
kau *katte*

取る → 取って (s.o. takes s.t. and)
toru *totte*

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem て
te

食べて (s.o. eats s.t. and)
tabete

(iii) Irr. verbs: 来る → 来て (s.o. comes and)
kuru *kite*

する → して (s.o. does s.t. and)
suru *shite*

(iv) Adj(*i*): Adj(*i*)stem くて
kute

高くて (s.t. is expensive and)
takakute

(v) {Adj(*na*) / N}だ: {Adj(*na*) / N}で
da *de*

静かで (s.t. is quiet and)
shizuka de

先生で (s.o. is a teacher and)
sensei de

T

Examples

(a) 私はコートを脱いでハンガーにかけた。
Watashi wa kōto o nuide hangā ni kaketa.
(Taking off my coat, I hung it on a hanger.)

(b) 私の部屋は狭くて暗いです。
Watashi no heya wa semakute kuraidesu.
(My room is small and dark.)

(c) ワインを飲みすぎて頭が痛い。
Wain o nomi-sugite atama ga itai.
(I've drunk too much wine and have a headache.)

(d) このスープは辛くて飲めない。
Kono sūpu wa karakute nomenai.
(This soup is salty (or spicy hot) and I can't eat (lit., drink) it.)

(e) 私はテニスが大好きでよく友達とします。
Watashi wa tenisu ga dai-suki de yoku tomodachi to shimasu.
(I love tennis and often play with my friends.)

(f) 伊藤先生は今週病気で、かわりに寺岡先生が教えた。
Itō-sensei wa konshū byōki de, kawari ni Teraoka-sensei ga oshieta.
(Prof. Ito was ill this week and Prof. Teraoka taught for him.)

(g) 優里は今大学３年で専攻は日本文学です。
Yuri wa ima daigaku san-nen de senkō wa nihon-bungaku desu.
(Yuri is a junior at college now and her major is Japanese literature.)

Notes

1. The *te*-form functions, in part, to link sentences. That is, if the last element of the predicate of a clause is the *te*-form, it means that that clause is not the end of the sentence and that another predicate or clause follows it. For example, in Ex.(c) the last element of the predicate of the first clause is *sugite*, the *te*-form of *sugiru* "do s.t. too much," and *sugite* is followed by another clause *atama ga itai* "lit., (my) head aches."

2. The meaning of the *te*-form varies according to context, but generally, it corresponds to *and* or *V-ing* in participial constructions, as seen in the English translations for KS(A) and Ex.(a).

3. When the *te*-form links two predicates P_1 and P_2, the semantic relationship between them varies according to the context. (A)–(E) provide common relationships.

T

(A) The actions represented by P_1 and P_2 are taken in sequence, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a). In this case, the subject of P_1 and that of P_2 are the same, and the second action cannot be taken independently from the first action.
(⇒ ***kara***[2])

(B) P_1 and P_2 represent two states of someone or something, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b). In this case, the subject of P_1 and that of P_2 are the same.

(C) The clause of P_1 represents the reason for or the cause of P_2, as in KS(C) and Exs.(c)–(f). In this use, the negative potential form often occurs in P_2, as in Ex.(d). (1) provides another example. Note that the non-potential form cannot be used here.

(1) チケットがとても高くてコンサートに{**行けない** / ×**行かない**}。
*Chiketto ga totemo takakute konsāto ni {**ikenai** / ×**ikanai**}.*
(The tickets are very expensive, and I cannot go to the concert.)

(D) P_1 represents a state of someone or something (X) and P_2 provides additional information about X, as in KS(D) and Ex.(g).

(E) P_1 represents the means by which someone does P_2 or the manner in which someone takes the action represented by P_2, as in (2)–(4).

(2) 僕は**歩いて**帰った。
*Boku wa **aruite** kaetta.*
(I went home on foot. (lit., I walked and went home.))

(3) 良樹は**急いで**ご飯を食べた。
*Yoshiki wa **isoide** gohan o tabeta.*
(Yoshiki ate his meal in a hurry. (lit., Yoshiki hurried and ate his meal.))

(4) 友美は着物を**着て**パーティーに行った。
*Tomomi wa kimono o **kite** pātī ni itta.*
(Tomomi went to the party in a kimono. (lit., Tomomi wore a kimono and went to the party.))

(F) P_1 and P_2 represent a set of actions or states. In this case, the subjects of P_1 and P_2 can be different, as in (5) and (6).

(5) **私が**ピザを焼いて、**ルームメートが**サラダを作った。
***Watashi ga** piza o yaite, **rūmumēto ga** sarada o tsukutta.*
(I baked a pizza, and my roommate made a salad.)

(6) ここは**夏は**蒸し暑くて、**冬は**とても寒い。
*Koko wa **natsu wa** mushiatsukute, **fuyu wa** totemo samui.*
(Here it is muggy in summer and very cold in winter.)

4. The *te*-form can be repeated more than once in a clause, as in (7).

(7) 竹中さんのオフィスは広くて明るくて機能的だ。
*Takenaka-san no ofisu wa hiroku**te** akaruku**te** kinōteki da.*
(Takenaka-san's office is spacious, bright and functional.)

Just like the particle *to*[1] makes an exhaustive listing of nouns, the *te*-form lists verbs and adjectives exhaustively. (⇒ ***~tari ~tari suru***; ***ya***)

5. The *te*-form of verbs are also used with expressions such as *iru*[2] "be doing ~," *kara* "after" and *wa ikenai* "must not do ~." (For more expressions that require the *te*-form of verbs, see Appendix 4. Connection Forms of Important Expressions: A-4. V*te* + ___.)

6. There are two versions of the *te*-form of the negative ending ~*nai*: ~*naide* and ~*nakute*. ~*naide* can occur only with verbs, but ~*nakute* can occur with *i*-adjectives and { Adj(*na*) / N } *da* as well as verbs. (⇒ **~*naide***; **~*nakute***)

temo ても *conj.*

a conjunction that indicates that the main clause expresses something that is usually not expected from what is expressed in the dependent clause

even if; even though; although; whether ~ or ~; no matter what/who/where/etc.
【REL. *keredomo*; *noni*; *tatte*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	V*te*		
雨が *Ame ga*	降って ***futte***	も *mo*	試合はある / あります。 *shiai wa aru / arimasu.*
(The game will be held even if it rains.)			

(B)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Adj(*i*)*te*		
仕事が *Shigoto ga*	忙しくて ***isogashikute***	も *mo*	毎日ジムに行って運動している / います。 *mai-nichi jimu ni itte undō-shite iru / imasu.*
(Even though I'm busy with my work, I go to the gym and do exercises every day.)			

T

(C)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Adj(*na*)		
仕事が *Shigoto ga*	大変 ***taihen***	でも *demo*	私は今の会社を辞めない / 辞めません。 *watashi wa ima no kaisha o yamenai / yamemasen.*
(Even though the work is demanding, I will not quit my company.)			

(D)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Noun		
発表が *Happyō ga*	**日本語** ***nihongo***	でも *demo*	大丈夫だ / です。 *daijōbu da / desu.*
(Even if the presentation is given in Japanese, I'm all right.)			

Formation

(i) { V*te* / Adj(*i*)*te* } も
mo

話しても (even if/though s.o. talks)
hanashitemo

高くても (even if/though s.t. is expensive)
takakutemo

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } でも
demo

静かでも (even if/though s.t. is quiet)
shizuka demo

先生でも (even if/though s.o. is a teacher)
sensei demo

(iii) ～なくて (the *te*-form of the negative ending) も
nakute *mo*

食べなくても (even if s.o. does not eat)
tabenakutemo

安くなくても (even if s.t. is not cheap)
yasukunakutemo

便利 { で(は) / じゃ } なくても (even if s.t. is not useful)
benri { *de (wa)* / *ja* } *nakutemo*

学生 { で(は) / じゃ } なくても (even if s.o. is not a student)
gakusei { *de (wa)* / *ja* } *nakutemo*

T

Examples

(a) スライドが使えなくてもハンドアウトを使って発表できます。
Suraido ga tsukaenakutemo handoauto o tsukatte happyō-dekimasu.
(Even if I cannot use slides, I can give a presentation using handouts.)

(b) 中山さんは本を買っても読みません。
Nakayama-san wa hon o kattemo yomimasen.
(Nakayama-san doesn't read books even if he buys them.)

(c) 私は４時間歩いても疲れなかった。
Watashi wa yo-jikan aruitemo tsukarenakatta.
(I didn't get tired even after walking (lit., even though I walked) for four hours.)

(d) 私はお金がなくても幸せです。
Watashi wa o-kane ga nakutemo shiawase desu.
(I'm happy even though I don't have money.)

(e) 少し高くても品物がよければ売れるはずだ。
Sukoshi takakutemo shinamono ga yokereba ureru hazu da.
(Even if the price is a little too high, if it's a good product, it should sell.)

(f) 通勤が不便でも、私は今のところが気に入っている。
Tsūkin ga fuben demo, watashi wa ima no tokoro ga ki ni itte iru.
(Although it is inconvenient to commute, I like where I live now.)

(g) 授業が全部オンラインでも取るつもりです。
Jugyō ga zenbu onrain demo toru tsumori desu.
(Even if the classes are all taught online, I'm going to take them.)

Notes

1. Although *temo* consists of the last syllable of the *te*-form of a verb, an *i*-adjectives or *da* and the particle *mo*, *temo* (or *demo*) is conventionally treated as a one word that functions as a conditional conjunction. (This volume follows this convention and uses the notation "S_1 *temo* S_2" to represent the construction that involves *temo*.)

2. "S_1 *temo* S_2," is used in situations in which when S_1 takes place or is the case, S_2 usually does not take place or is not the case. If S_1 is not factual, the English equivalent is "even if," and if S_1 is factual, the English equivalent is "even though" or "although."

T

3. The "Q-word ~*temo*" construction expresses the idea of "no matter what/who/how/etc.," as in (1)–(6).

(1) 何を食べてもおいしいです。
***Nani** o tabe**temo** oishiidesu.*
(No matter what I eat, it tastes good.)

(2) だれに聞いても分からなかった。
***Dare** ni kii**temo** wakaranakatta.*
(No matter who I asked, I couldn't get the answer.)

(3) 彼女の歌は**いつ**聞い**ても**癒やされる。
*Kanojo no uta wa **itsu** kii**temo** iyasareru.*
(Her songs comfort me whenever I hear them.)

(4) これは**どう**考え**ても**不公平だ。
*Kore wa **dō** kangae**temo** fukōhei da.*
(This is absolutely unfair (lit., no matter how I think about it).)

(5) {**どんなに / いくら**}練習し**ても**日本語がうまくならない。
{***Donna ni / Ikura***} *renshū-shi**temo** nihongo ga umaku naranai.*
(My Japanese doesn't improve no matter how much I practice.)

(6) この薬の名前は**何回**聞い**ても**覚えられない。
*Kono kusuri no namae wa **nan-kai** kii**temo** oboerarenai.*
(No matter how many times I hear it, I cannot remember the name of this medicine.)

4. In some situations, *temo* occurs more than once in a single sentence, as in (7)–(9).

(7) 私が話し**ても**妻が話し**ても**、息子は考えを変えなかった。
*Watashi ga hanashi**temo** tsuma ga hanashi**temo**, musuko wa kangae o kaenakatta.*
(My son didn't change his mind whether I talked to him or my wife talked to him.)

(8) あの人には相談し**も**しなく**ても**同じでしょう。
*Ano hito ni wa sōdan-shi**temo** shinaku**temo** onaji deshō.*
(Whether you discuss it with him or not, it won't make any difference.)

(9) 働い**ても**働い**ても**貯金が増えない。(=いくら働いても貯金が増えない。)
*Hatarai**temo** hatarai**temo** chokin ga fuenai.* (= *Ikura hataraitemo chokin ga fuenai.*)
(No matter how much I work, my savings do not increase.)

5. S_1 in "S_1 *temo* S_2" can be counterfactual, as in (10) and (11).

(10) 中野さんは手術をし**ても**助からなかっただろう。
*Nakano-san wa shujutsu o shi**temo** tasukaranakatta darō.*
(Nakano-san's life wouldn't have been saved even if he had had surgery.)

(11) 僕がラリー**でも**同じことをしたと思う。
*Boku ga Rarī **demo** onaji koto o shita to omou.*
(Even if I were Larry, I think I would have done the same thing.)

【Related Expressions】

I. "S_1 *noni* S_2" is similar to "S_1 *temo* S_2" in that both constructions are used when what S_2 represents is not what is commonly expected from what S_1 represents, as in [1].

[1] a. 私は４時間｛歩いたのに / 歩いても｝疲れなかった。(cf. Ex.(c))
*Watashi wa yo-jikan｛aruita **noni** / aruitemo｝tsukarenakatta.*
(I didn't get tired｛in spite of the fact that / even though｝I walked for four hours.)

b. この店のケーキは｛高いのに / 高くても｝よく売れる。
*Kono mise no kēki wa｛takai **noni** / takakutemo｝yoku ureru.*
(This shop's cakes sell well｛in spite of the fact that / even though｝they are expensive.)

However, there are several differences between "S_1 *noni* S_2" and "S_1 *temo* S_2." First, "S_1 *noni* S_2" can be used only when S_1 and S_2 both represent a fact while "S_1 *temo* S_2" has no such a restriction. Thus, in the examples in [2], in which S_1 or S_2 is not factual, *temo* can be used, but *noni* cannot.

[2] a. 今日は雨が｛降っても / ×降るのに｝テニスをするつもりだ。
*Kyō wa ame ga｛futtemo / × furu **noni**｝tenisu o suru tsumori da.*
(I'm going to play tennis today｛even if it rains / ×in spite of the fact that it will rain｝.)

b. カレンは｛忙しくても / ×忙しいのに｝パーティーに行くだろう。
*Karen wa｛isogashikutemo / × isogashii **noni**｝pātī ni iku darō.*
(Karen will probably go to the party｛even if / ×in spite of the fact that｝she is busy.)

c. ジョージは｛大変でも / ×大変なのに｝日本語の勉強を続けると思う。
*Jōji wa｛taihen **demo** / × taihen na **noni**｝nihongo no benkyō o tsuzukeru to omou.*
(I think George will continue his study of Japanese｛even if / ×in spite of the fact that｝it is tough.)

If the situations in [2] are changed to factual, *noni* can be used, as in [3].

[3] a. 今日は雨が｛降っても / 降ったのに｝テニスをした。
*Kyō wa ame ga｛futtemo / futta **noni**｝tenisu o shita.*
(I played tennis today｛even though / in spite of the fact that｝it rained.)

b. カレンは｛忙しくても / 忙しいのに｝パーティーに行った。
*Karen wa｛isogashikutemo / isogashii **noni**｝pātī ni itta.*
(Karen went to the party｛even though / in spite of the fact that｝she was (lit., is) busy.)

c. ジョージは{大変**でも** / 大変な**のに**}日本語の勉強を続けている。
*Jōji wa{ taihen **demo** / taihen na **noni**} nihongo no benkyō o tsuzukete iru.*
(George is continuing his study of Japanese{ even though / in spite of the fact that} it is tough.)

Second, *noni* expresses a strong sense of unexpectedness. Thus, *noni* sentences usually convey the speaker's surprise, frustration, dissatisfaction, etc. For example, in [1], the *noni* sentences imply the speaker's surprise, while the *temo* sentences convey no such implication.

Third, *noni* cannot be used with a question word, as in [4].

[4] a. だれに{聞い**ても** / ×聞いた**のに**}分からなかった。(= (2))
***Dare** ni{ kii**temo** / × kiita **noni**} wakaranakatta.*
(No matter who I asked, I couldn't get the answer.)

b. どんなに練習{し**ても** / ×する**のに**}日本語がうまくならない。(= (5))
***Donna ni** renshū-{ shi**temo** / × suru **noni**} nihongo ga umaku naranai.*
(My Japanese doesn't improve no matter how much I practice.)

Fourth, *noni* cannot be used more than once in a single sentence. Thus, *noni* is ungrammatical in [5]. (⇒ ***noni***)

[5] {私が話し**ても**妻が話し**ても** / ×私が話した**のに**妻が話した**のに**}、息子は考えを変えなかった。(= (7))
*{Watashi ga hanashi**temo** tsuma ga hanashi**temo** / × Watashi ga hanashita **noni** tsuma ga hanashita **noni**}, musuko wa kangae o kaenakatta.*
(My son didn't change his mind whether I talked to him or my wife talked to him.)

II. "S_1 *keredomo/keredo/kedo* S_2" can also be used when what S_2 represents is not what is commonly expected from what S_1 represents, as in [6].

[6] a. 私は4時間{歩いた**けれども** / 歩い**ても**}疲れなかった。(cf. Ex.(c))
*Watashi wa yo-jikan{ aruita **keredomo** / arui**temo**} tsukarenakatta.*
(I didn't get tired{ although / even though} I walked for four hours.)

b. この店のケーキは{高い**けど** / 高く**ても**}よく売れる。(cf. [1b])
*Kono mise no kēki wa{ takai **kedo** / takaku**temo**} yoku ureru.*
(This shop's cakes sell well{ although / even though} they are expensive.)

However, *keredomo* and its variations cannot be used with question words, as in [7].

[7] a. だれに{聞いて**も** / ×聞いた**けれども**}分からなかった。(= (2))
***Dare** ni{ kii**temo** / × kiita **keredomo**} wakaranakatta.*
(No matter who I asked, I couldn't get the answer.)

b. どんなに練習{して**も** / ×するけど}日本語がうまくならない。(= (5))
***Donna ni** renshū-{ shi**temo** / × suru **kedo**} nihongo ga umaku naranai.*
(My Japanese doesn't improve no matter how much I practice.)

Note also that *keredomo* and its variations cannot be used more than once in a single sentence, as in [8].

[8] {私が話し**て**も妻が話し**て**も / ×私が話した**けれど**妻が話した**けれど**}、息子は考えを変えなかった。(= (7))
{*Watashi ga hanashi**temo** tsuma ga hanashi**temo** / × Watashi ga hanashita **keredo** tsuma ga hanashita **keredo***}, *musuko wa kangae o kaenakatta.*
(My son didn't change his mind whether I talked to him or my wife talked to him.)

On the other hand, *keredomo* can also be used to contrast two things while *temo* cannot be used is such situations, as in [9]. (⇒ ***keredomo***)

[9] a. 私は学生の時、留学{した**けれど** / ×し**ても**}、弟はしなかった。
*Watashi wa gakusei no toki, ryūgaku-{ shita **keredo** / × shi**temo**}, otōto wa shinakatta.*
(I studied abroad when I was a student, but my younger brother didn't.)

b. 理沙はスポーツが好き{だ**けど** / ×**でも**}、由美はスポーツが苦手だ。
*Risa wa supōtsu ga suki{ da **kedo** / × **demo**}, Yumi wa supōtsu ga nigate da.*
(Risa likes sports, but Yumi is not good at sports. / × Even though Risa likes sports, Yumi is not good at sports.)

III. *Tatte* can be used for *temo* in casual situations, as in [10]–[12].

[10] スライドが使えなく{**ても** / **たって**}ハンドアウトを使って発表できます。(cf. Ex.(a))
*Suraido ga tsukaenaku{ **temo** / **tatte**} handoauto o tsukatte happyō-dekimasu.*
(Even if I cannot use slides, I can give a presentation using handouts.)

[11] 少し高く{**ても** / **たって**}品物がよければ売れるはずだ。(cf. Ex.(e))
*Sukoshi takaku{ **temo** / **tatte**} shinamono ga yokereba ureru hazu da.*
(Even if the price is a little too high, if it's a good product, it should sell.)

[12] 通勤が不便｛**でも / だって**｝、私は今のところが気に入っている。

(cf. Ex.(f))

Tsūkin ga fuben｛***demo*** **/** ***datte***｝*, watashi wa ima no tokoro ga ki ni itte iru.*

(Although it is inconvenient to commute, I like where I live now.)

~temo ii ～てもいい *phr.*

a phrase that expresses permission or concession

may; It is all right if
【REL. *~nakereba ikenai/naranai*; *~nakutewa ikenai/naranai*; *~tewa ikenai/naranai*】
(ANT. *~tewa ikenai*)

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	V*te*			
ここに *Koko ni*	座って ***suwatte***	も *mo*	いいです *iidesu*	か。 *ka.*
(May I sit here?)				

(B)

	Adj(*i*)*te*		
部屋が *Heya ga*	狭くて ***semakute***	も *mo*	いい / いいです。 *ii / iidesu.*
(It is all right if the room is small.)			

(C)

	Adj(*na*)			
日本語が少し *Nihongo ga sukoshi*	下手 ***heta***	でも *demo*	いいです *iidesu*	か。 *ka.*
(Is it all right if my Japanese is a bit poor?)				

(D)

	Noun		
ミーティングは *Mītingu wa*	**昼休み** ***hiruyasumi***	でも *demo*	いい / いいです。 *ii / iidesu.*
(It is all right if the meeting is at lunchtime.)			

Formation

(i) { V*te* / Adj(*i*)*te* } もいい
mo ii

話してもいい (may talk; It is all right if s.o. talks.)
hanashitemo ii

高くてもいい (It is all right if s.t. is expensive.)
takakutemo ii

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } でもいい
demo ii

不便でもいい (It is all right if s.t. is inconvenient.)
fuben demo ii

学生でもいい (It is all right if s.o. is a student.)
gakusei demo ii

Examples

(a) A: このいすを使ってもいいですか。
Kono isu o tsukattemo iidesu ka.
(May I use this chair?)

B: はい、どうぞ。
Hai, dōzo.
(Certainly.)

(b) 今日の宿題は作文です。短くてもいいですが、おもしろいのを書いてください。
Kyō no shukudai wa sakubun desu. Mijikakutemo iidesu ga, omoshiroi no o kaite kudasai.
(Today's homework assignment is a composition. It is all right if it's short, but please write an interesting one.)

(c) [At a realtor's office]
A: 安いアパートを探しているんですが。
Yasui apāto o sagashite iru n desu ga.
(I'm looking for an inexpensive apartment.)

B: ちょっと交通が不便でもいいですか。
Chotto kōtsū ga fuben demo iidesu ka.
(Is it all right if the location is not with good transportation (lit., if the transportation is a little inconvenient)?)

(d) A: 何か書くものはありませんか。
Nani-ka kaku mono wa arimasen ka.
(Do you have something to write with?)

B: この鉛筆でもいいですか。
Kono enpitsu demo iidesu ka.
(Will this pencil do?)

Notes

1. When *temo ii* is preceded by a verb, it means permission, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a).

2. "*Hai, dōzo*" is a common positive response to "V*te mo iidesu ka*," as in Ex.(a). "*Hai, iidesu*" sounds a little rude.

3. *~nakutemo ii*, the *te*-form of the negative ending *-nai* with *mo ii*, means "It is all right if ~ not ~" or "do not have to ~." (1)–(3) provide examples.

   (1) 私はその試験を受け**なくてもいい**。
   *Watashi wa sono shiken o uke**nakutemo ii.***
   (I don't have to take that exam.)

   (2) その会議の部屋は大きく**なくてもいいです**。
   *Sono kaigi no heya wa ōkiku**nakutemo iidesu.***
   (The room for that meeting doesn't have to be large.)

   (3) レポートは日本語じゃ**なくてもいいです**。
   *Repōto wa nihongo ja **nakutemo iidesu.***
   (It is all right if your report is not in Japanese.)

4. *Yoroshii(desu)*, the polite form of *ii* "good; all right," and *kamawanai/kamaimasen* "I don't mind; it doesn't matter" can be used in place of *ii(desu)*. *Yoroshiidesu* is politer than *kamaimasen*. (4) and (5) provide examples.

   (4) 明日休んでもよろしいですか。
   *Ashita yasun**demo yoroshiidesu** ka.*
   (Would it be all right if I take tomorrow off?)

   (5) 写真を撮ってもかまいませんか。
   *Shashin o tot**temo kamaimasen** ka.*
   (Do you mind (lit., Don't you mind) if I take a picture?)

   Note that *kamau* "mind" must be negated in this expression.

5. *Temo ii* sometimes appears with question words like *nani* "what," *dare* "who" and *ikura* "how much." In this case, the expression means "It is all right no matter what/who/how much etc. ~" or "It doesn't matter what/who/how much ~." (6)–(8) provide examples. (⇒ ***temo***: Note 3)

   (6) 試験の時、**何**を見**てもいいです**。
   Shiken no toki, nani o mitemo iidesu.
   (You may refer to anything (lit., It is all right no matter what you look at) during the exam.)

   (7) この仕事は**だれ**がし**てもいいです**。
   Kono shigoto wa dare ga shitemo iidesu.
   (It doesn't matter who does this job.)

   (8) **いくら**食べ**てもいいです**。
   Ikura tabetemo iidesu.
   (You may eat as much as you want. (lit., It is all right no matter how much you eat.))

【Related Expressions】

The meanings of *~temo ii*, *~nakutemo ii*, *~tewa ikenai/naranai* and *~nakutewa ikenai/naranai* are summarized below:

[Permission] ⟷ [Prohibition / No admission] It is **all right** to { V / be Adj } .	[Prohibition / No admission] It is **not all right** to { V / be Adj } .
行ってもいい *ittemo ii* (S.o. may go. (lit., It is all right if s.o. goes.))	行っては{いけない / ならない} *ittewa{ikenai / naranai}* (S.o. may/must not go. (lit., It is not all right if s.o. goes.))
小さくてもいい *chīsakutemo ii* (It is all right if s.t. is small.)	小さくては{いけない / ならない} *chīsakutewa{ikenai / naranai}* (It is not all right if s.t. is small.)

[No obligation / No necessity] ⟷ [Obligation / Necessity] It is **not necessary** to { V / be Adj } . (= It is **all right not** to { V / be Adj } .)	[Obligation / Necessity] It is **necessary** to { V / be Adj } . (= It is **not all right not** to { V / be Adj } .)
行かなくてもいい *ikanakutemo ii* (S.o. does not have to go. (lit., It is all right if s.o. does not go.))	行かなくては{いけない / ならない}* *ikanakutewa{ikenai / naranai}* (S.o. {must / has to} go. (lit., It is not all right if s.o. does not go.))

小さくなくてもいい *chīsakunakutemo ii* (It is all right if s.t. is not small.)	小さくなくては{いけない / ならない} *chīsakunakutewa{ ikenai / naranai}* (S.t. has to be small. (lit., It is not all right if s.t. is not small.))

*~*nakereba* {*ikenai/naranai*} also expresses necessity.

(⇒ **~nakereba naranai**; **~tewa ikenai**)

~tewa ikenai ～てはいけない *phr.*

a phrase that expresses prohibition

not allowed to do s.t.; may not; must not; should not; cannot
【REL. *~nakutewa ikenai/naranai*; *~nakutemo ii*; *~temo ii*; *~tewa naranai*】
(ANT. *~temo ii*)

◆ Key Sentence

	V*te*		
この部屋に *Kono heya ni*	入って ***haitte***	は *wa*	いけない / いけません。 *ikenai / ikemasen.*
(You are not allowed to enter this room.)			

T

Formation

V*te* はいけない
wa ikenai

話してはいけない (be not allowed to talk)
hanashitewa ikenai

食べてはいけない (be not allowed to eat)
tabetewa ikenai

Examples

(a) 教室でものを食べてはいけません。
Kyōshitsu de mono o tabetewa ikemasen.
(You must not eat (food) in the classroom.)

(b) 結衣は 17 歳だからまだお酒を飲んではいけない。
Yui wa jūnana-sai da kara mada o-sake o nondewa ikenai.
(Yui is seventeen, so she is not allowed to drink alcohol yet.)

Note

In V*te wa ikenai*, the second person subject is usually omitted, as in KS and Ex.(a).

【Related Expressions】

I. V*te wa naranai* also expresses prohibition. Thus, V*te wa naranai* can replace V*te wa ikenai* in KS and Ex.(a) without changing their meanings, as in [1].

[1] a. この部屋に入っては{いけない / ならない}。(cf. KS)
*Kono heya ni hait**tewa** {**ikenai** / **naranai**}.*
(You are not allowed to enter this room.)

b. 教室でものを食べては{いけません / なりません}。(cf. Ex.(a))
*Kyōshitsu de mono o tabe**tewa** {**ikemasen** / **narimasen**}.*
(You must not eat (food) in the classroom.)

The difference between the two expressions is that V*te wa naranai* sounds more formal and a little stronger than V*te wa ikenai*.

II. *~nakutewa ikenai/naranai*, which consists of the *te*-form of *nai* and *wa ikenai/naranai*, expresses obligation, as in [2].

[2] a. このレポートを金曜までに出さなくては{いけない / ならない}。
*Kono repōto o kin'yō made ni dasa**nakutewa** {**ikenai** / **naranai**}.*
(I have to turn in this report by Friday.)

b. 私たちはもっと環境を守らなくては{いけません / なりません}。
*Watashi-tachi wa motto kankyō o mamora**nakutewa** {**ikemasen** / **narimasen**}.*
(We have to protect the environment more.)

III. The opposite idea of *~tewa ikenai/naranai* (i.e., permission) can be expressed using *~temo ii*, as in [3]. (⇒ ***~temo ii***)

[3] a. A: この部屋を使ってもいいですか。
*Kono heya o tsukat**temo iidesu** ka.*
(May I use this room?)

B: はい、どうぞ。
Hai, dōzo.
(Certainly.)

b. 論文は英語で書い**てもいいです**。
*Ronbun wa eigo de kai**temo iidesu**.*
(You may write your paper in English.)

If *~nakute* (= the *te*-form of *nai*) is used before *mo ii*, the phrase expresses no obligation/necessity, as in [4].

[4] a. この会議は出たくなかったら出**なくてもいいです**。
*Kono kaigi wa de-takunakattara de**nakutemo iidesu**.*
(You don't have to attend this meeting if you don't want to.)

b. この仕事は急が**なくてもいいです**。
*Kono shigoto wa isoga**nakutemo iidesu**.*
(There is no hurry for this work.)

The following table summarizes the four related expressions: *~tewa ikenai*, *~nakutewa ikenai*, *~temo ii* and *~nakutemo ii*.

[Permission] ⟷	[Prohibition / No permission]
食べてもいい *tabetemo ii* (be allowed to eat; may eat (lit., it is all right if s.o. eats))	食べては{いけない / ならない} *tabetewa{ikenai / naranai}* (be not allowed to eat; must not eat; may not eat (lit., it is not all right if s.o. eats))

[No obligation / No necessity] ⟷	[Obligation / Necessity]
食べなくてもいい *tabenakutemo ii* (do not have to eat (lit., it is all right if s.o. does not eat))	食べなくては{いけない / ならない} *tabenakutewa{ikenai / naranai}* (must eat; have to eat (lit., it is not all right if s.o. does not eat))

604 *to*[1]

to[1] **と**[1] *prt.*

a particle that lists things exhaustively

and
【REL. *ni*; *to*[2]; *ya*】

◆ Key Sentence

Noun		Noun			
テリー ***Terī***	と *to*	ディック ***Dikku***	(と) *(to)*	は *wa*	私のクラスメートだ / です。 *watashi no kurasumēto da / desu.*
(Teri and Dick are my classmates.)					

Examples

(a) 私はスペイン語と日本語を勉強した。
Watashi wa supeingo to nihongo o benkyō-shita.
(I studied Spanish and Japanese.)

(b) ミルズさんは来月マレーシアとシンガポールとタイに出張します。
Miruzu-san wa raigetsu Marēshia to Shingapōru to Tai ni shutchō-shimasu.
(Mills-san is taking a business trip to Malaysia, Singapore and Thailand next month.)

(c) 私の好きな果物はイチゴと桃だ。
Watashi no sukina kudamono wa ichigo to momo da.
(My favorite fruits are strawberries and peaches.)

(d) 野村さんとマーフィーさんがゴルフしています。
Nomura-san to Māfī-san ga gorufu o shite imasu.
(Nomura-san and Murphy-san are playing golf.)

(e) 日本語とトルコ語は似ている。
Nihongo to torukogo wa nite iru.
(Japanese and Turkish are alike.)

Notes

1. *To*[1] is used to list things exhaustively. The final *to* is usually omitted, but the others are not. Thus, "A, B, C and D" is usually expressed as "A *to* B *to* C *to* D," as in Ex.(b).

2. "N_1 *to* N_2 (*to* N_3 ...)" is a noun phrase; therefore, it can occur anywhere nouns can occur.

3. *To*[1] connects nouns or noun phrases only. It cannot be used to connect verbs, *i*-adjectives, and *na*-adjectives/nouns + *da*. Thus, the following sentences are all ungrammatical.

(1) a. ×ホワイトさんは日本へ行ったと小池さんに会った。
×*Howaito-san wa Nihon e itta* ***to*** *Koike-san ni atta.*
(*Intended meaning*: White-san went to Japan and met Koike-san.)

b. ×この店のラーメンは安いとおいしい。
×*Kono mise no rāmen wa yasui* ***to*** *oishii.*
(*Intended meaning*: This shop's ramen is cheap and tasty.)

c. ×祖父は 85 歳だとまだとても元気だ。
×*Sofu wa hachijūgo-sai da* ***to*** *mada totemo genki da.*
(*Intended meaning*: My grandfather is eighty-five and still very healthy.)

To connect verbs, *i*-adjectives, and *na*-adjectives/nouns + *da*, the *te*-forms of verbs, *i*-adjectives and *da* are used as in (2). (⇒ ***~te***)

(2) a. ホワイトさんは日本へ**行って**小池さんに会った。
Howaito-san wa Nihon e ***itte*** *Koike-san ni atta.*

b. この店のラーメンは**安くて**おいしい。
Kono mise no rāmen wa ***yasukute*** *oishii.*

c. 祖父は 85 歳でまだとても元気だ。
Sofu wa hachijū-go-sai ***de*** *mada totemo genki da.*

【Related Expressions】

I. When Ex.(d) means "Nomura and Murphy are playing golf *together*," it can be restated using *to*[2] "with," as in [1]. (⇒ ***to***[2])

[1] a. 野村さんはマーフィーさんとゴルフをしています。
Nomura-san wa Māfī-san ***to*** *gorufu o shite imasu.*
(Nomura-san is playing golf with Murphy-san.)

b. マーフィーさんは野村さんとゴルフをしています。
Māfī-san wa Nomura-san ***to*** *gorufu o shite imasu.*
(Murphy-san is playing golf with Nomura-san.)

Note that if the speaker states [1a] or [1b] instead of Ex.(d), he/she is speaking from Nomura's or Murphy's viewpoint, respectively.

II. *Ya* is also used to list things, but that listing is non-exhaustive. [2] provides examples. (⇒ ***ya***)

[2] a. 昨日のパーティーにはジョーンズさん**や**ハリスさんが来た。
Kinō no pātī ni wa Jōnzu-san ***ya*** *Harisu-san ga kita.*
(Jones-san, Harris-san, and others came to yesterday's party.)

b. 果物はイチゴ**や**桃が好きです。
Kudamono wa ichigo ***ya*** *momo ga suki desu.*
(Regarding fruit, I like strawberries and peaches (and some others).)

III. The particle *ni* can be used to combine two or more objects that usually come as a set.

[3] a. 私の朝食は毎日ご飯{に / と}みそ汁だ。
*Watashi no chōshoku wa mai-nichi gohan {**ni** / **to**} misoshiru da.*
(I have rice and miso soup for my breakfast every day. (lit., My breakfast is rice and miso soup every day.))

b. あの人はいつも白いシャツ{に / と}赤いベストを着ている。
*Ano hito wa itsumo shiroi shatsu {**ni** / **to**} akai besuto o kite iru.*
(He is always wearing a white shirt and a red vest.)

The difference between *ni* and *to* is that "X *ni* Y" implies that X is the primary item and Y is added to that. "X *to* Y" does not carry this implication.

to[2] **と**[2] *prt.*

a particle that marks the noun that maintains a reciprocal relationship with the subject of a sentence

with; as; from
【REL. *ni*[4]; ***to***[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Noun		
私は *Watashi wa*	ディーン ***Dīn***	と *to*	一緒にパーティーに行った / 行きました。 *issho ni pātī ni itta / ikimashita.*
(I went to a party together with Dean.)			

(B)

	Noun		
ジョシュアは *Joshua wa*	クリスティーナ ***Kurisutīna***	と *to*	結婚した / しました。 *kekkon-shita / shimashita.*
(Joshua married Christina.)			

Examples

(a) ロジャーはアーサーとよくテニスをする。
Rojā wa Āsā to yoku tenisu o suru.
(Roger often plays tennis with Arthur.)

(b) 真美は正人と離婚した。
Mami wa Masato to rikon-shita.
(Mami divorced Masato.)

(c) 日本のきゅうりはアメリカのきゅうりと少し違います。
Nihon no kyūri wa Amerika no kyūri to sukoshi chigaimasu.
(Japanese cucumbers are a little different from American ones.)

(d) この車は僕の車と同じです。
Kono kuruma wa boku no kuruma to onaji desu.
(This car is the same as my car.)

(e) 私は声が母とよく似ていると言われることが多い。
Watashi wa koe ga haha to yoku nite iru to iwareru koto ga ōi.
(I'm often told that my voice is very similar to my mother's.)

Notes

1. *To*[2] is typically used to mean "with," as in KS(A) and Ex.(a). However, this *to* is used in more extended situations, as in KS(B) and Exs.(b)–(e). What is common in these sentences is that the subject and the noun marked by *to* have a reciprocal relationship. For example, in Ex.(a), if it is the case that Roger often plays tennis with Arthur, it is also the case that Arthur often plays tennis with Roger, and in Ex.(d), if it is true that a car (X) is the same as another car (Y), it is also true that Y is the same as X. Thus, in Japanese, if a noun has a reciprocal relationship with the subject, it is always marked by *to*. Note that in English, such a noun is marked by different prepositions depending on the verb or adjective, as seen in the English translations in Exs.(a) and (c)–(e). In other cases, the noun functions as the direct object, as in Ex.(b).

2. (1) and (2) provides common reciprocal verbs and adjectives.

   (1) Reciprocal verbs:

結婚する (marry) *kekkon-suru*	離婚する (get divorced) *rikon-suru*	
けんかする (quarrel) *kenka-suru*	別れる (break up; part) *wakareru*	
相談する (discuss) *sōdan-suru*	似る (resemble) *niru*	違う (differ) *chigau*

(2) Reciprocal adjectives:

同じ (the same)	近い (close)	そっくり (strikingly similar)
onaji	*chikai*	*sokkuri*

【Related Expression】

Some reciprocal expressions take either "X *ni*" or "X *to*." Although the difference is subtle, in some situations, *to* implies a "bidirectional" action while *ni* implies a "unidirectional" one. For example, [1a] is used when Joan discussed her research project with her teacher, while [1b] is used when Joan reported on her research project to her teacher.

[1] a. ジョーンは先生**と**研究プロジェクトのことを話した。
*Jōn wa sensei **to** kenkyū-purojekuto no koto o hanashita.*
(Joan talked about her research project *with* her teacher.)

b. ジョーンは先生**に**研究プロジェクトのことを話した。
*Jōn wa sensei **ni** kenkyū-purojekuto no koto o hanashita.*
(Joan talked *to* her teacher on her research project.)

Similarly, the use of *to* in [2a] implies that Hiroto collided with a moving bicycle, while the use of *ni* in [2b] implies that Hiroto bumped into a parked bicycle.

(⇒ ***ni***[4])

[2] a. 博人は歩きながらスマホを見ていて、自転車**と**ぶつかった。
*Hiroto wa aruki nagara sumaho o mite ite, jitensha **to** butsukatta.*
(Hiroto was looking at his smartphone while walking, and collided with a bicycle.)

b. 博人は歩きながらスマホを見ていて、自転車**に**ぶつかった。
*Hiroto wa aruki nagara sumaho o mite ite, jitensha **ni** butsukatta.*
(Hiroto was looking at his smartphone while walking, and bumped into a bicycle.)

In fact, in [3], *to* is unnatural because *denchū* "utility pole" is stationary.

[3] 博人は歩きながらスマホを見ていて、電柱{**に** / ??**と**}ぶつかった。
*Hiroto wa aruki nagara sumaho o mite ite, denchū{**ni** / ??**to**} butsukatta.*
(Hiroto was looking at his smartphone while walking, and bumped into a utility pole.)

to[3] と[3] *prt.*

a particle that marks a quotation, the sound with which s.o./s.t. does s.t. or s.t. happens, or the manner in which s.o./s.t. does s.t.

that ~; with the sound of; in the manner of
【REL. ***tte***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Direct Quotation		
ヒルさんは私に日本語で *Hiru-san wa watashi ni nihongo de*	「こんにちは」 *"Konnichiwa"*	と *to*	言った / 言いました。 *itta / iimashita.*
(Hill-san said "Hello" to me in Japanese.)			

(B)

	Indirect Quotation		
私は母のメールに *Watashi wa haha no mēru ni*	新しい仕事は楽しい *atarashii shigoto wa tanoshii*	と *to*	返事した / しました。 *henji-shita / shimashita.*
(I responded to my mother's email that I enjoy my new job.)			

(C)

	Phonomime/Phenomime/ Psychomime		
ドアのチャイムが *Doa no chaimu ga*	ピンポーン *pinpōn*	と *to*	鳴った / 鳴りました。 *natta / narimashita.*
(The door bell rang "ding dong.")			

Formation

(i) Quotation と
to

「知りません」と(言う) ((say,) "I don't know.")
"Shirimasen" to (iu)

知らないと(言う) ((say) that I don't know)
shiranai to (iu)

(ii) Phonomime と
to

ドサッと（落ちる） ((s.t. drops) with a thud)
dosat to (ochiru)

(iii) Phenomime と
to

すらすらと（話す） ((speak) fluently)
surasura to (hanasu)

(iv) Psychomime と
to

はっと（気がつく） ((realize) suddenly)
hat to (ki ga tsuku)

Examples

(a) キースは日本で働きたいと言っている。
Kīsu wa Nihon de hataraki-tai to itte iru.
(Keith says that he wants to work in Japan.)

(b) ここに、この教会は 16 世紀に建てられたと書いてあります。
Koko ni, kono kyōkai wa jūroku-seiki ni taterareta to kaite arimasu.
(It is written here that this church was built in the sixteenth century.)

(c) 私はバスで行こうと思います。
Watashi wa basu de ikō to omoimasu.
(I think I will go by bus.)

(d) 子供たちはバタバタと走り回った。
Kodomo-tachi wa batabata to hashiri-mawatta.
(The children tore around (lit., ran around with a clattering noise).)

(e) よく晴れた日にはここから富士山がくっきりと見えます。
Yoku hareta hi ni wa koko kara Fujisan ga kukkiri to miemasu.
(We can see Mt. Fuji clearly from here on sunny days.)

T

(f) 私はうっとりと彼女のピアノを聞いていた。
Watashi wa uttori to kanojo no piano o kiite ita.
(I was listening to her piano playing in fascination.)

Notes

1. *To*[3] is used to mark a quotation. The literal meaning of ~ *to iu* is "say with (the sound) ~." This use of *to*, however, has been extended further to cover indirect quotations, as in KS(B), Exs.(a) and (b), and even thoughts (i.e., internal

voice), as in Ex.(c). Note that *to*[3] is necessary for both direct and indirect quotations, as seen in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (b).

2. Besides *iu* "say," *henji-suru* "respond," *kaku* "write" and *omou* "think," as in KSs(A), (B) and Exs.(a)–(c), *to* is used with a wide range of verbs that represent actions related to information processing. (1)–(3) provide additional verbs of this sort.

   (1) Verbs of actions that involve a verbal expression:

あいさつする (greet) *aisatsu-suru*	ささやく (whisper) *sasayaku*	つぶやく (mumble; tweet) *tsubuyaku*
答える (answer) *kotaeru*	伝える (convey) *tsutaeru*	報告する (report) *hōkoku-suru*
教える (inform) *oshieru*	頼む (ask (a favor)) *tanomu*	命令する (order) *meirei-suru*
注意する (warn) *chūi-suru*	助言する (advise) *jogen-suru*	提案する (suggest) *teian-suru*
謝る (apologize) *ayamaru*		

   (2) Verbs of actions that involve thinking or feeling:

考える (think) *kangaeru*	判断する (judge) *handan-suru*	感じる (feel) *kanjiru*
想像する (imagine) *sōzō-suru*	予想する (predict) *yosō-suru*	信じる (believe) *shinjiru*
疑う (doubt) *utagau*		

   (3) Verbs of actions that involve conversion from one language/expression to another:

翻訳する (translate) *hon'yaku-suru*	訳す (translate) *yakusu*	解釈する (interpret) *kaishaku-suru*

3. When quotations are questions, the *to* after the question marker *ka* is often dropped, as in (4).

   (4) 両親は私にクリスマスに何が欲しいか(と)きいた。
   Ryōshin wa watashi ni kurisumasu ni nani ga hoshii ***ka*** *(****to****) kiita.*
   (My parents asked me what I wanted for Christmas.)

4. *To*[3] is also used with phonomimes, as in KS(C) and Ex.(d). Again, the idea is that someone/something makes the sound marked by *to* when doing something. Note that sound symbolisms in Japanese are not children's words. Rather, they are an important part of the Japanese vocabulary.

5. When a sound is repeated twice like *batabata* in Ex.(d), *to* can be omitted, as in (5a). However, when a sound is not repeated, *to* cannot be dropped, as in (5b).

(5) a. 子供たちはバタバタ｛と / ø｝走り回った。(cf. Ex.(d))
Kodomo-tachi wa batabata ｛***to*** / ø｝ *hashiri-mawatta.*
(The children tore around (lit., ran around with a clattering noise).)

b. 真はバタン｛と / ×ø｝ドアを閉めた。
Makoto wa batan ｛***to*** / ×ø｝ *doa o shimeta.*
(Makoto slammed the door (lit., closed the door with a bang).)

6. The use of *to* with phonomimes is extended to phenomimes and psychomimes, as in Exs.(e) and (f), though these are not representations of actual sounds.
(⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 7**. Sound Symbolisms)

to[4] と[4] *conj.*

a subordinate conjunction that marks a condition that necessarily or habitually brings about a certain event

if; when
【REL. ***tara***; ***toki***】

◆ Key Sentence

Subordinate Clause (plain, non-past)		Main Clause
ここをクリックする *Koko o* ***kurikku-suru***	と *to*	最初のページに戻る / 戻ります。 *saisho no pēji ni modoru / modorimasu.*
(If you click here, (the screen) goes back to the first page.)		

T

Formation

(i) ｛Vplain·non-past / Adj(*i*)plain·non-past｝ と
to

｛話す / 話さない｝と (if s.o. ｛talks / doesn't talk｝)
｛*hanasu / hanasanai*｝ *to*

｛安い / 安くない｝と (if s.t. is ｛cheap / no cheap｝)
｛*yasui / yasukunai*｝ *to*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { だ / でない / じゃない } と
{ *da* / *de nai* / *ja nai* } *to*

静か { だ / でない / じゃない } と (if s.t. { is / is not / is not } quiet)
shizuka { *da* / *de nai* / *ja nai* } *to*

先生 { だ / でない / じゃない } と (if s.o. { is / is not / is not } a teacher)
sensei { *da* / *de nai* / *ja nai* } *to*

Examples

(a) この道をまっすぐ行くと駅前に出ます。
Kono michi o massugu iku to ekimae ni demasu.
(If you go straight along this street, you'll come in front of the station.)

(b) 水は熱すると気化する。
Mizu wa nessuru to kika-suru.
(Water evaporates if it's heated.)

(c) 私はニューヨークに来るとたいていこの店で食事をする。
Watashi wa Nyūyōku ni kuru to taitei kono mise de shokuji o suru.
(When I come to New York, I usually eat at this restaurant (lit., store).)

(d) 私は空気が悪いと頭が痛くなる。
Watashi wa kūki ga warui to atama ga itaku naru.
(I get a headache if the air is bad.)

(e) この店は学生だと割引があります。
Kono mise wa gakusei da to waribiki ga arimasu.
(This store offers a discount to students (lit., At this store, if you are a student, there is a discount.))

(f) 魚が嫌いだと、日本へ行った時、困りますか。
Sakana ga kirai da to, Nihon e itta toki, komarimasu ka.
(If I don't like fish, will I have trouble when I go to Japan?)

(g) その情報はインターネットで検索するとすぐ出てきた。
Sono jōhō wa intānetto de kensaku-suru to sugu dete-kita.
(The information appeared immediately when I made a search on the Internet.)

(h) 箱を開けると古いアルバムが何冊か入っていた。
Hako o akeru to furui arubamu ga nan-satsu ka haitte ita.
(When I opened the box, there were some old albums in it.)

T

Notes

1. "S_1 *to* S_2" is used in situations in which S_2 necessarily or habitually occurs when S_1 happens or is the case. This construction is commonly used in the instructions of devices and apps, directions to go to places, and the descriptions

of scientific phenomena, as in KS and Exs.(a) and (b). It is also used to describe habitual actions and events, as in Exs.(c)–(e).

2. S_2 in "S_1 *to* S_2" cannot be a volitional action in the future. Thus, the sentences in (1) and (2) are all ungrammatical. (For the correct structures, see Related Expression II in *tara*.)

(1) 仕事が早く終わると私のうちに
Shigoto ga hayaku owaru ***to*** *watashi no uchi ni*
(If you finish your work early,)

a. × 来なさい。[command]
× *ki-nasai.*
(*Intended meaning*: Come to my place.)

b. × 来てください。[polite command / request]
× *kite kudasai.*
(*Intended meaning*: Please come to my place.)

c. × 来たらどうですか。[suggestion]
× *kitara dō desu ka.*
(*Intended meaning*: Why don't you come to my place?)

d. × 来ませんか。[invitation]
× *kimasen ka.*
(*Intended meaning*: Wouldn't you like to come to my place?)

(2) × 仕事が早く終わるとお宅にうかがいます　[first person's volitional action]
× *Shigoto ga hayaku owaru* ***to*** *o-taku ni ukagaimasu.*
(*Intended meaning*: If I finish my work early, I'll visit your place.)

3. In "S_1 *to* S_2," S_1 can be an event that occurs without fail, as in (3). In this case, *to* is translated into "when" rather than "if" in English.

(3) a. ここは冬になると渡り鳥がたくさん来る。
Koko wa fuyu ni naru ***to*** *wataridori ga takusan kuru.*
(In winter (lit., When it becomes winter) many migratory birds fly here.)

T

b. 私はいつも 10 時ごろになると眠くなる。
Watashi wa itsumo jū-ji-goro ni naru ***to*** *nemuku naru.*
(I always become sleepy around ten o'clock (lit., when it becomes around ten o'clock).)

4. In "S_1 *to* S_2," S_1 is always in the non-past form even if it represents an action, event or state in the past, as in Exs.(g) and (h). The actual tense is indicated in S_2.

5. When "S_1 *to* S_2" expresses an action in the past, S_2 cannot be a one-time action intentionally taken, as in (4).

(4) a. ×私は日本に行くと京都と奈良を観光した。
×*Watashi wa Nihon ni iku* ***to*** *Kyōto to Nara o kankō-shita.*
(*Intended meaning*: I visited Kyoto and Nara when I went to Japan.)

b. ×千里は図書館に行くと裕美と会った。
×*Chisato wa toshokan ni iku* ***to*** *Yumi to atta.*
(*Intended meaning*: Chisato met Yumi when she went to the library.)

However, the above restriction does not apply when S_2 represents a habitual action, as in (5).

(5) a. 私は日本に行く**といつも**京都と奈良を観光した。
Watashi wa Nihon ni iku ***to itsumo*** *Kyōto to Nara o kankō-shita.*
(I always visited Kyoto and Nara whenever I went to Japan.)

b. 千里は図書館に行く**とよく**裕美と会った。
Chisato wa toshokan ni iku ***to yoku*** *Yumi to atta.*
(Chisato often ran into (lit., met) Yumi when she went to the library.)

One exception to the restriction exemplified in (4) is when the action in S_2 was taken immediately after the action in S_1 as a series of actions; in this case, "S_1 *to* S_2" can be used, as in (6).

(6) a. シンディーはうちに帰る**とすぐ**ヘザーに電話した。
Shindī wa uchi ni kaeru ***to sugu*** *Hezā ni denwa-shita.*
(Cindy called Heather soon after returning home.)

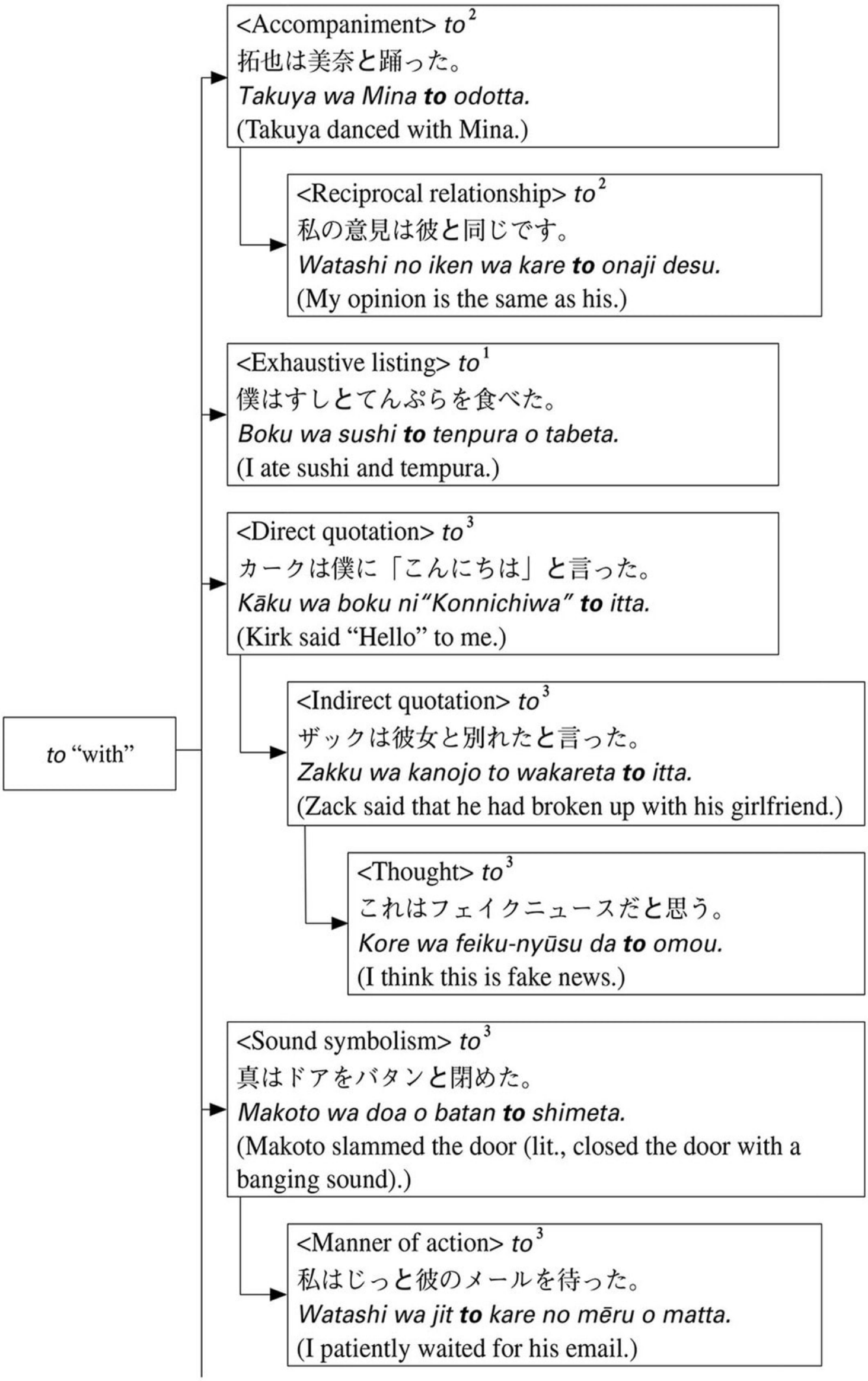
b. 勇人は冷蔵庫からビールを取り出す**と一気に**飲み干した。
Yūto wa reizōko kara bīru o tori-dasu ***to ikki ni*** *nomihoshita.*
(Yuto took a beer out of the refrigerator and drained it in a gulp.)

(7) provides examples in which S_2 represents a past action and S_1 represents an event or a state.

(7) a. 私は町でギターの**コンサートがあると**必ず行った。
Watashi wa machi de gitā no ***konsāto ga aru to*** *kanarazu itta.*
(Whenever there was a guitar concert in my town, I went there. (lit., When there was a guitar concert in my town, I went there without fail.))

b. **天気がいいと**よく近くのコートでテニスをした。
Tenki ga ii to *yoku chikaku no kōto de tenisu o shita.*
(When the weather was nice, I often played tennis at the nearby court.)

★ Semantic Derivations of *To*



<Condition of inevitable occurrence> *to*[4]
この暗証番号を入れるとドアが開きます。
Kono anshō-bangō o ireru ***to*** *doa ga akimasu.*
(The door will open if you enter this code.)

～ to ieba ～と言えば *phr.*

an expression that presents a phrase uttered just now as the topic of the current sentence

Speaking of; Talking of
【REL. *tte*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

A:		
この本は西山さんに借りたんです。 *Kono hon wa Nishiyama-san ni karita n desu.*		
(I borrowed this book from Nishiyama-san.)		
B:		
西山さん *Nishiyama-san*	と言えば、 *to ieba,*	もう病気は治ったのかなあ。 *mō byōki wa naotta no ka nā.*
(Speaking of Nishiyama-san, I wonder if he's gotten over his illness yet.)		

Examples

(a) A: 今度の日曜日は京都へ行こうと思っているんだ。
Kondo no nichiyōbi wa Kyōto e ikō to omotte iru n da.
(I'm thinking of going to Kyoto next Sunday.)

B: 京都と言えば、浩介が京都大学の入学試験に受かったそうだよ。
Kyōto to ieba, Kōsuke ga Kyōto Daigaku no nyūgaku-shiken ni ukatta sō da yo.
(Speaking of Kyoto, I heard that Kosuke passed Kyoto University's entrance exam.)

T

(b) A: ホさんはよく休むねえ。
Ho-san wa yoku yasumu nē.
(Ho-san is absent so frequently, isn't he?)

B: よく休むと言えば、ワンさんも最近見ませんね。
Yoku yasumu to ieba, Wan-san mo saikin mimasen ne.
(Talking about (someone's) frequent absences, we don't see Wang-san these days either, do we?)

Notes

1. *To ieba* literally means "if you say that ~," but is used as a topic-presenting expression meaning "speaking of." The element that occurs before *to ieba* is part of the sentence uttered by the interlocutor.

2. *To ieba* usually presents a noun or a noun phrase, but it can present any sentence element. In Ex.(b), for example, a verb phrase is presented.

3. The informal form of *to ieba* is *tte ieba*.

[Related Expression]

Tte[1], the abbreviation for *to iu no wa* "what you say/call ~," is also used to present topics in casual conversation. As with *to ieba*, any sentence element can precede *tte*, and that element is usually a part of the interlocutor's previous utterance. [1] and [2] provide examples. (⇒ ***tte***[1])

[1] A: 昨日初めてフォアグラを食べたよ。
Kinō hajimete foagura o tabeta yo.
(I ate foie gras for the first time yesterday.)

B: フォアグラって(、何)?
*Foagura **tte** (, nani)?*
((What's) foie gras?)

[2] A: 来週から英語を教えるんだ。
Raishū kara eigo o oshieru n da.
(I'm teaching English starting next week.)

B: 英語を教えるって、だれに?
*Eigo o oshieru **tte**, dare ni?*
(Teaching English? To whom?)

～ to iu[1] ～と言う[1] *phr.*

say (that) ~

say, "~"; say that ~; tell ~ that ~
【REL. ~ ***sō da***[1]; ~ ***to iu***[2]; ~ ***yō ni iu***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun (addressee)		Direct Quotaion		
健太 *Kenta*	は *wa*	私 *watashi*	に *ni*	「好きだよ」 ***"Suki da yo"***	と *to*	言った / 言いました。 *itta / iimashita.*
(Kenta said to me, "I love you.")						

(B)

Topic (3rd person subject)		Splain (indirect quotation)		
和也 *Kazuya*	は *wa*	物理を**専攻する** *butsuri o* ***senkō-suru***	と *to*	言っている / います。 *itte iru / imasu.*
(Kazuya says that he will major in physics.)				

(C)

Topic (subject)		Noun (language)				
Joke Joke	は *wa*	**日本語** ***nihongo***	で *de*	「冗談」 ***"jōdan"***	と *to*	言う / 言います。 *iu / iimasu.*
("Joke" is *jōdan* in Japanese. (lit., We say *jōdan* for "joke" in Japanese.))						

Formation

KS(B):

(i) {Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain} と言う
to iu

{話す / 話した}と言う (say that s.o. {will talk / talks / talked})
{*hanasu / hanashita*} *to iu*

{高い / 高かった}と言う (say that s.t. is/was expensive)
{*takai / takakatta*} *to iu*

T

620 ~ *to iu*[1]

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { だ / だった } と言う
{ *da* / *datta* } *to iu*

静か { だ / だった } と言う (say that s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *da* / *datta* } *to iu*

学生 { だ / だった } と言う (say that s.o. is/was a student)
gakusei { *da* / *datta* } *to iu*

Examples

(a) 日本人は朝、人に会った時、「おはようございます」と言う。
Nihonjin wa asa, hito ni atta toki, "Ohayōgozaimasu" to iu.
(Japanese people say "*Ohayōgozaimasu*" when they meet someone in the morning.)

(b) 奈津子は今、人に会いたくないと言っている。
Natsuko wa ima, hito ni ai-takunai to itte iru.
(Natsuko says that she doesn't want to see anyone now.)

(c) A: 吉村さんは新しいオフィスを見て何か言っていましたか。
Yoshimura-san wa atarashii ofisu o mite nani-ka itte imashita ka.
(Did Yoshimura-san say something (lit., Was Yoshimura-san saying something) when she saw her new office?)

B: とても仕事をしやすそうだと言っていました。
Totemo shigoto o shi-yasu-sō da to itte imashita.
(She said (lit., was saying) that it looked very easy to work in.)

(d) A: この花は何と言いますか。
Kono hana wa nan to iimasu ka.
(What do you call this flower?)

B: 「キキョウ」と言います。
"Kikyō" to iimasu.
(It is called *kikyō* (bellflower).)

(e) A: 「すっぱい」は英語で何と言いますか。
"Suppai" wa eigo de nan to iimasu ka.
(How do you/they say *suppai* in English?)

T

B: Sour と言います。
Sour *to iimasu.*
(We/They say "sour.")

Notes

1. *To iu*[1] is used to quote what someone said directly or indirectly. In direct quotation, the quoted speech is put in quotation marks, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a),

while in indirect quotation, it is presented in the plain form, as in KS(B), Exs. (b) and (c)-B. In either case, the quotation marker *to* is necessary. When the addressee is presented, he/she is marked by *ni*, as in KS(A). (⇒ ***to***[3])

2. There is no tense agreement rule in Japanese. Thus, if a sentence in a direct quotation is non-past as in (1a), the same tense is maintained in the indirect quotation even if the main clause verb (i.e., *iu*) is in the past tense, as in (1b).

(1) a. 原口さんは私に「会社を**辞めます**」と**言った**。
*Haraguchi-san wa watashi ni "Kaisha o **yamemasu**" to **itta**.*
(Haraguchi-san said to me, "I'll quit my company.")

b. 原口さんは私に会社を**辞める**と**言った**。
*Haraguchi-san wa watashi ni kaisha o **yameru** to **itta**.*
(Haraguchi-san told me that he would quit his company.)

(2) provides examples in which the quoted sentence is in the past tense.

(2) a. 原口さんは私に「会社を**辞めました**」と**言った**。
*Haraguchi-san wa watashi ni "Kaisha o **yamemashita**" to **itta**.*
(Haraguchi-san said to me, "I quit my company.")

b. 原口さんは私に会社を**辞めた**と**言った**。
*Haraguchi-san wa watashi ni kaisha o **yameta** to **itta**.*
(Haraguchi-san told me that he had quit his company.)

3. In indirect speech sentences, when the subject of the quoted sentence is the same as that of the main clause sentence, the former subject is usually unsaid, as in (1b) and (2b), and when the two subjects are different, the subject of the quoted sentence can be marked by either *wa* or *ga*, as in (3).

(3) 原口さんは私に北井さん{**は** / **が**}会社を辞めたと言った。
*Haraguchi-san wa watashi ni Kitai-san {**wa** / **ga**} kaisha o yameta to itta.*
(Haraguchi-san told me that Kitai-san had quit his company.)

The difference between the *wa* version and the *ga* version is subtle. The *wa* version sounds like somewhere between the direct speech sentence and the indirect speech sentence. The *ga* version sounds like the embedded sentence represents an indirect quotation or the focus is on Kitai-san, that is, Kitai-san was marked by *ga* in the original speech. (⇒ ***ga***[1])

4. When direct speech sentences involve viewpoint-dependent verbs, they may differ in the corresponding indirect speech sentences. For example, *iku* in (4a) can be rephrased as in either (4b) or (4c) depending on the speaker's viewpoint.

(4) a. ショーンは私に「パーティーに**行きます**」と言った。
*Shōn wa watashi ni "Pātī ni **ikimasu**" to itta.*
(Sean said to me, "I'm going to the party.")

b. [The speaker is distant from where the party will be held.]
ショーンは私にパーティーに**行く**と言った。
*Shōn wa watashi ni pātī ni **iku** to itta.*
(Sean told me that he would go to the party.)

c. [The speaker is where the party will be held.]
ショーンは私にパーティーに**来る**と言った。
*Shōn wa watashi ni pātī ni **kuru** to itta.*
(Sean told me that he would come to the party.)

5. If the subject of the main clause (i.e., the actor of the action *iu*) is a third person and the speaker assumes that what the person said is still true, *to itte iru* is used, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b). (5) provides another example.

(5) 理香子はフランスに留学すると言っている。
*Rikako wa Furansu ni ryūgaku-suru **to itte iru**.*
(Rikako says that she'll go to France to study.)

In (6), on the other hand, the past form *to itte ita* is used. In this case, the speaker had heard from Rikako that she would go to France to study but does not know if what she said is still true.

(6) 理香子はフランスに留学すると言っていた。
*Rikako wa Furansu ni ryūgaku-suru **to itte ita**.*
(Rikako said that she'd go to France to study (but I don't know if she is still planning to do so).)

Note that (7), in which *to itta* is used instead of *to itte ita*, simply represents Rikako's past action of saying that she would go to France to study.

(7) 理香子はフランスに留学すると言った。
*Rikako wa Furansu ni ryūgaku-suru **to itta**.*
(Rikako said that she would go to France to study.)

T

6. *To iu*[1] is also used to ask for or provide the equivalents of words/phrases in another language, as in KS(C), Exs.(d) and (e).

～to iu[2] ～という[2] *comp. prt.*

a compound particle that marks the specific referent or content of the following noun

called; named; entitled; known as; that ~
【REL. ~ *to iu*[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Noun 1		Noun 2		
「雪国」 *"Yukiguni"*	という *to iu*	小説 *shōsetsu*	を *o*	読んだ / 読みました。 *yonda / yomimashita.*
(I read a novel called *Snow Country*.)				

(B)

Splain		Noun		
林さんが入院した *Hayashi-san ga nyūin-shita*	という *to iu*	知らせ *shirase*	を *o*	聞いた / 聞きました。 *kiita / kikimashita.*
(I heard the news that Hayashi-san has been hospitalized.)				

Formation

(i) N_1 という N_2
to iu

村上春樹という作家　(a writer named Haruki Murakami)
Murakami Haruki to iu sakka

(ii) Splain という N
to iu

台風が来るというニュース　(the news that a typhoon is coming)
taifū ga kuru to iu nyūsu

T

Examples

(a) ピパという楽器を見たことがありますか。
Pipa to iu gakki o mita koto ga arimasu ka.
(Have you ever seen an instrument called *pipa*?)

(b) ボニーが日本へ行くという話は本当ですか。
Bonī ga Nihon e iku to iu hanashi wa hontō desu ka.
(Is it true that Bonnie is going to Japan? (lit., Is the story that Bonnie is going to Japan true?))

(c) 彼女はもうすぐ結婚するという噂がある。
Kanojo wa mō sugu kekkon-suru to iu uwasa ga aru.
(It is rumored that she is going to marry soon.)

(d) その人に会いたくない(という)気持ちはよく分かります。
Sono hito ni aitakunai (to iu) kimochi wa yoku wakarimasu.
(I am well aware of your feeling that you don't want to see him.)

Notes

1. Etymologically, *to iu*[2] is a combination of the quote marker *to* (= *to*[3]) and *iu* "say" or "call" and the literal meaning of "X *to iu* Y" is "Y that people say/call X." *To iu*[2] is primarily used in two constructions: (i) N_1 *to iu* N_2, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), and (ii) S *to iu* N, as in KS(B) and Exs.(b)–(d).

   In these constructions, the noun or sentence that precedes *to iu* indicates the specific referent or content of the following noun.

2. "N_1 *to iu* N_2" is commonly translated into "N_2 called N_1" or "N_2 named N_1." Here, N_2 indicates the category of the object(s) or person(s) that N_1 refers to. N_1 is often a proper noun, as in KS(A), but common nouns also occur in N_1, as in Ex.(a). (1) provides more examples in which N_1 is a common noun.

   (1) a. ウナギという魚
   ugani ***to iu*** *sakana*
   fish called *unagi* (eel)

   b. ラップという音楽
   rappu ***to iu*** *ongaku*
   (music called rap)

3. "N_1 *to iu* N_2" is usually used either when the speaker assumes that the listener doesn't know what or who N_1 is, as in (2a) and (2b), or when the speaker doesn't know what or who N_1 is but assumes that the listener knows that, as in (3a) and (3b).

   (2) a.「江戸」という地名は東京の昔の名前です。
   "Edo" ***to iu*** *chimei wa Tōkyō no mukashi no namae desu.*
   (The place name (called) Edo is the old name of Tokyo.)

   b. 私は日本に留学していた時、この上田先生という先生にとてもお世話になりました。
   Watashi wa Nihon ni ryūgaku-shite ita toki, kono Ueda-sensei ***to iu*** *sensei ni totemo o-sewa ni narimashita.*
   (I received a lot of assistance from this professor, whose name was Prof. Ueda, when I was studying in Japan.)

(3) a. 留守中に藤原さん**という**方からお電話がありました。
Rusu-chū ni Fujiwara-san ***to iu*** *kata kara o-denwa ga arimashita.*
(There was a phone call for you from a person named Fujiwara-san while you were out.)

b. そのウォンバット**という**動物はどこで見られますか。
Sono wonbatto ***to iu*** *dōbutsu wa doko de miraremasu ka.*
(Where can you see the animals (you just mentioned) called wombats?)

4. When both the speaker and the listener know what or who N_1 is, N_2 implies more than what N_2 literally means. For example, in (4), under ordinary circumstances, Nihon "Japan" is known to both the speaker and the listener, and yet *to iu kuni* is used. In this case, by saying *Nihon to iu kuni* "the country called Japan" rather than just saying *Nihon* "Japan," the speaker intends to mean that the country is something more than it literally means (e.g., a very safe country, a country with beautiful nature, etc.).

(4) 日本**という国**に生まれて本当によかったと思います。
Nihon ***to iu kuni*** *ni umarete hontō ni yokatta to omoimasu.*
(I feel lucky (lit., I think it was really good) that I was born in Japan (lit., in the country called Japan).)

5. "S *to iu* N" is used to provide the specific content of N, as in KS(B) and Exs.(b)–(d). In general, when S provides the specific content of N, there are three situations in terms of whether *to iu* is necessary or not.

(A) When the speaker presents S as indirectly obtained information rather than as directly perceived information, when the speaker describes the situation in S objectively or when the speaker is detached from the situation in S:

In this situation, *to iu* is mandatory. KS(B), Exs.(b) and (c) are examples of this situation. (5) provides additional examples that involve nouns that commonly occur with "S *to iu*."

(5) a. 消費税が上がる｛**という** / ×ø｝情報
shōhizei ga agaru ｛***to iu*** / ×ø｝ *jōhō*
(information that the consumption tax will go up)

b. 森本さんから電話があった｛**という** / ×ø｝伝言
Morimoto-san kara denwa ga atta ｛***to iu*** / ×ø｝ *dengon*
(a message that there was a call from Morimoto-san)

c. 将来ガソリン車はなくなる｛**という** / ×ø｝意見
shōrai gasorin-sha wa nakunaru ｛***to iu*** / ×ø｝ *iken*
(an opinion that there will be no gasoline-powered cars in the future)

T

d. 外国語は小学校から教えたほうがいい｛**という** / ×ø｝考え
gaikokugo wa shōgakkō kara oshieta hō ga ii ｛***to iu*** / ×ø｝ *kangae*
(an idea that it would be better to teach foreign languages starting in elementary school)

(B) When (A) is not always the case:

In this situation, *to iu* may or may not occur. Ex.(d) is an example of this situation. (6) provides additional examples that involve nouns that can be used with *to iu* or without it.

(6) a. 介護士が足りない(**という**)｛問題 / 現状 / 事実｝
*kaigoshi ga tarinai (**to iu**)* ｛*mondai* / *genjō* / *jijitsu*｝
(｛the problem / the current situation / the fact｝ that there is a shortage of care workers)

b. 日本語を教える(**という**)仕事
*nihongo o oshieru (**to iu**) shigoto*
(the job of teaching Japanese)

c. 日本語を教えた(**という**)経験
*nihongo o oshieta (**to iu**) keiken*
(an experience in teaching Japanese)

d. 仕事を失う(**という**)｛心配 / 恐れ｝
*shigoto o ushinau (**to iu**)* ｛*shinpai* / *osore*｝
(｛concern / fear｝ that someone may lose his/her job)

In the above examples, the use of *to iu* is natural when the speaker describes the situation in S objectively or when the speaker is psychologically detached from the situation in S, but *to iu* sounds odd when the speaker is directly involved in the situation in S.

(C) When S represents what the speaker has perceived (e.g., something he/she sees, hears, smells, etc.) or when S represents the speaker's direct experience:

In this situation, *to iu* cannot be used. (7) provides examples of this situation. (⇒ **Relative clause**: Note 5 and Related Expression)

(7) a. 子供が遊んでいる｛ø / ×**という**｝写真
kodomo ga asonde iru ｛ø / ×***to iu***｝ *shashin*
(a picture of children playing)

b. だれかがドアをノックする｛ø / ×**という**｝音
dare-ka ga doa o nokku-suru ｛ø / ×***to iu***｝ *oto*
(the sound of someone knocking on the door)

c. 魚を焼く{ø / ×**という**}におい
sakana o yaku {ø / ×***to iu***} *nioi*
(a smell of grilling fish)

d. 隣の部屋にだれかがいる{ø / ×**という**}気配
tonari no heya ni dare-ka ga iru {ø / ×***to iu***} *kehai*
(a sense of someone's presence in the next room)

【Related Expression】

To iu[2] was derived from *to iu*[1]. However, the use and function of *to iu*[2] are different from those of *to iu*[1]. The major differences between the two expressions are the following.

First, *to iu*[2] is an idiomatic phrase that doesn't change its form. That is, *to iu*[2] is always used in this form. Note that *to itta* is another idiomatic phrase that is used to present examples. Compare [1a] and [1b].

[1] a. 納豆という食べ物
nattō ***to iu*** *tabemono*
(food called *nattō* (fermented soybeans))

b. 納豆といった食べ物
nattō ***to itta*** *tabemono*
(foods like *nattō*)

On the other hand, *iu* in *to iu*[1] is a regular verb and it conjugates freely (e.g., *iimasu* (polite, non-past), *iimashita* (polite, past) and *itta* (plain, past)). Because *iu* is a regular verb, it is usually written in kanji in writing.

Second, *to iu*[2] is always used to modify nouns, as in [2a], while *to iu*[1] is a sentence-final form, as in [2b].

[2] a.『日本語基本文法辞典』という本
"Nihongo kihon bunpō jiten" ***to iu*** *hon*
(the book entitled *A Dictionary of Basic Japanese Grammar*)

b. 日本人は朝、人に会った時、「おはようございます」と言う。
Nihonjin wa asa, hito ni atta toki, "Ohayōgozaimasu" ***to iu.***
(Japanese people say "*Ohayōgozaimasu*" when they meet someone in the morning.)

T

Third, *to iu*[2] means "called," "named" or "entitled," while *to iu*[1] means "say (that)." Thus, what precedes *to iu*[2] is commonly the name of someone/something or the title of something, while what precedes *to iu*[1] is quoted speech.

Fourth, in "X *to iu*[2] Y," X is a specific referent among all that Y refers to. There is no such condition in the use of *to iu*[1]. (⇒ ***to iu***[1])

toka[1] とか[1] *prt.*

a particle that lists two or more items or actions as non-exhaustive examples

and; or; like ~ and ~
【REL. *~tari ~tari suru*; ***ya***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun		Noun	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	バッハ ***Bahha***	とか *toka*	モーツァルト ***Mōtsuaruto***	とか *toka*
Noun					
ベートーベン ***Bētōben***		(とか) *(toka)*	が *ga*	好きだ / です。 *suki da / desu.*	
(I like Bach, Mozart and Beethoven, among others.)					

(B)

	Splain・non-past (action)		Splain・non-past (action)			
疲れた時は、 *Tsukareta toki wa,*	お風呂に**入る** *o-furo ni* ***hairu***	とか *toka*	早く**寝る** *hayaku* ***neru***	とか *toka*	する *suru*	のがいい / いいです。 *no ga ii / iidesu.*
(When you are tired, it's good to do things like taking a bath or going to bed early.)						

Formation

(i) N とか N とか
toka toka

学生とか先生とか (students and teachers (among others))
gakusei toka sensei toka

(ii) Splain·non-past とか Splain·non-past とか(する)
toka *toka (suru)*

スポーツを見るとかゲームをするとか(する) (do such things as watching
supōtsu o miru toka gēmu o suru toka (suru) sports and playing games)

Examples

(a) このサプリはドラッグストアで買えますし、電話とかオンライン(とか)でも注文できます。
Kono sapuri wa doraggusutoa de kaemasu shi, denwa toka onrain (toka) de mo chūmon-dekimasu.
(You can buy this supplement at drugstores, and you can also order it by phone or online.)

(b) このクラスには学生とか会社員とか主婦とかいろんな人がいる。
Kono kurasu ni wa gakusei toka kaishain toka shufu toka ironna hito ga iru.
(There are various kinds of people in this class, including students, office workers and homemakers.)

(c) A: アメリカにいた時、どんな日本の映画を見ましたか。
Amerika ni ita toki, donna Nihon no eiga o mimashita ka.
(What kind of Japanese movies did you see when you were in America?)

B: 宮崎のアニメをよく見ました。「風の谷のナウシカ」とか「もののけ姫」とか。
Miyazaki no anime o yoku mimashita. "Kaze no Tani no Naushika" toka "Mononokehime" toka.
(I watched Miyazaki's animes often, such as "Valley of the Wind" and "Princess Mononoke.")

(d) A: 週末はどんなことをして過ごしますか。
Shūmatsu wa donna koto o shite sugoshimasu ka.
(What sorts of things do you do on (lit., to spend) weekends?)

B: そうですねえ、たいてい音楽を聞くとか本を読むとかして過ごします。
Sō desu nē, taitei ongaku o kiku toka hon o yomu toka shite sugoshimasu.
(Let's see. I usually do things like listening to music and reading books on (lit., to spend) weekends.)

(e) この本はもう普通の本屋では買えませんが、図書館に行くとかネットで古本屋から買うとかして読めると思います。
Kono hon wa mō futsū no hon-ya de wa kaemasen ga, toshokan ni iku toka netto de furuhon-ya kara kau toka shite yomeru to omoimasu.
(You can no longer buy this book at ordinary bookstores, but I think you can read it by either going to the library or buying it online from a used bookstore.)

T

Notes

1. In "N_1 *toka* N_2 *toka* (N_3 *toka*)," the last *toka* can be omitted if it is followed by particles such as *ga*, *o*, *de* and *no*, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a). In the following examples, in which the last *toka* is not followed by particles, this *toka* cannot be omitted.

(1) a. このクラスには学生**とか**会社員**とか**主婦｛**とか** / ×ø｝いろんな人がいる。(= Ex.(b))
Kono kurasu ni wa gakusei ***toka*** *kaishain* ***toka*** *shufu* ｛***toka*** / ×ø｝ *ironna hito ga iru.*
(There are various kinds of people in this class, including students, office workers and homemakers.)

b. 宮崎のアニメをよく見ました。「風の谷のナウシカ」**とか**「もののけ姫」｛**とか** / ×ø｝。(= Ex.(c)-B)
Miyazaki no anime o yoku mimashita. "Kaze no Tani no Naushika" ***toka*** *"Mononokehime"* ｛***toka*** / ×ø｝*.*
(I watched Miyazaki's animes often, such as "Valley of the Wind" and "Princess Mononoke.")

2. A *toka* B *toka* can be used when A and B are either non-alternative items or actions (i.e., A and B), as in KS(A), Exs.(b) and (c), or alternative ones (i.e., A or B), as in Exs.(a) and (e). KS(B) and Ex.(d) can be interpreted as either alternative items/actions or non-alternative ones.

3. When verbs precede *toka* in the ~ *toka* ~ *toka suru* structure, verbs are always in the plain non-past forms regardless the tense of the main clause, as in (2).

(2) 日本にいた時、週末は友達に｛**会う** / ×**会った**｝**とか**小旅行を｛**する** / ×**した**｝**とかして**過ごしました。
Nihon ni ita toki, shūmatsu wa tomodachi ni ｛***au*** / ×***atta***｝ ***toka*** *shō-ryokō o* ｛***suru*** / ×***shita***｝ ***toka shite*** *sugoshimashita.*
(When I was in Japan, I spent weekends doing things like meeting my friends and taking short trips.)

4. "S_1 *toka* S_2 *toka iu*" is another sentence structure that involves S *toka*, as in (3).

(3) 優香は、誠が好きだ**とか**涼平もいい人だ**とか言って**、だれと結婚したいのかはっきりしない。
Yūka wa Makoto ga suki da ***toka*** *Ryōhei mo ii hito da* ***toka itte****, dare to kekkon-shi-tai no ka hakkiri shinai.*
(Yuka is not clear about who she wants to marry, saying at one time that she likes Makoto, and at another time that Ryohei is also a nice person.)

T

[Related Expression]

~tari ~tari suru also indicates non-exhaustive listing of actions. Thus, Ex.(d)-B can be rephrased using *~tari ~tari suru*, as in [1].

[1] そうですねえ、たいてい｛音楽を聞くとか本を読むとか / 音楽を聞いたり本を読んだり｝して過ごします。
Sō desu nē, taitei｛ongaku o kiku ***toka*** *hon o yomu* ***toka*** */ ongaku o kii****tari*** *hon o yon****dari****｝* ***shite*** *sugoshimasu.*
(Let's see. I usually do things like listening to music and reading books on (lit., to spend) weekends.)

However, *~tari ~tari suru* and *~ toka ~ toka suru* are different in several ways. First, *~tari ~tari suru* cannot be used to list alternatives whereas *~ toka ~ toka suru* can. Thus, in [2], *~ toka ~ toka suru* is natural, but *~tari ~tari suru* is not.

[2] その情報は図書館に｛行くとか / ??行ったり｝、ネットで｛探すとか / ??探したり｝すれば見つかると思います。
Sono jōhō wa toshokan ni｛iku ***toka*** */ ??it****tari****｝, netto de｛sagasu* ***toka*** */ ??sagashi****tari****｝* ***sureba*** *mitsukaru to omoimasu.*
(I think you can find the information if you go to the library or search for it on the Internet (or do things like that).)

Second, *~tari ~tari suru*, in general, is not used for alternative actions, but it represents alternative actions when they are contrastive actions and no other actions are involved. In this case, *~tari ~tari suru* does not indicate that there are more actions than the mentioned ones, as in [3]. In these examples, *~ toka ~ toka suru* cannot be used in place of *~tari ~tari suru* because *~ toka ~ toka suru* always indicates that there are more actions than mentioned. (⇒ ***~tari ~tari suru***: Note 4)

[3] a. 子供が部屋を｛出たり入ったり / ×出るとか入るとか｝している。
*Kodomo ga heya o｛de****tari*** *hait****tari*** */ × deru* ***toka*** *hairu* ***toka****｝* ***shite*** *iru.*
(A child is going in and out of the room.)

b. アンジェラは合唱の練習に｛来たり来なかったり / ×来るとか来ないとか｝するので困る。
*Anjera wa gasshō no renshū ni｛ki****tari*** *konakat****tari*** */ × kuru* ***toka*** *konai* ***toka****｝* ***suru*** *node komaru.*
(We have trouble because Angela does not come to choir practice regularly (lit., sometimes comes and sometimes doesn't).)

Third, *~tari ~tari suru* can be used to express alternative states, but *~ toka ~ toka suru* cannot be used for states, as in [4].

[4] a. この店は｛おいしかったりまずかったり / ×おいしいとかまずいとか｝する。
*Kono mise wa｛ oishikat****tari*** *mazukat****tari*** */ × oishii* ***toka*** *mazui* ***toka****｝* ***suru****.*
((The foods served at) This restaurant (lit., store) are sometimes delicious and sometimes bad.)

b. このクラスは｛対面だったりオンラインだったり / ×対面だとかオンラインだとか｝する。
*Kono kurasu wa｛taimen dat**tari** onrain dat**tari** / × taimen da **toka** onrain da **toka**｝**suru**.*
(This class is (taught) sometimes in person and sometimes online.)

Fourth, ~ *toka* ~ *toka suru* is used to list habitual or future actions as examples. Thus, this structure is natural in situations as in Exs.(d) and (e), but it is odd when past actions are listed as examples, as in [5].

[5] 昨日は｛デパートで買い物したり映画を見たり / ??デパートで買い物するとか映画を見るとか｝しました。
*Kinō wa｛depāto de kaimono-shi**tari** eiga o mi**tari** / ??depāto de kaimono-suru **toka** eiga o miru **toka**｝**shimashita**.*
(Yesterday I did things like shopping at the department store and watching movies.)

toka[2] とか[2] *prt.*

a particle that indicates that the speaker is uncertain about the accuracy of the information it marks

something like; or something like that

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)	Splain (indirect quotation)		
グレッグは *Gureggu wa*	もうすぐITの会社を立ち上げる *mō sugu aitī no kaisha o **tachiageru***	とか *toka*	言っている / います。 *itte iru / imasu.*
(Greg is saying something like he's going to launch an IT company soon.)			

(B)

Noun 1			Noun 2		
クオッカ *Kuokka*	とか *toka*	いう *iu*	動物 ***dōbutsu***	を *o*	知っていますか。 *shitte imasu ka.*
(Do you know an animal called quokka or something like that?)					

Formation

(i) Splain とか言う
toka iu

つまらないとか言う (say something like s.t. is boring)
tsumaranai toka iu

(ii) N_1 とかいう N_2
toka iu

トリュフとかいう食べ物 (a food called truffle or something like that)
toryufu toka iu tabemono

Examples

(a) 美希は忙しくて旅行に行けないとか言っていた。
Miki wa isogashikute ryokō ni ikenai toka itte ita.
(Miki said that she was busy and wouldn't be able to take a trip, or something of that sort.)

(b) 留守中に野口とかいう人が来ましたよ。
Rusu-chū ni Noguchi toka iu hito ga kimashita yo.
(A person named Noguchi or something like that showed up while you were out.)

(c) 日本の香道とかいうものをよく知らない。
Nihon no kōdō toka iu mono o yoku shiranai.
(I don't know much about Japanese *kōdō* (incense burning) or something like that.)

Notes

1. Etymologically, *toka* consists of the quotation marker *to* (= *to*[3]) and the question marker *ka*, which indicates the speaker's uncertainty about the proposition it marks.

2. When *toka* is used with an indirect quotation (= S), it means "something like S," as in KS(A) and Ex.(a).

3. "N_1 *toka iu* N_2" means "N_2 that is called/named N_1 or something like that," as in KS(B), Exs.(b) and (c). (⇒ ~ ***to iu***[2])

4. "S *toka iu* {*hanashi* / *koto*} *da*" is used as a hearsay expression, as in (1). *Toka* indicates that what S says may not be exactly what the speaker heard, but that the information is practically the same.

(1) 明日の会議は中止になったとかいう{話 / こと}です。
Ashita no kaigi wa chūshi ni natta ***toka iu*** {***hanashi*** / ***koto***} *desu.*
(I heard that tomorrow's meeting has been canceled.)

toki 時 *n.*

a dependent noun that indicates the time when s.o./s.t. {will do / does / did} s.t. or the time when s.o./s.t. {will be / is / was} in some state

at the time when; when
【REL. *tara*; *to*[4]; ~ ***tokoro da***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Subordinate Clause		Main Clause
		Splain*		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	**日本にいた** ***Nihon ni ita***	時(に) *toki (ni)*	お茶を習った / 習いました。 *o-cha o naratta / naraimashita.*
(I learned the tea ceremony when I was in Japan.)				

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *no*, respectively.

(B)

Topic (subject)		Noun			Predicate
弘 *Hiroshi*	は *wa*	**試験** ***shiken***	の *no*	時(に) *toki (ni)*	おなかが痛くなった / なりました。 *onaka ga itaku natta / narimashita.*
(Hiroshi had a stomachache when he was taking the exam (lit., at the exam time).)					

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } 時
toki

{ 話す / 話した } 時 (when s.o. talks/talked)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *toki*

{ 高い / 高かった } 時 (when s.t. is/was expensive)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *toki*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } 時
{ *na / datta* } *toki*

静か { な / だった } 時 (when s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *na / datta* } *toki*

(iii) N{の / だった}時
N{*no* / *datta*} *toki*

学生{の / だった}時 (when s.o. is/was a student)
gakusei {*no* / *datta*} *toki*

Examples

(a) 松本さんは朝ご飯を食べる時、いつもテレビを見る。
Matsumoto-san wa asa-gohan o taberu toki, itsumo terebi o miru.
(Matsumoto-san always watches TV when he eats his breakfast.)

(b) このレポートを書く時、よくオンライン辞書を使いました。
Kono repōto o kaku toki, yoku onrain-jisho o tsukaimashita.
(I often used online dictionaries when I wrote this report.)

(c) ブレンダと会った時、日本にいた時の話をした。
Burenda to atta toki, Nihon ni ita toki no hanashi o shita.
(When I met Brenda, I talked about the time when I was in Japan.)

(d) 忙しい時は昼ご飯を食べながら仕事をします。
Isogashii toki wa hiru-gohan o tabe nagara shigoto o shimasu.
(When I'm busy, I eat my lunch while working.)

(e) 暇な時はたいてい好きな音楽を聞く。
Hima na toki wa taitei suki na ongaku o kiku.
(When I have vacant time, I usually listen to my favorite music.)

(f) インターネット利用のためのパスワードはチェックインの時に渡します。
Intānetto riyō no tame no pasuwādo wa chekkuin no toki ni watashimasu.
(We'll give you the password for Internet use when you check in (lit., at the check-in time).)

(g) 私が大学生だった時、妹はまだ３つだった。
Watashi ga daigakusei datta toki, imōto wa mada mit-tsu datta.
(When I was a college student, my younger sister was only three.)

Notes

1. *Toki*, by itself, means "time," but when it is used as a dependent noun with a modifying phrase or clause, it means "at the time when" or "when."

2. The clause preceding *toki* is a type of relative clause; therefore, the basic rules for relative clauses apply to this construction. The following two rules are particularly important:

   (i) If the subject of the *toki* clause is different from that of the main clause, it is marked by *ga*, as in Ex.(g).

(ii) The predicate form is usually plain except that *da* after Adj(*na*) and N changes to *na* and *no*, respectively, as in KS(B), Exs.(e) and (f). (See Formation (ii) and (iii).) (⇒ **Relative clause**)

3. The particle *ni* occurs after *toki* depending on the situation. That is, when time is emphasized or under focus, *ni* is used; otherwise, *ni* is not used. Compare the two sentences in (1).

(1) a. 私は学生の時、よく勉強した。
Watashi wa gakusei no toki, yoku benkyō-shita.
(I studied hard when I was a student.)

b. 私は学生の時によく勉強した。
Watashi wa gakusei no toki ***ni*** *yoku benkyō-shita.*
(It was when I was a student that I studied hard.)

4. If S_2 in "S_1 *toki* S_2" is in the past tense and S_1 expresses a state, the tense of S_1 can be either past or non-past, as in (2), although the non-past tense is more common.

(2) a. 私は日本に{いる / いた}時、田中先生に会った。
*Watashi wa Nihon ni {****iru*** */* ***ita****} toki, Tanaka-sensei ni* ***atta****.*
(I met Prof. Tanaka when I was in Japan.)

b. 肉が{高い / 高かった}時は魚も高かった。
*Niku ga {****takai*** */* ***takakatta****} toki wa sakana mo takakatta.*
(When meat was expensive, fish was expensive, too.)

5. When S_1 in "S_1 *toki* S_2" expresses an action, the meaning of the sentence changes depending on the tenses of S_1 and S_2, whether the verb in S_1 is a movement verb or not, and whether or not the action in S_1 and that in S_2 take place simultaneously or concurrently, as in (3)–(5) below. The general rule is that when the action in S_1 is in the past tense, the action has completed before the action in S_2 regardless of the tense of S_2.

(A) When the verb in S_1 is not a movement verb:

T

(3) a. 私はご飯を食べる時、手を洗う。
Watashi wa gohan o ***taberu*** *toki, te o* ***arau****.*
(I (will) wash my hands (*right*) *before* I eat my meal.)

b. 私はご飯を食べた時、手を洗う。
Watashi wa gohan o ***tabeta*** *toki, te o* ***arau****.*
(I (will) wash my hands (*right*) *after* I've eaten my meal.)

c. 私はご飯を**食べる**時、手を**洗った**。
*Watashi wa gohan o **taberu** toki, te o **aratta**.*
(I washed my hands (*right*) *before* I ate my meal.)

d. 私はご飯を**食べた**時、手を**洗った**。
*Watashi wa gohan o **tabeta** toki, te o **aratta**.*
(I washed my hands (*right*) *after* I ate my meal.)

(B) When the verb in S_1 is a movement verb:

(4) a. 私はシカゴへ**行く**時、すしを**食べるつもりだ**。
*Watashi wa Shikago e **iku** toki, sushi o **taberu tsumori da**.*
(I'm going to eat sushi {(*right*) *before* I leave for Chicago / *on the way* to Chicago}.)

b. 私はシカゴへ**行った**時、すしを**食べるつもりだ**。
*Watashi wa Shikago e **itta** toki, sushi o **taberu tsumori da**.*
(I'm going to eat sushi *after* I've arrived in Chicago.)

c. 私はシカゴへ**行く**時、すしを**食べた**。
*Watashi wa Shikago e **iku** toki, sushi o **tabeta**.*
(I ate sushi {(*right*) *before* I left for Chicago / *on the way* to Chicago}.)

d. 私はシカゴへ**行った**時、すしを**食べた**。
*Watashi wa Shikago e **itta** toki, sushi o **tabeta**.*
(I ate sushi *after* I arrived in Chicago.)

(C) When the actions in S_1 and S_2 take place simultaneously or concurrently:

(5) a. 私はお客様と日本語で**話す**時、敬語に**気をつけます**。
*Watashi wa o-kyaku-sama to nihongo de **hanasu** toki, keigo ni **ki o tsukemasu**.*
(When I talk to my customers in Japanese, I pay attention to (the use of) honorific language.)

b. × 私はお客様と日本語で**話した**時、敬語に**気をつけます**。
× *Watashi wa o-kyaku-sama to nihongo de **hanashita** toki, keigo ni **ki o tsukemasu**.*

c. 私はお客様と日本語で**話す**時、敬語に**気をつけました**。
*Watashi wa o-kyaku-sama to nihongo de **hanasu** toki, keigo ni **ki o tsukemashita**.*
(When I talked to my customers in Japanese, I paid attention to (the use of) honorific language.)

d. 私はお客様と日本語で**話した時**、敬語に**気をつけました**。
*Watashi wa o-kyaku-sama to nihongo de **hanashita** toki, keigo ni **ki o tsukemashita**.*
(When I talked to my customers in Japanese, I paid attention to (the use of) honorific language.)

Note that the general rule mentioned earlier in this note (i.e., when the action in S_1 is in the past tense, the action has completed before the action in S_2 regardless of the tense of S_2) does not apply in the case of (C). That is, (5d) does not indicate that the speaker's action of talking to her customers had completed before her paying attention to the use of honorific language. In fact, (5c) and (5d) carry the same meaning.

【Related Expressions】

Unlike *when* clauses in English, *toki* clauses do not indicate condition. In other words, *toki* clauses are genuine time clauses. In order to indicate condition as expressed in *when* clauses, conjunctions like *tara* and *to* are used, as in [1].

(⇒ ***tara***; ***to***[4])

[1] それを｛見たら / 見ると / ×見た時｝おどろきますよ。
*Sore o ｛mi**tara** / miru **to** / × mita **toki**｝ odorokimasu yo.*
(You'll be surprised when you see it.)

～ tokoro da[1]　～ところだ[1]　*phr.* (*n.* + *da*)

A place is in a location that takes a certain amount of time to get to.

be (in) a place where it takes ~ to get to

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		Noun (location)		Means	Noun (duration)		
私のうち *Watashi no uchi*	は *wa*	駅 ***eki***	から *kara*	歩いて ***aruite***	10分 ***jup-pun***	の *no*	ところだ / です。 *tokoro da / desu.*
(My house is ten minutes from the station on foot. (lit., My house is in a place where it takes ten minutes to get to from the station on foot.))							

Examples

(a) 学校はうちからバスで30分のところです。
Gakkō wa uchi kara basu de sanjup-pun no tokoro desu.
(It takes thirty minutes to get from home to school by bus. (lit., My school is in a place where it takes thirty minutes to get to from home by bus.))

(b) その病院はここから車で15分のところだ。
Sono byōin wa koko kara kuruma de jūgo-fun no tokoro da.
(The hospital is fifteen minutes from here by car. (lit., The hospital is in a place where it takes fifteen minutes to get to from here by car.))

Note

Tokoro da is a simplified form of *tokoro ni aru* "be located in a place (where)." This expression can be simplified even more, as seen in (1).

(1) 学校はうちからバスで30分(のところ)です。(cf. Ex.(a))
Gakkō wa uchi kara basu de sanjup-pun (no tokoro) desu.
(My school is thirty minutes from home by bus.)

～ tokoro da[2]　～ところだ[2]　*phr.* (*n.* + *da*)

S.o. is in the state where he/she is just about to do s.t., has just done s.t., or is/was in the middle of doing s.t.

be just about to do s.t.; have just done s.t.; be in the middle of doing s.t.; was just doing s.t.; almost did s.t. 【REL. *bakari*; *iru*[2]; *toki*】

T

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vplain・non-past		
私たち *Watashi-tachi*	は *wa*	晩ご飯を *ban-gohan o*	食べる ***taberu***	ところ *tokoro*	だ / です。 *da* / *desu*.
(We are just about to eat dinner.)					

(B)

Topic (subject)			Vplain・past		
私たち *Watashi-tachi*	は *wa*	晩ご飯を *ban-gohan o*	**食べた** ***tabeta***	ところ *tokoro*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(We have just eaten dinner.)					

(C)

Topic (subject)			V*te*			
私たち *Watashi-tachi*	は *wa*	晩ご飯を *ban-gohan o*	**食べて** ***tabete***	いる *iru*	ところ *tokoro*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(We are in the middle of eating dinner.)						

(D)

Topic (subject)			V*te*			
私たち *Watashi-tachi*	は *wa*	晩ご飯を *ban-gohan o*	**食べて** ***tabete***	いた *ita*	ところ *tokoro*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(We were just eating dinner.)						

(E)

Topic (subject)				Vplain・non-past		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	もう少しで *mō sukoshi de*	宿題を *shukudai o*	**忘れる** ***wasureru***	ところ *tokoro*	だった / でした。 *datta / deshita.*
(I almost forgot (lit., was about to forget) my homework.)						

(F)

Topic (subject)		Adjective*		Prt	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	**危ない** ***abunai***	ところ *tokoro*	を *o*	ジーンに助けてもらった / もらいました。 *Jīn ni tasukete moratta / moraimashita.*
(I was saved by Gene when I had a crisis (lit., was in a dangerous state).)					

*See Formation (iii) and (iv).

(G)

Noun			Prt	
お仕事中 ***O-shigoto-chū***	の *no*	ところ *tokoro*	を *o*	すみません。 *sumimasen.*
(I'm sorry (to bother you) in the middle of your work.)				

Formation

(i) Vplain ところだ
tokoro da

{話す / 話した}ところだ (s.o. {is about to talk / has just talked})
{*hanasu* / *hanashita*} *tokoro da*

(ii) V*te*{いる / いた}ところだ
{*iru* / *ita*} *tokoro da*

{話している / 話していた}ところだ (s.o. {is in the middle of talking / was just talking})
{*hanashite iru* / *hanashite ita*} *tokoro da*

(iii) Adj(*i*)plain·non-past ところ
tokoro

忙しいところ (when (lit., the state in which) s.o. is busy)
isogashii tokoro

(iv) Adj(*na*) なところ
na tokoro

大事なところ (when (lit., the state in which) s.t. is important)
daiji na tokoro

(v) N のところ
no tokoro

休みのところ (when (lit., the state in which) s.o. is {off duty / on vacation})
yasumi no tokoro

Examples

(a) これから出かけるところなので、後で電話します。
Kore kara dekakeru tokoro na node, ato de denwa-shimasu.
(I'm just about to go out now, so I'll give you a call later.)

(b) A: コーヒーを飲みに行きませんか。
Kōhī o nomi ni ikimasen ka.
(Would you like to go for coffee?)

B: すみません。今飲んだところなので。
Sumimasen. Ima nonda tokoro na node.
(I'm sorry. I've just drunk some, so...)

(c) A: ちょっと手伝ってもらえませんか。
Chotto tetsudatte moraemasen ka.
(Could you give me a hand?)

B: あ、今、午後の会議の資料を作っているところなので、後でもいいですか。
A, ima, gogo no kaigi no shiryō o tsukutte iru tokoro na node, ato de mo iidesu ka.
(Oh, I'm in the middle of making materials for the meeting this afternoon. Could I help you later?)

(d) あ、村田さん、ちょうどみんなで村田さんの話をしていたところですよ。
A, Murata-san, chōdo minna de Murata-san no hanashi o shite ita tokoro desu yo.
(Oh, Murata-san! We were just talking about you.)

(e) 私は危なくおぼれるところだった。
Watashi wa abunaku oboreru tokoro datta.
(I almost drowned.)

(f) お忙しいところをどうもありがとうございました。
O-isogashii tokoro o dōmo arigatō gozaimashita.
(Thank you very much for taking time when you are busy.)

(g) 私は一番大事なところでよく勉強しなかったから何も分からなくなってしまった。
Watashi wa ichiban daiji na tokoro de yoku benkyō-shinakatta kara nani mo wakaranaku natte shimatta.
(I have gotten totally lost because I didn't study hard when it was most important. (lit., I have come to the point of not understanding anything because I didn't study hard in the state where (the class) was the most important.))

(h) お休みのところをすみません。
O-yasumi no tokoro o sumimasen.
(I'm sorry to bother you when you are off duty / on vacation. (lit., I'm sorry (to disturb) the state in which you are off duty.))

T

Notes

1. *Tokoro* as a common noun means "place." However, it is also used as a dependent noun with a modifying verb, adjective or noun. In this case, *tokoro* means "state" or "time."

2. When verbs precede *tokoro*, V *tokodo da* expresses various aspects of the action depending on the tense of the verb and whether the verb indicates a progressive aspect or not, as shown in (i)–(iv).

   (i) Vplain·non-past *tokoro da*: Someone is in a stage where he/she is right before taking the action. (= Someone is just about to V.) (KS(A) and Ex.(a))

   (ii) Vplain·past *tokoro da*: Someone is in a stage where he/she is right after taking the action. (= Someone has just V-ed.) (KS(B) and Ex.(b))

   (iii) V*te iru tokoro da*: Someone is in the middle of V-ing. (KS(C) and Ex.(c))

   (iv) V*te ita tokoro da*: Someone was in the middle of V-ing. (= Someone was just V-ing.) (KS(D) and Ex.(d))

3. Vplain·non-past *tokoro datta* means "s.o./s.t. almost did something. (lit., s.o./s.t. was about to do something.)" In this sentence pattern, adverbs such as *mō* {*sukoshi* / *chotto*} *de* "almost (lit., just by a little)" and *abunaku* "nearly" often co-occur, as in KS(E) and Ex.(e).

4. *Tokoro* is often followed by *da* and its variations, as in KSs(A)–(E) and Exs. (a)–(e). In other situations, however, *tokoro* is followed by particles such as *o* and *de*, as in KSs(F), (G), and Exs.(f)–(h). (1)–(3) provide additional examples, in which *tokoro* is preceded by verbs and followed by *o*, *ni*, *e* and *de*. The particle to be used is determined by the verb that follows.

   (1) ヘレンと踊っているところ**を**ルースに見られてしまった。
   Heren to odotte iru tokoro ***o*** *Rūsu ni mirarete shimatta.*
   (Unfortunately, Ruth saw me dancing with Helen. (lit., The state in which I was dancing with Helen was seen by Ruth, and that is a problem for me.))

   (2) ご飯を食べ終わったところ{**に** / **へ**}まり子がたずねて来た。
   Gohan o tabe-owatta tokoro {***ni*** / ***e***} *Mariko ga tazunete kita.*
   (Mariko came to see me when I'd just finished my meal. (lit., Mariko came to the state in which I had just finished my meal.))

   (3) その本を３章まで読んだところ**で**寝てしまった。
   Sono hon o san-shō made yonda tokoro ***de*** *nete shimatta.*
   (I fell asleep when I had read up to the third chapter of the book (lit., in the state in which I had read the book up to the third chapter).)

5. When preceded by adjectives or nouns, *tokoro* is usually followed by a particle rather than *da* and its variations, as in KSs(F), (G) and Exs.(f)–(h). For example, in (4), *tokoro* cannot be used.

   (4) a. 私は今忙しい{× ところ / ø}です。
   Watashi wa ima ***isogashii*** {× ***tokoro*** / ø} *desu.*
   (I'm busy now.)

b. 今村さんは今日**休み**{×**のところ** / ø}です。
*Imamura-san wa kyō **yasumi** {× **no tokoro** / ø} desu.*
(Imamura-san is absent today.)

6. In most cases, the subject of "X *tokoro (da)*" is human, as in KSs(A)–(G), Exs.(a)–(f) and (h). However, it can be non-human, as in (5).

(5) a. **信号**が赤に変わるところだ。
***Shingō** ga aka ni kawaru tokoro da.*
(The traffic light is about to turn red.)

b. この建物は**基礎工事**が終わったところだ。
*Kono tatemono wa **kiso-kōji** ga owatta tokoro da.*
(The foundation work of this building has just been completed.)

[Related Expressions]

I. When *tokoro* is used as a dependent noun, its function appears to be similar to that of *toki*. For example, [1a] and [1b] are almost the same in meaning.

[1] a. 昼ご飯を食べている**ところ**に電話がかかってきた。
*Hiru-gohan o tabete iru **tokoro** ni denwa ga kakatte kita.*
(I had a phone call when I was eating my lunch (lit., in the middle of eating my lunch).)

b. 昼ご飯を食べている**時**(に)、電話がかかってきた。
*Hiru-gohan o tabete iru **toki** (ni), denwa ga kakatte kita.*
(I had a phone call when I was eating my lunch.)

However, *toki* and *tokoro* are different in that *tokoro* basically indicates a state, while *toki* indicates a time. Thus, [2a] makes sense by itself, but [2b] does not. (⇒ ***toki***)

[2] a. 僕は電話をかけるところだ。
*Boku wa denwa o kakeru **tokoro da**.*
(I'm just about to make a phone call. (lit., I'm in the state where I'm going to make a phone call.))

T

b. ×僕は電話をかける**時だ**。
× *Boku wa denwa o kakeru **toki da**.*

II. V*te iru/ita tokoro da* is similar to V*te iru/ita* in meaning. The difference is that the former focuses more on the state or the scene while the latter focuses on the action. [3] and [4] show the differences between the two expressions. That is, [3] is a sentence for describing Jay's action. In this case, V*te iru* is natural but V*te iru tokoro da* is not. On the other hand, [4] is a sentence for describing the state when the picture was taken. In this case, V*te iru tokoro da* is natural but V*te iru* is not. (⇒ ***iru***[2])

[3] あ、ジェイが{走っている / ×走っているところだ}。
A, Jei ga{ hashitte iru / × hashitte iru tokoro da}.
(Look! Jay is running.)

[4] この写真は学生がフリスビーを{しているところです / ×しています}。
Kono shashin wa gakusei ga furisubī o{ shite iru tokoro desu / × shite imasu}.
(This picture shows students playing frisbee (lit., is a scene of students playing frisbee).)

III. Vplain·past *tokoro* and Vplain·past *bakari* are both used when someone has just done something or something has just happened, as in [5].

[5] a. その知らせはさっき青木さんから聞いた{ばかり / ところ}です。
Sono shirase wa sakki Aoki-san kara kiita{ bakari / tokoro} desu.
(I just heard the news from Aoki-san a minute ago.)

b. この店は先週開店した{ばかり / ところ}だ。
Kono mise wa senshū kaiten-shita{ bakari / tokoro} da.
(This store opened only last week.)

However, Vplain·past *bakari* and Vplain·past *tokoro* are different in several ways. First, Vplain·past *bakari* emphasizes that little or no time has passed since the end of the action, but Vplain·past *tokoro* simply indicates that someone or something is in a state where he/she or it has just done something. Thus, in situations where little or no time since the end of an action is emphasized, *bakari* is natural, but *tokoro* is rather odd, as in [6].

[6] このスマホは朝充電した{ばかり / ??ところ}なのに、もう電池が切れてしまった。
Kono sumaho wa asa jūden-shita{ bakari / ?? tokoro} na noni, mō denchi ga kirete shimatta.
(I charged this smartphone just this morning, but the battery is already dead.)

Second, Vplain·past *bakari no* can modify a noun, but Vplain·past *tokoro no* cannot, as in [7].

[7] 昨日習った{ばかり / ×ところ}の文法を使って文を作ってみた。
Kinō naratta{ bakari / × tokoro} no bunpō o tsukatte bun o tsukutte mita.
(I tried to make a sentence using the grammar I just learned yesterday.)

Third, Vplain·past *tokoro* with a particle can indicate a time when the action or the event in the main clause took place, whereas Vplain·past *bakari* cannot be used in such situations, as in [8]. (⇒ ***bakari***)

[8] a. 昼ご飯を食べ終わった{ところ / ×ばかり}に電話がかかってきた。
*Hiru-gohan o tabe-owatta{**tokoro** / ×**bakari**}**ni** denwa ga kakatte kita.*
(I had a phone call when I just finished my lunch.)

b. 試合が終わった{ところ / ×ばかり}で雨が降り出した。
*Shiai ga owatta{**tokoro** / ×**bakari**}**de** ame ga furi-dashita.*
(It began to rain just when the game was over.)

～ to omou　～と思う　*phr.*

a phrase that expresses one's assumption or opinion

think (that) ~; believe that ~; suppose that ~

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Splain		
美術館は今日閉まっている *Bijutsukan wa kyō shimatte **iru***	と *to*	思う / 思います。 *omou / omoimasu.*
(I think the art museum is closed today.)		

(B)

	Splain		
私の母は *Watashi no haha wa*	たまごは体に悪い *tamago wa karada ni **warui***	と *to*	思っている / います。 *omotte iru / imasu.*
(My mother believes that eggs are bad for our health.)			

T

Formation

(i) {Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain} と思う
to omou

{話す / 話した}と思う　(I think that s.o. {will talk / talks / talked})
{*hanasu / hanashita*} *to omou*

{高い / 高かった}と思う　(I think that s.t. is/was expensive)
{*takai / takakatta*} *to omou*

(ii) { Adj(*na*) / N } { だ / だった } と思う
{ *da* / *datta* } *to omou*

静か { だ / だった } と思う (I think s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka { *da* / *datta* } *to omou*

先生 { だ / だった } と思う (I think that s.o. is/was a teacher)
sensei { *da* / *datta* } *to omou*

Examples

(a) 今井さんは私のメールアドレスを知っていると思う。
Imai-san wa watashi no mēru-adoresu o shitte iru to omou.
(I think Imai-san knows my email address.)

(b) A: この車は売れると思いますか。
Kono kuruma wa ureru to omoimasu ka.
(Do you think this car will sell well?)

B: いいえ、あまり売れないと思います。
Īe, amari urenai to omoimasu.
(No, I don't think it will sell well (lit., I think it won't sell well).)

(c) 私は地球温暖化は将来も進むと思う。
Watashi wa chikyū-ondanka wa shōrai mo susumu to omou.
(I think that global warming will continue in the future, too.)

(d) 私の両親は私がまだニューヨークで働いていると思っている。
Watashi no ryōshin wa watashi ga mada Nyūyōku de hataraite iru to omotte iru.
(My parents think that I'm still working in New York.)

(e) ハロルドは自分が能力があると思っているが、他の人はそう思っていない。
Harorudo wa jibun ga nōryoku ga aru to omotte iru ga, hoka no hito wa sō omotte inai.
(Harold thinks that he (lit., himself) is a capable person, but others don't think so.)

Notes

1. ~ *to omou* is used to express someone's assumption or opinion. Sentences that precede the quotative marker *to* are always in the plain form. (⇒ ***to***[3])

2. When the subject of the main clause (i.e., the thinker) is the first person or the second person, ~ *to omou* is commonly used as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c), while when the thinker is the third person, ~ *to omotte iru* is used as in KS(B), Exs.(d) and (e). Another important note is that when the thinker is the first or second person, it is usually omitted as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b).

The sentences in (1) illustrate the above points. That is, in (1a), because ~ *to omou* is used, the thinker is considered to be the first person, which is omitted. In (1b), on the other hand, ~ *to omotte iru* is used, so the thinker is commonly considered to be the third person, i.e., "Maria" in this case.

(1) a. マリアはその映画をもう観た**と思う**。
Maria wa sono eiga o mō mita ***to omou.***
(I think Maria already saw that movie.)

b. マリアはその映画をもう観た**と思っている**。
Maria wa sono eiga o mō mita ***to omotte iru.***
(Maria thinks she already saw that movie.)

3. As noted in Note 2, when the thinker is the first or second person, it is usually omitted. However, when the speaker wants to emphasize who the thinker is, the thinker is not omitted as in Ex.(c). (2) provides additional examples.

(2) 和田： **私は**これからもグローバル化が進むと思いますが、**原さんは**どう思いますか。
Wada: ***Watashi wa*** *kore kara mo gurōbaru-ka ga susumu to omoimasu ga,* ***Hara-san wa*** *dō omoimasu ka.*
(I believe that globalization will continue to progress from now, too. What do you think, Hara-san?)

原： **私は**そうならないと思います。
Hara: ***Watashi wa*** *sō naranai to omoimasu.*
(I don't think that will happen.)

4. Even when the thinker is the first/second person, there are some situations in which *omotte iru* is used instead of *omou*. (3) provides an example.

(3) 私は地球温暖化は将来も進む**と思っている**。(cf. Ex.(c))
Watashi wa chikyū-ondanka wa shōrai mo susumu ***to omtte iru.***
(I think that global warming will continue in the future, too.)

The difference between (3) and Ex.(c) is that (3) indicates the nuance that the speaker conceived the idea about global warming at some point in the past and still maintains it at the moment of speech, while Ex.(c) does not convey such a nuance.

5. To express that someone thinks that someone else does not do something, something is not the case, etc., the sentence before the quotative maker *to* is usually negated rather than negating *omou*, as in Ex.(b)-B. (4) provides additional examples.

(4) a. 明日、会議は{**ないと思う** / ??**あると思わない**}。
Ashita, kaigi wa {***nai*** *to* ***omou*** / ??*aru to* ***omowanai***}.
(I don't think there's a meeting tomorrow.)

b. これは普通の店では{売っていないと思う / ??売っていると思わない}。
*Kore wa futsū no mise de wa {utte **inai** to **omou** / ??utte iru to **omowanai**}.*
(I don't think this is sold at ordinary stores.)

6. When the thinker is present and it is different from the subject of the embedded clause, the subject of the embedded clause may be marked by either *wa* or *ga*, as in Exs.(c)–(e).

7. "What do you think?" is expressed using *Dō omoimasu ka* rather than *Nan to omoimasu ka*, as in (5).

(5) a. 昨日入った新入社員(のこと)を{どう / ??何と}思いますか。
*Kinō haitta sinnyū-shain (no koto) o{**dō** / ??**nan to**} **omoimasu ka.***
(What do you think about the new employee who joined yesterday?)

b. 石井さんは新しい消費税について{どう / ??何と}思いますか。
*Ishii-san wa atarashii shōhizei ni tsuite{**dō** / ??**nan to**} **omoimasu ka.***
(What do you think about the new consumption tax, Ishii-san?)

8. *~ to omou* can be used with expressions of desire and hope, as in (6).

(6) a. いつか家族一緒にヨーロッパを旅行したいと思う。
*Itsu-ka kazoku issho ni Yōroppa o ryokō-shi-**tai to omou.***
(I want to travel in Europe with my family someday. (lit., I think I want to travel in Europe someday.))

b. ジョーは自分の家が欲しいと思っている。
*Jō wa jibun no ie ga **hoshii to omotte iru.***
(Joe wants his own house. (lit., Joe thinks he wants his own house.))

c. フィリップは日本で働きたいと思っている。
*Firippu wa Nihon de hataraki-**tai to omotte iru.***
(Philip wants to work in Japan. (lit., Philip thinks he wants to work in Japan.))

In (6a), the addition of *to omou* makes the expression of desire less direct. As seen in (6b) and (6c), with *to omotte iru*, *hoshii* and *tai* can be used with a third person subject without changing them to *hoshi-gatte iru* and *ta-gatte iru*, respectively. (⇒ ***hoshii*** [1]; ***~ tai***)

9. *~ to omou* can be used with the volitional forms of verbs. (⇒ ***~yō to omou***)

～to shite　～として　*comp. prt.*

a compound particle that indicates the capacity, role or function of s.o./s.t.

as; in the capacity of

◆ Key Sentence

	Noun		
新吾はこのスーパーで *Shingo wa kono sūpā de*	パート ***pāto***	として *to shite*	働いている / います。 *hataraite iru / imasu.*
(Shingo works for this supermarket as a part-timer.)			

Formation

N として
to shite

先生として　(as a teacher)
sensei to shite

Examples

(a) 私は国費留学生として日本の大学院で２年間勉強した。
Watashi wa kokuhi-ryūgakusei to shite Nihon no daigakuin de ni-nenkan benkyō-shita.
(As a government-sponsored international student, I studied at a graduate school in Japan for two years.)

(b) 小山さんとは友達として付き合っているだけです。
Koyama-san to wa tomodachi to shite tsukiatte iru dake desu.
(I'm just keeping company with Koyama-san as a friend.)

(c) 私たちはこの部屋を物置きとして使っています。
Watashi-tachi wa kono heya o monooki to shite tsukatte imasu.
(We're using this room as a storeroom.)

T

(d) ヘビをペットとして飼っている人もいる。
Hebi o petto to shite katte iru hito mo iru.
(There are people who keep snakes as pets.)

(e) 彼は大学教授だが、エッセイストとしてもよく知られている。
Kare wa daigaku-kyōju da ga, esseisuto to shite mo yoku shirarete iru.
(He is a university professor, but he is also well known as an essayist.)

Note

To shite no can be used to modify nouns, as in (1).

(1) a. 彼の学者としての業績はあまり多くない。
*Kare no gakusha **to shite no** gyōseki wa amari ōkunai.*
(He hasn't made many achievements as a scholar. (lit., His achievements as a scholar were not many.))

b. 父としての大統領は子供にとても優しい人でした。
*Chichi **to shite no** daitōryō wa kodomo ni totemo yasashii hito deshita.*
(As a father, the president was very gentle to his children. (lit., The president as a father was a very gentle person to his children.))

～ to shite wa ～としては *comp. prt.*

a compound particle that indicates a standard for comparison or a role when evaluating s.o./s.t.

for; as
【REL. ~ *ni shite wa*】

◆ Key Sentence

	Noun Phrase		
このマンションは *Kono manshon wa*	**東京のマンション** ***Tōkyō no manshon***	としては *to shite wa*	安い / 安いです。 *yasui / yasuidesu.*
(This condominium is inexpensive for a condominium in Tokyo.)			

T

Formation

N としては
to shite wa

先生としては (for a teacher; as a teacher)
sensei to shite wa

Examples

(a) ケンさんは日本語コースの１年生としては日本語が上手です。
Ken-san wa nihongo-kōsu no ichi-nensei to shite wa nihongo ga jōzu desu.
(Ken-san is good at Japanese for a first-year student of Japanese.)

(b) これは日本のアパートとしては大きいほうです。
Kore wa Nihon no apāto to shite wa ōkii hō desu.
(For a Japanese apartment, this is one of the bigger ones.)

(c) 彼女の演奏はアマチュアとしてはレベルが高い。
Kanojo no ensō wa amachua to shite wa reberu ga takai.
(The level of her performance is high for an amateur.)

(d) 私の上司は研究はよくできるが、管理職としては失格だ。
Watashi no jōshi wa kenkyū wa yoku dekiru ga, kanrishoku to shite wa shikkaku da.
(My boss is a capable researcher (lit., can do research well), but he is a failure as a manager.)

(e) この部屋は機械の音がうるさいので、会議室としては使えません。
Kono heya wa kikai no oto ga urusai node, kaigi-shitsu to shite wa tsukae-masen.
(Machines are so noisy in this room that we cannot use it as a conference room.)

(f) 彼はサッカーが上手だが、プロとしては通用しない。
Kare wa sakkā ga jōzu da ga, puro to shite wa tsūyō-shinai.
(He is good at soccer, but is not good enough to play for a professional.)

Note

To shite wa is used to indicate a standard for comparison, as in KS and Exs.(a)–(c), or a role when evaluating someone or something, as in Exs.(d)–(f).

[Related Expression]

Ni shite wa is also used to present a standard for comparisons. Although the difference in meaning between *ni shite wa* and *to shite wa* is subtle, *ni shite wa* is usually used when what is stated in the sentence is unexpected to the speaker. For example, [1] conveys the nuance that the speaker did not expect that Ken's Japanese was as good as he found and was impressed, whereas Ex.(a), i.e., the *to shite wa* version, is an objective statement and carries no such nuance.

[1] ケンさんは日本語コースの１年生**にしては**日本語が上手です。(cf. Ex.(a))
Ken-san wa nihongo-kōsu no ichi-nensei ***ni shite wa*** *nihongo ga jōzu desu.*
(Ken-san is good at Japanese for a first-year student of Japanese.)

Another difference is that *ni shite wa* can be used when the speaker does not know exactly what he/she is comparing with the presented standard, but *to shite wa* cannot be used in such situations. For example, suppose that someone has received a package and does not know its contents. In this situation, *hon ni shite wa* can be used, but *hon to shite wa* cannot, as in [2].

[2] これは本｛にしては / ×としては｝軽すぎるね。
*Kore wa hon｛**ni shite wa** / × **to shite wa**｝karu-sugiru ne.*
(This is too light for a book, isn't it?)

Note that unlike *to shite wa*, *ni shite wa* cannot be used to indicate a role when evaluating someone or something. Thus, *ni shite wa* is ungrammatical in Exs.(d)–(f). (⇒ ~ ***ni shite wa***)

[3] a. 私の上司は研究はよくできるが、管理職｛としては / ×にしては｝失格だ。(= Ex.(d))
*Watashi no jōshi wa kenkyū wa yoku dekiru ga, kanrishoku｛**to shite wa** / × **ni shite wa**｝shikkaku da.*
(My boss is a capable researcher (lit., can do research well), but he is a failure as a manager.)

b. この部屋は機械の音がうるさいので、会議室｛としては / ×にしては｝使えません。(= Ex.(e))
*Kono heya wa kikai no oto ga urusai node, kaigi-shitsu｛**to shite wa** / × **ni shite wa**｝tsukaemasen.*
(Machines are so noisy in this room that we cannot use it as a conference room.)

c. 彼はサッカーが上手だが、プロ｛としては / ×にしては｝通用しない。(= Ex.(f))
*Kare wa sakkā ga jōzu da ga, puro｛**to shite wa** / × **ni shite wa**｝tsūyō-shinai.*
(He is good at soccer, but is not good enough to play for a professional.)

tsumori つもり *n.*

a dependent noun that indicates someone's intention to do something or his/her conviction about his/her past action or current state

intend to do s.t.; be planning to do s.t.; be convinced that ~; believe that ~; think; mean
【REL. *yotei*; *~yō to omou*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vplain·non-past		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	来年ヨーロッパを *rainen Yōroppa o*	**旅行する** ***ryokō-suru***	つもり *tsumori*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(I'm planning to travel in Europe next year.)					

(B)

Topic (subject)			Vplain·past		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	説明をよく *setsumei o yoku*	**読んだ** ***yonda***	つもり *tsumori*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(I thought that I read the instructions carefully.)					

(C)

Topic (subject)			Adj(*i*)plain·non-past		
父 *Chichi*	は *wa*	まだ *mada*	**若い** ***wakai***	つもり *tsumori*	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(My father is convinced that he is still young.)					

Formation

(i) Vplain·non-past つもりだ
tsumori da

話すつもりだ (s.o. intends to talk)
hanasu tsumori da

(ii) Vplain·past つもりだ
tsumori da

話したつもりだ (s.o. is convinced that he/she talked)
hanashita tsumori da

(iii) Adj(*i*)plain·non-past つもりだ
tsumori da

強いつもりだ (s.o. is convinced that he/she is strong)
tsuyoi tsumori da

(iv) Adj(*na*) なつもりだ
na tsumori da

元気なつもりだ (s.o. is convinced that he/she is healthy)
genki na tsumori da

(v) N のつもりだ
no tsumori da

学者のつもりだ (s.o. is convinced that he/she is a scholar)
gakusha no tsumori da

Examples

(a) 今度の夏休みには何をするつもりですか。
Kondo no natsu-yasumi ni wa nani o suru tsumori desu ka.
(What are you planning to do during the coming summer vacation?)

(b) あんな人にはもう会わないつもりです。
Anna hito ni wa mō awanai tsumori desu.
(I do not intend to see that kind of person anymore.)

(c) 僕は大学に行くつもりはない。
Boku wa daigaku ni iku tsumori wa nai.
(I have no intention of going to college.)

(d) そのことは話したつもりでしたが、話していなかったんですね。
Sono koto wa hanashita tsumori deshita ga, hanashite inakatta n desu ne.
(I thought I talked to you about that, but I didn't, did I?)

(e) ジョンは一生懸命仕事をしているつもりだが、周りの人はそう思っていない。
Jon wa isshōkenmei shigoto o shite iru tsumori da ga, mawari no hito wa sō omotte inai.
(John is convinced that he's working hard, but people around him do not think so.)

(f) 私はまだ元気なつもりだ。
Watashi wa mada genki na tsumori da.
(I'm convinced that I'm still in good shape.)

(g) 彼はこのグループのリーダーのつもりだが、本当はだれも彼を尊敬していない。
Kare wa kono gurūpu no rīdā no tsumori da ga, hontō wa dare mo kare o sonkei-shite inai.
(He believes that he is the leader of this group, but the reality is that no one respects him.)

Notes

1. Basically, *tsumori* carries two meanings:

   (i) When used with an expression that represents someone's future action, it means his/her intention of taking (or not taking) that action, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c).

   (ii) When used with an expression that represents someone's past action or present state, it means that he/she is convinced that he/she took that action, as in KS(B) and Ex.(d), or is in that state, as in KS(C) and Exs.(e)–(g). In the second case, the actual situations are often counter to the subject's conviction, as in Exs.(d), (e) and (g).

2. *Tsumori da* can be negated in two ways: The word in front of *tsumori* can be negated, as in Ex.(b), or *tsumori* can be negated as *tsumori wa nai*, as in Ex.(c). The second version implies stronger negation than the first one.

3. The subject of the Vplain·non-past *tsumori da* construction is usually the first person in declarative sentences and the second person in questions, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c). However, the subject can be a third person when the speaker is empathetic with the person, as in (1a). If the subject is someone the speaker cannot be empathetic with (e.g., someone the speaker does not know), *tsumori* cannot be used, as in (1b).

   (1) a. クレイグは大学院に行く**つもりだ**。
   Kureigu wa daigakuin ni iku ***tsumori da.***
   (Craig intends to go to graduate school.)

   b. ×だれかが午後この部屋を使う**つもりだ**。
   × *Dare-ka ga gogo kono heya o tsukau* ***tsumori da.***
   (*Intended meaning*: Someone is planning to use this room in the afternoon.)

4. *Tsumori* is not appropriate when the subject is a person whose status is higher than the speaker. The following sentences are grammatical, but not appropriate.

   (2) a. ×**先生**、今晩のパーティーにいらっしゃる**つもりですか**。
   × *Sensei, konban no pātī ni irassharu* ***tsumori desu*** *ka.*
   (*Intended meaning*: Professor, are you planning to go to tonight's party?)

   b. ×**佐野先生は**今晩のパーティーにいらっしゃる**つもりです**。
   × ***Sano-sensei wa*** *konban no pātī ni irassharu* ***tsumori desu.***
   (*Intended meaning*: Prof. Sano is planning to go to tonight's party.)

5. In response to questions like (3)-A, *sono* can be used instead of repeating the same verb, as in (3)-B.

(3) A: 日本語の勉強を続けるつもりですか。
Nihongo no benkyō o tsuzukeru tsumori desu ka.
(Do you intend to keep studying Japanese?)

B: はい、{**続ける / その**}**つもりです。**
Hai, {***tsuzukeru / sono***} ***tsumori desu.***
(Yes, I intend to do so.)

6. X *tsumori datta* is used when actually X didn't happen or X was not the case, as in (4) and (5).

(4) 週末、友達とゴルフをする**つもりだった**が、雨が降ったのでできなかった。
Shūmatsu, tomodachi to gorufu o suru ***tsumori datta*** *ga, ame ga futta node dekinakatta.*
(I was planning to play golf with my friends on the weekend, but we couldn't because it rained.)

(5) まだ若い**つもりだった**が、やはり若い時のようには体が動かなかった。
Mada wakai ***tsumori datta*** *ga, yahari wakai toki no yō ni wa karada ga ugokanakatta.*
(I believed that I was still young, but as expected my body didn't move in the way it used to when I was young.)

7. *Tsumori* can be used with nouns, as in Ex.(g). (6) provides another example, in which the referent is non-human.

(6) **冗談のつもり**で言ったのに、みんな本当だと思ってしまった。
Jōdan no tsumori *de itta noni, minna hontō da to omotte shimatta.*
(I meant it to be a joke (lit., said with the intention of telling a joke), but everybody took it as a true story.)

[Related Expressions]

I. *~yō to omou* "think of doing something" and "Vplain·non-past *tsumori da*" are used in similar situations, as in [1].

[1] a. 来学期も日本語の授業を{**取ろうと思う / 取るつもりだ**}。
Raigakki mo nihongo no jugyō o {***torō to omou / toru tsumori da***}.
(I'm {thinking of taking / planning to take} the Japanese class next term, too.)

T

b. 日本へ行ったら、旅館に{**泊まろうと思う / 泊まるつもりだ**}。
Nihon e ittara, ryokan ni {***tomarō to omou / tomaru tsumori da***}.
(When I go to Japan, I'm {thinking of staying / planning to stay} at a Japanese style inn.)

The crucial difference is that *~yō to omou* indicates an unprepared decision while "Vplain·non-past *tsumori da*" indicates an intention as a result of a decision that was made earlier. Thus, in [2] and [3], *~yō to omou* is natural but *~ tsumori da* is not. (⇒ ***~yō to omou***)

[2] a. この車はよさそうなので**買おうと思いますが**、いくらですか。
*Kono kuruma wa yosa-sō na node **kaō to omoimasu** ga, ikura desu ka.*
(This car looks nice, so I think I will buy it. How much is it?)

b. ??この車はよさそうなので**買うつもりですが**、いくらですか。
*??Kono kuruma wa yosa-sō na node **kau tsumori desu** ga, ikura desu ka.*
(lit., This car looks nice, so I intend to buy it. How much is it?)

[3] a. スマホの広告を見て**買おうと思ったら**妻に反対された。
*Sumaho no kōkoku o mite **kaō to omottara** tsuma ni hantai-sareta.*
(Upon looking at an ad for a smartphone, I thought I would buy one, but my wife objected to it.)

b. ×スマホの広告を見て**買うつもりだったら**妻に反対された。
*×Sumaho no kōkoku o mite **kau tsumori dattara** tsuma ni hantai-sareta.*
(lit., Upon looking at an ad for a smartphone, I intended to buy one, but my wife objected to it.)

II. "Vplain·non-past *yotei da*" is also used in similar situations to "Vplain·non-past *tsumori da*," as in [4].

[4] a. 来週浅野さんに会う{**予定だ / つもりだ**}。
*Raishū Asano-san ni au{**yotei da / tsumori da**}.*
(I'm planning to meet Asano-san next week.)

b. 京都では旅館に泊まる{**予定だ / つもりだ**}。
*Kyōto de wa ryokan ni tomaru{**yotei da / tsumori da**}.*
(I'm planning to stay at a Japanese style inn in Kyoto.)

T

The difference between the two expressions is that *yotei da* is used when the plan is firm while *tsumori da* is used when the plan is not very firm. Thus, in [5], *yotei da* cannot be used.

[5] まだはっきり決めていないが、京都では旅館に泊まる{**つもりだ / ×予定だ**}。
*Mada hakkiri kimete inai ga, Kyōto de wa ryokan ni tomaru{**tsumori da / ×yotei da**}.*
(I haven't made a final decision yet, but I'm planning to stay at a Japanese style inn in Kyoto.)

It is also noted that *yotei* can be used as an independent noun, while *tsumori* cannot, as in [6].

[6] 今日は特に｛**予定** / ×**つもり**｝はありません。
Kyō wa toku ni｛***yotei*** / ×***tsumori***｝*wa arimasen.*
(I don't have any specific plans today.)

tte[1] **って**[1] *prt.*

a colloquial topic marker

Speaking of
【REL. *(~ to iu) no wa*; *~ **to ieba***; *wa*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Noun			
中村さん ***Nakamura-san***	って *tte*	カラオケが好きだ / です *karaoke ga suki da / desu*	ね。 *ne.*
(Nakamura-san loves karaoke, doesn't he?)			

(B)

	Vplain・non-past			
漢字を *Kanji o*	**覚える** ***oboeru***	って *tte*	大変だ / です *taihen da / desu*	ね。 *ne.*
(It's really hard to memorize kanji, isn't it?)				

(C)

	Adj(*i*)plain・non-past			
家が *le ga*	**広い** ***hiroi***	って *tte*	いい / いいです *ii / iidesu*	ね。 *ne.*
(It's good to have a spacious house, isn't it? (lit., That a house is spacious is good, isn't it?))				

T

Formation

(i) N って
tte

先生って (speaking of the teacher)
sensei tte

(ii) { Vplain·non-past / Adj(*i*)plain·non-past } って
tte

話すって (To talk is ~)
hanasu tte

高いって ((For s.t.) to be expensive is ~)
takai tte

Examples

(a) こんにゃくってどんな食べ物ですか。
Konnyaku tte donna tabemono desu ka.
(What kind of food is (what you call) *konnyaku*?)

(b) 日本語の先生って大変そうですね。
Nihongo no sensei tte taihen-sō desu ne.
(It looks like being a Japanese teacher is a tough job, doesn't it?)

(c) 外国で暮らすって難しいね。
Gaikoku de kurasu tte muzukashii ne.
(Living in a foreign country is hard, isn't it?)

(d) 木が多いっていいものですね。
Ki ga ōi tte ii mono desu ne.
(It's good that there are many trees, isn't it?)

(e) シェリーが医者になったって本当ですか。
Sherī ga isha ni natta tte hontō desu ka.
(Is it true that Sherry has become a doctor?)

Notes

1. *Tte*[1] is an abbreviated form of *to iu no wa*, which literally means "what is called ~" or "what you call ~," and is used to present a topic in casual conversation. When verb/adjective phrases and sentences precede *tte*, it also functions as a nominalizer, and changes the preceding phrases and sentences to noun phrases, as in KSs(B), (C) and Exs.(c)–(e).

2. *Na*-adjectives are not commonly used with *tte* as a topic marker. The following sentences are not natural.

(1) a. 部屋が静か｛??ø / × **だ**｝っていいですね。
Heya ga shizuka ｛??ø / × ***da***｝ *tte iidesu ne.*
(*Intended meaning*: A quiet room is nice, isn't it? (lit., That a room is quiet is nice, isn't it?))

b. 楽器が上手｛??ø / × **だ**｝って楽しいでしょうね。
Gakki ga jōzu ｛??ø / × ***da***｝ *tte tanoshii deshō ne.*
(*Intended meaning*: Being good at a musical instrument has got to be fun, don't you think?)

The correct forms for (1a) and (1b) would be (2a) and (2b), respectively.

(2) a. 部屋が静か**なの**っていいですね。
Heya ga shizuka ***na no*** *tte iidesu ne.*

b. 楽器が上手**なの**って楽しいでしょうね。
Gakki ga jōzu ***na no*** *tte tanoshii deshō ne.*

3. *Tte*[1] often occurs with the sentence-final particles *ne* or *yo*.

【Related Expressions】

When *tte* is attached to a noun as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b), it is close in meaning to the topic marker *wa*. When *tte* is attached to a sentence as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d), it is close in meaning to *(to iu) no wa*. *Tte*, however, is more colloquial and emotive than *wa* or *(to iu) no wa*. In fact, if the predicate does not express the speaker's emotive judgment or evaluation, *tte* cannot be used, as in [1]. (⇒ ***wa***)

[1] a. 竹内さん｛**は** / × **って**｝先生です。
Takeuchi-san ｛***wa*** / × ***tte***｝ *sensei desu.*
(Takeuchi-san is a teacher.)

b. ユーザーのいろいろな問い合わせに答える｛(**という**)**のは** / × **って**｝私の仕事です。
Yūzā no iroiro na toiawase ni kotaeru ｛***(to iu) no wa*** / × ***tte***｝ *watashi no shigoto desu.*
(It's my job to respond to various inquiries from users.)

T

tte[2] って[2] *prt.*

a colloquial particle used to introduce a quotation

that ~; I heard that ~; They say that ~; It is said that ~
【REL. ~ *sō da*[1]; *to*[3]】

◆ Key Sentence

Splain (quotation)	
今晩は雪が降る *Konban wa yuki ga* ***furu***	って。 *tte.*
(They say that it's going to snow tonight.)	

Formation

(i) {V / Adj(*i*)} plain って
tte

{話す / 話した}って (They say that s.o. {will talk / talks / talked}.)
{*hanasu* / *hanashita*} *tte*

{高い / 高かった}って (They say that s.t. is/was expensive.)
{*takai* / *takakatta*} *tte*

(ii) {Adj(*na*) / N} {だ / だった}って
{*da* / *datta*} *tte*

静か{だ / だった}って (They say that s.t. is/was quiet.)
shizuka{*da* / *datta*} *tte*

学生{だ / だった}って (They say that s.o. is/was a student.)
gakusei{*da* / *datta*} *tte*

Examples

(a) 今日、飛行機は飛ばないって。
Kyō, hikōki wa tobanai tte.
(They say there will be no flight today.)

(b) 試験は来週の金曜日だって。
Shiken wa raishū no kin'yōbi da tte.
(I heard that the exam will be next Friday.)

(c) 説明書に電池は 20 時間くらいもつって書いてあったよ。
Setsumeisho ni denchi wa nijū-jikan kurai motsu tte kaite atta yo.
(The user's manual said that the battery lasts about twenty hours.)

(d) 先生に来学期も日本語を取るかって聞かれた。
Sensei ni raigakki mo nihongo o toru ka tte kikareta.
(I was asked by the teacher if I would take the Japanese course the next term, too.)

(e) みんなが頑張っているのを見て、僕ももっと頑張らないといけないって思いました。
Minna ga ganbatte iru no o mite, boku mo motto ganbaranai to ikenai tte omoimashita.
(When I saw everybody working hard, I thought I have to work harder, too.)

Notes

1. *Tte*[2] is a colloquial version of the quotation particle *to*. (⇒ ***to***[3])

2. The verbs after *tte* are often omitted when they are understood from the context, as in KS, Exs.(a) and (b).

3. When there is a human topic in the *tte* construction, the sentence is ambiguous as to whose quotation it is. For example, in (1), the person who said that Carla wouldn't dance can be either the topic person (i.e., Carla herself) or the unsaid subject "they," as the translations show.

   (1) カーラは踊らないって。
   Kāra wa odoranai ***tte.***
   ((A) Carla said she wouldn't dance. (B) They say Carla won't dance.)

4. *Tte* is often used when the speaker responds to what the listener has just said, as in (2) and (3).

   (2) 日本は果物が高いって、どのぐらい高いんですか。
   Nihon wa kudamono ga takai ***tte****, dono gurai takai n desu ka.*
   (You said fruits are expensive in Japan. How expensive are they?)

   (3) A: 今の仕事、辞めたいんだ。
   Ima no shigoto, yame-tai n da.
   (I want to quit my current job.)

   B: 辞めたいって、どういうこと？
   Yame-tai ***tte****, dō iu koto?*
   (What do you mean by want to quit your job?)

T

[Related Expressions]

I. Both *to*[3] and *tte*[2] are used as a quotation marker, but while the verbs after *tte* are often omitted, the verbs after *to* cannot be omitted, as in [1]. (⇒ ***to***[3])

[1] a. カーラは踊らない{って / と}言った。(cf. (1))
Kāra wa odoranai{***tte*** / ***to***} *itta.*
(Carla said that she wouldn't dance.)

b. カーラは踊らない{って / ×と}。
Kāra wa odoranai{***tte*** / ×***to***}.
((A) Carla said she wouldn't dance. (B) They say Carla won't dance.)

II. Because *tte*[2] with no following verb can mean "they say that ~," it can be used as a hearsay expression like *sō da*[1], as in [2]. (⇒ ~ ***sō da***[1])

[2] 明日から寒くなる{って / そうです}。
Ashita kara samuku naru{***tte*** / ***sō desu***}.
(They say that it'll get cold starting tomorrow.)

However, *tte* is used only in casual conversation. Thus, the formal expression *ni yoru to*, which indicates information sources, cannot be used with *tte*, as in [3].

[3] 天気予報によると、明日から寒くなる{そうです / ??って}。
Tenkiyohō ***ni yoru to****, ashita kara samuku naru*{***sō desu*** / ??***tte***}.
(According to the weather report, it'll become cold starting tomorrow.)

uchi ni うちに *conj. / comp. prt.*

while s.o./s.t. is in a certain state

while; before; during
【REL. *aida (ni)*; *chū ni*; ***mae ni***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
			Verb (stative)		
前田さん *Maeda-san*	は *wa*	アメリカに *Amerika ni*	**いる** ***iru***	うちに *uchi ni*	英語がとても上手になった / なりました。 *eigo ga totemo jōzu ni natta / narimashita.*
(Maeda-san's English improved a lot while he was in America.)					

(B)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
V*te*			
走って ***Hashitte***	いる *iru*	うちに *uchi ni*	おなかが痛くなった / なりました。 *onaka ga itaku natta / narimashita.*
(My stomach started to ache while I was running.)			

(C)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Vplain・non-past・neg		
何も *Nani mo*	**しない** ***shinai***	うちに *uchi ni*	今年も終わった / 終わりました。 *kotoshi mo owatta / owarimashita.*
(I haven't achieved anything this year. (lit., This year is ended before I've achieved anything.))			

(D)

Subordinate Clause		Main Clause
Adj(*i*)plain・non-past		
若い ***Wakai***	うちに *uchi ni*	本をたくさん読みなさい。 *hon o takusan yomi-nasai.*
(Read many books while you're young.)		

(E)

Noun			Predicate
朝 ***Asa***	の *no*	うちに *uchi ni*	掃除と洗濯をすませた / すませました。 *sōji to sentaku o sumaseta / sumasemashita.*
(I finished cleaning and doing laundry in the morning.)			

Formation

(i) Vplain·non-past·aff うちに (V: stative)
uchi ni

ある*うちに* (while s.t. is there)
aru uchi ni

(ii) V*te* いるうちに
iru uchi ni

話して*いるうちに* (while s.o. is talking)
hanashite iru uchi ni

(iii) Vplain·non-past·neg うちに
uchi ni

話さない*うちに* (before s.o. talks)
hanasanai uchi ni

(iv) Adj(*i*)plain·non-past うちに
uchi ni

安い*うちに* (while s.t. is inexpensive)
yasui uchi ni

(v) Adj(*na*) なうちに
na uchi ni

静か*なうちに* (while s.t. is quiet)
shizuka na uchi ni

(vi) N のうちに
no uchi ni

休み*のうちに* (during the vacation; before the vacation is over)
yasumi no uchi ni

U

Examples

(a) 働けるうちにできるだけ働いてお金を貯めておきたい。
Hatarakeru uchi ni dekiru dake hataraite o-kane o tamete oki-tai.
(I'd like to work as much as possible while I can (work) and save money.)

(b) この問題を考えているうちに何がポイントか分からなくなった。
Kono mondai o kangaete iru uchi ni nani ga pointo ka wakaranaku natta.
(While thinking about this problem, I lost the point of it (lit., what the point is).)

(c) 雨が降らないうちに散歩をしてきます。
Ame ga furanai uchi ni sanpo o shite-kimasu.
(I'll go for a walk (and come back) before it rains.)

(d) 忘れないうちに言っておきたいことがあります。
Wasurenai uchi ni itte oki-tai koto ga arimasu.
(There is something I want to tell you before I forget.)

(e) トマトのスープです。温かいうちに飲んでください。
Tomato no sūpu desu. Atatakai uchi ni nonde kudasai.
(Here's some tomato soup. Please eat (lit., drink) it while it is warm.)

(f) 両親が元気なうちに一緒に海外旅行に行きたいと思っている。
Ryōshin ga genki na uchi ni issho ni kaigai-ryokō ni iki-tai to omotte iru.
(I'd like to travel abroad with my parents while they are in good shape.)

(g) 何としても夏休みのうちにこの論文を書き終わるつもりだ。
Nan to shitemo natsu-yasumi no uchi ni kono ronbun o kaki-owaru tsumori da.
(I intend to finish writing this paper by any means during the summer vacation.)

(h) 天気がいいので、今のうちに車を洗っておきます。
Tenki ga ii node, ima no uchi ni kuruma o aratte okimasu.
(The weather is good, so I'll wash the car now (i.e., while the weather is good).)

Notes

1. In general, the *uchi ni* clause expresses a period during which someone or something is in a certain state. The state is commonly expressed by a stative verb, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), V*te iru*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b), adjectives, as in KS(D), Exs.(e) and (f), and nouns, as in KS(E), Exs.(g) and (h).

2. *Uchi ni* is often used with the plain negative forms of verbs, as is KS(C), Exs.(c) and (d). The literal meaning of this pattern is "while someone doesn't do something" or "while something doesn't happen." However, the natural interpretation is "before someone does something" or "before something happens."

3. *Uchi* in *uchi ni* is a noun. Thus, the elements before *uchi ni* are all in the prenominal (i.e., noun-modifying) forms, as shown in Formation.

4. When the element before *uchi ni* is a verb or an adjective, it is always non-past regardless of the tense of the main clause.

【Related Expressions】

I. *Aida ni* is also used to indicate an interval of time during which someone does something or something happens. Thus, in some situations, *aida ni* and *uchi ni* are interchangeable, as in [1].

[1] a. 前田さんはアメリカにいる{**うちに / 間に**}英語がとても上手になった。(cf. KS(A))
*Maeda-san wa Amerika ni iru{**uchi ni / aida ni**} eigo ga totemo jōzu ni natta.*
(Maeda-san's English improved a lot while he was in America.)

b. 働ける{**うちに / 間に**}できるだけ働いてお金を貯めておきたい。(cf. Ex.(a))
*Hatarakeru{**uchi ni / aida ni**} dekiru dake hataraite o-kane o tamete oki-tai.*
(I'd like to work as much as possible while I can (work) and save money.)

However, while *uchi ni* is used when the *uchi ni* clause indicates a period that is desirable to perform an action in the main clause, *aida ni* is not natural in such situations. Thus, in [2], *aida ni* is not used. (⇒ ***aida (ni)***)

[2] a. 雨が降らない{**うちに** / ??**間に**}散歩をしてきます。(= Ex.(c))
*Ame ga furanai{**uchi ni** / ??**aida ni**} sanpo o shite-kimasu.*
(I'll go for a walk (and come back) before it rains.)

b. トマトのスープです。温かい{**うちに** / ??**間に**}飲んでください。(= Ex.(e))
*Tomato no sūpu desu. Atatakai{**uchi ni** / ??**aida ni**} nonde kudasai.*
(Here's some tomato soup. Please eat (lit., drink) it while it is warm.)

II. The *uchi ni* construction cannot be used with nouns that refers to an event. In this case, *aida ni* or *chū (ni)* is used, as in [3].

[3] a. ハワードは授業{**の間に / 中(に) / ×のうちに**}よく質問をした。
*Hawādo wa jugyō{**no aida ni / -chū (ni) / ×no uchi ni**} yoku shitsumon o shita.*
(Howard asked many questions during the class.)

b. 試合{**の間に / 中(に) / ×のうちに**}雨が降ってきた。
*Shiai{**no aida ni / -chū (ni) / ×no uchi ni**} ame ga futte kita.*
(It started to rain during the game.)

U

wa は *prt.*

a particle that marks a topic or a contrastive element

Talking about; as for; the
【REL. ***ga***[1]; ***tte***[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		
私 ***Watashi***	は *wa*	学生だ / です。 *gakusei da / desu.*
(I am a student.)		

(B)

Contrastive Element 1				Contrastive Element 2		
杉田さん ***Sugita-san***	は *wa*	パーティーに *pātī ni*	行きますが、 *ikimasu ga,*	私 ***watashi***	は *wa*	行きません。 *ikimasen.*
(Sugita-san will go to the party but I won't go.)						

Examples

(a) エバンズさんは今、日本語を勉強している。
Ebanzu-san wa ima, nihongo o benkyō-shite iru.
(Evans-san is studying Japanese now.)

(b) 音楽は何が好きですか。
Ongaku wa nani ga suki desu ka.
(What kind of music do you like? (lit., Talking about music, what do you like?))

(c) この町には大学が２つある。
Kono machi ni wa daigaku ga futa-tsu aru.
(There are two universities in this town.)

(d) 私は魚は食べますが、肉は食べません。
Watashi wa sakana wa tabemasu ga, niku wa tabemasen.
(I eat fish but don't eat meat.)

(e) 上の子には人形を、下の子には絵本をあげた。
Ue no ko ni wa ningyō o, shita no ko ni wa ehon o ageta.
(I gave a doll to the elder child and a picture book to the younger child.)

Notes

1. One of the primary functions of *wa* is to mark the topic of a sentence. The topic of a sentence is what the sentence is about. The topic of a sentence is often the subject of the sentence, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), but it is not always the case, as in Exs.(b) and (c). (1) provides additional examples in which the topic is not the subject. (⇒ **Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 2**. Topic)

   (1) a. これは私が作りました。
   Kore wa watashi ga tsukurimashita.
   (*I* made this.)

   b. 飲み物は何を注文しましょうか。
   Nomimono wa nani o chūmon-shimashō ka.
   (What drink shall we order? (lit., As for drinks, what shall we order?))

   c. スポーツはサッカーが好きです。
   Supōtsu wa sakkā ga suki desu.
   (As for sports, I like soccer.)

2. In general, topics represent information that the speaker assumes to be part of the listener's register. In other words, when the speaker says "X *wa*," he/she assumes that the listener knows what X refers to. For example, the types of words and phrases in (A)–(E) can be X in "X *wa*" without context, because under normal circumstances the listener can tell what X refers to. (For the type of words and phrases in (B), situational information is necessary for the listener to be able to know that X refers to.)

   (A) Personal pronouns and nouns modified by them

   (2) 私 (I) *watashi* — 僕 (I) [male] *boku* — あなた (you) *anata*

   (3) 私の家族 (my family) *watashi no kazoku* — あなたの家 (your house) *anata no ie*

   (B) Demonstratives and nouns modified by them

   (4) これ (this) *kore* — それ (that) *sore* — ここ (here) *koko*

   そこ (there) *soko* — あそこ (over there) *asoko*

   (5) この人 (this person) *kono hito* — あの車 (that car over there) *ano kuruma*

   そこのカバン (the bag there) *soko no kaban*

(C) Proper nouns

(6) ブラジル (Brasil) *Burajiru*
富士山 (Mt. Fuji) *Fujisan*
東京駅 (Tokyo Station) *Tōkyō-eki*
スミスさん (Smith-san) *Sumisu-san*

(D) Nouns whose referents can be uniquely identified

(7) 太陽 (sun) *taiyō*
地球 (earth) *chikyū*
空 (sky) *sora*
日本語 (Japanese) *nihongo*
酸素 (oxygen) *sanso*

(E) Common nouns used as a generic term

(8) 人 (person) *hito*
車 (car) *kuruma*
マンガ (comic book) *manga*
温泉 (hot spring) *onsen*
歌 (song) *uta*

3. When a common noun marked by *wa* is used to refer to a specific item rather than as a generic term, the referent must be inferable from the context or situation. For example, in (9), the *o-jīsan* marked by *wa* in the second sentence refers to the old man introduced in the first sentence as *o-jīsan ga*.

(9) 昔々、一人の**おじいさんが**住んでいました。**おじいさんは**とてもやさしい人でした。
Mukashi-mukashi, hitori no ***o-jīsan ga*** *sunde imashita.* ***O-jīsan wa*** *totemo yasashii hito deshita.*
(Once upon a time, there lived an old man. The old man was a very gentle man.)

(10) provides another example. Here, *sensei* "teacher" is not previously mentioned, but it is marked by *wa*. This is because the speaker can understand that the *sensei* refers to the teacher of the Japanese class mentioned in the first sentence.

(10) 今、日本語の授業を取っています。**先生は**日本人です。
Ima, nihongo no jugyō o totte imasu. ***Sensei wa*** *nihonjin desu.*
(I'm taking a Japanese class. The teacher is Japanese.)

As seen in this example, the common noun X in "X *wa*" does not always appear as it is in the preceding sentence.

(11) provides yet another example. Here, there is no context to help identify the referent of *toire* "restroom." However, the listener understands that it refers to the restroom in the supermarket from the situation.

(11) [Asking a salesclerk at a supermarket]
すみません。**トイレは**どこですか。
Sumimasen. ***Toire wa*** *doko desu ka.*
(Excuse me, where can I find the restroom?)

4. *Wa* never marks question words (e.g., *nani* "what," *dare* "who") and indefinite pronouns (e.g., *nani-ka* "something," *dare-ka* "someone"). This is because question words and indefinite pronouns do not refer to a known thing and, therefore, their referents can never be in the listener's register. (12) and (13) provide examples. (⇒ ***ga***[1])

(12) **だれ**{**が** / ×**は**}パーティーに来ましたか。
Dare {***ga*** / ×***wa***} *pātī ni kimashita ka.*
(Who came to the party?)

(13) **だれか**{**が** / ×**は**}手伝ってくれるでしょう。
Dare-ka {***ga*** / ×***wa***} *tetsudatte kureru deshō.*
(Someone will probably help us.)

5. There are rules for particle ellipsis when *wa* marks nouns with case markers (i.e., particles such as the subject marker *ga* (= *ga*[1]) and the direct object marker *o* (= *o*[1]), etc.).

(A) When *wa* marks X *ga* or X *o*, *ga* or *o* must drop, as in KSs(A), (B), Exs.(a) and (d).

(B) When *wa* marks X *e* or X *ni*[6] (location of existence) / *ni*[7] (direction), *e* or *ni* optionally drop, as in (14).

(14) a. 広島(**に** / **へ**)**は**行きませんでした。
*Hiroshima (****ni*** */ **e**) **wa** ikimasendeshita.*
(I didn't go to Hiroshima.)

b. 京都(**に**)**は**お寺や神社がたくさんあります。
*Kyōto (****ni****) **wa** o-tera ya jinja ga takusan arimasu.*
(There are many temples and shrines in Kyoto.)

(C) When *wa* marks X *ni*[1] (point of time) / *ni*[2] (indirect object) / *ni*[3] (source) / *ni*[4] (direct contact) / *ni*[8] (agent), X *de*, X *to*, X *kara*, X *made* or X *yori*, the case marker usually remains and *wa* follows it, forming a double particle, as in (15). (*Ni*[5] (purpose) is attached to V*masu* and never drops.)

(15) a. (私は)母**には**スカーフをあげました。
(Watashi wa) haha ***ni wa*** *sukāfu o agemashita.*
(I gave a scarf to my mother.)

b. ここ**では**写真を撮らないでください。
*Koko **de wa** shashin o toranaide kudasai.*
(Please don't take pictures here.)

c. 加藤さん**とは**よく会います。
*Katō-san **to wa** yoku aimasu.*
(I see Kato-san often.)

d. 韓国**からは**パクさんがこのイベントに参加しました。
*Kankoku **kara wa** Paku-san ga kono ibento ni sanka-shimashita.*
(From Korea, Park-san participated in this event.)

6. *Wa* is also used to mark a contrastive element, as in KS(B), Exs.(d) and (e). However, whether *wa* is being used as a topic marker or as a contrastive marker is not always clear. This is not clear particularly when there is one element X marked by *wa* but there is no other element Y explicitly contrasted with X. There are at least two general rules for determining whether a given *wa* is topical or contrastive.

(i) When more than one *wa* appears in a sentence, as in "X *wa* Y *wa* Z *wa* ...," the first *wa* is usually understood to be the topic marker, the second *wa* is more contrastive than the first one, the third one is more contrastive than the second, and so on. (16) provides examples.

(16) a. 純は英語はできます。
*Jun **wa** eigo **wa** dekimasu.*
(Jun can speak English (but cannot speak other foreign languages).)

b. 僕は今日はテニスはしない。
*Boku **wa** kyō **wa** tenisu **wa** shinai.*
(I won't play tennis today (but will do something else).)

(ii) When X *wa* is pronounced with stress, it marks a contrastive element. (17) provides examples.

(17) a. 私は１年生です。
*Watashi **wa** ichi-nensei desu.*
((I don't know about other people but, at least) *I* am a freshman.)

b. ケネスは日本語が分かります。
*Kenesu **wa** nihongo ga wakarimasu.*
((I don't know if others understand Japanese, but) *Kenneth* understands Japanese.)

7. When *wa* is used in negative sentences, it marks the negated element. (18) provides examples.

(18) a. 昨日ジムに行かなかった。
Kinō jimu ni ikanakatta.
(I didn't go to the gym yesterday.)

b. 昨日**は**ジムに行かなかった。
*Kinō **wa** jimu ni ikanakatta.*
(I didn't go to the gym yesterday (though I went there on other days or I usually go there on that day).)

c. 昨日ジムに**は**行かなかった。
*Kinō jimu ni **wa** ikanakatta.*
(I didn't go to the gym yesterday (though I went somewhere else).)

(18a) simply states that the speaker didn't go to the gym yesterday. (18b) negates *yesterday*, implying that the speaker went to the gym on other days or that he usually goes to the gym on that day but didn't yesterday. Likewise, (18c) negates *to the gym*, implying that the speaker went somewhere but it was not to the gym. As seen in these examples, this use is a variation of the use of *wa* as a contrastive marker.

(19) provides additional examples, in which *wa* marks adverbs.

(19) a. 母はあまり速く**は**歩けない。
*Haha wa amari hayaku **wa** arukenai.*
(My mother cannot walk so fast.)

b. そこへは歩いて**は**行けない。
*Soko e wa aruite **wa** ikenai.*
(We cannot go there on foot.)

8. Yet another function of *wa* is to express the meaning of "at least" when it marks quantifiers, as in (20), and the meaning of "at the latest" when it marks time expressions with the particle *ni*, as in (21).

(20) a. この修理に 10 万円**は**かかると思う。
*Kono shūri ni jūman-en **wa** kakaru to omou.*
(I think that this repair would cost at least 100,000 yen.)

b. 敬語が少し**は**使えるようになった。
*Keigo ga sukoshi **wa** tsukaeru yō ni natta.*
(I can use some honorific language now. (lit., I've come to the point where I can use at least some honorific language.))

(21) 今日は 6 時に**は**帰れると思うよ。
*Kyō wa roku-ji ni **wa** kaereru to omou yo.*
(I think I can come home at six at the latest today.)

9. The topical *wa* does not appear in subordinate clauses, as in (22).

(22) a. 麻里は僕{が / ×は}昨日礼奈とデートしたことを知っている。
*Mari wa boku {**ga** / × **wa**} kinō Reina to dēto-shita koto o shitte iru.*
(Mari knows that I went out with Reina yesterday.)

b. 私{が / ×は}読んだ本は『ノルウェイの森』です。
*Watashi {**ga** / × **wa**} yonda hon wa "Noruwei no Mori" desu.*
(The book I read was *Norwegian Wood*.)

c. ジョイスは、私{が / ×は}困っている時、いつも助けてくれた。
*Joisu wa, watashi {**ga** / × **wa**} komatte iru toki, itsumo tasukete kureta.*
(Joyce helped me whenever I was in trouble.)

However, the contrastive *wa* (including the *wa* that marks negated elements) and the *wa* that marks quantifiers can be used even in subordinate clauses, as in (23).

(23) a. 友達は、私が魚**は**食べるが肉**は**食べないことを知らない。
*Tomodachi wa, watashi ga sakana **wa** taberu ga niku **wa** tabenai koto o shiranai.*
(My friends do not know that I eat fish but don't eat meat.)

b. そこへは歩いて**は**行けないので、車を借りた。
*Soko e wa aruite **wa** ikenai node, kuruma o karita.*
(Because we cannot walk there, we rented a car.)

c. この修理に 10 万円**は**かかることが分かった。
*Kono shūri ni jūman-en **wa** kakaru koto ga wakatta.*
(It turned out that this repair would cost at least 100,000 yen.)

～ wa ～ da　～は ～だ　*str.*

a sentence structure that links the element before *da* to a topic

【REL. ***suru***[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun	
この建物 *Kono tatemono*	は *wa*	美術館 ***bijutsukan***	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(This building is an art museum.)			

(B)

Topic (subject)		Noun	Prt	
コンサート *Konsāto*	は *wa*	8時 ***hachi-ji***	から ***kara***	だ / です。 *da / desu.*
(The concert starts at eight o'clock. (lit., The concert is from eight o'clock.))				

Examples

(a) 私はジョーンズです。
Watashi wa Jōnzu desu.
(I am Jones.)

(b) あの人は数学の先生だ。
Ano hito wa sūgaku no sensei da.
(That person is a math teacher.)

(c) 授業は4時までです。
Jugyō wa yo-ji made desu.
(I have classes till four o'clock. (lit., My classes are till four o'clock.))

(d) 今度の試合はワシントン大学とだ。
Kondo no shiai wa Washinton Daigaku to da.
(The next game is against the University of Washington.)

Notes

1. "A *wa* B *da*" is one of the most basic sentence structures in Japanese. The basic meaning of this construction is "A is B," as in KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b). However, this pattern can convey more than that meaning. For example, the second sentence in (1) literally means "My younger sister is tea," but actually means "My younger sister drinks tea."

(1) 私は毎朝コーヒーを飲む。妹は紅茶だ。
*Watashi wa mai-asa kōhī o nomu. Imōto **wa** kōcha **da**.*
(I drink coffee every morning. My younger sister drinks tea. (lit., My younger sister is tea.))

Similarly, the literal meaning of (2) is "I am an eel," but the actual meaning is "I'll have eel," "I'd like eel," or something like that.

(2) [Deciding what to eat at a restaurant]
僕**は**うなぎ**だ**。
Boku ***wa*** *unagi* ***da.***
(I'll have eel / I'd like eel. (lit., I am an eel.))

As seen in the above examples, when interpreting "A *wa* B *da*" as "A is B" does not make sense, "B *da*" is interpreted by referring to the context or the situation. In this case, the structure simply provides A as the sentence topic and B as information to be interpreted with A in some way. How B is interpreted in connection to A is determined by the context or the situation. (3) provides additonal examples.

(3) a. あのレストランはすしがおいしい。このレストラン**は**てんぷら**だ**。
Ano resutoran wa sushi ga oishii. Kono resutoran ***wa*** *tenpura* ***da.***
(Sushi is good at that restaurant. At this restaurant tempura is good.)

b. ディックはスケートが上手だ。そして、ポール**は**スキー**だ**。
Dikku wa sukēto ga jōzu da. Soshite, Pōru ***wa*** *sukī* ***da.***
(Dick is good at (ice) skating, and Paul is good at skiing.)

c. A: 私はこの夏ハワイへ行きます。
Watashi wa kono natsu Hawai e ikimasu.
(I'm going to Hawaii this summer.)

B: 私**は**フロリダ**です**。
Watashi ***wa*** *Furorida* ***desu.***
(I'm going to Florida.)

d. Waiter: お待たせしました。みそラーメンと塩ラーメンです。
O-matase shimashita. Miso-rāmen to shio-rāmen desu.
(Thank you for waiting. Here are miso ramen and salt ramen.)

Customer A: あ、みそラーメンは私です。
A, miso-rāmen ***wa*** *watashi* ***desu.***
(Oh, the miso ramen is for me.)

2. Elements that typically occur in the B position in "A *wa* B *da*" are nouns and noun phrases (e.g., KS(A), Exs.(a) and (b)) and nouns with case particles (e.g., KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d)). However, other elements can also occur in the B position, as in (4).

(4) a. この漢字アプリはとても**便利**だ。[*Na*-adjective]
Kono kanji apuri wa totemo ***benri*** *da.*
(This kanji app is very useful.)

b. 母の料理は**最高**です。 [*No*-adjective (= an adjective that requires *no* when it modifies nouns)]
*Haha no ryōri wa **saikō** desu.*
(My mother's cooking is the best.)

c. ヨット(に乗るの)は**初めて**だ。[Adverb]
*Yotto (ni noru no) wa **hajimete** da.*
(This is the first time I've been on a sailing boat.)

d. このテーブルは**ガタガタ**だ。[Onomatopoeia]
*Kono tēburu wa **gatagata** da.*
(This table is shaky.)

e. 試験は**1時間**だ。[Quantifier]
*Shiken wa **ichi-jikan** da.*
(The test is for one hour.)

3. When case particles (e.g., *ga*, *o*, *ni*, etc.) follow nouns before *da*, the following general rules about particle ellipsis and retention apply.

(A) *Ga*, *o*, *e*, *ni*[1] (point of time) and *ni*[6] (location of existence) must drop. (See (1), (2) and (3a)–(3c).) (5) provides additional examples.

(5) a. 数学の授業は10時に始まります。日本語の授業は1時ø です。
*Sūgaku no jugyō wa jū-ji **ni** hajimarimasu. Nihongo no jugyō wa ichi-ji ø **desu**.*
(The math class begins at ten o'clock. The Japanese class begins at one o'clock.)

b. 台所用品は5階にあります。レストランは8階ø です。
*Daidokoro-yōhin wa go-kai **ni** arimasu. Resutoran wa hachi-kai ø **desu**.*
(Kitchen goods are on the fifth floor. Restaurants are on the eighth.)

(B) *Ni*[2] (indirect object), *ni*[4] (direct contact), *ni*[8] (agent) and *de*[1] (location of action/event), *de*[2] (means) are optional. (6) and (7) provide examples.

(6) A: 僕はケンにそのニュースを聞いた。
*Boku wa Ken **ni** sono nyūsu o kiita.*
(I heard the news from Ken.)

B: 僕はアンディー(に)だ。
*Boku wa Andī (**ni**) **da**.*
(I heard from Andy.)

(7) A: 私はたいていアパートで勉強します。
*Watashi wa taitei apāto **de** benkyō-shimasu.*
(I usually study in my apartment.)

B: 私は図書館(で)です。
Watashi wa toshokan (de) desu.
(I usually study at the library.)

(C) *De*[3] (reason), *to*[2] (reciprocal relationship), *kara*[1] (starting point) and *made* usually do not drop. (8) and (9) provide examples.

(8) A: 僕は病気で休んだ。
Boku wa byōki de yasunda.
(I was absent because of illness.)

B: 僕はけが{で / ??ø}だ。
Boku wa kega {de / ??ø} da.
(I was absent because I got injured (lit., because of an injury).)

(9) A: 私は孝之と踊りました。
Watashi wa Takayuki to odorimashita.
(I danced with Takayuki.)

B: 私は友也{と / ??ø}です。
Watashi wa Tomoya {to / ??ø} desu.
(I danced with Tomoya.)

4. When the "A *wa* B *da*" construction is used to mean "A was B," *da* (or *desu*) becomes *datta* (or *deshita*), as in (10).

(10) 高村さんは昔、高校の先生{だった / でした}。
Takamura-san wa mukashi kōkō no sensei {datta / deshita}.
(Takamura-san once was a high school teacher.)

However, when "A *wa* B *da*" does not mean "A was B," *da* (or *desu*) is usually used even if the action or event took place in the past, as in (6), (8) and (9).

5. When "A *wa* B *da*" means "A is B," "A *wa*" may drop if it can be understood from context, as seen in (11).

(11) A: それは何ですか。
Sore wa nan desu ka.
(What are they?)

B: (これは)日本のお菓子です。
(Kore wa) Nihon no o-kashi desu.
(These are Japanese sweets.)

～ wa ～ ga ～は ～が *str.*

a sentence structure that relates a state of s.t. or s.o. to a topic

◆ Key Sentences

	Topic (Subject 1)		Predicate 1		
			Subject 2		Predicate 2
(A)	私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	英語 *eigo*	が *ga*	分かる / 分かります。 *wakaru / wakarimasu.*
	(I understand English. (lit., To me, English is understandable.))				
(B)	真紀 *Maki*	は *wa*	足 *ashi*	が *ga*	長い / 長いです。 *nagai / nagaidesu.*
	(Maki has long legs. (lit., Speaking of Maki, her legs are long.))				
(C)	辞書 *Jisho*	は *wa*	ウェブスター *Webusutā*	が *ga*	いい / いいです。 *ii / iidesu.*
	(Talking about dictionaries, Webster's is good.)				

Examples

(a) 修司はテニスが上手だ。
Shūji wa tenisu ga jōzu da.
(Shuji is good at tennis.)

(b) 私は彼氏が欲しいです。
Watashi wa kareshi ga hoshiidesu.
(I want a boyfriend.)

(c) 僕はサッカーが好きだ。
Boku wa sakkā ga suki da.
(I like soccer.)

(d) ミラーさんは背が高いです。
Mirā-san wa se ga takaidesu.
(Miller-san is tall.)

W

(e) 私はおなかがすいた。
Watashi wa onaka ga suita.
(I am hungry.)

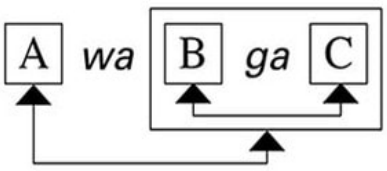
(f) 東京は家賃が高い。
Tōkyō wa yachin ga takai.
(House rents are high in Tokyo.)

(g) 海は沖縄の海がきれいです。
Umi wa Okinawa no umi ga kirei desu.
(Talking about the sea, the sea around Okinawa is beautiful.)

(h) 食べ物は何が好きですか。
Tabemono wa nani ga suki desu ka.
(What is your favorite food? (lit., As for food, what do you like?))

Notes

1. "A *wa* B *ga* C" is one of the basic constructions in Japanese. In this construction, C usually expresses something about B and "B *ga* C" expresses something about A, as illustrated in (1). In other words, "B *ga* C" is a kind of embedded clause.

(1) 

2. Sentences utilizing this construction may be categorized into three types:

Type 1: A is basically human or an animal, and "B *ga* C" expresses A's ability, desire, preference, or emotion, as in KS(A) and Exs.(a)–(c). (See Note 3 for verbs and adjectives that occur in the construction of this type.)

Type 2: B is part of A, and C expresses something about B, which, in turn, expresses something about A, as in KS(B) and Exs.(d)–(f). "A *wa* B *ga* C" of this type can be paraphrased as "A *no* B *wa* C" with a slight change in nuance.

Type 3: B is a member of A, and C expresses something about B, as in KS(C), Exs.(g) and (h).

3. Listed below are the verbs and adjectives that usually require the "A *wa* B *ga* C" construction. Sentences with these verbs and adjectives belong to Type 1 in Note 2. Note that when C is a verb, it is a stative verb.
(⇒**Appendix 2**. Semantic Classification of Verbs)

(A) Ability (⇒ ***kikoeru***; ***mieru***; ***~rareru***[2]; ***wakaru***)

分かる (understand)	できる (can do)	～られる[2] (can)
wakaru	*dekiru*	*~rareru*[2]
見える (can see; be visible)	聞こえる (can hear; be audible)	
mieru	*kikoeru*	

上手 (good at)	下手 (poor at)
jōzu	*heta*
得意 (proudly good at)	苦手 (ashamedly poor at)
tokui	*nigate*

(2) マクドナルドさん**は**アラビア語**ができる**。
*Makudonarudo-san **wa** arabiago **ga dekiru**.*
(McDonald-san can speak Arabic.)

(3) 私**は**すし**が作れます**。
*Watashi **wa** sushi **ga tsukuremasu**.*
(I can make sushi.)

(B) Desire/Need (⇒ ***hoshii***[1]; ***~ tai***)

欲しい (desirable; want)	～たい (want to)
hoshii	*~ tai*
いる (need; be necessary)	必要 (need; necessary)
iru	*hitsuyō*

(4) 私**は**すし**が**食べ**たい**。
*Watashi **wa** sushi **ga** tabe-**tai**.*
(I want to eat sushi.)

(5) 寺岡さん**は**今休養**が必要**だ。
*Teraoka-san **wa** ima kyūyō **ga hitsuyō** da.*
(Teraoka-san needs some rest now.)

(C) Preference (⇒ ***kirai***; ***suki***)

好き (like)	嫌い (dislike)
suki	*kirai*

(D) Emotion

なつかしい (nostalgic)	にくらしい (hateful)	こわい (fearful)
natsukashii	*nikurashii*	*kowai*
おそろしい (dreadful)	うらやましい (enviable)	
osoroshii	*urayamashii*	

(6) 私はアイリーン**がにくらしい**。
*Watashi **wa** Airīn **ga nikurashii**.*
(I hate Irene.)

W

(7) 私は地震**がこわい**。
*Watashi **wa** jishin **ga kowai**.*
(I fear earthquakes.)

wakaru 分かる *v. (Gr. 1)*

can comprehend information

be comprehensible; can comprehend; understand; can figure out; can tell; know
【REL. *shiru*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (experiencer)			Noun Phrase (object of comprehension)		
私 *Watashi*	(に) *(ni)*	は *wa*	この言葉 ***kono kotoba***	が *ga*	分からない / 分かりません。 *wakaranai / wakarimasen.*
(I don't understand this word. (lit., To me this word is not comprehensible.))					

(B)

Embedded Question		
Splain*		
だれが明日の会議に**来る** *Dare ga ashita no kaigi ni **kuru***	か *ka*	分からない / 分かりません。 *wakaranai / wakarimasen.*
(I don't know who's coming to tomorrow's meeting.)		

**Da* after Adj(*na*) and N drops.

Examples

(a) アレンさんはポルトガル語が分かります。
Aren-san wa porutogarugo ga wakarimasu.
(Allen-san understands Portuguese.)

(b) リニアモーターカーの説明を聞いたが、あまりよく分からなかった。
Rinia-mōtā-kā no setsumei o kiita ga, amari yoku wakaranakatta.
(I was given an explanation of linear motor cars, but I couldn't understand it well.)

(c) この理論は私には難しすぎて分かりません。
Kono riron wa watashi ni wa muzukashi-sugite wakarimasen.
(This theory is too difficult for me to understand.)

(d) 子供にはこの映画の内容が分からないでしょう。
Kodomo ni wa kono eiga no naiyō ga wakaranai deshō.
(Children probably won't understand the content of this movie.)

(e) 私は抽象画がよく分からない。
Watashi wa chūshōga ga yoku wakaranai.
(I don't understand abstract paintings well.)

(f) 量子コンピュータの仕組みは難しくて私には分からない。
Ryōshi-konpyūta no shikumi wa muzukashikute watashi ni wa wakaranai.
(The mechanism of quantum computers is too difficult for me to understand.)

(g) A: 村上さんの電話番号が分かりますか。
Murakami-san no denwa-bangō ga wakarimasu ka.
(Do you have (lit., Can you tell) Murakami-san's phone number?)

B: 私は分かりませんが、北川さんに聞いたら分かると思います。
Watashi wa wakarimasen ga, Kitagawa-san ni kiitara wakaru to omoimasu.
(I don't, but I think you can get it if you ask Kitagawa-san.)

(h) 明日までにこの仕事ができるかどうか分かりません。
Ashita made ni kono shigoto ga dekiru ka dō ka wakarimasen.
(I'm not sure if I can finish this work by tomorrow.)

Notes

1. *Wakaru* is commonly used with the ~ *wa* ~ *ga* construction. The experiencer of *wakaru* (i.e., the person who understands (or does not understand) something) is optionally marked by *ni*, as in KS(A). (⇒ ~ ***wa*** ~ ***ga***)

2. Embedded questions can also be used with *wakaru*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(h). In this case, the *ga* after embedded questions is usually omitted.

3. Because *wakaru* is already a potential verb, it cannot take the potential form. Thus, *wakareru* is an ungrammatical form.

4. X *ga wakaru* is commonly used in the following situations.

   (A) When someone can comprehend (the meaning of) X. Here, X is something that conveys some meaning, such as languages, words, sentences, symbols, etc. KS(A) and Ex.(a) are examples of this use. (1) provides additional examples.

   (1) a. 私はこの例文がよく分かりません。
   Watashi wa kono reibun ga yoku wakarimasen.
   (I don't understand this example sentence well.)

   b. この記号の意味が分かりますか。
   Kono kigō no imi ga wakarimasu ka.
   (Do you know the meaning of this symbol?)

(B) When someone understands (the content of) X that is expressed via language and/or other media, such as explanations, presentations, theories, thoughts, movies, dramas, etc. Exs.(b)–(d) are examples of this use. (2) provides additional examples.

(2) a. 杉本さんの発表はとても分かりやすかった。
Sugimoto-san no happyō wa totemo wakari-yasukatta.
(Sugimoto-san's presentation was very easy to follow.)

b. 中西さんの考えが少しずつ分かってきました。
Nakanishi-san no kangae ga sukoshi zutsu wakatte kimashita.
(I gradually began to understand what Nakanishi-san thinks.)

c. デールは日本語の冗談が分かる。
Dēru wa nihongo no jōdan ga wakaru.
(Dale understands Japanese jokes.)

d. 私はこの問題がよく分かりません。
Watashi wa kono mondai ga yoku wakarimasen.
(I don't know how to solve this problem. (lit., I don't understand this problem.))

In (2d), the object of understanding is *kono mondai* "this problem," but the meaning of the sentence is not just "the speaker doesn't understand the content of the problem"; it is usually interpreted as "the speaker doesn't know how to solve it."

(C) When someone understands X's value, merit, significance, etc., which are conveyed via something other than language. Ex.(e) is an example of this use. (3) provides additional examples.

(3) a. この作曲家の音楽はよく分からない。
Kono sakkyokuka no ongaku wa yoku wakaranai.
(I don't understand this composer's music well.)

b. 能のおもしろさが分かってきました。
Nō no omoshiro-sa ga wakatte kimashita.
(I began to understand how interesting Noh plays are.)

(D) When someone understands what X is (or is like). Here, X is not something expressed via language or other media so that people understand or appreciate it. Rather, it exists whether or not someone intends to understand it or appreciates it. Examples of X include the mechanism of something, situations, someone's feeling, etc. Ex.(f) is an example of this use. (4) provides additional examples.

(4) a. 彼は今の自分の状況があまり分かっていないようだ。
Kare wa ima no jibun no jōkyō ga amari wakatte inai yō da.
(It seems that he doesn't have a good understanding of his current situation.)

b. 私もいじめにあったので、美雪の気持ちがよく分かる。
Watashi mo ijime ni atta node, Miyuki no kimochi ga yoku wakaru.
(Because I have been bullied, too, I fully understand how Miyuki feels.)

(E) When someone does not have information at the moment of speech, but can get it. (If the person cannot get the information, the negative form *wakaranai* is used.) KS(B), Exs.(g) and (h) are examples of this use.

5. *Wakaru* commonly takes *ga* to indicate the object of comprehension, in which case, *wakaru* is used as a non-volitional verb that indicates spontaneous comprehension. However, in some situations, *wakaru* can be used as a volitional verb that indicates non-spontaneous comprehension. In this case, the object of comprehension is marked by *o*. For example, in causative sentences, as in (5a), and in sentences in which the experiencer makes a conscious effort to understand something, as in (5b), *o* is used instead of *ga*. Note that in (5b) the volitional form *wakarō* is used.

(5) a. 親の死｛**を** / ×**が**｝小さい子供に分からせるのは難しい。
Oya no shi ｛***o*** / ×***ga***｝ *chīsai kodomo ni wakaraseru no wa muzukashii.*
(It is hard to make a small child comprehend the death of a parent.)

b. ジャックはローリーの気持ち｛**を** / ×**が**｝分かろうとしない。
Jakku wa Rōrī no kimochi ｛***o*** / ×***ga***｝ *wakarō to shinai.*
(Jack does not try to understand Laurie's feeling.)

6. *Wakaru* is a stative verb; therefore, in most situations, it is not used in the form of V*te iru* (i.e., *wakatte iru*). However, *wakatte iru* is used when the state is temporary, as in (6). (⇒ ***iru***[2])

(6) a. 子供たちも今家にお金がないことが**分かっている**。
Kodomo-tachi mo ima ie ni o-kane ga nai koto ga ***wakatte iru.***
(Our kids also know that we don't have money now.)

b. このウイルスの感染経路はまだ**分かっていない**。
Kono uirusu no kansen-keiro wa mada ***wakatte inai.***
(We don't know the transmission route of this virus yet.)

c. もっと運動しないといけないことは**分かっている**んですが、なかなかできないんです。
*Motto undō-shinai to ikenai koto wa **wakatte iru** n desu ga, nakanaka dekinai n desu.*
(I know that I have to exercise more, but it is hard to do that.)

【Related Expression】

Wakaru and *shiru* "learn of" or "get to know" are sometimes used in similar situations, but they should be clearly distinguished. As explained in Note 4, *wakaru* basically involves some sort of information processing, such as interpreting sentences, understanding concepts, assessing the value of something, solving problems, etc., although in some situations, it simply means that someone can obtain the information needed. *Shiru*, on the other hand, refers to the process of learning of some information from an outside source, and *shitte iru* refers to a state in which information has been stored in someone's memory. Thus, in [1]–[3], *wakaru* can be used, but *shiru* or *shitte iru* cannot.

[1] その問題はよく考えれば{**分かります** / ×**知りますよ**}。
*Sono mondai wa yoku kangaereba{**wakarimasu** / ×**shirimasu**} yo.*
(If you think hard, you'll be able to figure out (how to solve) that problem.)

[2] 杉本さんの発表はとても{**分かり** / ×**知り**}やすかった。(= (2a))
*Sugimoto-san no happyō wa totemo{**wakari** / ×**shiri**} -yasukatta.*
(Sugimoto-san's presentation was very easy to follow.)

[3] 村上さんの電話番号は北川さんに聞いたら{**分かる** / ×**知る**}と思います。(cf. Ex.(g))
*Murakami-san no denwa-bangō wa Kitagawa-san ni kiitara{**wakaru** / ×**shiru**} to omoimasu.*
(I think you can get Murakami-san's phone number if you ask Kitagawa-san.)

In [4], too, *wakaru* can be used, but *shiru* cannot. This is because *shirimasen* means that someone has no knowledge about something/someone, but it is odd to say that the speaker has no knowledge about his/her own plan. On the other hand, *wakarimasen* means that someone cannot obtain the information needed, and in this case, the speaker cannot provide information the listener is asking for because he has not decided what to do yet. Thus, *wakarimasen* is an acceptable response to the question.

[4] A: 今晩何をするつもりですか。
Konban nani o suru tsumori desu ka.
(What are you planning to do tonight?)

B: まだ{**分かりません** / ×**知りません**}。
Mada{***wakarimasen*** / ×***shirimasen***}.
(I don't know yet.)

However, if A is asking B about someone else's plan, *shirimasen* can be used, as in [5]. Here, *shirimasen* simply means that the speaker has no information as to what his roommate will do, while *wakarimasen* means that he cannot tell because he has no information.

[5] A: ルームメートは今晩何をしますか。
Rūmumēto wa konban nani o shimasu ka.
(What will your roommate do this evening?)

B: さあ、{**分かりません** / **知りません**}。
Sā, {***wakarimasen*** / ***shirimasen***}.
(Hmm, I don't know.)

In situations in which what matters is just whether a person knows of someone/something or not, *wakaru* cannot be used. [6] and [7] provide such examples.

[6] 私は森さん{**をよく知っています** / ×**がよく分かります**}。
Watashi wa Mori-san{***o yoku shitte imasu*** / ×***ga yoku wakarimasu***}.
(I know Mori-san well.)

[7] 『東京物語』という映画{**を知っています** / ×**が分かります**}か。
"Tōkyō Monogatari" to iu eiga{***o shitte imasu*** / ×***ga wakarimasu***}***ka.***
(Do you know the film called "Tokyo Story"?)

In [8]–[12], both *wakaru* and *shitte iru* can be used, but the meanings are different as the English translations show. (⇒ ***shiru***)

[8] a. 私はドイツ語が少し**分かる**。
Watashi wa doitsugo ga sukoshi ***wakaru.***
(I understand some German.)

b. 私はドイツ語を少し**知っている**。
Watashi wa doitsugo o sukoshi ***shitte iru.***
(I have some knowledge of German.)

[9] a. この文章が**分かりますか**。
Kono bunshō ga ***wakarimasu*** *ka.*
(Can you comprehend this writing?)

W

b. この文章を**知っていますか**。
Kono bunshō o ***shitte imasu*** *ka.*
(Do you know this writing?)

[10] a. 私はこの理論が**分かる**。
*Watashi wa kono riron ga **wakaru**.*
(I can comprehend this theory.)

b. 私はこの理論を**知っている**。
*Watashi wa kono riron o **shitte iru**.*
(I know of this theory.)

[11] a. デールは日本語の冗談が**分かる**。(= (2c))
*Dēru wa nihongo no jōdan ga **wakaru**.*
(Dale understands Japanese jokes.)

b. デールは日本語の冗談を**知っている**。
*Dēru wa nihongo no jōdan o **shitte iru**.*
(Dale knows some Japanese jokes.)

[12] a. 太田さんの住所が**分かりますか**。
*Ōta-san no jūsho ga **wakarimasu** ka.*
(⎧Can you find out / Do you have⎫ Ohta-san's address?)

b. 太田さんの住所を**知っていますか**。
*Ōta-san no jūsho o **shitte imasu** ka.*
(Do you know Ohta-san's address?)

Note that [12a] and [12b] are said differently, but convey the same thing, i.e., they are both asking for Ota's address.

～ wake da　～わけだ　*phr.* (*n.* + *da*)

a dependent noun with *da*, which indicates the speaker's conclusion obtained through logical judgment based on what he/she has learned or realized

so; It means that ~; No wonder; that's why; naturally

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Sentence 1	Sentence 2			
		Adj(*i*)plain		
明日試験ですか。 *Ashita shiken desu ka.*	じゃあ、今晩 *Jā, konban*	忙しい ***isogashii***	わけです *wake desu*	ね。 *ne.*
(Do you have an exam tomorrow? Then, you must be busy tonight. (lit., Then, it means that you'll be busy tonight, right?))				

(B)

Sentence 1	Sentence 2			
		Vplain		
毎日３時間も日本語を勉強しているんですか。 *Mai-nichi san-jikan mo nihongo o benkyō-shite iru n desu ka.*	よく *Yoku*	できる ***dekiru***	わけです *wake desu*	ね。 *ne.*
(Are you studying Japanese (as long as) three hours every day? No wonder your Japanese is good.)				

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } わけだ
wake da

{ 話す / 話した } わけだ (No wonder s.o. talks/talked.)
{ *hanasu* / *hanashita* } *wake da*

{ 高い / 高かった } わけだ (No wonder s.t. is/was expensive.)
{ *takai* / *takakatta* } *wake da*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } わけだ
{ *na* / *datta* } *wake da*

静か { な / だった } わけだ (No wonder s.t. is/was quiet.)
shizuka { *na* / *datta* } *wake da*

(iii) N { な / である } わけだ
{ *na* / *de aru* } *wake da*

W

N だったわけだ
datta wake da

先輩 { な / である } わけだ (It means that s.o. is s.o.'s senior.)
senpai { *na* / *de aru* } *wake da*

先輩だったわけだ (It means that s.o. was s.o.'s senior.)
senpai datta wake da

Examples

(a) A: 来月から４か月フランスに行きます。
Raigetsu kara yon-kagetsu Furansu ni ikimasu.
(I'll go to France next month and stay there for four months.)

B: じゃあ、６月に帰ってくるわけですね。
Jā, roku-gatsu ni kaette kuru wake desu ne.
(Then, (it means that) you're returning here in June, right?)

(b) ロスさんは子供の時からゴルフをしているのだから上手なわけだ。
Rosu-san wa kodomo no toki kara gorufu o shite iru no da kara jōzu na wake da.
(Ross-san has been playing golf since he was a child, so no wonder he is good at it.)

(c) 毎日プールで泳いでいるんですか。元気なわけですね。
Mai-nichi pūru de oyoide iru n desu ka. Genki na wake desu ne.
(Are you swimming in the pool every day? No wonder you're healthy.)

(d) えっ？足立さんが入院したんですか。パーティーに来なかったわけだ。
Eh? Adachi-san ga nyūin-shita n desu ka. Pātī ni konakatta wake da.
(What? Was Adachi-san hospitalized? That's why he didn't come to the party.)

(e) A: 島田さんは英語のことは何でも知っています。
Shimada-san wa eigo no koto wa nan demo shitte imasu.
(Shimada-san knows everything about English.)

B: 生き字引というわけですね。
Ikijibiki to iu wake desu ne.
(So, he is a walking (lit., living) dictionary, you mean.)

(f) A: 私はもうこれ以上、今の仕事を続けられません。
Watashi wa mō kore ijō, ima no shigoto o tsuzukeraremasen.
(I can't stay in my current job any longer.)

B: じゃ、辞めたいというわけですか。
Ja, yame-tai to iu wake desu ka.
(Then, (you mean) you want to quit it?)

Notes

1. Basically, in "S_1. S_2 *wake da*," S_1 is the reason for S_2. Here, S_1 is often a pseudo confirmation sentence that ends with *(n desu) ka*; that is, the speaker does not wait for the listener's response and utters S_2. In Ex.(b), that S_1 is the reason for S_2 is explicitly indicated by the reason conjunction *kara*. In this case, *wake da* indicates that the speaker understands why S_2. Without *wake da*, the sentence simply means that S_2 because S_1 with no implication.

W

2. In some situations, S_1 and "S_2 *wake da*" are uttered by two different speakers, as in Exs.(a), (e) and (f).

3. There are three situations in which "S_1. S_2 *wake da*" is used. (As mentioned in Note 2, in some situations, S_1 and "S_2 *wake da*" are uttered by two different speakers.)

   (i) The speaker has just learned S_1, and from that, he/she assumes that S_2 is the case. (KS(A) and Ex.(a))

   (ii) The speaker had known S_2, and just learned S_1, which makes him/her understand why S_2. (KS(B) and Exs.(b)–(d))

   (iii) S_2 is a restatement or interpretation of S_1. In this case, *to iu* follows S_2. (Exs.(e) and (f))

4. The negative form "S *wake de wa nai*" is used to mean "it doesn't mean S" or "it is not that S," as in (1) and (2).

   (1) 私はあまりコーヒーを飲まない。でも、嫌いな**わけではない**。
   Watashi wa amari kōhī o nomanai. Demo, kirai na ***wake de wa nai.***
   (I don't drink much coffee, but it doesn't mean that I don't like it.)

   (2) 父の言うことが分からない**わけではない**が、私はどうしても医者になりたくない。
   Chichi no iu koto ga wakaranai ***wake de wa nai*** *ga, watashi wa dōshitemo isha ni naritakunai.*
   (It's not that I don't understand what my father is saying, but I simply don't want to become a doctor.)

5. The *wake* in the examples presented so far is a dependent noun, and does not carry any specific meaning in itself. However, *wake* can also be used as an independent noun, meaning "reason" as in (3) and (4) below:

   (3) ここに来た**わけ**は言えません。
   Koko ni kita ***wake*** *wa iemasen.*
   (I can't tell you the reason why I came here.)

   (4) 会社を辞めたそうですね。その**わけ**を教えてもらえませんか。
   Kaisha o yameta sō desu ne. Sono ***wake*** *o oshiete moraemasen ka.*
   (I heard that you quit the company. Could you tell me why (lit., the reason for that)?)

ya や *prt.*

a particle that lists two or more nouns or noun phrases in a non-exhaustive fashion

and
【REL. ***to***[1]; *toka*[1]】

◆ Key Sentence

	Noun		Noun	Prt	
パーティーには *Pātī ni wa*	北野さん ***Kitano-san***	や *ya*	竹中さん ***Takenaka-san***	が *ga*	いた / いました。 *ita / imashita.*
(Kitano-san and Takenaka-san (and others) were at the party.)					

Examples

(a) 私たちはピザやビールを注文した。
Watashi-tachi wa piza ya bīru o chūmon-shita.
(We ordered pizza, beer, and other things.)

(b) エリカはサラやニッキーにメールした。
Erika wa Sara ya Nikkī ni mēru-shita.
(Erica sent emails to Sarah, Nicky and others.)

(c) 日本のコンビニではいろいろな食べ物や飲み物のほか、文房具や雑誌も買えます。
Nihon no konbini de wa iroiro na tabemono ya nomimono no hoka, bun-bōgu ya zasshi mo kaemasu.
(At convenience stores in Japan, in addition to various foods and drinks, you can buy stationery, magazines, etc.)

Note

Ya is used to combine two or more nouns or noun phrases. Note that it cannot be used to combine verbs and adjectives. Thus, (1) and (2) are unacceptable.

(1) ×昨日はデパートに行った**や**映画を見た。
× *Kinō wa depāto ni itta **ya** eiga o mita.*
(*Intended meaning*: Yesterday I did things like going to a department store and seeing a movie.)

(2) ×赤い**や**黄色いパプリカを使ってサラダを作った。
× *Akai **ya** kiiroi papurika o tsukatte sarada o tsukutta.*
(*Intended meaning*: I made salad with bell peppers in red, yellow and other colors.)

In order to list verbs non-exhaustively, the "*~tari ~tari suru*" construction is used, as in (3). (⇒ ***~tari ~tari suru***)

(3) 昨日はデパートに行った**り**映画を見た**り**した。
*Kinō wa depāto ni itt**ari** eiga o mit**ari shita**.*
(Yesterday I did things like going to a department store and seeing a movie.)

The intended meaning of the sentence in (2) can be expressed using the nouns *aka* "red" and *kiiro* "yellow," as in (4).

(4) **赤や黄色の**パプリカを使ってサラダを作った。
***Aka ya kiiro no** papurika o tsukatte sarada o tsukutta.*
(I made salad with bell peppers in red, yellow and other colors.)

【Related Expression】

Toka[1] is also used to make a non-exhaustive listing of items. Thus, in KS, for example, *toka* can be used for *ya*, as in [1]. The difference between the two expressions here is that the *toka* sentence sounds more colloquial than the *ya* sentence.

[1] パーティーには北野さん{**とか** / **や**}竹中さん{(**とか**) / ×**や**}がいた。
(cf. KS)
*Pātī ni wa Kitano-san{**toka** / **ya**} Takenaka-san{**(toka)** / × **ya**} ga ita.*
(Kitano-san and Takenaka-san (and others) were at the party.)

Note that *ya* cannot be used with the last item while *toka* can optionally be used with the last item. Because of this, *toka* can be used with only one item, but *ya* cannot, as in [2].

[2] 日本に行ったら、京都{**とか** / ×**や**}を見てみたいです。
*Nihon ni ittara, Kyōto{**toka** / × **ya**} o mite mi-taidesu.*
(If I go to Japan, I'd like to visit Kyoto and other places.)

Another difference between *toka* and *ya* is that *ya* can be used only with nouns, whereas *toka* can also be used with verb phrases and sentences, as in [3].
(⇒ ***toka***[1])

[3] a. 週末はたいてい音楽を聞く{**とか** / ×**や**}本を読む{**とか** / ×**や**}して過ごします。
*Shūmatsu wa taitei ongaku o kiku{**toka** / × **ya**} hon o yomu{**toka** / × **ya**} shite sugoshimasu.*
(I spend weekends doing things like listening to music and reading books.)

Y

b. フィリスは、そのルールは不公平だ{**とか** / ×**や**}差別だ{**とか** / ×**や**}言っている。
*Firisu wa, sono rūru wa fukōhei da{**toka** / ×**ya**} sabetsu da{**toka** / ×**ya**} itte iru.*
(Phillis says that those rules are unfair, discriminatory, etc.)

yahari やはり *adv.*

an adverb that indicates that an actual situation has turned out as the speaker expected

as expected; still; as before; in the same way; also; after all; in the end
【REL. *kekkyoku*; *masaka*; *sasuga (ni)*】
(ANT. *masaka*)

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			
ベイリーさん *Beirī-san*	は *wa*	やはり *yahari*	来なかった / 来ませんでした。 *konakatta / kimasendeshita.*
(Baily-san didn't come, as expected.)			

Examples

(a) 久美はやはりアパートにいなかった。
Kumi wa yahari apāto ni inakatta.
(As I expected, Kumi was not in her apartment.)

(b) 今もやはりヨガをしていますか。
Ima mo yahari yoga o shite imasu ka.
(Are you still practicing yoga now?)

(c) やっぱり日本のお米はおいしいですね。
Yappari Nihon no o-kome wa oishiidesu ne.
((A) Japanese rice is tasty as before. (B) As expected, Japanese rice is good.)

(d) お兄さんはテニスが上手ですが、弟さんもやっぱり上手ですよ。
O-nīsan wa tenisu ga jōzu desu ga, otōto-san mo yappari jōzu desu yo.
(The older brother is good at tennis, and the younger brother is also good at it, as expected.)

(e) 私はやはり拓真さんと結婚することにしました。
Watashi wa yahari Takuma-san to kekkon-suru koto ni shimashita.
(I've decided to marry Takuma-san after all.)

Notes

1. *Yappari* is a variation of *yahari*. While *yahari* is used in both written and spoken language, *yappari* is commonly used in conversation and sounds more casual. In some situations, *yappari* sounds more emphatic than *yahari*.

2. In general, *yahari* is used when an event, someone's action, the state of someone/something, the identity of someone, etc. has turned out as the speaker expected or anticipated. In many situations, the English expressions "as I expected," "as expected" and the like convey the nuance of *yahari*, but there are situations in which other English expressions are more suitable, as follows.

(A) X was doing something or was in some state at one point in the past, and the speaker has expected that X has been doing the same thing or has been in the same state. In this case, "still" or "as before" is appropriate, as in Exs.(b) and (c)–(A). (1) provides an additional example.

(1) 佐野さんは今も**やはり**前の彼女のことが忘れられないらしい。
*Sano-san wa ima mo **yahari** mae no kanojo no koto ga wasure-rarenai rashii.*
(It seems that Sano-san is still obsessed with (lit., cannot forget about) his former girlfriend even now.)

(B) X is in some state, and the speaker expects that Y, which is similar to X, is in the same state as that of X. In this case, "in the same way" or "also" is suitable, as in Ex.(d) and (2) below.

(2) 去年の夏は本当に暑かったが、今年の夏も**やはり**ひどい暑さだった。
*Kyonen no natsu wa hontō ni atsukatta ga, kotoshi no natsu mo **yahari** hidoi atsusa datta.*
(It was really hot last summer, and the summer this year was horribly hot in the same way.)

(C) The speaker once thought that someone would do (or not do) something or something would (or would not) happen, and that anticipation turned out to be the reality. In this case, "after all" or "in the end" is appropriate, as in Ex.(e) and (3) below.

(3) 本当に困った時に頼れるのは**やはり**家族だった。
*Hontō ni komatta toki ni tayoreru no wa **yahari** kazoku datta.*
(In the end, it was my family whom I could depend on when I was in serious trouble.)

3. *Yahari* is sometimes used in the form of "*Yahari* X *da.* S," in which S is a comment on X. In this case, "*Yahari* X *da.*" means "As is expected from X." (4) provides examples.

(4) **やはり**東京だ。観光するところが多い。
***Yahari** Tōkyō da. Kankō-suru tokoro ga ōi.*
(As is expected from Tokyo, there are many places to sightsee.)

【Related Expressions】

I. *Sasuga (ni)* is similar to *yahari* in meaning, as in [1].

[1] a. {**さすが(に)** / **やはり**}アメリカは広い。
{***Sasuga (ni)*** / ***Yahari***} *Amerika wa hiroi.*
(Exactly as I expected, America is huge.)

b. {**さすが(に)** / **やはり**}山下さんだ。仕事が速くて間違いが１つもなかった。
{***Sasuga (ni)*** / ***Yahari***} *Yamashita-san da. Shigoto ga hayakute machigai ga hito-tsu mo nakatta.*
(As I expect from Yamashita-san, she completed the job very quickly and made no mistakes.)

However, *sasuga (ni)* only means "as expected" and indicates that the speaker is very much impressed or surprised by the given situation. Thus, in [2], *sasuga (ni)* cannot be used if the sentence simply indicates the speaker's expectation.

[2] a. ベイリーさんは{**やはり** / × **さすが(に)**}来なかった。(= KS)
Beirī-san wa {***yahari*** / × ***sasuga (ni)***} *konakatta.*
(Baily-san didn't come, as expected.)

b. 久美は{**やはり** / × **さすが(に)**}アパートにいなかった。(= Ex.(a))
Kumi wa {***yahari*** / × ***sasuga (ni)***} *apāto ni inakatta.*
(As I expected, Kumi was not in her apartment.)

II. When *yahari* means "after all" or "in the end," as in Ex.(e) and (3) in Note 2, *yahari* can be replaced by *kekkyoku*, as in [3].

[3] a. 私は{**やはり** / **結局**}拓真さんと結婚することにしました。(cf. Ex.(e))
Watashi wa {***yahari*** / ***kekkyoku***} *Takuma-san to kekkon-suru koto ni shimashita.*
(I've decided to marry Takuma-san after all.)

b. 本当に困った時に頼れるのは{**やはり** / **結局**}家族だった。(cf. (3))
Hontō ni komatta toki ni tayoreru no wa {***yahari*** / ***kekkyoku***} *kazoku datta.*

(In the end, it was my family whom I could depend on when I was in serious trouble.)

[4] provides additional examples.

[4] a. いろいろな薬を飲んだが｛**やはり / 結局**｝治らなかった。
*Iroiro na kusuri o nonda ga｛**yahari / kekkyoku**｝naoranakatta.*
(I took all kinds of medicine, but I wasn't cured after all.)

b. ｛**やはり / 結局**｝大学院には行かないことにした。
｛***Yahari / Kekkyoku***｝*daigakuin ni wa ikanai koto ni shita.*
(After all, I decided not to go to graduate school.)

III. The adverb *masaka* "by no means," "on no account" or "surely not" is used when a given situation is far from the speaker's expectation. In that sense, it is an antonym of *yahari*. *Masaka* is used with a negative predicate or is used all by itself, meaning "No way!" or "You don't say!" as in [5b].

[5] a. **まさか**小川さんが先生になるとは思わなかった。
***Masaka** Ogawa-san ga sensei ni naru to wa omowanakatta.*
(I never expected Ogawa-san to become a teacher.)

b. A: ウォルターが入院したそうだ。
Worutā ga nyūin-shita sō da.
(I heard that Walter was hospitalized.)

B: **まさか**！ 昨日テニスをしていたよ。
***Masaka**! Kinō tenisu o shite ita yo.*
(No way! He was playing tennis yesterday.)

～ yasui / nikui ～やすい / にくい *aux. adj. (i)*

Y

S.t. or s.o. is easy/hard to ~.

~ *yasui*: easy to do s.t.; easily
~ *nikui*: hard to do s.t.; difficult to do s.t.; do not ~ easily

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)		V*masu*	
この漢字 *Kono kanji*	は *wa*	**覚え** ***oboe***	やすい / やすいです。 *-yasui / yasuidesu.* にくい / にくいです。 *-nikui / nikuidesu*
(This kanji is easy/hard to memorize.)			

Formation

V*masu* やすい / にくい
-yasui / nikui

話しやすい / にくい (easy/hard to speak)
hanashi-yasui / nikui

食べやすい / にくい (easy/hard to eat)
tabe-yasui / nikui

Examples

(a) このペンは書きやすい。
Kono pen wa kaki-yasui.
(This pen is easy to write with.)

(b) この説明は分かりにくい。
Kono setsumei wa wakari-nikui.
(This explanation is hard to understand.)

(c) あの先生は話しにくいです。
Ano sensei wa hanashi-nikuidesu.
(That teacher is hard to talk to.)

(d) 上野さんは一緒に仕事がしやすかったです。
Ueno-san wa issho ni shigoto ga shi-yasukattadesu.
(Ueno-san was easy to work with.)

(e) 豆腐は腐りやすい。
Tōfu wa kusari-yasui.
(Tofu goes bad easily.)

(f) このドアは開きにくいですね。
Kono doa wa hiraki-nikuidesu ne.
(This door doesn't open easily, does it?)

Notes

1. "N *wa* V*masu yasui/nikui*" sentences can be made as follows.

   Step 1: Topicalize the N + Prt phrase in the original sentence, as in (1).

   (1) a. <u>この漢字を</u>覚える。 → この漢字**は** (cf. KS)
   <u>Kono kanji o</u> oboeru *Kono kanji **wa***

   b. <u>このペンで</u>書く。 → このペン**は** (cf. Ex.(a))
   <u>Kono pen de</u> kaku *Kono pen **wa***

   Step 2: Attach *yasui/nikui* to the *masu*-stem of the verb.

   (2) a. この漢字は<u>覚え</u>**やすい**。
   *Kono kanji wa <u>oboe</u>-**yasui**.*

   b. このペンは<u>書き</u>**にくい**。
   *Kono pen wa <u>kaki</u>-**nikui**.*

   The following shows the original sentences from which Exs.(c)–(e) are derived:

Original sentence	*Yasui / Nikui* sentence
(私は) **あの先生に**話す。 *(Watashi wa) **ano sensei ni** hanasu.* ((I) talk to that teacher.)	**あの先生は**話しにくいです。(= Ex.(c)) ***Ano sensei wa** hanashi-nikui(desu).* (That teacher is hard to talk to.)
(私は) **上野さんと**一緒に仕事をした。 *(Watashi wa) **Ueno-san to** issho ni shigoto o shita.* (I worked together with Ueno-san.)	**上野さんは**一緒に仕事{が / を}*しやすかったです。(= Ex.(d)) ***Ueno san wa** issho ni shigoto {ga / o} shi-yasukattadesu.* (Ueno-san was easy to work with.)
豆腐が腐る。 ***Tōfu ga** kusaru.* (Tofu goes bad.)	**豆腐は**腐りやすい。(= Ex.(e)) ***Tōfu wa** kusari-yasui.* (Tofu goes bad easily.)

   *See Note 5.

2. When the subject of the original sentence is not human, the interpretation of ~ *yasui/nikui* is that something {happens / doesn't happen} easily, as in Exs.(e) and (f).

3. ~ *yasui* and ~ *nikui* are auxiliary *i*-adjectives and conjugate in the same way as *i*-adjectives, as seen below:

Affirmative	
Non-past	(話し)やすい / やすいです *(hanashi)-yasui / yasuidesu* (話し)にくい / にくいです *(hanashi)-nikui / nikuidesu*
Past	(話し)やすかった / やすかったです *(hanashi)-yasukatta / yasukattadesu* (話し)にくかった / にくかったです *(hanashi)-nikukatta / nikukattadesu*
Te-forms	(話し)やすくて *(hanashi)-yasukute* (話し)にくくて *(hanashi)-nikukute*
Negative	
Non-past	(話し)やすくない / やすくないです *(hanashi)-yasukunai / yasukunaidesu* (話し)にくくない / にくくないです *(hanashi)-nikukunai / nikukunaidesu*
Past	(話し)やすくなかった / やすくなかったです *(hanashi)-yasukunakatta / yasukunakattadesu* (話し)にくくなかった / にくくなかったです *(hanashi)-nikukunakatta / nikukunakattadesu*
Te-forms	(話し)やすくなくて *(hanashi)-yasukunakute* (話し)にくくなくて *(hanashi)-nikukunakute*

4. If the subject of the *yasui/nikui* construction is under focus, it is marked with *ga* rather than *wa*, as in (3). (⇒ ***ga***[1])

   (3) A: どの先生**が**話しやすいですか。
   *Dono sensei **ga** hanashi-yasuidesu ka.*
   (Which professor is easy to talk to?)

   B: 佐藤先生**が**話しやすいです。
   *Satō-sensei **ga** hanashi-yasuidesu.*
   (Prof. Sato is easy to talk to.)

5. When direct objects precede V*masu yasui/nikui*, they are usually marked with *ga* though *o* could be used in some situations, as in (4).

(4) a. 上野さんは一緒に仕事｛**が / を**｝しやすかったです。(cf. Ex.(d))
Ueno-san wa issho ni shigoto ｛***ga / o***｝ *shi-yasukattadesu.*
(Ueno-san was easy to work with.)

b. スライドの字｛**が / ？を**｝読みにくかったので前の席に移った。
Suraido no ji ｛***ga / ? o***｝ *yomi-nikukatta node mae no seki ni utsutta.*
(Because the text in the slides were hard to read, I moved to a front seat.)

6. ~ *yasui/nikui* can modify nouns and verbs. The prenominal forms and the pre-verbal forms are ~ *yasui/nikui* and ~ *yasuku/nikuku*, respectively, as in (5) and (6).

(5) a. 使い**やすい**漢字学習のアプリを知りませんか。
*Tsukai-**yasui** kanji-gakushū no apuri o shirimasen ka.*
(Do you know any app for kanji leaning that is easy to use.)

b. 私はよく傘を壊すので、壊れ**にくい**傘を探しています。
*Watashi wa yoku kasa o kowasu node, koware-**nikui** kasa o sagashite imasu.*
(I often ruin my umbrellas, so I'm looking for a durable one (lit., an umbrella that is hard to break).)

(6) a. スライドの字を大きくして読み**やすく**しました。
*Suraido no ji o ōkiku shite yomi-**yasuku** shimashita.*
(I enlarged the text in the slides to make it easy to read.)

b. 最近この町は住み**にくく**なったと思う。
*Saikin kono machi wa sumi-**nikuku** natta to omou.*
(I think this town has become difficult to live in lately.)

yo よ *prt.*

Y

a sentence-final particle that indicates the speaker's assumption that the information conveyed by the preceding sentence is not known to the listener

I tell you; you know
【REL. *ne*】

◆ Key Sentence

Sentence	
坂本さんは結婚している / います *Sakamoto-san wa kekkon-shite iru / imasu*	よ。 *yo.*
(Sakamoto-san is married, you know.)	

Examples

(a) A: 日本語の勉強はおもしろいですか。
Nihongo no benkyō wa omoshiroidesu ka.
(Is studying Japanese interesting?)
B: ええ、とてもおもしろいですよ。
Ee, totemo omoshiroidesu yo.
(Yes, it's very interesting, I tell you.)

(b) 学生: 先生はマンガなんか読まないでしょう？
Gakusei: *Sensei wa manga nanka yomanai deshō?*
(Professor, you don't read things like comic books, do you?)
先生: いいえ、読みますよ。
Sensei: *Īe, yomimasu yo.*
(Yes, I do (contrary to what you think).)

Notes

1. The sentence-final particle *yo* is used when the speaker strongly wants to share with the listener what the speaker is saying, as in Ex.(a), or wants to correct the listener's thought or understanding about something, as in Ex.(b). KS can be used in either situation.

2. *Yo* can be used with commands, requests, invitations, and advice sentences, and makes the command, request, etc. sound more forceful, as in (1).

(1) a. 話せよ。[Command]
Hanase ***yo.***
(Tell me!)

b. 話しなさいよ。[Polite command (commonly used by female speakers)]
Hanashi-nasai ***yo.***
(Tell me!)

c. 話してくださいよ。[Request]
Hanashite kudasai ***yo.***
(Please tell me!)

d. {行こう / 行きましょう}**よ**。[Invitation]
{*Ikō / Ikimashō*} ***yo.***
(Let's go!)

e. たばこはやめたほうがいいです**よ**。[Advice]
Tabako wa yameta hō ga iidesu ***yo.***
(You'd better quit smoking.)

3. *Yo* cannot be used with questions, including those with the functions of invitation and suggestion, as in (2), because the function of *yo* stated in Note 1 and the act of questioning contradict each other.

(2) a. ×新聞を{読みます / 読む}か**よ**。[Question]
× *Shinbun o {yomimasu / yomu} ka* ***yo.***
(*Intended meaning*: Do you read newspapers?)

b. ×パーティーに来ませんか**よ**。[Invitation]
× *Pātī ni kimasen ka* ***yo.***
(*Intended meaning*: Would you like to come to the party?)

c. ×カラオケに{行こう / 行きましょう}か**よ**。[Invitation]
× *Karaoke ni {ikō / ikimashō} ka* ***yo.***
(*Intended meaning*: Shall we go to karaoke?)

d. ×病院に行ったらどうですか**よ**。[Suggestion]
× *Byōin ni ittara dō desu ka* ***yo.***
(*Intended meaning*: Why don't you go to the hospital?)

4. *Yo* cannot be used with volitional sentences with volitional forms, as in (3).

(3) ×その仕事は私が{しよう / しましょう}**よ**。
× *Sono shigoto wa watashi ga {shiyō / shimashō}* ***yo.***
(*Intended meaning*: *I* will do that job.)

Note that *yo* can be used with volitional sentences with non-volitional forms, as in (4).

(4) その仕事は私が{する / します}**よ**。
Sono shigoto wa watashi ga {suru / shimasu} ***yo.***
(*I* will do that job.)

5. In some situations, another sentence-final particle *ne* is attached to "S *yo*."
(⇒ ***ne***: Note 6)

[Related Expression]

Y

The tag question marker *ne* is another frequently used sentence-final particle. In contrast to *yo*, *ne* is used when the speaker assumes that the information conveyed

by the preceding sentence is known to the listener. For example, if the speaker is looking at a delicious-looking piece of cake with his friend, he would say [1a] rather than [1b].

[1] a. おいしそうですね。
Oishi-sō desu ***ne.***
(It looks delicious, doesn't it?)

b. × おいしそうですよ。
× *Oishi-sō desu* ***yo.***
(It looks delicious, I tell you.)

On the other hand, if he is eating some delicious cake that his friend has not tasted, he would say [2a] rather than [2b]. (⇒ ***ne***)

[2] a. おいしいですよ。
Oishiidesu ***yo.***
(It's good, I tell you.)

b. × おいしいですね。
× *Oishiidesu* ***ne.***
(It's good, isn't it?)

～yō　～よう　*verb ending*

a verb ending that indicates the speaker's volition

(I/We) will do s.t.; Shall (I/we) do s.t.?; Let's do s.t.
【REL. ~***mashō***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

	Subject (1st person)		Vvol
部長には *Buchō ni wa*	**私** ***watashi***	が *ga*	話そう。 ***hanasō.***
(*I* will talk (about it) to the department chief.)			

(B)

	Vvol	
引っ越しを *Hikkoshi o*	手伝おう ***tetsuda**ō*	か。 *ka.*
(Shall I help out with your move?)		

(C)

	Vvol
今晩はピザを *Konban wa piza o*	食べよう。 ***tabe**yō.*
(Let's have pizza tonight.)	

(D)

	Vvol	
今度の週末は京都に *Kondo no shūmatsu wa Kyōto ni*	行こう ***ik**ō*	か。 *ka.*
(Shall we go to Kyoto next weekend?)		

Formation

(i) Gr. 1 verbs: Change the final [*u*] sound of the dictionary form to [*oo*]. The second [*o*] sound is spelled as う.

話す → 話そう (I will talk.; Let's talk.)
hanasu *hanasō*

買う → 買おう (I will buy s.t.; Let's buy s.t.)
kau *kaō*

(ii) Gr. 2 verbs: Vstem よう

見る → 見よう (I will watch s.t.; Let's watch s.t.)
miru *miyō*

食べる → 食べよう (I will eat.; Let's eat.)
taberu *tabeyō*

(iii) Irr. verbs

来る → 来よう (I will come.; Let's come.)
kuru *koyō*

する → しよう (I will do s.t.; Let's do s.t.)
suru *shiyō*

Examples

(a) 僕がサラダを作ろう。
Boku ga sarada o tsukurō.
(*I* will make a salad.)

(b) そのかばん、重そうだね。持とうか。
Sono kaban, omo-sō da ne. Motō ka.
(That bag looks heavy. Shall I carry it (for you)?)

(c) このアイデアを使って二人でビジネスを始めようよ。
Kono aidea o tsukatte futari de bijinesu o hajimeyō yo.
(Let's start a business together using this idea.)

(d) 夏休みに一緒に旅行しようか。
Natsu-yasumi ni issho ni ryokō-shiyō ka.
(Shall we take a trip together during summer vacation?)

Notes

1. Verb forms like *hanasō* and *tabeyō* are called "plain volitional forms" (or simply "volitional forms" when the context is clear). The endings of plain volitional forms differ depending on the verb type as shown in Formation. Plain volitional forms are used in casual speech and in certain grammatical constructions, such as *~yō to omou* "think (I) will ~" and *~yō to suru* "try to ~." Polite volitional forms are used in polite speech.

(⇒ ***~mashō***; ***~yō to omou***; ***~yō to suru***)

2. In general, volitional forms are used to express the speaker's volitional actions. More specifically, they are used when the speaker volunteers to do something, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), offers to do something, as in KS(B) and Ex.(b), and invites the listener to do something together, as in KSs(C), (D), Exs.(c) and (d).

3. Volitional forms are also used in embedded sentences with "verbs of thinking" (e.g., *omou* "think," *kangaeru* "think," *mayou* "unable to decide"), as in (1).

(1) a. 大学を卒業したら高校の先生に**なろう**と思う。
*Daigaku o sotsugyō-shitara kōkō no sensei ni **narō** to omou.*
(I think I'll become a high school teacher after graduating from college.)

b. この週末は何を**しよう**かと考えている。
*Kono shūmatsu wa nani o **shiyō** ka to kangaete iru.*
(I'm wondering what I want to (lit., I will) do this weekend.)

c. 電気自動車を**買おう**かハイブリッド車を**買おう**か迷っている。
*Denki-jidōsha o **kaō** ka haiburiddo-sha o **kaō** ka mayotte iru.*
(I can't make up my mind whether I should buy an EV or a hybrid car.)

4. Plain volitional forms are also used in indirect speech. For example, the direct speech sentence in (2a) can be rephrased into an indirect speech sentence, as in (2b).

(2) a. 藤村さんは「コーヒーを**飲みましょう**」と言った。
*Fujimura-san wa "Kōhī o **nomimashō**" to itta.*
(Fujimura-san said, "Let's have coffee.")

b. 藤村さんはコーヒーを**飲もう**と言った。
*Fujimura-san wa kōhī o **nomō** to itta.*
(Fujimura-san suggested we drink coffee.)

～ yō da[1] ～ようだ[1] *phr.* (*aux. adj. (na)* + *da*)

an auxiliary *na*-adjective with *da* that indicates the speaker's conjecture based on his/her judgment or interpretation of what he/she observes

It looks like; appear; seem
【REL. ~ *darō*; ~ *mitai da*; ~ *rashii*; ~ *sō da*[2]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vplain	
このアプリは *Kono apuri*	は *wa*	バグが *bagu ga*	**ある** ***aru***	ようだ / です。 *yō da / desu.*
(It looks like this app has a bug.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)			Adj(*na*)		
南さん *Minami-san*	は *wa*	肉料理が *niku-ryōri ga*	**好き** ***suki***	な *na*	ようだ / です。 *yō da / desu.*
(It seem that Minami-san likes meat dishes.)					

(C)

Topic (subject)		Noun		
あそこにいる人 *Asoko ni iru hito*	は *wa*	**日本人** ***nihonjin***	の *no*	ようだ / です。 *yō da / desu.*
(It looks like the person over there is Japanese.)				

Formation

(i) { Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain } ようだ
yō da

{ 話す / 話した } ようだ (It appears that s.o. { will talk / talks / talked }.)
{ *hanasu / hanashita* } *yō da*

{ 高い / 高かった } ようだ (It appears that s.t. is/was expensive.)
{ *takai / takakatta* } *yō da*

(ii) Adj(*na*) { な / だった } ようだ
{ *na / datta* } *yō da*

静か { な / だった } ようだ (It appears that s.t. is/was quiet.)
shizuka { *na / datta* } *yō da*

(iii) N { の / だった } ようだ
{ *no / datta* } *yō da*

先生 { の / だった } ようだ (It appears that s.o. is/was a teacher.)
sensei { *no / datta* } *yō da*

Examples

(a) 会議はもう始まっているようです。
Kaigi wa mō hajimatte iru yō desu.
(It looks like the meeting has already begun.)

(b) この教科書は学生にはちょっと高すぎるようだ。
Kono kyōkasho wa gakusei ni wa chotto taka-sugiru yō da.
(It appears that this textbook is a little too expensive for students.)

(c) [Smelling old meat]
これは食べないほうがいいようです。
Kore wa tabenai hō ga ii yō desu.
(It looks like we'd better not eat this.)

(d) 巧は国立大学を受験したが、だめだったようだ。
Takumi wa kokuritsu-daigaku o juken-shita ga, dame datta yō da.
(Takumi took the entrance exam for a national university, but it doesn't look like he made it (lit., it looks like he didn't make it).)

(e) マーさんのうちはお金持ちだったようだ。
Mā-san no uchi wa o-kanemochi datta yō da.
(It seems like Ma-san's family was once rich.)

Notes

1. *Yō da* is used to express the speaker's conjecture when the information (often visual information, but not necessarily so) his/her conjecture is based on is reliable and he/she is also confident about his/her judgment or interpretation of the information. (See Related Expressions.)

2. "S *yō da*" is also used when the speaker is certain that S is the case but when he/she wants to avoid making a definitive statement. For example, the speaker can say (1) even when he/she is certain that the listener used a wrong kanji in a report.

   (1) この漢字は違っている**ようです**。
   Kono kanji wa chigatte iru ***yō desu.***
   (This kanji appears to be wrong.)

3. In responding to a question using *yō da*, *sono yō da* can be used instead of repeating the same predicate in the question, as in (2).

   (2) A: 林田さんはもう帰りましたか。
   Hayashida-san wa mō kaerimashita ka.
   (Has Hayashida-san left for home already?)

   B: はい、{帰った / その}ようです。
   Hai, {***kaetta*** / ***sono***} *yō desu.*
   (Yes, it looks like {he has / it}.)

【Related Expressions】

I. *Mitai da* is used almost in the same way as *yō da*[1]. That is, meaning-wise, they are identical, although *mitai da* is more colloquial than *yō da*[1]. In terms of formation, *na* after *na*-adjectives and *no* after nouns drop before *mitai da*, as in [1].

[1] a. ピーターソンさんは辛いものが嫌い{ø みたい / なよう}だ。
Pītāson-san wa karai mono ga kirai{ø ***mitai*** / ***na yō***} ***da.***
(It seems like Peterson-san doen't like spicy things.)

b. この建物は昔のお城{ø みたい / のよう}だ。
Kono tatemono wa mukashi no o-shiro{ø ***mitai*** / ***no yō***} ***da.***
(It looks like this building is an old castle.)

Y

The following table compares the connection forms of *mitai da* and *yō da*[1].

	Present	Past
Vplain	話す｛みたい / よう｝だ *hanasu*｛*mitai* / *yō*｝*da* (It appears that s.o. will talk.)	話した｛みたい / よう｝だ *hanashita*｛*mitai* / *yō*｝*da* (It appears that s.o. talked.)
Adj(*i*)plain	高い｛みたい / よう｝だ *takai*｛*mitai* / *yō*｝*da* (It appears that s.t. is expensive.)	高かった｛みたい / よう｝だ *takakatta*｛*mitai* / *yō*｝*da* (It appears that s.t. was expensive.)
Adj(*na*)	静か｛みたい / **な**よう｝だ *shizuka*｛*mitai* / ***na*** *yō*｝*da* (It appears that s.t. is quiet.)	静かだった｛みたい / よう｝だ *shizuka datta*｛*mitai* / *yō*｝*da* (It appears that s.t. was quiet.)
N	先生｛みたい / **の**よう｝だ *sensei*｛*mitai* / ***no*** *yō*｝*da* (It appears that s.o. is a teacher.)	先生だった｛みたい / よう｝だ *sensei datta*｛*mitai* / *yō*｝*da* (It appears that s.o. was a teacher.)

Note also that *sono yō da* becomes *sō mitai da*, as in [2].

[2] A: 林田さんはもう帰りましたか。
Hayashida-san wa mō kaerimashita ka.
(Has Hayashida-san left for home already?)

B: はい、｛そのよう / そうみたい｝です。(cf. (2))
Hai,｛***sono yō*** / ***sō mitai***｝***desu.***
(Yes, it looks like it.)

II. The conjecture expressions *darō*, *rashii* and *sō da*[2] are used in similar situations to *yō da*[1]. The differences are as follows.

(i) *Darō* expresses the speaker's conjecture, but it is not necessarily based on a certain piece of information. In other words, *darō* can be used even when the speaker is merely guessing without referring to something he/she sees, has heard, read, etc. (⇒ ~ ***darō***)

(ii) *Rashii* expresses the speaker's conjecture primarily based on secondary information (e.g., what the speaker has heard or read). However, *rashii* is also used when the conjecture is based on visual information, although the speaker is not as confident about his/her statement as when he/she uses *yō da*[1]. (See (iv) below.) *Rashii* is also used as a hearsay expression like *sō da*[1]. (⇒ ~ ***rashii***: Related Expression II)

(iii) *Sō da*[2] expresses the speaker's conjecture about what is going to happen or the state of someone or something at the moment of speech. Although

this expression is based on what the speaker sees or feels, it is merely his/her impression and the degree of certainty in the statement is fairly low. Unlike the other three expressions, nouns cannot be used before *sō da*[2].

(⇒ ~ ***sō da***[2])

(iv) *Yō da*[1] expresses the speaker's conjecture based on visual information. Unlike *rashii* and *sō da*[2], this expression is used when the information is reliable and the speaker is confident about his/her judgment or interpretation of the information on which the conjecture is based.

The sentences in [3] demonstrate the differences among these four expressions.

[3] a. この本は高いだろう。
*Kono hon wa takai **darō**.*
(This book is probably expensive.)

b. この本は高いらしい。
*Kono hon wa takai **rashii**.*
((From what I heard or read,) this book seems expensive. / I heard that this book is expensive.)

c. この本は高そうだ。
*Kono hon wa taka-**sō da**.*
(This book looks expensive.)

d. この本は高いようだ。
*Kono hon wa takai **yō da**.*
((Considering the prices of similar books,) this book seems expensive.)

Here, [3a] indicates the speaker's mere conjecture about the book. That is, this sentence can be used even when the speaker has no information about the book. [3b] expresses the speaker's conjecture based on what he/she has heard or read about the book. That is, this sentence is used when the speaker thinks that the book is expensive after hearing or reading a story that indicates that the book is expensive. If the sentence involves little conjecture, it is almost equivalent to hearsay. (See *sō da*[1].) [3c] also indicates the speaker's conjecture, but in this case it is based on what he/she sees (e.g., the speaker sees the book's fancy binding and many color pages). [3d] expresses the speaker's judgment about the price of the book. In this case, the speaker knows the book's price; therefore, this is actually not a guess.

[4] provides another set of examples, in which a noun precedes the conjecture expressions.

[4] a. あの人はこの大学の先生だろう。
*Ano hito wa kono daigaku no sensei **darō**.*
(I guess he is a professor at this university.)

b. あの人はこの大学の先生**らしい**。
Ano hito wa kono daigaku no sensei ***rashii.***
(He seems to be a professor at this university. / I heard that he is a professor at this university.)

c. × あの人はこの大学の先生**そうだ**。
× *Ano hito wa kono daigaku no sensei-****sō da.***

d. あの人はこの大学の先生の**ようだ**。
Ano hito wa kono daigaku no sensei no ***yō da.***
(It looks like he is a professor at this university.)

Here again, [4a] indicates the speaker's mere conjecture about the person, and [4b] indicates the speaker's conjecture based on some second-hand information about the person. [4b] is equivalent to hearsay if no judgment is involved. [4c] is ungrammatical because nouns cannot precede *sō da*[2]. [4d] is used when the speaker thinks that the person is a professor of the university based on his/her observation of the person.

[5] provides yet another set of sentences that involve the four different conjecture expressions.

[5] a. 今日は雨が降る**だろう**。
Kyō wa ame ga furu ***darō.***
(I guess it will rain today.)

b. 今日は雨が降る**らしい**。
Kyō wa ame ga furu ***rashii.***
((From what I heard or read,) it seems that it will rain today. / I heard that it will rain today.)

c. もうすぐ雨が降り**そうだ**。
*Mō sugu ame ga furi-****sō da.***
(It looks like it's going to rain soon.)

d. この辺はよく雨が降る**ようだ**。
Kono hen wa yoku ame ga furu ***yō da.***
((Judging from the abundance of trees and moss,) it appears that it rains a lot around here.)

Here, [5a] expresses the speaker's guess with no indication that he/she has information on which his/her conjecture is based. [5b] indicates the speaker's conjecture based on what he/she heard or read. In this case, the sentence is almost hearsay. [5c] is used to express the speaker's impression when he/she has looked at the dark sky. [5d] is used when the speaker has made a judgment on the area's climate after looking at the trees and moss there. *Ame ga furu yō da* is usually used to express a habitual phenomenon rather than a future event.

This is because under normal circumstances, one cannot be so sure about raining in the future, in which case, *yō da* cannot be used.

Yō da[1] and *rashii* are often used in similar situations, but in some situations, only one of them can be used. For example, in [6], *yō da* is acceptable but *rashii* is not. This is because the statements in both [6a] and [6b] are based on what the speaker observes.

[6] a. [When trying on a sweater]
このセーターは私には少し大きい{**ようです / ×らしいです**}。
Kono sētā wa watashi ni wa sukoshi ōkii{***yō desu*** / × ***rashiidesu***}.
(It looks like this sweater is a little too large for me.)

b. [Smelling old meat]
これは食べないほうがいい{**ようです / ×らしいです**}。(= Ex.(c))
Kore wa tabenai hō ga ii{***yō desu*** / × ***rashiidesu***}.
(It looks like we'd better not eat this.)

On the other hand, in [7], *rashii* can be used but *yō da* cannot because both statements are not based on what the speaker observes.

[7] a. 人間の脳は約1000億個の神経細胞からできている{**らしい / ×ようだ**}。
Ningen no nō wa yaku issen-oku-ko no shinkei-saibō kara dekite iru{***rashii*** / × ***yō da***}.
(They say that a human brain consists of approximately 100 billion nerve cells.)

b. あの星は地球から25光年離れている{**らしい / ??ようだ**}。
Ano hoshi wa chikyū kara nijūgo-kōnen hanarete iru{***rashii*** / ??***yō da***}.
(I heard that that star is 25 light years away from the earth.)

In [8], both *yō da* and *rashii* can be used, but the *yō da* versions indicate more certainty than the *rashii* versions.

[8] a. [Hearing sounds from the next room]
隣の部屋にだれかいる{**ようだ / らしい**}。
Tonari no heya ni dare-ka iru{***yō da*** / ***rashii***}.
(I think that there's someone in the next room. / It seems that there's someone in the next room.)

b. [Smelling gas in the room]
ガスが漏れている{**ようだ / らしい**}。
Gasu ga morete iru{***yō da*** / ***rashii***}.
(I think that gas is leaking. / It seems that gas is leaking.)

～ yō da² ～ようだ² *phr.* (*aux. adj. (na)* + *da*)

an auxiliary *na*-adjective with *da* that expresses resemblance

be like; look like; look as if; as if; as; in the same way as

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Noun		
このロボット *Kono robotto*	は *wa*	本当の *hontō no*	**人間** ***ningen***	の *no*	ようだ / です。 *yō da / desu.*
(This robot is like a real person.)					

(B)

Topic (subject)				V*te*		
あの岩 *Ano iwa*	は *wa*	まるで *marude*	ライオンが *raion ga*	座って ***suwatte***	いる *iru*	ようだ / です。 *yō da / desu.*
(That rock looks just like a lion sitting.)						

Formation

(i) N のようだ
no yō da

岡本先生のようだ (s.o. looks like Prof. Okamoto)
Okamoto-sensei no yō da

(ii) V*te* いるようだ
iru yō da

話しているようだ (s.o. looks as if s.o. were talking)
hanashite iru yō da

Examples

(a) 今日は春のようです。
Kyō wa haru no yō desu.
(It's like spring today.)

(b) この肉はゴムのようだ。
Kono niku wa gomu no yō da.
(This meat is like rubber.)

(c) 彼は試合に勝ってうれしいはずなのに、顔はまるで怒っているようです。
Kare wa shiai ni katte ureshii hazu na noni, kao wa marude okotte iru yō desu.
(He won the game and must be happy, but his face looks as if he were mad.)

(d) この虫は全然動かない。まるで死んでいるようだ。
Kono mushi wa zenzen ugokanai. Marude shinde iru yō da.
(This bug doesn't move at all. It just looks as if it were dead.)

Notes

1. *Yō da*[2] is used when someone/something is like or looks like someone/something else.

2. The elements that precede *yō da*[2] are nouns or noun phrases, as in KS(A), Exs. (a) and (b), and verb phrases that express a state, as in KS(B), Exs.(c) and (d). In some situations, Vplain·past can be used before *yō da*[2] as in (1).

   (1) リックはずぶ濡れで、まるでシャワーを浴びたようだ。
   Rikku wa zubu-nure de, marude shawā o ***abita yō da.***
   (Rick is soaking wet, and it looks as if he had taken a shower.)

3. The emphatic expression *marude* "just" often occurs with *yō da*[2] to indicate that the sentence is counterfactual. Because *marude* occurs only with *yō da*[2], it disambiguates otherwise ambiguous *yō da* sentences. For example, in (2a), which does not involve *marude*, *yō da* can be interpreted as either *yō da*[1] (conjecture) or *yō da*[2] (resemblance). However, with *marude*, *yō da* can be interpreted only as *yō da*[2], as in (2b).

   (2) a. あの人は日本人のようです。
   Ano hito wa nihonjin no yō desu.
   ((A) It looks like that person is a Japanese. [Conjecture] (B) That person is like a Japanese. [Resemblance; counterfactual])

   b. あの人はまるで日本人のようです。
   Ano hito wa ***marude*** *nihonjin no yō desu.*
   (That person is just like a Japanese.)

Similarly, the second sentence in (3a) is ambiguous, as shown in the English translations, whereas the second sentence in (3b) is not, because *marude* is used. That is, with *marude*, the second sentence can only be interpreted as a counterfactual sentence.

(3) a. この虫は全然動かない。死んでいるようだ。
Kono mushi wa zenzen ugokanai. Shinde iru yō da.
(This bug doesn't move at all. (A) It looks like it is dead. [Conjecture]
(B) It looks as if it were dead. [Resemblance; counterfactual])

b. この虫は全然動かない。**まるで**死んでいるようだ。(= Ex.(d))
Kono mushi wa zenzen ugokanai. ***Marude*** *shinde iru yō da.*
(This bug doesn't move at all. It just looks as if it were dead.)

4. *Yō* is an auxiliary *na*-adjective. Thus, when it modifies nouns, *na* follows *yō*, as in (4), and when it modifies verbs and adjectives, *ni* follows *yō*, as in (5). (See ~ *yō ni*[1] and ~ *yō ni*[2] for more about *yō ni*.)

(4) a. 今日キャンパスで松井さんの**ような**人を見ました。
Kyō kyanpasu de Matsui-san no ***yō na*** *hito o mimashita.*
(Today I saw a man who looked like Matsui-san on campus.)

b. お城の**ような**大きい家に一度住んでみたい。
O-shiro no ***yō na*** *ōkii ie ni ichi-do sunde mi-tai.*
(I'd like to live in a large house like a castle once (as an experience).)

c. この海岸にはライオンが座っている**ような**岩があります。
Kono kaigan ni wa raion ga suwatte iru ***yō na*** *iwa ga arimasu.*
(There is a rock on this shore that looks like a lion sitting.)

(5) a. フォスターさんは日本人の**ように**日本語を話します。
Fosutā-san wa nihonjin no ***yō ni*** *nihongo o hanashimasu.*
(Foster-san speaks Japanese like a Japanese.)

b. 今日はまだ２月なのに、春の**ように**暖かい。
Kyō wa mada ni-gatsu na noni, haru no ***yō ni*** *atatakai.*
(It's still February today, but it's warm like spring.)

c. この部分は歌う**ように**弾いてください。
Kono bubun wa utau ***yō ni*** *hiite kudasai.*
(Please play this part like you sing it.)

5. The colloquial version of *yō da* is *mitai da*, which is also an auxiliary *na*-adjective with *da*. For the connection forms of *mitai da*, see Related Expression I in ~ *yō da*[1].

～ yō ni[1]　～ように[1]　*conj. / comp. prt.*

a conjunction / compound particle that indicates the way s.o. does s.t. or s.t./s.o. is

in the same way as; as; like; as if

Y

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Vplain		
私が *Watashi ga*	する ***suru***	ように *yō ni*	体を動かしてください。 *karada o ugokashite kudasai.*
(Please move your body as I do.)			

(B)

	Noun			
この *Kono*	サンプル ***sanpuru***	の *no*	ように *yō ni*	名前、連絡先などを用紙に書いてください。 *namae, renrakusaki nado o yōshi ni kaite kudasai.*
(Please write your name, contact information, etc. on the form like this sample.)				

Formation

(i) {Vplain / Adj(*i*)plain} ように
yō ni

{話す / 話した} ように (as s.o. talks/talked)
{*hanasu* / *hanashita*} *yō ni*

{高い / 高かった} ように (as s.t. is/was expensive)
{*takai* / *takakatta*} *yō ni*

(ii) Adj(*na*) {な / だった} ように
{*na* / *datta*} *yō ni*

静か {な / だった} ように (as s.t. is/was quiet)
shizuka {*na* / *datta*} *yō ni*

(iii) N {の / だった} ように
{*no* / *datta*} *yō ni*

先生 {の / だった} ように (like a/the teacher / as s.o. was a teacher)
sensei {*no* / *datta*} *yō ni*

(iv) Demonstrative adjective ように
yō ni

このように (like this; this way)
kono yō ni

Examples

(a) 将太は固まったように座っている。
Shōta wa katamatta yō ni suwatte iru.
(Shota is sitting as if he were frozen.)

(b) 教えられたように勉強していますが、なかなか日本語が上手になりません。
Oshierareta yō ni benkyō-shite imasu ga, nakanaka nihongo ga jōzu ni narimasen.
(I'm studying in the way I was told, but my Japanese hardly improves.)

(c) 前に話したように、私は来月会社を辞めます。
Mae ni hanashita yō ni, watashi wa raigetsu kaisha o yamemasu.
(As I told you before, I'm going to quit my company next month.)

(d) 兄がスポーツが上手なように弟も上手だ。
Ani ga supōtsu ga jōzu na yō ni otōto mo jōzu da.
(Just like the older brother (is good at sports), the younger brother is also good at sports.)

(e) [Showing a chart]
このようにこの国の経済は毎年悪くなっています。
Kono yō ni kono kuni no keizai wa mai-toshi waruku natte imasu.
(As this shows, the economy of this country is worsening every year.)

Notes

1. *Yō ni* [1], which is a variation of *yō da* [2], is used almost as a conjunction or a compound particle. X *yō ni* modifies verb phrases and adjective phrases that follow. Here, X is a sentence, a noun followed by *no*, or a demonstrative adjective.

2. "S_1 *yō ni* S_2," in which S_2 is the main clause, is used to express the following.

   (A) Manner

   S_2 states that someone does something, something happens, or something/someone is in some state, and S_1 indicates the way that action is taken, that event occurs, or the state of that person/thing is. Ex.(a) is an example of this use. (1) provides additional examples.

   (1) a. 急に冬が来た**ように**寒くなった。
   *Kyū ni fuyu ga kita **yō ni** samuku natta.*
   (It has gotten cold as if winter had come all of sudden.)

   b. 外はサウナにいる**ように**暑い。
   *Soto wa sauna ni iru **yō ni** atsui.*
   (It is hot like (being in) a sauna ouside.)

(B) Reference
S_2 states that someone does something, and S_1 indicates the way that action is taken or the model to follow when taking the action. KSs(A), (B) and Ex.(b) are examples of this use. (2) provides additional examples.

(2) a. プリンタを説明書に書いてあるように設定したが動かない。
*Purinta o setsumeisho ni kaite aru **yō ni** settei-shita ga ugokanai.*
(I set up the printer as instructed in the manual, but it doesn't work.)

b. 私も前野さんのように頑張ります。
*Watashi mo Maeno-san **no yō ni** ganbarimasu.*
(I'll work hard, too, like Maeno-san.)

(C) The same proposition
What is stated in S_2 is the same as what S_1 refers to. Ex.(c) is an example of this use. (3) provides additional examples.

(3) a. 前に言ったように、今は貸してあげるお金がないんです。
*Mae ni itta **yō ni**, ima wa kashite ageru o-kane ga nai n desu.*
(As I told you earlier, I have no money to lend you now.)

b. 見たら分かるように、私のアパートは人を泊められるスペースがありません。
*Mitara wakaru **yō ni**, watashi no apāto wa hito o tomerareru supēsu ga arimasen.*
(As you can tell when you see my apartment, there is no space to let others stay.)

(D) The same manner or state
What is stated in S_2 is the case in the same way as stated in S_1. Ex.(d) is an example of this use. (4a) provides another example. Sentences of this use can be rephrased using *sore to onaji yō ni* "in the same way as that," as in (4b).

(4) a. ネコがかわいいようにイヌもかわいい。
*Neko ga kawaii **yō ni** inu mo kawaii.*
(Dogs are cute, just like cats. (lit., Just like cats are cute, dogs are cute, too.))

b. ネコがかわいい。それと同じようにイヌもかわいい。
*Neko ga kawaii. **Sore to onaji yō ni** inu mo kawaii.*
(Cats are cute. Dogs are cute, too, in the same way (as that).)

In this use, *no yō ni* is sometimes attached to only an element of a sentence because the unsaid portion of the sentence is in the main clause and is understood without being repeated. (5) and (6) provide examples with the unabbreviated versions.

(5) a. 昨日**のように**今日も小グループに分かれて作業をします。
*Kinō **no yō ni** kyō mo shō-gurūpu ni wakarete sagyō o shimasu.*
(Like yesterday, we're going to work in small groups today, too.)

b. 昨日小グループに分かれて作業をした**ように**、今日も小グループに分かれて作業をします。
*Kinō shō-gurūpu ni wakarete sagyō o shita **yō ni**, kyō mo shō-gurūpu ni wakarete sagyō o shimasu.*
(Like we worked in small groups yesterday, we're going to work in small groups today, too.)

c. 昨日小グループに分かれて作業をしました。それと同じ**ように**今日も小グループに分かれて作業をします。
*Kinō shō-gurūpu ni wakarete sagyō o shimashita. Sore to onaji **yō ni** kyō mo shō-gurūpu ni wakarete sagyō o shimasu.*
(We worked in small groups yesterday. In the same way, we're going to work in small groups today, too.)

(6) a. 若い時**のように**スポーツができなくなった。
*Wakai toki **no yō ni** supōtsu ga dekinakunatta.*
(I can no longer do sports in the same way as when I was young.)

b. 若い時、スポーツをした**ように**スポーツができなくなった。
*Wakai toki, supōtsu o shita **yō ni** supōtsu ga dekinakunatta.*
(I can no longer do sports in the way I did sports when I was young.)

c. 若い時、スポーツをした。(今は)それと同じ**ように**スポーツができなくなった。
*Wakai toki, supōtsu o shita. (Ima wa) sore to onaji **yō ni** supōtsu ga dekinakunatta.*
(I did sports when I was young. (Today) I cannot do sports in the same way as that.)

3. *No yō ni* can also be used with certain frequency adverbs, as in (7).

(7) a. 土井さんはいつも**のように**朝6時に起きた。
*Doi-san wa itsumo **no yō ni** asa roku-ji ni okita.*
(As always, Doi-san got up at six in the morning.)

b. 父は最近、毎晩**のように**夜遅く帰ってくる。
*Chichi wa saikin, mai-ban **no yō ni** yoru osoku kaette-kuru.*
(Recently my father returns home late at night almost every night (lit., like every night).)

Y

～ yō ni [2] ～ように [2] *conj.*

a conjunction that indicates a desired consequence

so that ~
【REL. *tame ni* [1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Vplain・non-past・aff		
後ろの人もよく *Ushiro no hito mo yoku*	**聞こえる** ***kikoeru***	ように *yō ni*	大きい声で話してください。 *ōkii koe de hanashite kudasai.*
(Please speak loudly so that people in the back can hear well, too.)			

(B)

Subordinate Clause			Main Clause
	Vplain・non-past・neg		
風邪を *Kaze o*	**引かない** ***hikanai***	ように *yō ni*	気をつけている / います。 *ki o tsukete iru / imasu.*
(I'm taking care of myself so that I don't catch a cold.)			

Formation

(i) Vplain·non-past·aff ように
yō ni

見えるように (so that s.o. can see)
mieru yō ni

(ii) Vplain·non-past·neg ように
yō ni

話さないように (so that s.o. {will not / does not} talk)
hanasanai yō ni

Y

Examples

(a) 和田さんは私が分かるようにやさしい日本語で話してくれました。
Wada-san wa watashi ga wakaru yō ni yasashii nihongo de hanashite kuremashita.
(Wada-san spoke in easy Japanese so that I could understand him.)

(b) 日本語で好きな小説が読めるように日本語の勉強を頑張っています。
Nihongo de suki na shōsetsu ga yomeru yō ni nihongo no benkyō o ganbatte imasu.
(I'm studying Japanese hard so that I can read my favorite novels in Japanese.)

(c) 病気が治るように薬を飲んだ。
Byōki ga naoru yō ni kusuri o nonda.
(I took medicine so that I would get well (lit., recover from illness).)

(d) コンサートに遅れないようにタクシーで行きました。
Konsāto ni okurenai yō ni takushī de ikimashita.
(I went to the concert by taxi so that I wouldn't be late for it.)

(e) 子供がもっと勉強するように家庭教師を雇った。
Kodomo ga motto benkyō-suru yō ni katei-kyōshi o yatotta.
(We hired a tutor so that our child would study harder.)

Notes

1. *Yō ni* [2], which is a variation of *yō da* [2], is used almost as a conjunction.

2. In "S_1 *yō ni* S_2," the situation in S_1 cannot be controlled by the subject of S_2.

3. *Ni* in *yō ni* can be omitted without changing the meaning, as in (1).

   (1) a. 後ろの人もよく聞こえる**よう**(**に**)大きい声で話してください。(= KS(A))
   *Ushiro no hito mo yoku kikoeru **yō** (**ni**) ōkii koe de hanashite kudasai.*
   (Please speak loudly so that people in the back can hear well, too.)

   b. 風邪を引かない**よう**(**に**)気をつけている。(= KS(B))
   *Kaze o hikanai **yō** (**ni**) ki o tsukete iru.*
   (I'm taking care of myself so that I don't catch a cold.)

4. ~ *yō ni iu* "tell s.o. to do s.t.," ~ *yō ni naru* "reach the point where ~" and ~ *yō ni suru* "make sure that ~" are idiomatic uses of ~ *yō ni* [2].
(⇒ ~ **yō ni iu**; ~ **yō ni naru**; ~ **yō ni suru**)

[Related Expression]

Tame ni [1] and *yō ni* [2] are used in apparently similar situations, but their uses are different. For example, in [1], *byōki o naosu* "cure my illness" is controllable by

the subject, and *byōki o naosu tame ni* indicates the purpose of the action of taking medicine. In this case, *yō ni* cannot be used. (⇒ ***tame ni*** [1])

[1] 病気を治す{ **ために** / × **ように** }薬を飲んだ。(cf. Ex.(c))
*Byōki o naosu{ **tame ni** / × **yō ni** } kusuri o nonda.*
(I took medicine in order to cure my illness.)

In [2], on the other hand, *byōki ga naoru* "my illness will be cured" is not controllable by the subject, and *byōki ga naoru yō ni* indicates a desired consequence of the action of taking medicine. In this case, *tame ni* cannot be used.

[2] 病気が治る{ **ように** / × **ために** }薬を飲んだ。(= Ex.(c))
*Byōki ga naoru{ **yō ni** / × **tame ni** } kusuri o nonda.*
(I took medicine so that I would get well (lit., recover from illness).)

In [3], *benkyō-suru* "study" is a volitional action, but the actor of this action (i.e., *kodomo*) is not the same as that of the main clause action and the action of studying is not controllable by the actor of the main clause action. In this case, too, *tame ni* cannot be used.

[3] 子供がもっと勉強する{ **ように** / × **ために** }家庭教師を雇った。(= Ex.(e))
*Kodomo ga motto benkyō-suru{ **yō ni** / × **tame ni** } katei-kyōshi o yatotta.*
(We hired a tutor so that our child would study harder.)

～ yō ni iu ～ように言う *phr.*

Tell s.o. in such a way that he/she will do s.t.

tell ~ to do s.t.; say ~ in such a way
【REL. ~ *to iu*[1]】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)				Vplain・non-past・aff		
先生 *Sensei*	は *wa*	学生に *gakusei ni*	宿題を *shukudai o*	**出す** ***dasu***	ように *yō ni*	言った / 言いました。 *itta / iimashita.*
(The teacher told her students to turn in their homework.)						

(B)

Topic (subject)				Vplain・non-past・neg		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	健吾に *Kengo ni*	もうアパートに *mō apāto ni*	**来ない** ***konai***	ように *yō ni*	言った / 言いました。 *itta* / *iimashita.*
(I told Kengo not to come to my apartment anymore.)						

Formation

Vplain·non-past ように言う
yō ni iu

話すように言う (tell s.o. to talk)
hanasu yō ni iu

話さないように言う (tell s.o. not to talk)
hanasanai yō ni iu

Examples

(a) 勉は理香に図書館の前で待っているように言った。
Tsutomu wa Rika ni toshokan no mae de matte iru yō ni itta.
(Tsutomu told Rika to wait (lit., be waiting) in front of the library.)

(b) 私はいつも授業に遅れてくる学生に遅刻しないように言いました。
Watashi wa itsumo jugyō ni okurete kuru gakusei ni chikoku-shinai yō ni iimashita.
(I told the student who always came late for class not to come late.)

(c) すみませんが、小林さんに明日朝９時にここへ来るように言ってもらえませんか。
Sumimasen ga, Kobayashi-san ni ashita asa ku-ji ni koko e kuru yō ni itte moraemasen ka.
(I'm sorry, but could you tell Kobayashi-san to come here at nine tomorrow morning?)

Notes

1. *Yō ni iu* is used when someone causes someone else to do something by saying something. Besides *iu*, such verbs as *tanomu* "ask," *onegai-suru* "ask," *meiji-ru* "order," *tsutaeru* "convey," *chūi-suru* "warn" and *susumeru* "recommend" can also be used with *yō ni*, as in (1).

(1) a. 私は安川さんにすぐ来る**ように頼んだ。**
*Watashi wa Yasukawa-san ni sugu kuru **yō ni tanonda.***
(I asked Yasukawa-san to come (to my place) right away.)

b. 医者は木原さんにたばこを吸わない**ように注意した。**
*Isha wa Kihara-san ni tabako o suwanai **yō ni chūi-shita.***
(The doctor warned Kihara-san not to smoke.)

c. 私は母に、健康のために毎朝散歩する**ように勧めた。**
*Watashi wa haha ni, kenkō no tame ni mai-asa sanpo-suru **yō ni susumeta.***
(I recommended my mother to take a walk every morning for her health.)

2. *Ni* in *yō ni* can be omitted without changing the meaning.

3. *Yō ni iu* is an indirect speech expression. The direct speech versions of (1) are something like (2).

(2) a. 私は安川さんに「すぐ来てください」と言った。(cf. (1a))
Watashi wa Yasukawa-san ni "Sugu kite kudasai" to itta.
(I said to Yasukawa-san, "Please come right away.")

b. 医者は木原さんに「たばこを吸わないでください」と言った。(cf. (1b))
Isha wa Kihara-san ni "Tabako o suwanaide kudasai" to itta.
(The doctor said to Kihara-san, "Please don't smoke.")

c. 私は母に「健康のために毎朝散歩したらどう？」と言った。(cf. (1c))
Watashi wa haha ni "Kenkō no tame ni mai-asa sanpo-shitara dō?" to itta.
(I said to my mother, "Why don't you take a walk every morning for your health?")

4. *Yō ni iu* as indirect speech is different from the *yō ni iu* in (3).

(3) a. 彼女は「好きです」とささやく**ように言った。**(⇒ ~ ***yō ni*** [1]: Note 2 (A))
*Kanojo wa "Suki desu" to sasayaku **yō ni itta.***
(She whispered, "I love you." (lit., She said, "I love you" as if she'd whispered.))

b. 私が言う**ように言って**ください。 (⇒ ~ ***yō ni*** [1]: Note 2 (B))
*Watashi ga iu **yō ni itte** kudasai.*
(Please say it as I say it (lit., in the same way I say it).)

c. みんなによく聞こえる**ように言って**ください。 (⇒ ~ ***yō ni*** [2])
*Minna ni yoku kikoeru **yō ni itte** kudasai.*
(Please say it so that everybody can hear you.)

Y

【Related Expression】

~ *to iu*[1] can also be used to express commands, requests, recommendations, etc. in indirect speech, as in [1] and [2].

[1] a. 先生は学生に宿題を出せ**と言った**。(cf. KS(A))
Sensei wa gakusei ni shukudai o dase ***to itta.***
(The teacher told her students to turn in their homework.)

b. 医者は木原さんにたばこを吸うな**と言った**。(cf. (1b) and (2b))
Isha wa Kihara-san ni tabako o suu na ***to itta.***
(The doctor told Kihara-san not to smoke.)

[2] a. バリーは私に引っ越しを手伝ってくれないか**と言った**。
Barī wa watashi ni hikkoshi o tetsudatte kurenai ka ***to itta.***
(Barry asked me to help with his move.)

b. 私は母に、健康のために毎朝散歩をしたらどうか**と言った**。
(cf. (1c) and (2c))
Watashi wa haha ni, kenkō no tame ni mai-asa sanpo o shitara dō ka ***to itta.***
(I recommended my mother to take a walk every morning for her health.)

However, the meanings of *to iu* and *yō ni iu* are fundamentally different. That is, *to* in "X *to iu*" is the quotation marker, and X represents a quoted statement. On the other hand, *yō ni* in "X *yō ni iu*" means "in such a way"; thus, the literal meaning of "X *yō ni iu*" is that someone says something to someone else (say, Mr. A) in such a way that Mr. A will do X. The pairs of *to iu* and *yō ni iu* sentences in [3] and [4] demonstrate the difference of the two expressions in meaning.
(⇒ ~ ***to iu***[1])

[3] a. 私は安川さんにすぐ行く**と言った**。
Watashi wa Yasukawa-san ni sugu iku ***to itta.***
(I told Yasukawa-san that I would go (there) right away.)

b. 私は安川さんにすぐ行く**ように言った**。
Watashi wa Yasukawa-san ni sugu iku ***yō ni itta.***
(I told Yasukawa-san to go (there) right away.)

[4] a. 私は木原さんにたばこを吸わない**と言った**。
Watashi wa Kihara-san ni tabako o suwanai ***to itta.***
(I told Kihara-san that I wouldn't/don't smoke.)

b. 私は木原さんにたばこを吸わない**ように言った**。
Watashi wa Kihara-san ni tabako o suwanai ***yō ni itta.***
(I told Kihara-san not to smoke.)

～ yō ni naru ～ようになる *phr.*

A habitual change takes place.

~ *yō ni naru*: come to do s.t.; begin to do s.t.; now; reach the point where ~
~*nai yō ni naru*: not ~ any longer; no longer; not ~ anymore; stop V-ing; reach the point where ~
【REL. ~*naku naru*; ~ ***yō ni suru***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vplain・non-past・aff	
ジャクソンさん *Jakuson-san*	は *wa*	日本語が *nihongo ga*	**話せる** ***hanaseru***	ようになった / なりました。 *yō ni natta / narimashita.*
(Jackson-san has come to be able to speak Japanese.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)			Vplain・non-past・neg	
林さん *Hayashi-san*	は *wa*	ゴルフを *gorufu o*	**しない** ***shinai***	ようになった / なりました。 *yō ni natta / narimashita.*
(Hayashi-san has stopped playing golf (lit., has come not to play golf).)				

Formation

Vplain·non-past ようになる
yō ni naru

話すようになる (s.o. begins to talk (lit., s.o. reaches
hanasu yō ni naru the point where he/she talks))

話さないようになる (s.o. doesn't talk any longer (lit., s.o. reaches
hanasanai yō ni naru the point where he/she doesn't talk))

Examples

(a) 日本語の新聞が読めるようになりました。
Nihongo no shinbun ga yomeru yō ni narimashita.
(I have come to be able to read Japanese newspapers.)

(b) 真紀はまたクラスに来るようになった。
Maki wa mata kurasu ni kuru yō ni natta.
(Maki has begun to come to class again.)

(c) 政治のことで議論をしてからパットは私と話さないようになった。
Seiji no koto de giron o shite kara Patto wa watashi to hanasanai yō ni natta.
(Pat stopped talking with me after we discussed politics.)

(d) 最近コンピュータの調子が悪く、時々フリーズするようになった。
Saikin konpyūta no chōshi ga waruku, tokidoki furīzu-suru yō ni natta.
(Recently my computer behaves erratically and freezes from time to time (lit., has reached the point where it freezes from time to time).)

(e) 空気がきれいになって、アパートから富士山が見えるようになりました。
Kūki ga kirei ni natte, apāto kara Fujisan ga mieru yō ni narimashita.
(The air has become clean, and I can see Mt. Fuji from my apartment now (lit., has reached the point where Mt. Fuji is visible).)

(f) この道は今通れないようになっている。
Kono michi wa ima tōrenai yō ni natte iru.
(At present we cannot use this street. (lit., This street has reached the point where people cannot pass.))

Notes

1. The literal meaning of *~ yō ni naru* is "come to be in a state in which someone does something or something happens." This construction is commonly used to express a change in someone's ability, as in KS(A) and Ex.(a), a habitual change in the behavior of someone or something, as in KS(B) and Exs.(b)–(d), and a change in the state of someone or something, as in Exs.(e) and (f).

2. There are two ways to negate this construction: i.e., negating the verb before *yō ni* and negating *naru* in *yō ni naru*. However, the meanings of *~nai yō ni naru* and *~ yō ni naranai* are entirely different, as seen in the English translations in (1a) and (1b).

(1) a. 漢字が覚えられ**ない**ようになった。
*Kanji ga oboerare**nai** yō ni natta.*
(I can't memorize kanji anymore. (lit., I've come not to be able to memorize kanji.))

b. 漢字が覚えられるようになら**なかった**。
*Kanji ga oboerareru yō ni nara**nakatta**.*
(I haven't come to be able to memorize kanji.)

3. *~ yō ni natte iru* expresses the state as the result of a change that has taken place, as in Ex.(f).

【Related Expression】

Two negative forms can be used before *naru*, i.e., *~nai yō ni naru* and *~naku naru*, and in many situations both of them can be used, as in [1].

[1] a. 林さんはゴルフを｛しないように / しなく｝なった。(cf. KS(B))
*Hayashi-san wa gorufu o｛shi**nai yō ni** / shi**naku**｝**natta.***
(Hayashi-san has stopped playing golf (lit., has come not to play golf).)

b. 漢字が｛覚えられないように / 覚えられなく｝なった。(cf. (1a))
*Kanji ga｛oboerare**nai yō ni** / oboerare**naku**｝**natta.***
(I can't memorize kanji anymore. (lit., I've come not to be able to memorize kanji.))

c. 修理をしてからコンピュータがフリーズ｛しないように / しなく｝なった。
*Shūri o shite kara konpyūta ga furīzu-｛shi**nai yō ni** / shi**naku**｝**natta.***
(Since I had my computer repaired, it has stopped freezing.)

However, *~nai yō ni naru* and *~naku naru* are not always interchangeable. When the change does not involve a habitual change in the behavior of someone/something or a change in one's capability, *~nai yō ni naru* is not natural, as in [2].

(⇒ ***~naku naru***)

[2] a. その人は倒れたまま｛動かなく / ??動かないように｝なった。
*Sono hito wa taoreta mama｛ugoka**naku** / ??ugoka**nai yō ni**｝**natta.***
(The person fell down and stopped moving in that position.)

b. 雲に隠れて月が｛見えなく / ??見えないように｝なった。
*Kumo ni kakurete tsuki ga｛mie**naku** / ??mie**nai yō ni**｝**natta.***
(We cannot see the moon anymore (lit., The moon has become invisible) now that it has hidden behind a cloud.)

c. 金庫のドアが｛開かなく / ??開かないように｝なった。
*Kinko no doa ga｛aka**naku** / ??aka**nai yō ni**｝**natta.***
(The door of the safe doesn't open now.)

～ yō ni suru ～ようにする *phr.*

S.o. makes an effort to do s.t. or makes it so that s.t. will happpen.

make sure (that) ~; try to do s.t.; make it so that ~
【REL. ~ *yō ni naru*】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)			Vplain・non-past・aff	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	これから毎日 *korekara mai-nichi*	**運動する *undō-suru***	ようにする / します。 *yō ni suru / shimasu.*
(I'll make sure that I exercise every day from now on.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)			Vplain・non-past・neg	
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	もう夜遅くまでゲームを *mō yoru osoku made gēmu o*	**しない *shinai***	ように する / します。 *yō ni suru / shimasu.*
(I'll try not to play games till late at night anymore.)				

(C)

Topic (subject of *shita/ shimashita*)		Subordinate Clause					Main Clause
		Subject			Vplain・non-past		
先生 *Sensei*	は *wa*	学生 *gakusei*	が *ga*	自由にその部屋に *jiyū ni sono heya ni*	**入れる *haireru***	ように *yō ni*	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(The teacher made it so that students can enter the room freely.)							

Formation

Vplain·non-past ようにする
yō ni suru

話すようにする (make sure that s.o. talks; try to talk)
hanasu yō ni suru

話さないようにする (make sure that s.o. doesn't talk; try not to talk)
hanasanai yō ni suru

Examples

(a) 毎朝８時に来るようにしてください。
Mai-asa hachi-ji ni kuru yō ni shite kudasai.
(Please make sure that you come at eight every morning.)

(b) 仕事ではできるだけ日本語で話すようにしています。
Shigoto de wa dekiru dake nihongo de hanasu yō ni shite imasu.
(At work I'm making sure I speak in Japanese as much as possible.)

(c) 分からないことは必ず先生に聞くようにしている。
Wakaranai koto wa kanarazu sensei ni kiku yō ni shite iru.
(I make a point of asking my teacher definitely about things I don't understand.)

(d) 健康のためにこれからは飲みすぎないようにします。
Kenkō no tame ni kore kara wa nomi-suginai yō ni shimasu.
(For my health I'll try not to drink too much from now on.)

(e) 私たちは客が来たらいつでも泊まれるようしている。
Watashi-tachi wa kyaku ga kitara itsu demo tomareru yō ni shite iru.
(We make sure that guests can stay whenever they come.)

(f) 夏美はカーテンを付けて部屋の中が外から見えないようにした。
Natsumi wa kāten o tsukete heya no naka ga soto kara mienai yō ni shita.
(Natsumi installed the curtain so that (lit., installed the curtain and made it so that) the inside of the room cannot be seen from outside.)

Notes

1. There are basically two sentence constructions in which "V *yō ni suru*" is used. One is that in which the subject of V and that of *suru* are the same, as in KSs(A), (B) and Exs.(a)–(d), and the other is that in which those two subjects are different, as in KS(C), Exs.(e) and (f). The sentences with the first construction conveys the idea that someone makes an effort to do (or not to do) something, and the second construction conveys the idea that someone makes it so that someone else will (or will not) do something or something will (or will not) happen.

2. The ~ *yō ni suru* construction can be negated in two ways. One way is to negate the verb before *yō ni*, as in (1a), and the other way is to negate the verb *suru*, as in (1b). The meanings are different as seen in the English translations. In (1a), Prof. Kanai made an effort to do something in such a way that students cannot enter the room, while in (1b), students couldn't enter the room from the start and Prof. Kanai didn't change the situation.

(1) a. 金井先生は学生がその部屋に入れ**ない**ようにした。
*Kanai-sensei wa gakusei ga sono heya ni haire**nai** yō ni shita.*
(Prof. Kanai made it so that students cannot enter the room.)

b. 金井先生は学生がその部屋に入れるようにし**なかった**。
*Kanai-sensei wa gakusei ga sono heya ni haireru yō ni shi**nakatta.***
(Prof. Kanai didn't allow students to enter the room. (lit., Prof. Kanai didn't make it so that students can enter the room.))

【Related Expression】

When the ~ *yō ni suru* construction involves two different subjects, as in KS(C), Exs.(e) and (f), the ~ *yō ni naru* construction represents its intransitive version, as in [1] and [2]. (⇒ ~ ***yō ni naru***)

[1] a. 先生は学生が自由にその部屋に入れる**ようにした**。(= KS(C))
*Sensei wa gakusei ga jiyū ni sono heya ni haireru **yō ni shita.***
(The teacher made it so that students can enter the room freely.)

b. 学生は自由にその部屋に入れる**ようになった**。
*Gakusei wa jiyū ni sono heya ni haireru **yō ni natta.***
(Students can enter the room freely now.)

[2] a. 夏美はカーテンを付けて部屋の中が外から見えない**ようにした**。
(= Ex.(f))
*Natsumi wa kāten o tsukete heya no naka ga soto kara mienai **yō ni shita.***
(Natsumi installed the curtain so that (lit., installed the curtain and made it so that) the inside of the room cannot be seen from outside.)

b. 部屋の中が外から見えない**ようになった**。
*Heya no naka ga soto kara mienai **yō ni natta.***
(The inside of the room cannot be seen from outside anymore.)

yori より *prt.*

a particle that indicates that s.t./s.o. is compared with s.t./s.o. else

than
【REL. ~ ***hō ga*** ~ ***yori***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (subject)		Noun		Adjective
古田さん *Furuta-san*	は *wa*	**私** ***watashi***	より *yori*	若い / 若いです。 *wakai / wakaidesu.*
(Furuta-san is younger than me.)				

(B)

Topic (subject)		Noun		Adverb	Verb
ムーアさん *Mūa-san*	は *wa*	ウィルソンさん ***Wiruson-san***	より *yori*	よく *yoku*	働く / 働きます。 *hataraku / hatarakimasu.*
(Moore-san works harder than Wilson-san.)					

(C)

Topic (subject)		Vplain・non-past		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	旅行する ***ryokō-suru***	より *yori*	うちに いたい / たいです。 *uchi ni i-tai / taidesu.*
(I'd rather stay at home than go on a trip.)				

(D)

	Vplain・non-past			
バスで *Basu de*	行く ***iku***	より *yori*	他に *hoka ni*	方法がない / ありません。 *hōhō ga nai / arimasen.*
(There is no other way than to go by bus.)				

Formation

(i) N より
yori

コーヒーより (than coffee)
kōhī yori

(ii) Vplain·non-past より
yori

話すより (than talking)
hanasu yori

Examples

(a) ダニエラはゲイルより料理が上手です。
Daniera wa Geiru yori ryōri ga jōzu desu.
(Danielle is a better cook than Gayle.)

(b) 島岡さんは私より速くタイプできる。
Shimaoka-san wa watashi yori hayaku taipu-dekiru.
(Shimaoka-san can type faster than I can.)

(c) それは赤と言うより茶色に近かった。
Sore wa aka to iu yori chairo ni chikakatta.
(That was closer to brown than to red (lit., rather than saying it was red).)

(d) 日本語が上手になりたかったら、この学校で勉強するより日本へ行きなさい。
Nihongo ga jōzu ni nari-takattara, kono gakkō de benkyō-suru yori Nihon e iki-nasai.
(If you want to be good at Japanese, go to Japan rather than studying Japanese at this school.)

(e) だれも手伝ってくれないので、自分一人でするより(他に)しかたがない。
Dare mo tetsudatte kurenai node, jibun hitori de suru yori (hoka ni) shikata ga nai.
(No one helps me, so I have no other way but do it on my own.)

Note

Either a noun phrase or a verb precedes *yori*. When verbs precede *yori*, they are usually non-past. However, there are a few situations in which past tense verbs are used, as in (1).

(1) a. その試験は**思った**よりやさしかった。
*Sono shiken wa **omotta** yori yasashikatta.*
(The exam was easier than I thought.)

b. パーティーは**期待していた**より料理がまずかった。
*Pātī wa **kitai-shite ita** yori ryōri ga mazukatta.*
(The food at the party wasn't as good as I expected (lit., was worse than I expected).)

~yō to omou ～ようと思う *phr.*

a phrase that expresses s.o.'s determination to do s.t.

think ~ will
【REL. ***tsumori***】

◆ Key Sentences

(A)

Topic (1st person subject)			Vvol		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	大学院に *daigakuin ni*	行こう ***ik*ō**	と *to*	思う / 思います。 *omou / omoimasu.*
(I think I will go to graduate school.)					

(B)

Topic (3rd person subject)			Vvol		
サラ *Sara*	は *wa*	日本に *Nihon ni*	留学しよう ***ryūgaku-shi*yō**	と *to*	思っている / います。 *omotte iru / imasu.*
(Sarah thinks she will go to Japan to study.)					

Formation

Vvol と思う (See ~*yō*: Formation (p. 706) for Vvol.)
to omou

話そうと思う (I think I will talk)
hanasō to omou

食べようと思う (I think I will eat)
tabeyō to omou

Examples

(a) 夏休みに日本アルプスに登ろうと思います。
Natsu-yasumi ni Nihon Arupusu ni noborō to omoimasu.
(I think I will climb the Japanese Alps during summer vacation.)

(b) 留学のためのお金がないので、両親に借りようと思っています。
Ryūgaku no tame no o-kane ga nai node, ryōshin ni kariyō to omotte imasu.
(I don't have money for studying abroad, so I'm thinking of borrowing some from my parents.)

Y

(c) 西本さんは新しいスマホを買おうと思っています。
Nishimoto-san wa atarashii sumaho o kaō to omotte imasu.
(Nishimoto-san thinks he'll buy a new smartphone.)

Notes

1. *~yō to omou* is used to express someone's determination to do something. When the subject is a third person, *omotte iru* is used rather than *omou*, as in KS(B) and Ex.(c). (⇒ ~ ***to omou***)

2. *~yō to omou* is not commonly used in questions. For example, (1a) is not ungrammatical but rather uncommon. A more natural way of saying this idea is (1b) or (1c).

(1) a. ?この大学で勉強し**ようと思いますか**。
? *Kono daigaku de benkyō-shi**yō to omoimasu ka.***
(Do you think you will study at this university?)

b. この大学で勉強し**たいですか**。
*Kono daigaku de benkyō-shi-**taidesu ka.***
(Would you like to study at this university?)

c. この大学で勉強し**たいと思いますか**。
*Kono daigaku de benkyō-shi-**tai to omoimasu ka.***
(Do you think you'd like to study at this university?)

3. The negative volitional form is Vplain·non-past *mai*, as in (2).

(2) a. あの人とはもう**話すまい**と思う。
*Ano hito to wa mō **hanasu-mai** to omou.*
(I think I will not talk to that person anymore.)

b. あのレストランでは絶対**食べるまい**と思っている。
*Ano resutoran de wa zettai **taberu-mai** to omotte iru.*
(I'm thinking that I'll never eat at that restarurant.)

However, this form is not commonly used. More common ways of saying the ideas of (2) are given in (3) and (4). (⇒ ~ ***yō ni suru***)

(3) a. あの人とはもう**話さないようにしよう**と思う。
*Ano hito to wa mō **hanasanai yō ni shiyō** to omou.*
(I think I will stop talking to that person. (lit., I think I will not talk to that person anymore.))

b. あのレストランでは絶対**食べないようにしよう**と思っている。
*Ano resutoran de wa zettai **tabenai yō ni shiyō** to omotte iru.*
(I'm thinking of never eating at that restaurant.)

(4) a. あの人と**話すのは**もう**やめよう**と思う。
*Ano hito to **hanasu no wa** mō **yameyō** to omou.*
(I think I will stop talking to that person.)

b. あのレストランで**食べるのは**絶対**やめよう**と思っている。
*Ano resutoran de **taberu no wa** zettai **yameyō** to omotte iru.*
(I'm thinking I'll definitely stop eating at that restaurant.)

~yō to suru ～ようとする *phr.*

a phrase that indicates s.o.'s attempt to do s.t.

try to do s.t.; attempt to do s.t.; be about to do s.t.
【REL. ***miru***】

◆ Key Sentence

Topic (subject)			Vvol		
私 *Watashi*	は *wa*	友達にお金を *tomodachi ni o-kane o*	借り**よう** ***kari**yō*	と *to*	した / しました。 *shita / shimashita.*
(I tried to borrow money from my friends.)					

Formation

Vvol とする (See ~*yō*: Formation (p. 706) for Vvol.)
to suru

話そうとする (s.o. tries to talk)
hanasō to suru

食べようとする (s.o. tries to eat)
tabeyō to suru

Examples

(a) だれかが私の個人情報を盗もうとしたらしい。
Dare-ka ga watashi no kojin-jōhō o nusumō to shita rashii.
(It looks like someone made an attempt to steal my personal information.)

(b) 大高さんはベンチャー企業を起こそうとしたが、うまくいかなかった。
Ōtaka-san wa benchā-kigyō o okosō to shita ga, umaku ikanakatta.
(Otaka-san attempted to launch a venture, but it didn't go well.)

(c) 美里は和也と離婚しようとしている。
Misato wa Kazuya to rikon-shiyō to shite iru.
(Misato is trying to divorce Kazuya.)

(d) グレンは前の車を追い越そうとして事故を起こした。
Guren wa mae no kuruma o oikosō to shite jiko o okoshita.
(Glenn caused an accident when he tried to pass the car in front of him.)

(e) 僕をだまそうとしてもだめだよ。
Boku o damasō to shitemo dame da yo.
(It's no use to try to cheat me.)

Notes

1. "Vvol *to suru*" is used to express someone's attempt to do something. The past form "Vvol *to shita*" is usually used when someone tried to do something but failed, as in Exs.(a) and (b).

2. The negative form "Vvol *to shinai*" is used when someone has no intention to do something. (1) provides examples.

   (1) a. エディーはなかなかゲームを**やめようとしません**。
   *Edī wa nakanaka gēmu o **yameyō to shimasen**.*
   (Eddy shows no sign of stopping the game.)

   b. 弟は両親の言うことを**聞こうとしない**。
   *Otōto wa ryōshin no iu koto o **kikō to shinai**.*
   (My younger brother doesn't listen to what our parents say.)

3. In different contexts, "Vvol *to suru*" means "be about to" rather than "try to," as in (2).

   (2) a. 家を**出ようとしたら**電話がかかってきた。
   *Ie o **deyō to shitara** denwa ga kakatte-kita.*
   (When I was about to leave home, I had a phone call.)

   b. 太陽が島の向こうに**沈もうとしている**。
   *Taiyō ga shima no mukō ni **shizumō to shite iru**.*
   (The sun is about to set beyond the island.)

   c. もうすぐ夜中の 12 時に**なろうとしている**。
   *Mō sugu yonaka no jūni-ji ni **narō to shite iru**.*
   (It will be twelve (lit., is about to become twelve) midnight soon.)

Y

zutsu ずつ *prt.*

a particle that indicates equal distribution of quantity — each; at a time

◆ Key Sentence

	Direct Object		Quantifier		
子供たちに *Kodomo-tachi ni*	クッキー *kukkī*	を *o*	**２枚** ***ni-mai***	ずつ *zutsu*	あげた / あげました。 *ageta / agemashita.*
(I gave the children two cookies each.)					

Examples

(a) リンゴを６個ずつ箱に詰めた。
Ringo o rok-ko zutsu hako ni tsumeta.
(I packed six apples in each box.)

(b) ここにある資料を 10 部ずつコピーしてもらえますか。
Koko ni aru shiryō o jū-bu zutsu kopī-shite moraemasu ka.
(Could you make ten copies of each one of the materials here?)

(c) どのクラスにも女子学生が６人ずついた。
Dono kurasu ni mo joshi-gakusei ga roku-nin zutsu ita.
(There were six female students in each class.)

(d) みんな少しずつお金を出し合って 10 万円集めました。
Minna sukoshi zutsu o-kane o dashiatte jūman-en atsumemashita.
(We put together 100,000 yen, with each of us contributing a small amount.)

(e) 参加者を５人ずつのグループに分けた。
Sankasha o go-nin zutsu no gurūpu ni waketa.
(I divided the participants into groups of five (each).)

(f) １日に 50 ページずつ読めば、この本を 10 日で読み終われます。
Ichi-nichi ni gojup-pēji zutsu yomeba, kono hon o tō-ka de yomi-owaremasu.
(If I read fifty pages a day, I can finish reading this book in ten days.)

Notes

1. The particle *zutsu* is used with quantifiers (i.e., expressions of quantity). In general, X *zutsu* indicates that there are X items of something (e.g., three books, six cards, etc.) or X people in one unit or group and that there are two or more units or groups altogether. For example, in KS, one unit consists of two cookies and one unit of cookies was given to each of several children, and in Ex.(a), one box consists of six apples and there are several of them.

2. *Zutsu* is often used with words that involve the suffix *mai-* "every" or "each," as in (1).

(1) a. 私は**毎**日漢字を５つ**ずつ**覚えるようにしています。
*Watashi wa **mai**-nichi kanji o itsu-tsu **zutsu** oboeru yō ni shite imasu.*
(I make sure that I memorize five kanji every day.)

b. 上村さんはヨーロッパ旅行のために**毎**月１万円**ずつ**貯金しています。
*Uemura-san wa Yōroppa-ryokō no tame ni **mai**-tsuki ichiman-en **zutsu** chokin-shite imasu.*
(Uemura-san is saving 10,000 yen every month for a trip to Europe.)

In (1a) and (1b), one unit consists of five kanji and 10,000 yen, respectively, and the action that involves them is repeated every day or every month.

Note that in sentences involving *mai-*, the quantifier without *zutsu* can express virtually the same meaning. For example, (2a) and (2b) essentially mean the same things as (1a) and (1b), respectively.

(2) a. 私は**毎**日漢字を５つ∅覚えるようにしています。
*Watashi wa **mai**-nichi kanji o itsu-tsu ∅ oboeru yō ni shite imasu.*
(I make sure that I memorize five kanji every day.)

b. 上村さんはヨーロッパ旅行のために**毎**月１万円∅貯金しています。
*Uemura-san wa Yōroppa-ryokō no tame ni **mai**-tsuki ichiman-en ∅ chokin-shite imasu.*

The only difference is that sentences with *zutsu* focus on equal distribution of quantity.

3. *Zutsu* can be used with fractions, as in (3).

(3) a. ケーキが１つしかなかったので妹と**半分ずつ**食べた。
*Kēki ga hito-tsu shika nakatta node imōto to **hanbun zutsu** tabeta.*
(There was only one cake, so my younger sister and I ate a half each.)

b. 大きなメロンをもらったので**４分の１ずつ**食べた。
*Ōkina meron o moratta node **yon-bun no ichi zutsu** tabeta.*
(I got a large melon, so I ate it one quarter at a time.)

4. *Zutsu* can be used with one piece or one person, as in (4).

(4) a. たくさんの答案用紙を**１枚ずつ**丁寧に採点した。
*Takusan no tōan-yōshi o **ichi-mai zutsu** teinei ni saiten-shita.*
(I carefully graded a lot of answer sheet one by one.)

b. 応募者が多いので**一人ずつ**面接する時間がない。
*Ōbosha ga ōi node **hitori zutsu** mensetsu-suru jikan ga nai.*
(Because there are many applicants, we have no time to interview them one by one.)

5. When *zutsu* is used with words with the meaning of "a little," it can mean "little by little," "a little each time" or "gradually," as in Ex.(d). (5) provides more examples.

(5) a. ゴルフが**少しずつ**上手になってきた。
*Gorufu ga **sukoshi zutsu** jōzu ni natte kita.*
(I'm getting better at golf little by little.)

b. この仕事は一度にはできないので、**ちょっとずつ**やるしかない。
*Kono shigoto wa ichi-do ni wa dekinai node, **chotto zutsu** yaru shi-ka nai.*
(I cannot complete this job at one time, so there's no other way but do it little by little.)

Appendixes

Appendix 1. Basic Conjugations

Group 1 verbs

	Plain, non-past, negative	Polite, non-past, affirmative (*masu*-form)[1]	Plain, non-past, affirmative (dictionary form)	Conditional	Volitional	*Te*-form
買う (buy) *kau*	買わない *ka**wa**nai*	買います *ka**i**masu*	買う *ka**u***	買えば *ka**e**ba*	買おう *ka**ō***	買って *ka**tt**e*
待つ (wait) *matsu*	待たない *ma**ta**nai*	待ちます *ma**chi**masu*	待つ *ma**tsu***	待てば *ma**te**ba*	待とう *ma**tō***	待って *ma**tt**e*
乗る (ride) *noru*	乗らない *no**ra**nai*	乗ります *no**ri**masu*	乗る *no**ru***	乗れば *no**re**ba*	乗ろう *no**rō***	乗って *no**tt**e*
ある (exist) *aru*	ない[2] *nai*	あります *a**ri**masu*	ある *a**ru***	あれば *a**re**ba*	あろう[3] *a**rō***	あって *a**tt**e*
おっしゃる (say [honorific]) *ossharu*	おっしゃらない *ossha**ra**nai*	おっしゃいます[4] *osshai**ma**su*	おっしゃる *ossha**ru***	おっしゃれば *ossha**re**ba*	おっしゃろう[3] *ossha**rō***	おっしゃって *ossha**tt**e*
読む (read) *yomu*	読まない *yo**ma**nai*	読みます *yo**mi**masu*	読む *yo**mu***	読めば *yo**me**ba*	読もう *yo**mō***	読んで *yo**n**de*
呼ぶ (call) *yobu*	呼ばない *yo**ba**nai*	呼びます *yo**bi**masu*	呼ぶ *yo**bu***	呼べば *yo**be**ba*	呼ぼう *yo**bō***	呼んで *yo**n**de*
死ぬ (die) *shinu*	死なない *shi**na**nai*	死にます *shi**ni**masu*	死ぬ *shi**nu***	死ねば *shi**ne**ba*	死のう *shi**nō***	死んで *shi**n**de*
話す (talk) *hanasu*	話さない *hana**sa**nai*	話します *hana**shi**masu*	話す *hana**su***	話せば *hana**se**ba*	話そう *hana**sō***	話して *hana**shi**te*
書く (write) *kaku*	書かない *ka**ka**nai*	書きます *ka**ki**masu*	書く *ka**ku***	書けば *ka**ke**ba*	書こう *ka**kō***	書いて *ka**i**te*
泳ぐ (swim) *oyogu*	泳がない *oyo**ga**nai*	泳ぎます *oyo**gi**masu*	泳ぐ *oyo**gu***	泳げば *oyo**ge**ba*	泳ごう *oyo**gō***	泳いで *oyo**i**de*
行く (go) *iku*	行かない *i**ka**nai*	行きます *i**ki**masu*	行く *i**ku***	行けば *i**ke**ba*	行こう *i**kō***	行って[2] *i**tt**e*

Plain, past, affirmative	Plain, past, negative	Passive[5]	Causative[5, 6]	Potential[5]	Imperative
買った *ka**t**ta*	買わなかった *ka**wa**nakatta*	買われる *ka**wa**reru*	買わせる *ka**wa**seru*	買える *ka**e**ru*	買え *ka**e***
待った *ma**t**ta*	待たなかった *ma**ta**nakatta*	待たれる *ma**ta**reru*	待たせる *ma**ta**seru*	待てる *ma**te**ru*	待て *ma**te***
乗った *no**t**ta*	乗らなかった *no**ra**nakatta*	乗られる *no**ra**reru*	乗らせる *no**ra**seru*	乗れる *no**re**ru*	乗れ *no**re***
あった *a**t**ta*	なかった[2] *nakatta*				あれ[3] *a**re***
おっしゃった *ossha**t**ta*	おっしゃらなかった *ossha**ra**nakatta*	おっしゃられる[3] *ossha**ra**reru*	おっしゃらせる[3] *ossha**ra**seru*	おっしゃれる *ossha**re**ru*	おっしゃい[4] *ossha**i***
読んだ *yo**n**da*	読まなかった *yo**ma**nakatta*	読まれる *yo**ma**reru*	読ませる *yo**ma**seru*	読める *yo**me**ru*	読め *yo**me***
呼んだ *yo**n**da*	呼ばなかった *yo**ba**nakatta*	呼ばれる *yo**ba**reru*	呼ばせる *yo**ba**seru*	呼べる *yo**be**ru*	呼べ *yo**be***
死んだ *shi**n**da*	死ななかった *shi**na**nakatta*	死なれる *shi**na**reru*	死なせる *shi**na**seru*	死ねる *shi**ne**ru*	死ね *shi**ne***
話した *hana**shi**ta*	話さなかった *hana**sa**nakatta*	話される *hana**sa**reru*	話させる *hana**sa**seru*	話せる *hana**se**ru*	話せ *hana**se***
書いた *ka**i**ta*	書かなかった *ka**ka**nakatta*	書かれる *ka**ka**reru*	書かせる *ka**ka**seru*	書ける *ka**ke**ru*	書け *ka**ke***
泳いだ *oyo**i**da*	泳がなかった *oyo**ga**nakatta*	泳がれる *oyo**ga**reru*	泳がせる *oyo**ga**seru*	泳げる *oyo**ge**ru*	泳げ *oyo**ge***
行った[2] *i**t**ta*	行かなかった *i**ka**nakatta*	行かれる *i**ka**reru*	行かせる *i**ka**seru*	行ける *i**ke**ru*	行け *i**ke***

Group 2 verbs

	Plain, non-past, negative	Polite, non-past, affirmative (*masu*-form)	Plain, non-past, affirmative (dictionary form)	Conditional	Volitional	*Te*-form
見る (see) *miru*	見ない *minai*	見ます *mimasu*	見る *miru*	見れば *mireba*	見よう *miyō*	見て *mite*
寝る (go to bed) *neru*	寝ない *nenai*	寝ます *nemasu*	寝る *neru*	寝れば *nereba*	寝よう *neyō*	寝て *nete*

Irregular verbs

する (do) *suru*	しない *shinai*	します *shimasu*	する *suru*	すれば *sureba*	しよう *shiyō*	して *shite*
来る (come) *kuru*	こない *konai*	きます *kimasu*	くる *kuru*	くれば *kureba*	こよう *koyō*	きて *kite*

1 The complete conjugations of polite forms are as follows:

	Affirmative	Negative	Volitional
Non-past	(買い)ます *(kai)**masu***	(買い)ません *(kai)**masen***	(買い)ましょう *(kai)**mashō***
Past	(買い)ました *(kai)**mashita***	(買い)ませんでした *(kai)**masendeshita***	

2 Irregular conjugation.
3 This form is usually not used.
4 The honorific verbs *ossharu* "say," *irassharu* "go," "come" or "be," *nasaru* "do" and *gozaru* "be" are irregular in the *masu*-form and the imperative form.

Plain, past, affirmative	Plain, past, negative	Passive[5]	Causative[5, 6]	Potential[5]	Imperative
見た *mita*	見なかった *minakatta*	見られる *mirareru*	見させる *misaseru*	見られる / 見れる[7] *mirareru / mireru*	見ろ / 見よ[8] *miro / miyo*
寝た *neta*	寝なかった *nenakatta*	寝られる *nerareru*	寝させる *nesaseru*	寝られる / 寝れる[7] *nerareru / nereru*	寝ろ / 寝よ[8] *nero / neyo*

した *shita*	しなかった *shinakatta*	される *sareru*	させる *saseru*	できる *dekiru*	しろ / せよ[8] *shiro / seyo*
きた *kita*	こなかった *konakatta*	こられる *korareru*	こさせる *kosaseru*	こられる *korareru*	こい *koi*

5 Passive verbs, causative verbs and potential verbs are all Group 2 verbs.
6 There is another type of causative forms. (See Formation in *~saseru*.)
7 The short potential form (e.g., *mireru* and *nereru*) is commonly used in casual conversation. This form cannot be used for Gr. 2 verbs whose stems end with *re*, such as *wasureru* "forget" and *kakureru* "hide."
8 *Yo*-ending imperative forms are used only in written Japanese.

I-adjectives

	Plain				Polite	
	Non-past		Past		Non-past	
	affirmative[9]	negative	affirmative	negative	affirmative	negative
大きい (big) *ōkii*	大きい *ōkii*	大きくない *ōki**ku**nai*	大きかった *ōki**ka**tta*	大きく なかった *ōki**ku**- nakatta*	大きいです *ōki**i**desu*	大きく ないです[11] *ōki**ku**- naidesu*
いい[10] (good) *ii*	いい *ii*	よくない *yokunai*	よかった *yokatta*	よく なかった *yoku- nakatta*	いいです *iidesu*	よく ないです[11] *yoku- naidesu*

9 The plain non-past affirmative forms of *i*-adjectives are the dictionary forms.

10 *Ii* is an irregular *i*-adjective. *Ii* is usually used instead of *yoi* as the non-past affirmative forms and the noun-modifying form.

Na-adjectives / Nouns *da*

	Plain				Polite	
	Non-past		Past		Non-past	
	affirmative	negative	affirmative	negative	affirmative	negative
静か (quiet) *shizuka*	静かだ *shizuka da*	静か {では / じゃ} ない[12] *shizuka {dewa / ja} nai*	静かだった *shizuka datta*	静か {では / じゃ} なかった[12] *shizuka {dewa / ja} nakatta*	静かです *shizuka desu*	静か {では / じゃ} ないです[11, 12] *shizuka {dewa / ja} naidesu*
学生 (student) *gakusei*	学生だ *gakusei da*	学生 {では / じゃ} ない[12] *gakusei {dewa / ja} nai*	学生だった *gakusei datta*	学生 {では / じゃ} なかった[12] *gakusei {dewa / ja} nakatta*	学生です *gakusei desu*	学生 {では / じゃ} ないです[11, 12] *gakusei {dewa / ja} naidesu*

12 *Ja* is the colloquial form of *dewa*.

Polite		*Te*-form	Adverbial	Prenominal	Conditional
Past					
affirmative	negative				
大きかったです *ōki**ka**ttadesu*	大きく なかったです[11] *ōki**ku**- nakattadesu*	大きくて *ōki**ku**te*	大きく *ōki**ku***	大きい *ōki**i***	大きければ *ōki**kere**ba*
よかったです *yokattadesu*	よく なかったです[11] *yoku- nakattadesu*	よくて *yokute*	よく *yoku*	いい *ii*	よければ *yokereba*

11 *~arimasen* and *~arimasendeshita* are other negative endings. However, they are not as common as *~naidesu* / *nakattadesu* today.

Polite		*Te*-form	Adverbial	Prenominal	Conditional
Past					
affirmative	negative				
静かでした *shizuka deshita*	静か{では / じゃ} なかったです[11, 12] *shizuka {dewa / ja} nakattadesu*	静かで *shizuka de*	静かに[13] *shizuka **ni***	静かな[13] *shizuka **na***	静かなら *shizuka nara*
学生でした *gakusei deshita*	学生{では / じゃ} なかったです[11, 12] *gakusei {dewa / ja} nakattadesu*	学生で *gakusei de*	学生 Prt[14] *gakusei*	学生の[13] *gakusei **no***	学生なら *gakusei nara*

13 *Ni* and *na* after *na*-adjectives and *no* after nouns are considered particles, not the conjugated forms of *da*. Except for the adverbial and prenominal forms, the conjugated forms after *na*-adjectives and those after nouns are the same because they are both the conjugated forms of *da*.

14 The particle changes according to the verb/adjective that Noun + Prt modifies.

Appendix 2. Semantic Classification of Verbs

A. Stative verbs

Verbs that indicate a state of someone/something rather than an action.

ある (exist (of an inanimate thing)) *aru*		いる (exist (of an animate thing)) *iru*	
違う (differ) *chigau*	要る (need) *iru*	似合う (become / be suitable) *niau*	
見える (be visible) *mieru*	聞こえる (be audible) *kikoeru*	分かる (understand) *wakaru*	できる (can do) *dekiru*

All the potential verbs are stative.

Exs. 飲める (can drink) *nomeru*　　食べられる (can eat) *taberareru*

B. Continual verbs

Verbs that indicate a sustainable action. This type of verb with the auxiliary verb *iru* expresses an action in progress. (⇒ ***iru***[2])

食べる (eat) *taberu*	飲む (drink) *nomu*	歩く (walk) *aruku*	走る (run) *hashiru*	踊る (dance) *odoru*
歌う (sing) *utau*	泳ぐ (swim) *oyogu*	待つ (wait) *matsu*	話す (talk) *hanasu*	聞く (hear) *kiku*
読む (read) *yomu*	書く (write) *kaku*	見る (see) *miru*	泣く (cry) *naku*	教える (teach) *oshieru*
見せる (show) *miseru*	使う (use) *tsukau*	作る (make) *tsukuru*	笑う (laugh) *warau*	休む (rest) *yasumu*
勉強する (study) *benkyō-suru*	飛ぶ (fly) *tobu*	考える (think) *kangaeru*	会う (meet) *au*	住む (live) *sumu*

C. Momentary verbs

Verbs that indicate an unsustainable action. This type of verb with the auxiliary verb *iru* expresses the state after an action has been taken or something has happened. (⇒ ***iru***[2])

立つ (stand) *tatsu*	座る (sit down) *suwaru*	起きる (get up) *okiru*	寝る (go to bed) *neru*
結婚する (marry) *kekkon-suru*	死ぬ (die) *shinu*	疲れる (get tired) *tsukareru*	困る (get into trouble) *komaru*

知る (get to know) *shiru*	覚える (remember) *oboeru*	忘れる (forget) *wasureru*	なる (become) *naru*
借りる (borrow) *kariru*	貸す (lend) *kasu*	行く (go) *iku*	来る (come) *kuru*
帰る (return) *kaeru*	入る (enter) *hairu*	出る (get out) *deru*	止まる (stop [v.i.]*) *tomaru*
開く (open [v.i.]) *aku*	閉まる (close [v.i.]) *shimaru*	始まる (begin [v.i.]) *hajimaru*	終わる (end [v.i.]) *owaru*
着く (arrive) *tsuku*	付く (be attached) *tsuku*		

*v.i. = intransitive verb

D. Reciprocal verbs

Verbs that are typically used in the sentence structure "X *wa/ga* Y *to* V." With a reciprocal verb, if "X *wa/ga* Y *to* V" is true, "Y *wa/ga* X *to* V" is also true. Some reciprocal verbs can also be used with the particle *ni*, i.e., "X *wa/ga* Y *ni* V," as indicated below. (⇒ ***to***[2])

(～と) 結婚する (marry) *(~ to) kekkon-suru*	(～と) けんかする (fight) *(~ to) kenka-suru*	(～と/に) 会う (meet) *(~ to/ni) au*
(～と/に) 合う (match) *(~ to/ni) au*	(～と/に) 相談する (consult) *(~ to/ni) sōdan-suru*	(～と) 違う (differ) *(~ to) chigau*
(～と/に) 似る (resemble) *(~ to/ni) niru*	(～と/に) ぶつかる (bump into) *(~ to/ni) butsukaru*	

E. Motion verbs

Verbs that can take V*masu ni* to express a purpose. (⇒ ***ni***[5])

Exs. 買いに行く (go to buy s.t.)
kai ni iku

会いに来る (come to see s.o.)
ai ni kuru

行く (go) *iku*	来る (come) *kuru*	帰る (return) *kaeru*
入る (enter) *hairu*	出る (get out) *deru*	(立ち) 寄る (stop by) *(tachi-)yoru*

Appendix 3. Pairs of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs

Intransitive Verb		Transitive Verb	
A. *~u / ~eru*			
開く *aku*	(open)	開ける *akeru*	(open)
縮む *chijimu*	(shrink)	縮める *chijimeru*	(shrink)
立つ *tatsu*	(stand)	立てる *tateru*	(stand)
届く *todoku*	(reach)	届ける *todokeru*	(deliver)
育つ *sodatsu*	(grow)	育てる *sodateru*	(raise)
B. *~ru / ~su*			
帰る / 返る *kaeru*	(return)	帰す / 返す *kaesu*	(send home; return)
回る *mawaru*	(turn)	回す *mawasu*	(turn)
直る *naoru*	(be fixed)	直す *naosu*	(fix)
通る *tōru*	(pass)	通す *tōsu*	(pass)
C. *~ru / ~seru*			
乗る *noru*	(get on)	乗せる *noseru*	(put in / on)
寄る *yoru*	(approach)	寄せる *yoseru*	(let come near)
D. *~reru / ~su*			
現れる / 表れる *arawareru*	(appear)	現す / 表す *arawasu*	(represent)
離れる *hanareru*	(be detached)	離す *hanasu*	(detach)
壊れる *kowareru*	(break)	壊す *kowasu*	(break)
倒れる *taoreru*	(fall down)	倒す *taosu*	(push; knock down)
つぶれる *tsubureru*	(crush)	つぶす *tsubusu*	(crush)

汚れる *yogoreru*	(get dirty)	汚す *yogosu*	(make dirty)
E. *~aru / ~eru*			
上がる *agaru*	(rise)	上げる *ageru*	(raise)
集まる *atsumaru*	(gather)	集める *atsumeru*	(gather)
始まる *hajimaru*	(begin)	始める *hajimeru*	(begin)
かかる *kakaru*	(hang)	かける *kakeru*	(hang)
固まる *katamaru*	(harden)	固める *katameru*	(harden)
決まる *kimaru*	(be decided)	決める *kimeru*	(decide)
見つかる *mitsukaru*	(be found)	見つける *mitsukeru*	(find)
閉まる *shimaru*	(close)	閉める *shimeru*	(close)
高まる *takamaru*	(heighten)	高める *takameru*	(heighten)
助かる *tasukaru*	(be saved)	助ける *tasukeru*	(save)
F. *~waru / ~eru*			
変わる *kawaru*	(change)	変える *kaeru*	(change)
加わる *kuwawaru*	(join)	加える *kuwaeru*	(add)
伝わる *tsutawaru*	(be conveyed)	伝える *tsutaeru*	(convey)
終わる *owaru*	(end)	終える / 終わる *oeru / owaru*	(end)
G. *~iru / ~osu*			
落ちる *ochiru*	(drop)	落とす *otosu*	(drop)
起きる *okiru*	(get/wake up)	起こす *okosu*	(get/wake up)
降りる *oriru*	(get off)	降ろす *orosu*	(take/bring down)

過ぎる *sugiru*	(elapse)	過ごす *sugosu*	(spend)
H. *~eru / ~u*			
ほどける *hodokeru*	(be untied)	ほどく *hodoku*	(untie)
切れる *kireru*	(cut)	切る *kiru*	(cut)
脱げる *nugeru*	(come off)	脱ぐ *nugu*	(take off)
抜ける *nukeru*	(come out)	抜く *nuku*	(pull out)
折れる *oreru*	(break)	折る *oru*	(break)
取れる *toreru*	(come off)	取る *toru*	(take)
売れる *ureru*	(sell)	売る *uru*	(sell)
割れる *wareru*	(break)	割る *waru*	(break)
破れる *yabureru*	(tear)	破る *yaburu*	(tear)
焼ける *yakeru*	(burn)	焼く *yaku*	(burn)
I. *~eru / ~asu*			
出る *deru*	(get out)	出す *dasu*	(take out)
枯れる *kareru*	(wither)	枯らす *karasu*	(let wither)
逃げる *nigeru*	(run away)	逃がす *nigasu*	(let escape)
溶ける *tokeru*	(dissolve)	溶かす *tokasu*	(dissolve)
J. *~eru / ~yasu*			
生える *haeru*	(grow)	生やす *hayasu*	(grow)
冷える *hieru*	(get cold)	冷やす *hiyasu*	(make cold)

K. Others			
入る *hairu*	(enter)	入れる *ireru*	(put in)
消える *kieru*	(be extinguished)	消す *kesu*	(extinguish)
聞こえる *kikoeru*	(be audible)	聞く *kiku*	(hear)
見える *mieru*	(be visible)	見る *miru*	(see)
なくなる *nakunaru*	(disappear)	なくす *nakusu*	(lose)
分かれる *wakareru*	(get separated)	分ける *wakeru*	(separate)

Note: *Suru*[5] "make" or "change" vs. *naru* "become" form a pair of transitive and intransitive verbs, though the two have no phonological element in common.

Appendix 4. Connection Forms of Important Expressions

A. Verbs

1. Vplain + _____

～だけ	~ *dake*	(just)
～だろう	~ *darō*	(probably)
～はず	~ *hazu*	(It is expected that ~)
～ほうがいい	~ *hō ga ii*	(had better do ~; I suggest ~ do ~)
～かもしれない	~ *kamoshirenai*	(might)
～けれども	~ *keredomo*	(although)
～ことは	~ *koto wa*	(indeed ~ (but))
～みたいだ	~ *mitai da*	(It appears that ~)
～なら	~ *nara*	(if)
～にちがいない	~ *ni chigai nai*	(must [Certainty])
～{の / ん}だ	~{ *no* / *n* } *da*	(It is that ~; The fact is that ~; The explanation is that ~)
～ので	~ *node*	(since; because)
～のに	~ *noni*	(in spite of the fact that ~)
～のは～だ	~ *no wa* ~ *da*	(It is ~ that ~)
～らしい	~ *rashii*	(It seems that ~)

～し	~ *shi*	(~ and)
～そうだ[1]	~ *sō da*[1]	(I heard that ~)
～時	~ *toki*	(when)
～わけだ	~ *wake da*	(It means that ~; No wonder ~; That's why ~)
～ようだ[1]	~ *yō da*[1]	(It appears that ~)
～ように[1]	~ *yō ni*[1]	(as)
～ように[2]	~ *yō ni*[2]	(so that ~)

2. Vplain·non-past + _____

～ことがある[2]	~ *koto ga aru*[2]	(There are times when)
～ことができる	~ *koto ga dekiru*	(can do ~)
～ことになる	~ *koto ni naru*	(It's been decided that ~)
～ことになっている	~ *koto ni natte iru*	(It is a rule that ~; be supposed to do ~)
～ことにする	~ *koto ni suru*	(decide that ~)
～ことにしている	~ *koto ni shite iru*	(make it a rule to do ~)
～まで	~ *made*	(till)
～までに	~ *made ni*	(by the time when)
～前に	~ *mae ni*	(before)
～もの(だ)	~ *mono (da)*	(should do ~)
～な	~ *na*	(Don't do ~)
～のに	~ *no ni*	(in order to do ~)
～ために[1]	~ *tame ni*[1]	(in order to do ~)
～ために[2]	~ *tame ni*[2]	(because)
～と[4]	~ *to*[4]	(if; when)
～ところだ[2]	~ *tokoro da*[2]	(be about to do ~)
～つもり	~ *tsumori*	(intend to do ~)
～うちに	~ *uchi ni*	(while)
～ようになる	~ *yō ni naru*	(come to do ~)
～ようにする	~ *yō ni suru*	(try to do ~)

3. Vplain·past + _____

～後で	~ *ato de*	(after)
～ことがある[1]	~ *koto ga aru*[1]	(have done ~ [Experience])
～もの(だ)	~ *mono (da)*	(used to do ~)
～(た)ら	~*(ta)ra*	(if; when)
～(た)らどうですか	~*(ta)ra dō desu ka*	(Why don't you do ~?; How about doing ~?)

～(た)り～(た)りする	*~(ta)ri ~(ta)ri suru*	(do things like doing ~ and doing ~)
～ために[2]	*~ tame ni*[2]	(because)
～ところだ[2]	*~ tokoro da*[2]	(have just done ~; just did ~)
～つもり	*~ tsumori*	(mean; believe)

4. V*te* + _____

～あげる[2]	*~ ageru*[2]	(do ~ for s.o.)
～ある[2]	*~ aru*[2]	(have been done)
～ほしい[2]	*~ hoshii*[2]	(want s.o. to do ~)
～いく[2]	*~ iku*[2]	(keep doing ~)
～いる[2]	*~ iru*[2]	(be doing ~; have done ~)
～から[2]	*~ kara*[2]	(after doing ~)
～ください	*~ kudasai*	(Please do ~)
～くれる[2]	*~ kureru*[2]	(s.o. does ~ for me)
～くる[2]	*~ kuru*[2]	(begin to; have been doing ~)
～みる	*~ miru*	(do ~ and see; try to do ~)
～(て)も	*~(te)mo*	(even if; even though)
～(て)もいい	*~(te)mo ii*	(may [Permission])
～もらう[2]	*~ morau*[2]	(have s.o. do ~ for me)
～おく	*~ oku*	(do ~ in advance)
～しまう	*~ shimau*	(have done ~; finish ~)
～(て)はいけない	*~(te)wa ikenai*	(must not do ~)

5. V*masu* + _____

～出す	*~ dasu*	(begin to do ~)
～始める	*~ hajimeru*	(begin to do ~)
～方	*~ kata*	(how to do ~; the way of doing ~)
～ましょう	*~mashō*	(Let's do ~; I/We will do ~)
～ながら	*~ nagara*	(while doing ~)
～なさい	*~ nasai*	(Do ~ [Polite imperative])
～に[5](行く)	*~ ni*[5] *(iku)*	((go) to do ~)
～にくい	*~ nikui*	(hard to do ~; do not do ~ easily)
お～になる	*o ~ ni naru*	(do ~ [Honorific])
お～する	*o ~ suru*	(do ~ [Humble])
～終わる	*~ owaru*	(finish doing ~)
～そうだ[2]	*~ sō da*[2]	(It looks like ~ will do ~)

～すぎる	~ *sugiru*	(do ~ excessively)
～たい	~ *tai*	(want to do ~)
～やすい	~ *yasui*	(easy to do ~; do ~ easily)

6. Vneg + _____ (Gr. 1) / Vstem + _____ (Gr. 2)

～ないで	*~naide*	(without doing ~)
～ないでください	*~naide kudasai*	(Please do not ~)
～ないでほしい	*~naide hoshii*	(I don't want s.o. to do ~)
～{なければ / なくては / ねば}ならない	~{*nakereba / nakute wa / neba*} *naranai*	(must do ~; have to do ~ [Obligation])
～{なければ / なくては / ないと}いけない	~{*nakereba / nakute wa / nai to*} *ikenai*	(must do ~; have to do ~ [Obligation])
～なくてもいい	*~nakute mo ii*	(do not have to do ~)
～なくなる	*~naku naru*	(do not do ~ anymore)
～ずに	*~zu ni*	(without doing ~)

7. Vcond + _____ (Gr. 1) / Vstem + *re* + _____ (Gr. 2)

～ばよかった	*~ba yokatta*	(I wish ~ had done ~)

8. Vvol + _____

～(よ)うと思う	*~(yo)o to omou*	(think ~ will do ~)
～(よ)うとする	*~(yo)o to suru*	(try to do ~)

B. *I*-adjectives

1. Adj(*i*)plain + _____

～だけ	~ *dake*	(just)
～だろう	~ *darō*	(probably)
～はず	~ *hazu*	(It is expected that ~)
～かもしれない	~ *kamoshirenai*	(might)
～けれども	~ *keredomo*	(although)
～ことがある[1]	~ *koto ga aru*[1]	(There were times when)
～ことがある[2]	~ *koto ga aru*[2]	(There are times when)
～ことは	~ *koto wa*	(indeed ~ (but))
～なら	~ *nara*	(if)

～にちがいない	*~ ni chigai nai*	(must [Certainty])
～{の / ん}だ	*~{ no / n } da*	(It is that ~; The fact is that ~; The explanation is that ~)
～ので	*~ node*	(since; because)
～のに	*~ noni*	(in spite of the fact that ~)
～のは～だ	*~ no wa ~ da*	(It is ~ that ~)
～らしい	*~ rashii*	(It seems that ~)
～し	*~ shi*	(~ and)
～そうだ[1]	*~ sō da*[1]	(I heard that ~)
～ために[2]	*~ tame ni*[2]	(because)
～時	*~ toki*	(when)
～つもり	*~ tsumori*	(believe)
～わけだ	*~ wake da*	(It means that ~; No wonder ~; That's why ~)
～ようだ[1]	*~ yō da*[1]	(It appears that ~)

2. Adj(*i*)plain·non-past + _____

～間(に)	*~ aida (ni)*	(while)
～と[4]	*~ to*[4]	(if; when)
～うちに	*~ uchi ni*	(while)

3. Adj(*i*)plain·past + _____

～(た)ら	*~(ta)ra*	(if; when)
～(た)り～(た)りする	*~(ta)ri ~(ta)ri suru*	(~ is sometimes ~ and sometimes ~)

4. Adj(*i*)*te* + _____

～(て)も	*~(te)mo*	(even if; even though)
～(て)もいい	*~(te)mo ii*	(It is all right if ~)
～たまらない	*~ tamaranai*	(unbearably)

5. Adj(*i*)stem + _____

～がる	*~ garu*	(show signs of)
～み	*~ mi*	[Noun form of Adj(*i*)]
～さ	*~ sa*	[Noun form of Adj(*i*)]
～そうだ[2]	*~ sō da*[2]	(look)
～すぎる	*~ sugiru*	(too ~)

C. *Na*-adjectives and nouns

1. $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}(na)\\ \text{N}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + { *da* / *datta* } + _____

～けれども*	~ *keredomo*	(although)
～し*	~ *shi*	(~ and)
～そうだ[1]	~ *sō da*[1]	(I heard that ~)

*The formal forms of *da* / *datta* (i.e., *desu* / *deshita*) can also be used in polite speech.

2. $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}(na)\\ \text{N}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + { *na* / *datta* } + _____

～{の / ん}だ	~ { *no* / *n* } *da*	(It is that ~; The fact is that ~; The explanation is that ~)
～ので	~ *node*	(since; because)
～のに	~ *noni*	(in spite of the fact that ~)
～のは～だ	~ *no wa* ~ *da*	(It is ~ that ~)

3. $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}(na) + \{ na / datta \} + \text{_____}\\ \text{N} + \{ no / datta \} + \text{_____}\end{matrix}\right.$

～はず	~ *hazu*	(It is expected that ~)
～ため[2]	~ *tame*[2]	(because)
～時	~ *toki*	(when)
～つもり	~ *tsumori*	(mean; believe)
～ようだ[1]	~ *yō da*[1]	(It looks like ~; It appears that ~)

4. $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}(na)\\ \text{N}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + { ø / *datta* } + _____

～だろう	~ *darō*	(probably)
～かもしれない	~ *kamoshirenai*	(might)
～かなあ	~ *kanā*	(~, I wonder)
～みたいだ	~ *mitai da*	(It looks like ~; It appears that ~)
～なら	~ *nara*	(if)
～にちがいない	~ *ni chigai nai*	(must [Certainty])
～らしい	~ *rashii*	(It seems that ~)

5. $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}(na)\\ \text{N}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + *da* + _____

～と[4]	~ *to*[4]	(if; when)

6. $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}(na) + na + \text{_____}\\ \text{N} + no + \text{_____}\end{matrix}\right.$

～間(に)	~ *aida (ni)*	(while)
～ことがある[2]	~ *koto ga aru*[2]	(There are times when ~)
～うちに	~ *uchi ni*	(while)

7. $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}(na)\\ \text{N}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + *de* + _____

～(で)も	~ *(de)mo*	(even if; even though)
～(で)もいい	~ *(de)mo ii*	(It is all right if ~)

8. $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{Adj}(na)\\ \text{N}\end{matrix}\right\}$ + *datta* + _____

～ことがある[1]	~ *koto ga aru*[1]	(There were times when ~)
～(だった)ら	~ *(datta)ra*	(if; when)
～(だった)り～(だった)りする	~ *(datta)ri ~ (datta)ri suru*	(~ is sometimes ~ and sometimes ~)

9. Adj(*na*) + { *na* / *datta* } + _____

～だけ	~ *dake*	(only)
～ことは	~ *koto wa*	(indeed ~ (but))
～わけだ	~ *wake da*	(It means that ~; No wonder ~; That's why ~)

10. Adj(*na*) + _____

～さ	~ *sa*	[Noun form of Adj(*na*)]
～そうだ[2]	~ *sō da*[2]	(look)
～すぎる	~ *sugiru*	(too ~)

Appendix 5. Numerals and Counters

A. Numerals

	Native Japanese Numerals[1]	Sino-Japanese Numerals					
1	一(つ) *hito(-tsu)*	1	一 *ichi*	11	十一 *jūichi*	21	二十一 *nijū-ichi*
2	二(つ) *futa(-tsu)*	2	二 *ni*	12	十二 *jūni*	22	二十二 *nijū-ni*
3	三(つ) *mit(-tsu)*	3	三 *san*	13	十三 *jūsan*	30	三十 *sanjū*
4	四(つ) *yot(-tsu)*	4	四 *shi* / *yon*[3]	14	十四 *jūshi* / *jūyon*[3]	40	四十 *yonjū*[3]
5	五(つ) *itsu(-tsu)*	5	五 *go*	15	十五 *jūgo*	50	五十 *gojū*
6	六(つ) *mut(-tsu)*	6	六 *roku*	16	十六 *jūroku*	60	六十 *rokujū*
7	七(つ) *nana(-tsu)*	7	七 *shichi* / *nana*[4]	17	十七 *jūshichi* / *jūnana*[4]	70	七十 *nanajū*[4]
8	八(つ) *yat(-tsu)*	8	八 *hachi*	18	十八 *jūhachi*	80	八十 *hachijū*
9	九(つ) *kokono(-tsu)*	9	九 *kyū*[5] / *ku*	19	十九 *jūkyū*[5] / *jūku*	90	九十 *kyūjū*
10	十 *tō*	10	十 *jū*	20	二十 *nijū*		

1 The native Japanese numeral system is used from 1 to 10 only. For numbers greater than 10, the Sino-Japanese numeral system is used. The parenthesized *-tsu* is a counter for countable objects.

2 The bold type indicates a sound change.

3 In addition to the Sino-Japanese numeral *shi*, *yon* (a variation of the Japanese numeral *yo*) is also used for 4, 14, 40, 400, etc. In fact, when these numerals are used with a counter, *yon* is usually used.

4 Because *shichi* can be misheard as *ichi* "one," the native Japanese numeral *nana* is commonly used instead.

5 *Kyū* is the more commonly used pronunciation, except in cases where it might lead to misunderstanding. The word for September is always pronounced *ku-gatsu*.

Sino-Japanese Numerals[2]					
100	百 *hyaku*[6]	1,000	千 *sen*[6]	10,000	一万 *ichiman*
200	二百 *nihyaku*	2,000	二千 *nisen*	100,000	十万 *jūman*
300	三百 *san**byaku***	3,000	三千 *san**zen***	1,000,000	百万 *hyakuman*
400	四百 *yonhyaku*[3]	4,000	四千 *yonsen*[3]	10,000,000	一千万 ***is**senman*
500	五百 *gohyaku*	5,000	五千 *gosen*	100,000,000	一億 *ichioku*
600	**六百** ***roppyaku***	6,000	六千 *rokusen*	1,000,000,000	十億 *jūoku*
700	七百 *nanahyaku*[4]	7,000	七千 *nanasen*[4]	10,000,000,000	百億 *hyakuoku*
800	**八百** ***happyaku***	8,000	**八千** ***has**sen*	100,000,000,000	一千億 ***is**sen'oku*
900	九百 *kyūhyaku*	9,000	九千 *kyūsen*	1,000,000,000,000	一兆 ***it**chō*

6 100 is always read *hyaku*, not *ichihyaku* or *ippyaku*. Similarly, 1,000 is usually read as *sen*, rather than *issen*.

Notes

1. Telephone numbers are given in Sino-Japanese numerals. For example, 389-2681 is read as "*san-hachi-kyū-**no**, nī-roku-hachi-ichi*." However, 4 and 7 are often read as *yon* and *nana*, respectively.

2. The year according to the Western calendar is given in Sino-Japanese numerals followed by *nen* "year." For example, 1985 is read as "*sen-kyūhyaku-hachijū-go-nen*."

B. Counters[1] (The following chart lists some commonly used counters.)

	Type A	Type B [*h*-]	Type C [*k*-]	Type D [*s*-]
Ex.	枚 *-mai* (for thin objects such as paper, tickets, etc.)	本 *-hon* (for long objects such as pencils, bottles, etc.)	か月 *-kagetsu* (~ month(s))	冊 *-satsu* (for objects such as books, magazines, etc.)
1	一枚 *ichi-mai*	一本 *ip-pon*	一か月 *ik-kagetsu*	一冊 *is-satsu*
2	二枚 *ni-mai*	二本 *ni-hon*	二か月 *ni-kagetsu*	二冊 *ni-satsu*
3	三枚 *san-mai*	三本 *san-bon*	三か月 *san-kagetsu*	三冊 *san-satsu*
4	四枚 *yon-mai*	四本 *yon-hon*	四か月 *yon-kagetsu*	四冊 *yon-satsu*
5	五枚 *go-mai*	五本 *go-hon*	五か月 *go-kagetsu*	五冊 *go-satsu*
6	六枚 *roku-mai*	六本 *rop-pon*	六か月 *rok-kagetsu*	六冊 *roku-satsu*
7	七枚 *nana-mai*	七本 *nana-hon*	七か月 *nana-kagetsu*	七冊 *nana-satsu*
8	八枚 *hachi-mai*	八本 *hachi-hon* / *hap-pon*	八か月 *hachi-kagetsu* / *hak-kagetsu*	八冊 *has-satsu*
9	九枚 *kyū-mai*	九本 *kyū-hon*	九か月 *kyū-kagetsu*	九冊 *kyū-satsu*
10	十枚 *jū-mai*	十本 *jup*[2]*-pon*	十か月 *juk*[2]*-kagetsu*	十冊 *jus*[2]*-satsu*
11	十一枚 *jūichi-mai*	十一本 *jūip-pon*	十一か月 *jūik-kagetsu*	十一冊 *jūis-satsu*

1 To be accurate, not all suffixes that are used with numbers are counters. For example, the *-ka* that indicates a specific day of the month is not a counter. However, such suffixes are also listed here as counters for convenience.

Type E [*p*-]	Type F [*t*-]	Irregular Types		
頁 *-pēji* (~ page(s); p. ~)	頭 *-tō* (for large animals such as horses, whales, etc.)	人 *-nin* (~ person/people)	日 *-ka / -nichi* (~st/~nd/~rd/ ~th day of the month)	日 *-ka / -nichi* (~ day(s))
一頁 *ichi-pēji / ip-pēji*	一頭 *it-tō*	一人 *hitori*	一日 *tsuitachi*	一日 *ichi-nichi*
二頁 *ni-pēji*	二頭 *ni-tō*	二人 *futari*	二日 *futsu-ka*	
三頁 *san-pēji*	三頭 *san-tō*	三人 *san-nin*	三日 *mik-ka*	
四頁 *yon-pēji*	四頭 *yon-tō*	四人 *yo-nin*	四日 *yok-ka*	
五頁 *go-pēji*	五頭 *go-tō*	五人 *go-nin*	五日 *itsu-ka*	
六頁 *roku-pēji*	六頭 *roku-tō*	六人 *roku-nin*	六日 *mui-ka*	
七頁 *nana-pēji*	七頭 *nana-tō*	七人 *nana-nin / shichi-nin*	七日 *nano-ka*	
八頁 *hachi-pēji*	八頭 *hachi-tō / hat-tō*	八人 *hachi-nin*	八日 *yō-ka*	
九頁 *kyū-pēji*	九頭 *kyū-tō*	九人 *kyū-nin / ku-nin*	九日 *kokono-ka*	
十頁 *jup*[2]*-pēji*	十頭 *jut*[2]*-tō*	十人 *jū-nin*	十日 *tō-ka*	
十一頁 *jūichi-pēji / jūip-pēji*	十一頭 *jūit-tō*	十一人 *jūichi-nin*	十一日 *jūichi-nichi*	

2 As an alternative pronunciation, *ji* can also be used. For example, *jup-pon* and *jip-pon* are both correct ways of pronunciation.

Notes

1. Depending on the initial sound of a counter, the pronunciation of the number and/or the counter changes. Counters are classified according to the phonetic modifications they undergo. Type A counters are straightforward cases of *Sino-Japanese Number + Counter*, with no phonetic modifications. The following is a chart of phonetic modifications for Type B through Type F. If there is no entry for a given number, it indicates that there is no phonetic modification for that particular number. As for the remaining irregular types, you have to memorize them piecemeal.

Counters / Numbers	Type B *h-*	Type C *k-*	Type D *s-*	Type E *p-*	Type F *t-*
1 (*ichi*)	*i**p**-**p**-*	*i**k**-k-*	*i**s**-s-*	(*i**p**-p-*)*	*i**t**-t-*
3 (*san*)	*san-**b**-*				
6 (*roku*)	*ro**p**-**p**-*	*ro**k**-k-*			
8 (*hachi*)	(*ha**p**-**p**-*)*	(*ha**k**-k-*)*	*ha**s**-s-*		*ha**t**-t-*
10 (*jū*)	*ju**p**-**p**-* *ji**p**-**p**-*	*ju**k**-k-* *ji**k**-k-*	*ju**s**-s-* *ji**s**-s-*	*ju**p**-p-* *ji**p**-p-*	*ju**t**-t-* *ji**t**-t-*

* ( ) indicates that the regular pronunciation is also commonly used.

2. The 20th day of the month and 20 days are not *nijū-nichi* but *hatsu-ka*. "Twenty years old" is referred to as *hatachi*.

3. The following is a list of other examples of each type:

Type A:
倍	*-bai*	(~ time(s)) [multiplication]
番	*-ban*	(~st / ~nd / ~rd / ~th) [ordinal numbers]
度	*-do*	(~ degree(s) [temperature, angle]; ~ time(s) [frequency])
台	*-dai*	[automobiles, bicycles, etc.]
畳	*-jō*	(~ *tatami* mat(s))
部	*-bu*	(~ set(s)) [number of copies]
面	*-men*	(p. ~) [newspaper page]

For the following counters, number 4 is pronounced *yo*, not *yon*.

時	*-ji*	(~ o'clock)
時間	*-jikan*	(~ hour(s))
年	*-nen*	(~ year(s))

Numbers 4, 7 and 9 before *-gatsu* are pronounced *shi*, *shichi* and *ku*, respectively.

月 *-gatsu* [name of the month]

The initial sound of the following counter with number 3 changes from *wa* to *ba*.

羽 *-wa* [birds]

Type B: 杯 *-hai* (~ cup(s) of)
匹 *-hiki* [animals, worms, insects]

The initial sound of the following counters with number 3 is *p-*, not *b-*.

泊 *-haku* (~ night(s)) [number of nights of a stay]
分 *-hun* (~ minute(s))

Type C: 個 *-ko* (~ piece(s))
機 *-ki* [airplanes]
課 *-ka* (Lesson ~; ~ lesson(s))

The initial sound of the following counter with number 3 can be either *k-* or *g-*.

階 *-kai* (~st/~nd/~rd/~th floor; ~ floor(s))

Type D: 歳 *-sai* (~ year(s) old)
隻 *-sō* [ships]

The initial sound of the following counter with number 3 is *z-*, not *s-*.

足 *-soku* (~ pair(s)) [footwear]

Type E: パック *-pakku* (~ pack(s))
ポンド *-pondo* (~ pound(s))

Type F: 点 *-ten* (~ point(s))
等 *-tō* [class; grade]
トン *-ton* (~ ton(s))
通 *-tsū* (~ letter(s); ~ email(s))

Appendix 6. *Ko-so-a-do:* Japanese Demonstratives

The Japanese language has several groups of demonstratives. Some of them are used as pronouns (i.e., demonstrative pronouns) and the others are used to modify nouns (i.e., demonstrative adjectives) or verbs (i.e., demonstrative adverbs).

	Demonstrative pronouns		
	For objects	For places	For directions and objects (casual)
For X that is close to the speaker	これ ***ko**re* (this)	ここ ***ko**ko* (this place; here)	こっち ***ko**tchi* (this way/one)
For X that is close to the listener	それ ***so**re* (that)	そこ ***so**ko* (that place; there)	そっち ***so**tchi* (that way/one)
For X distant from both the speaker and the listener	あれ ***a**re* (that one over there)	あそこ ***a**soko* (that place over there)	あっち ***a**tchi* (that way/one over there)
Question words	どれ ***do**re* (which one (among many))	どこ ***do**ko* (what place; where)	どっち ***do**tchi* (which way/one (of the two))

Notes

1. The *so*-series of demonstratives are also used when the speaker and the listener are both in a small space and the referent is not very far away from them, as in (1).

   (1) [To the driver in a taxi]
   あ、そこのコンビニの前で降ろしてください。
   *A, **soko** no konbini no mae de oroshite kudasai.*
   (Uh, please let me off in front of that convenience store.)

2. *Kochira*, *sochira*, *achira* and *dochira* are used for directions, people, and objects, as in (2).

   (2) a. [At a restaurant]
   お手洗いは**こちら**です。
   *O-tearai wa **kochira** desu.*
   (The restroom is this way.)

	Demonstrative adjectives		Demonstrative adverbs
For directions, people, and objects (polite)	Specific	Non-specific	
こちら ***ko**chira* (this way/person/one)	この ***ko**no* (this X)	こんな ***ko**nna* (X like this)	こう ***ko**o* (like this; in this fashion)
そちら ***so**chira* (that way/person/one)	その ***so**no* (that X)	そんな ***so**nna* (X like that)	そう ***so**o* (like that; in that fashion)
あちら ***a**chira* (that way/person/one over there)	あの ***a**no* (that X over there)	あんな ***a**nna* (X like that one over there)	ああ ***a**a* (like that; in that fashion)
どちら ***do**chira* (which way/person/one (of the two))	どの ***do**no* (which X)	どんな ***do**nna* (what kind of X)	どう ***do**o* (in what fashion)

b. こちらは山田さんです。
***Kochira** wa Yamada-san desu.*
(This is Yamada-san.)

c. そちらは日本製です。
***Sochira** wa nihon-sei desu.*
(That one is made in Japan.)

3. When the speaker refers to something or someone not in sight and the referent is known only to the listener, a *so*-series demonstrative is used, as in (3)-B. In this case, an *a*-series or *ko*-series demonstrative cannot be used.

(3) A: 昨日、「さくら」というレストランに行きました。
Kinō, "Sakura" to iu resutoran ni ikimashita.
(I went to a restaurant called *Sakura* yesterday.)

B: {その / × あの / × この} レストランはおいしいですか。
{***Sono*** / × ***Ano*** / × ***Kono***} *resutoran wa oishiidesu ka.*
(Does that restaurant serve tasty food? (lit., Is that restaurant tasty?))

When the speaker refers to something or someone not in sight and the referent is known to both the speaker and the listener, an *a*-series of demonstrative is used, as in (4)-B. In this case, a *so*-series or *ko*-series demonstrative cannot be used.

(4) A: 昨日、「さくら」というレストランに行きました。
Kinō, "Sakura" to iu resutoran ni ikimashita.
(I went to a restaurant called *Sakura* yesterday.)

B: ああ、{あの / × その / × この} レストランはいいですね。私も時々行きます。
Aa, {***ano*** / × ***sono*** / × ***kono***} *resutoran wa iidesu ne. Watashi mo tokidoki ikimasu.*
(Oh, that restaurant is good, isn't it? I go there from time to time, too.)

4. *Ko*-series and *so*-series demonstratives are used to refer to something or someone mentioned in the previous context. *A*-series demonstratives cannot be used in this case. The use of *so*-series demonstratives indicates that the speaker is psychologically detached from the referent.

(5) 私は大学の時、日本人の先生に空手を習いました。{この / その / × あの} 先生はとてもきびしい先生でした。
Watashi wa daigaku no toki, nihonjin no sensei ni karate o naraimashita. {***Kono*** / ***Sono*** / × ***Ano***} *sensei wa totemo kibishii sensei deshita.*
(When I was in college, I learned karate from a Japanese teacher. He (lit., {This / That} teacher) was a very strict teacher.)

Grammar Index

CJG: Characteristics of Japanese Grammar

action in progress *iru*[2]
agent *ni*[8]
alternative *ka*[1]
appositive clause Relative clause
auxiliary *da*, *~ darō*, *~ kamoshire-nai*, *~ sō da*[1]
auxiliary *i*-adjective *hoshii*[2], *~ rashii*, *~ tai*, *~ yasui/nikui*
auxiliary *na*-adjective *~ sugiru*, *~ yō da*[1], *~ yō da*[2]
auxiliary verb *ageru*[2], *aru*[2], *~ dasu*, *~ garu*, *~ hajimeru*, *iku*[2], *iru*[2], *miru*, *morau*[2], *~ oku*, *~ owaru*, *~ shimau*, *~ sugiru*
benefit *tame ni*[3]
causative *~saseru*
causative-passive *~saseru*
cause *de*[3], *kara*[3], *node*, *tame ni*[2], *~te*
cleft sentence *~ no wa ~ da*
command ⇒ imperative
command (polite) *~ kudasai*
comparative *~ hō ga ~ yori*
comparison *~ ni shite wa*, *~ to shite wa*, *yori*
completion of an action *~ shimau*
concession *~temo ii*
concurrent action *nagara*
conditional *ba*, *tara*, *to*[4]
conjecture *~ darō*, *~ rashii*, *~ yō da*[1]
continual verb Appendix 2
contrastive *wa*
conviction *~ ni chigainai*, *tsumori*
counter Appendix 5
courteous polite CJG 6
demonstrative Appendix 6
dependent noun *aida (ni)*, *hazu*, *mama*, *mono (da)*, *no*[2], *toki*, *~ tokoro da*[2], *tsumori*, *~ wake da*
detachment *o*[3]
direct contact *ni*[4]
direct object *o*[1]
direct passive *~rareru*[1]
direct quotation *to*[3], *~ to iu*[1]
direction *e*, *ni*[7]
disjunctive conjunction *ga*[2], *keredomo*
ellipsis CJG 3
embedded question *~ ka dō ka*
emphasis *mo*[2]
exhaustive listing *to*[1]
existence (animate things) *iru*[1]
existence (inanimate things) *aru*[1]
experience *~ koto ga aru*[1]
giving verb *ageru*[1], *kureru*[1]
habitual action *iru*[2]
hearsay *~ sō da*[1], *tte*[2]
highlight *~ no wa ~ da*
honorific polite *o ~ ni naru*, *~rareru*[1], CJG 6
humble polite *o ~ suru*, CJG 6
imperative (negative) *na*
imperative (polite) *~ nasai*
impression *~ sō da*[2]
indefinite pronoun *no*[2], Question word *ka*
indirect object *ni*[2]

indirect passive *~rareru*[1]
indirect quotation *to*[3], *~ to iu*[1], *~ yō ni iu*
intension *tsumori*
intransitive verb Appendix 2
invitation *~mashō*
location of action/event *de*[1]
location of existence *ni*[6]
means *de*[2]
momentary verb Appendix 2
motion verb Appendix 2
necessity *~nakereba naranai*
nominalizer *koto*[2], *no*[3]
non-exhaustive listing *~tari ~tari suru*, *toka*[1], *ya*
noun modification *no*[1], Relative clause
numeral Appendix 5
obligation *~nakereba naranai*
occasional action/state *~ koto ga aru*[2]
onomatopoeia *suru*[6], *to*[3], CJG 7
passive *~rareru*[1], CJG 5
permission *~temo ii*
personal pronoun CJG 4
place of movement *o*[2]
plural *-tachi*
point of time *ni*[1]
polite *o-*, *-sama*
possession *aru*[1]
possibility *~ kamoshirenai*
potential *~ koto ga dekiru*, *~rareru*[2]
prefix *mai-*, *o-*
prohibition *~tewa ikenai*
purpose *ni*[5], *noni*, *tame ni*[1]
question *ka*[2]
quotation *to*[3], *tte*[2]
reason *de*[3], *kara*[3], *node*, *tame ni*[2], *~te*
receiving verb *morau*[1]
reciprocal relationship *to*[2]
reciprocal verb Appendix 2
reflexive pronoun *jibun*
relative clause Relative clause
request *~ kudasai*
resemblance *~ yō da*[2]
resultant state *iru*[2]
semantic derivation *de*[4], *ni*[8], *to*[4]
sentence-final particle *ka*[2], *ne*, *no*[4], *yo*
sequence of actions *kara*[2]
shared information *~ no da*
simultaneous action *nagara*
source *ni*[3]
stative verb Appendix 2
subject *ga*[1]
suffix *-goro*, *-kata*, *-sa*, *-sama*, *-tachi*
suggestion *~ hō ga ii*, *~tara dō desu ka*
superlative *ichiban*
supposition *~ darō*, *nara*
tag question *ne*
***te*-form** *~te*
***te*-form (negative)** *~naide*, *~nakute*
topic *~ to ieba*, *tte*[1], *wa*, CJG 2
transitive verb Appendix 3
viewpoint *ageru*[1], *ageru*[2], *iku*[1], *iku*[2], *jibun*, *kureru*[1], *kureru*[2], *kuru*[1], *kuru*[2], *morau*[1], *morau*[2], *~rareru*[1], CJG 8
volitional (plain) *~yō*
volitional (polite) *~mashō*
word order CJG 1

English Index

A

about *bakari*, *-goro*, *hodo*, *kurai*, *no*[1]
across *o*[2]
after *ato de*, *tara*
after all *yahari*
after ~ have V-ed *kara*[2]
after that *sorekara*
after V-ing *kara*[2]
allow s.o./s.t. to do s.t. *~saseru*
almost did s.t. *~ tokoro da*[2]
alone *dake*
along *o*[2]
already *mō*
also *mo*[1], *yahari*
although *~ kawari ni*, *keredomo*, *noni*, *temo*
and *sorekara*, *~te*, *to*[1], *toka*[1], *ya*
and so on *nado*
and the like *nado*
and then *sorekara*
and what's more *shi*
(not) any *mo*[2]
(not) any longer *mō*
(not) anymore *mō*
anything/anyone/anywhere/etc.
Question word (Prt) *demo*
(not) anything/anybody/anywhere/any ~ but *shika*
appear *~ sō da*[2], *~ yō da*[1]
approximately *kurai*
around *-goro*
as *to*[2], *~ to shite*, *~ to shite wa*, *~ yō da*[2], *~ yō ni*[1]
(not as) ~ as ~ *hodo*
as before *yahari*
as expected *yahari*
as far as *made*
as for *wa*
as if *~ yō da*[2], *~ yō ni*[1]
as it is *mama*
ask s.o. to do s.t. *morau*[2]
a small number of *sukunai*
a small quantity of *sukunai*
as many/much/long/etc. as *mo*[2]
at *de*[1], *de*[4], *kara*[1], *ni*[1], *ni*[6], *no*[1]
at a time *zutsu*
at great expense *sekkaku*
at intervals of *goto ni*
attempt to do s.t. *~yō to suru*
at the time when *toki*

B

be *aru*[1], *iru*[1]
be -able *~rareru*[2]
be able to do s.t. *~ koto ga dekiru*, *~rareru*[2]
be about to do s.t. *~yō to suru*
be arranged that ~ *~ koto ni naru*
be audible *kikoeru*
because *kara*[3], *node*, *tame ni*[2]
because ~ not *~nakute*
because of *de*[3], *tame ni*[2]
because of that *sorede*
become *kuru*[2], *naru*
be comprehensible *wakaru*
be convinced that ~ *tsumori*
be decided that ~ *~ koto ni naru*
be done *aru*[2]

be dying to do s.t. *tamaranai*
be fond of *suki*
before *mae ni*, *uchi ni*
begin to do s.t. *~ dasu*, *~ hajimeru*, *kuru*[2], *~ yō ni naru*
be given *morau*[1]
be (in) a place where it takes ~ to get to *~ tokoro da*[1]
be in the middle of doing s.t. *~ tokoro da*[2]
be just about to do s.t. *~ tokoro da*[2]
be just doing s.t. *bakari*
believe that ~ *~ to omou*, *tsumori*
be like *~ yō da*[2]
be more (Adj.) than *~ hō ga ~ yori*
be planning to do s.t. *tsumori*
be ready to do s.t. *bakari*
be supposed to do s.t. *hazu*, *~ koto ni naru*, *mono (da)*
better do s.t. *~ hō ga ii*
be V-ed *iru*[2], *~rareru*[1]
be V-ing *iru*[2]
be visible *mieru*
both ~ and ~ *~ mo ~ mo*
but *ga*[2], *~ kawari ni*, *keredomo*, *noni*
by *de*[2], *made ni*, *ni*[8], *no*[1]
by the time *made ni*

C

called *~ to iu*[2]
can *~ koto ga dekiru*, *~rareru*[2]
can be done *~rareru*[2]
can comprehend *wakaru*
can figure out *wakaru*
(can) hear *kikoeru*
cannot *~tewa ikenai*
(can) see *mieru*
can tell *wakaru*
cause s.o./s.t. to do s.t. *~saseru*
change *suru*[5]
change (into) *naru*
come *iku*[1], *kuru*[1]
come to do s.t. *kuru*[2], *~ yō ni naru*
considering that ~ *~ ni shite wa*
continue *iku*[2]
cost *suru*[4]
could *nara*

D

decide on *~ ni suru*
decide to do s.t. *~ koto ni suru*
despite the fact that ~ *noni*
difficult to do s.t. *~ nikui*
dislike *kirai*
do *suru*[1]
do ~ (but ~) *~ koto wa*
doing s.t. *no*[3]
do (me or s.o.) a favor by doing s.t. *kureru*[2]
Don't do s.t. *na*
don't like *kirai*
don't you? *ne*
do not ~ easily *~ nikui*
do not V_1, and V_2 instead *~naide*
do s.o. a favor by doing s.t. *ageru*[2]
Do s.t. *~ nasai*
do s.t. and see *miru*
do s.t. (for me or s.o.) *kureru*[2]
do s.t. for s.o. *ageru*[2]
do s.t. in advance *~ oku*
do s.t. more (Adv.) than ~ do *~ hō ga ~ yori*
do s.t. regrettably/by mistake *~ shimau*

do s.t. too much/often *~ sugiru*
do things like ~ and ~ *~tari ~tari suru*
due to *de*[3], *tame ni*[2]
during *uchi ni*
during (the time when) *aida (ni)*

E

each *zutsu*
(for, at, etc.) each *goto ni*
easily *~ yasui*
easy to do s.t. *~ yasui*
(not) ~ either *mo*[1]
(either) ~ or ~ *ka*[1], *soretomo*
elapse *suru*[4]
end *~ owaru*
entitled *~ to iu*[2]
etc. *nado*
even *demo*, *made*, *mo*[2]
even if *temo*
(not) even (one) *mo*[2]
even though *noni*, *temo*
every *mai-*
(for, at, etc.) every *goto ni*
exist *aru*[1], *iru*[1]
extremely *tamaranai*

F

feel *suru*[3]
feel like *~ sō da*[2]
few *sukunai*
finish *~ owaru*
finish doing s.t. *~ shimau*
finish s.t. up *~ shimau*
for *de*[2], *ni*[2], *~ ni shite wa*, *no*[1], *tame ni*[3], *~ to shite wa*
for example *nado*
for the benefit of *tame ni*[3]
for the good of *tame ni*[3]
for (the purpose of) *~ no ni*, *tame ni*[1]
for the sake of *tame ni*[3]
from *de*[2], *kara*[1], *ni*[3], *o*[3], *to*[2]

G

get *morau*[1]
get s.o./s.t. to do s.t. *~saseru*
get s.o. to do s.t. *morau*[2]
get to know *shiru*
get V-ed *~rareru*[1]
give *ageru*[1], *kureru*[1]
go *iku*[1]
go ahead and do s.t. *~ oku*
go on V-ing *iku*[2]
grow *iku*[2], *kuru*[2]

H

hard to do s.t. *~ nikui*
have *aru*[1], *suru*[2]
have experience V-ing *~ koto ga aru*[1]
have been done *aru*[2]
have been V-ing *kuru*[2]
have done s.t. *~ shimau*
have just done s.t. *bakari*, *~ tokoro da*[2]
have s.o. do s.t. *morau*[2], *~saseru*
have s.t. done by s.o. *morau*[2]
have to *~nakereba naranai*
have V-ed *~ koto ga aru*[1], *kuru*[2]
hear *suru*[3]
(can) hear *kikoeru*
how *dō*
How about doing s.t.? *~tara dō desu ka*
How could ~! *mono (da)*

How dare ~! *mono (da)*
however *keredomo*
how to do s.t. *-kata*

I

I believe that ~ *hazu*
I expect that ~ *hazu*
if *ba*, *ka*[2], *nara*, *tara*, *to*[4]
if (~ or not) *~ ka dō ka*
if it is the case that ~ *nara*
if it is true that ~ *nara*
if so *soredewa*
I guess *~ darō*
I heard that ~ *~ rashii*, *~ sō da*[1], *tte*[2]
I hear that ~ *~ sō da*[1]
I'm certain that ~ *~ ni chigai nai*
I'm sure that ~ *hazu*, *~ ni chigai nai*
in *de*[1], *de*[2], *de*[4], *ni*[1], *ni*[4], *ni*[6], *ni*[7], *no*[1], *o*[2]
in addition to that *sorekara*
indeed ~ alright, (but ~) *~ koto wa*
indeed ~ (but ~) *~ koto wa*
in front of *mae ni*
-ing *koto*[2], *~te*
in most cases *taitei*
in most occasions *taitei*
in order to do s.t. *tame ni*[1]
in place of *~ kawari ni*
in spite of the fact that ~ *noni*
instead of *~ kawari ni*
intend to do s.t. *tsumori*
in that case *soredewa*, *sore nara*, *suruto*
in the capacity of *~ to shite*
in the end *yahari*
in the manner of *to*[3]
in the process of) *~ no ni*
in the same way *yahari*
in the same way as *~ yō da*[2], *~ yō ni*[1]
into *ni*[7]
I tell you *yo*
It is all right if *~temo ii*
It is possible that ~ *~ kamoshirenai*
It is said that ~ *~ sō da*[1], *tte*[2]
It is that ~ *no*[4], *~ no da*
It is ~ that ~ *~ no wa ~ da*
It looks like *~ rashii*, *~ sō da*[2], *~ yō da*[1]
It means that ~ *~ wake da*
It seems that ~ *~ rashii*
It would be better if *~ hō ga ii*
I wish ~ had done s.t. *~ba yokatta*

J

just *bakari*, *dake*
just did s.t. *bakari*

K

keep doing s.t. *iku*[2]
know *wakaru*
known as *~ to iu*[2]

L

learn of *shiru*
leave as is *mama*
leave s.o./s.t. as he/she/it is *~ oku*
Let's do s.t. *~mashō*, *~yō*
let s.o./s.t. do s.t. *~saseru*
like *suki*, *~ yō ni*[1]
like ~ and ~ *toka*[1]
little *sukunai*
look *mieru*, *~ sō da*[2]
look as if *~ yō da*[2]

look like *~ yō da*[2]

M

make *suru*[5]
make it ~ *~ ni suru*
make it so that ~ *~ yō ni suru*
make s.o./s.t. do s.t. *~saseru*
make sure (that) ~ *~ yō ni suru*
manner *-kata*
may *~ kamoshirenai, ~temo ii*
may not *~tewa ikenai*
mean *tsumori*
merely *dake*
might *~ kamoshirenai*
Miss *-sama*
most *ichiban, taitei*
mostly *taitei*
Mr. *-sama*
Mrs. *-sama*
Ms. *-sama*
must *~ darō, hazu, ~nakereba naranai*
must be ~ *~ ni chigai nai*
must not *~tewa ikenai*

N

named *~ to iu*[2]
naturally *~ wake da*
need *~nakereba naranai*
neither ~ nor ~ *~ mo ~ mo*
-ness *-sa*
no doubt *~ ni chigai nai*
no longer *~naku naru, ~ yō ni naru*
no matter what/who/where/etc. Question word (Prt) *demo, temo*
not allowed to do s.t. *~tewa ikenai*
not ~ and ~ *~nakute*
(not) any *mo*[2]
(not) any longer *mō*
not ~ any longer *~naku naru, ~ yō ni naru*
(not) anymore *mō*
not ~ anymore *~naku naru, ~ yō ni naru*
(not) anything/anybody/anywhere/any ~ but *shika*
(not as) ~ as ~ *hodo*
(not) ~ either *mo*[1]
(not) even (one) *mo*[2]
nothing/nobody/nowhere/no ~ but *shika*
not ~ now *~naku naru*
not only ~ but also *~ dake de (wa) naku (~ mo), shi*
(not) very *amari*
(not) very much *amari*
(not) yet *mada*
now *mō, soredewa, ~ yō ni naru*
No wonder *~ wake da*

O

of *no*[1]
on *de*[1], *de*[2], *de*[4], *ni*[1], *ni*[4], *ni*[6], *no*[1], *o*[2]
on account of *tame ni*[2]
on behalf of *tame ni*[3]
one *no*[2]
only *bakari, dake, shika*
onto *ni*[4]
or *soretomo, toka*[1]
(either) ~ or ~ *ka*[1]
or something like that *toka*[2]
out of *kara*[1], *o*[3]
over *nagara, o*[2]
over- *~ sugiru*

owing to *tame ni*[2]
own *jibun*

P

per *mai-*
play *suru*[1]
Please do s.t. *~ kudasai*
precious *sekkaku*
probably *~ darō*

R

reach the point where ~ *~ yō ni naru, ~ yō ni naru*
receive *morau*[1]
remain *mama*

S

's *no*[1]
say, "~" *~ to iu*[1]
say ~ in such a way *~ yō ni iu*
say that ~ *~ to iu*[1]
(can) see *mieru*
seem *~ sō da*[2], *~ yō da*[1]
-self *jibun*
Shall (I/we) do s.t.? *~yō*
should *hazu, ~ hō ga ii, ~nakereba naranai*
should not *~tewa ikenai*
show signs of *~ garu*
show up *kuru*[1]
since *kara*[3], *node*
since (time) *kara*[2]
a small number of *sukunai*
a small quantity of *sukunai*
smell *suru*[3]
so *kara*[3], *node, shi, sorede, ~ wake da*
some ~ Question word *ka*
something *koto*[1]
something like *toka*[2]
sometimes ~ and sometimes ~ *~tari ~tari suru*
so much *tamaranai*
so that ~ *~ yō ni*[2]
sound *kikoeru, ~ sō da*[2]
Speaking of *~ to ieba, tte*[1]
start to do s.t. *~ dasu*
stay *iru*[1]
still *mada, yahari*
stop V-ing *~ yō ni naru*
suppose that ~ *~ to omou*

T

take the trouble to do s.t. *sekkaku*
Talking about *wa*
Talking of *~ to ieba*
taste *suru*[3]
tell ~ that ~ *~ to iu*[1]
tell ~ to do s.t. *~ yō ni iu*
tend to do s.t. *mono (da)*
than *yori*
that ~ *koto*[2], *no*[3], *to*[3], *~ to iu*[2], *tte*[2]
that is why *sorede*
that means *suruto*
that's all *dake*
that's why *~ wake da*
the *wa*
The explanation is that ~ *~ no da*
The fact is that ~ *~ no da*
then *soredewa, sore nara, suruto*
The one who ~ is ~ *~ no wa ~ da*
The place where ~ is ~ *~ no wa ~ da*
There are/is a lot of ~ *ōi*
There are many ~ *ōi*

There are times when ~. *~ koto ga aru*[2]
The reason is that ~ *~ no da*
The reason why ~ is ~ *~ no wa ~ da*
There is much ~ *ōi*
There is no doubt that ~ *~ ni chigai nai*
There was a time when ~. *~ koto ga aru*[1]
The time when ~ is ~ *~ no wa ~ da*
They say that ~ *~ sō da*[1], *tte*[2]
thing *koto*[1]
things like *nado*
think *tsumori*
think (that) ~ *~ to omou*
think ~ will *~yō to omou*
through *made*, *o*[2]
till *made*
to *e*, *made*, *ni*[2], *ni*[7]
to do s.t. *ni*[5], *no*[3], *~ no ni*, *tame ni*[1]
to make up for *~ kawari ni*
too *mo*[1], *~ sugiru*
to the extent of *hodo*
to the extent that ~ *hodo*
to V *koto*[2]
toward *e*
try to do s.t. *~ yō ni suru*, *~yō to suru*
try V-ing *miru*
turn (into) *naru*
-ty *-sa*
typical of *~ rashii*

U

unbearably *tamaranai*
unchanged *mama*
understand *wakaru*
until *made*
up to *made*
used to do s.t. *mono (da)*
using *de*[2]
usually *taitei*

V

(not) very *amari*
(not) very much *amari*
visit *kuru*[1]

W

want (s.o.) to do s.t. *hoshii*[2]
want (s.t.) *hoshii*[1]
want (to do s.t.) *~ tai*
was just doing s.t. *~ tokoro da*[2]
way *-kata*
wear *suru*[1]
Well *soredewa*
Well then *soredewa*
what *koto*[1]
What about doing s.t.? *~tara dō desu ka*
whatever/whoever/wherever/etc. Question word (Prt) *demo*
What ~ is ~ *~ no wa ~ da*
when *tara*, *to*[4], *toki*
whether *ka*[2]
whether ~ or ~ *temo*
whether or not *~ ka dō ka*
while *aida (ni)*, *nagara*, *uchi ni*
Why don't you do s.t.? *~tara dō desu ka*
(I/We) will do s.t. *~mashō*, *~yō*
with *de*[2], *nagara*, *to*[2]
with difficulty *sekkaku*
with (much) effort *sekkaku*
without V-ing *~naide*

with the sound of *to*[3]
work as *suru*[1]
would *nara*
would like (to do s.t.) *~ tai*

Y

yet *mō*
(not) yet *mada*
you know *ne, yo*

Japanese Index

X <Y> means that X is found under Y.

A

ageru[1] "give s.t. to s.o." 73
ageru[1] *<kureru*[1]*>* 253
ageru[2] "give s.o. a favor by doing s.t." 74
aida (ni) 78
aida (ni) <uchi ni> 665
amari 83
aru[1] "exist" 84
aru[2] "s.t. has been done" 88
ato de 91

B

ba 95
ba <tara> 573
bakari 99
bakari <hodo> 166
bakari <shika> 493
bakari <~ tokoro da[2]*>* 639
bakari de (wa) naku <~ dake de (wa) naku (~ mo)> 119
~ba yokatta 102

C

-chan <-sama> 473
chū ni <uchi ni> 665

D

da 105
daga <ga[2]*>* 147
dakara <sorede> 514
dake 115
dake <shika> 493
~ dake de (wa) naku (~ mo) 119
dakedo <ga[2]*>* 147
~ darō 122
~ darō <~ kamoshirenai> 205
~ darō <~ ni chigai nai> 372
~ darō <~ yō da[1]*>* 708
~ dasu 125
de[1] [location] 127
de[1] *<ni*[4]*>* 359
de[1] *<ni*[6]*>* 364
de[1] *<o*[2]*>* 412
de[2] [means] 129
de[3] [cause / reason] 131
de[3] *<node>* 392
de[4] [time] 132
demo 135
demo <ga[2]*>* 147
dō 138
-domo <-tachi> 555

E

e 141

G

ga[1] [subject marker] 143
ga[2] "but" 147
~ garu 150
-gata <-tachi> 555
go- <o-> 419
-goro 154
goto ni 156
goto ni <mai-> 281

H

~ hajimeru 160
~ hajimeru <~ dasu> 125

~ *hajimeru <kuru²>* 264
hazu 161
~ *hō ga ii* 169
~ *hō ga ii <~tara dō desu ka>* ... 580
~ *hō ga ~ yori* 170
hodo 166
hōhō <-kata> 215
hoshii¹ "want s.t." 175
hoshii¹ <~ tai> 557
hoshii² "want s.o. to do s.t." 178
hoshii² <~ tai> 557
hotondo <taitei> 560

I

ichiban 181
iku¹ "go" 183
iku¹ <kuru¹> 260
iku² "go on V-ing" 186
iru¹ "exist" 188
iru¹ <aru¹> 84
iru² "be V-ing" 190
iru² <aru²> 88
iru² <~ tokoro da²> 639

J

jibun 195

K

ka¹ "or" 198
ka² [question marker] 201
~ *ka dō ka* 204
~ *kamoshirenai* 205
~ *kamoshirenai <~ ni chigai nai>* 372
kara¹ "from" 208
kara¹ <ni³> 358
kara¹ <o³> 415
kara² "after V-ing s.t." 210
kara² <ato de> 91
kara² <sorekara> 520
kara³ "because" 213
kara³ <de³> 131
kara³ <node> 392
kara³ <tame ni²> 568
-kata 215
~ *kawari ni* 218
kekkyoku <yahari> 695
keredomo 221
keredomo <ga²> 147
keredomo <temo> 590
keredo(mo) <noni> 395
kikeru <kikoeru> 223
kikoeru 223
kirai 226
koto¹ "thing" 227
koto² [nominalizer] 229
~ *koto ga aru¹* "there was a time when ~" 234
~ *koto ga aru²* "there are times when ~" 236
~ *koto ga dekiru* 238
~ *koto ni kimeru <~ koto ni suru>* 242
~ *koto ni naru* 240
~ *koto ni naru <~ koto ni suru>* 242
~ *koto ni suru* 242
~ *koto wa* 245
~ *kudasai* 248
kurai 250
kurai <-goro> 154
kurai <hodo> 166
kureru¹ "give s.t. to me" 253
kureru² "give me a favor by doing s.t." 257
kuru¹ "come" 260
kuru² "begin to; come to" 264

kuru[2] *<iku*[2]*>* 186

M

mada 267
made 269
made <e> 141
made <made ni> 272
made de <made ni> 272
made ni 272
mae ni 278
mae ni <made ni> 272
mai- 281
mama 285
masaka <yahari> 695
~masen ka <~mashō> 288
~mashō 288
-mi <-sa> 469
mieru 292
mirareru <mieru> 292
miru 295
~ mitai da <~ yō da[1]*>* 708
mo[1] "also" 298
mo[2] "even" 301
mō 307
mō <mada> 267
~ mo ~ mo 308
mō ~nai <~naku naru> 335
mono <koto[1]*>* 227
mono (da) 310
morai-tai <hoshii[2]*>* 178
morau[1] "receive" 314
morau[1] *<kureru*[1]*>* 253
morau[2] "receive a favor of doing s.t." 316
motte iru <aru[1]*>* 84

N

na 320
nado 321
nagara 325
nagara <aida (ni)> 78
~naide 327
~naide <mama> 285
~nai kara <~nakute> 338
~nai node <~nakute> 338
~nai to ikenai <~nakereba naranai> 332
~nai uchi ni <mae ni> 278
~nakereba ikenai <~nakereba naranai> 332
~nakereba ikenai <~temo ii> 597
~nakereba naranai 332
~nakereba naranai <~temo ii> . 597
~naku naru 335
~naku naru <~ yō ni naru> 728
~nakute 338
~nakute <~naide> 327
~nakutemo ii <~tewa ikenai> ... 601
~nakute wa ikenai/naranai <~nakereba naranai> 332
~nakutewa ikenai/naranai <~temo ii> 597
~nakutewa ikenai/naranai <~tewa ikenai> 601
nara 341
nara <tara> 573
naru 344
~ nasai 350
ne 352
ne <~ darō> 122
ne <yo> 702
~neba naranai <~nakereba naranai> 332
ni <to[1]*>* 604
ni[1] [point of time] 355
ni[1] *<de*[4]*>* 132

ni[2] [indirect object marker] 357
ni[3] [source] 358
ni[4] [direct contact] 359
ni[4] *<e>* 141
ni[4] *<to*[2]*>* 606
ni[5] [purpose] 361
ni[5] *<~ no ni>* 402
ni[5] *<tame ni*[1]*>* 565
ni[6] [location (existence)] 364
ni[7] [direction] 367
ni[7] *<e>* 141
ni[8] [agent] 368
~ ni chigai nai 372
~ ni chigai nai <hazu> 161
~ ni chigai nai <~ kamoshirenai> 205
~ ni kimeru <~ ni suru> 375
~ nikui 698
~ ni shite wa 374
~ ni shite wa <~ to shite wa> 651
~ ni suru 375
no[1] [possessive marker] 377
no[2] "one (pronoun)" 381
no[3] [nominalizer] 384
no[3] *<koto*[2]*>* 229
no[3] *<no*[2]*>* 381
no[3] *<~ no wa ~ da>* 406
no[4] [sentence-final particle] 386
~ no da 388
node 392
node <sorede> 514
node <tame ni[2]*>* 568
noni 395
noni <temo> 590
~ no ni 402
(~ to iu) no wa <tte[1]*>* 659
~ no wa ~ da 406

O

o[1] [direct object marker] 411
o[2] [space marker] 412
o[3] [a point of detachment] 415
o[4] [emotive marker] 417
o- 419
o ~ da <o ~ ni naru> 428
ōi 424
oki ni <goto ni> 156
~ oku 427
~ oku <aru[2]*>* 88
o ~ ni naru 428
o ~ ni naru <o ~ suru> 431
o ~ suru 431
~ o tsukatte <de[2]*>* 129
~ owaru 434
~ owaru <~ shimau> 500
ōzei <ōi> 424

Q

Question word *ka* 438
Question word (Prt) *demo* 435

R

-ra <-tachi> 555
~rareru[1] [passive] 445
~rareru[1] *<o ~ ni naru>* 428
~rareru[2] [potential] 453
~rareru[2] *<~ koto ga dekiru>* 238
~rareru[2] *<~rareru*[1]*>* 445
~ rashii 457
~ rashii <~ yō da[1]*>* 708
Relative clause 461

S

-sa 469
-sama 473

-san <-sama> 473
~saseru 475
sasuga(ni) <yahari> 695
sekkaku 484
shi 489
shi <sorekara> 520
shika 493
shikashi <ga²> 147
shikata ga nai <tamaranai> 563
~ shimau 500
shiru 504
shiru <wakaru> 683
~ sō da¹ [hearsay] 506
~ sō da¹ <~ rashii> 457
~ sō da¹ <~ sō da²> 508
~ sō da¹ <tte²> 662
~ sō da² "look; it looks like" 508
~ sō da² <~ kamoshirenai> 205
~ sō da² <~ rashii> 457
~ sō da² <~ yō da¹> 708
sorede 514
soredewa 518
soredewa <sore nara> 527
soredewa <suruto> 551
sorekara 520
sore nara 527
soretomo 529
soretomo <ka¹> 198
soshite <sorekara> 520
sō suru to <suruto> 551
~ sugiru 531
suki 533
sukunai 535
suru¹ "do; play" 536
suru² "have" 540
suru³ [perception] 542
suru⁴ "cost; elapse" 543
suru⁵ "make; change" 544
suru⁵ <naru> 344
suru⁶ "get; be" 547
suruto 551

T

-tachi 555
~ tai 557
taitei 560
takusan <ōi> 424
tamaranai 563
tame ni¹ "in order to" 565
tame ni¹ <ni⁵> 361
tame ni¹ <~ no ni> 402
tame ni¹ <~ yō ni²> 722
tame ni² "because" 568
tame ni³ "for" 572
tara 573
tara <toki> 634
~tara dō desu ka 580
~tari ~tari suru 582
~tari ~tari suru <toka¹> 628
tatte <temo> 590
~te 585
~te ageru <ageru²> 74
~te aru <aru²> 88
~te hoshii <hoshii²> 178
~te iru <iru²> 190
~te itadaku <morau²> 316
~te kara <kara²> 210
~te kudasai <~ kudasai> 248
~te kudasaru <kureru²> 257
~te kureru <kureru²> 257
~te miru <miru> 295
temo 590
~temo ii 597
~temo ii <~tewa ikenai> 601
~te moraitai <hoshii²> 178
~te morau <morau²> 316

~te ne <ne> 352
~te oku <~ oku> 427
~te sashiageru <ageru[2]> 74
~te shikata ga nai <tamaranai> 563
~te shimau <~ shimau> 500
~te tamaranai <tamaranai> 563
~te yaru <ageru[2]> 74
~te yokatta <~ba yokatta> 102
~tewa ikenai 601
~tewa ikenai <~temo ii> 597
~tewa naranai <~temo ii> 597
~tewa naranai <~tewa ikenai> . 601
to[1] "and" 604
to[2] "with" 606
to[2] <to[1]> 604
to[3] [quote marker] 609
to[3] <tte[2]> 662
to[4] "if; when" 612
to[4] <tara> 573
to[4] <toki> 634
~ to ieba 617
~ to iu[1] "say (that) ~" 619
~ to iu[1] <~ sō da[1]> 506
~ to iu[1] <~ to iu[2]> 623
~ to iu[1] <~ yō ni iu> 724
~ to iu[2] "called; named" 623
(~ to iu) no wa <tte[1]> 659
toka[1] "and; or" 628
toka[1] <ya> 693
toka[2] "something like" 632
toki 634
toki <~ tokoro da[2]> 639
~ to kiita <~ sō da[1]> 506
~ tokoro da[1] [place] 638
~ tokoro da[2] [state] 639
~ to omou 646
~ to shite 650
~ to shite wa 651
tsumori 654
tte[1] "Speaking of ~" 659
tte[1] <~ to ieba> 617
tte[2] [quote marker] 662

U

uchi ni 665

W

wa 669
wa <ga[1]> 143
wa <tte[1]> 659
~ wa ~ da 675
~ wa ~ ga 680
~ wa ~ ga <suru[2]> 540
wakaru 683
~ wake da 689
wazawaza <sekkaku> 484
wazuka <sukunai> 535

Y

ya 693
ya <to[1]> 604
yahari 695
yaru <suru[1]> 536
~ yasui 698
yo 702
~yō 705
~yō <~mashō> 288
~ yō da[1] [conjecture] 708
~ yō da[2] [resemblance] 715
~ yō ni[1] "in the same way as" 717
~ yō ni[2] "so that ~" 722
~ yō ni iu 724
~ yō ni naru 728
~ yō ni naru <~ yō ni suru> 731
~ yō ni suru 731
yori 734

yori <~ hō ga ~ yori> 170
yotei <tsumori> 654
~yō to omou 736
~yō to omou <tsumori> 654
~yō to suru 738
~yō to suru <miru> 295

Z

~zu ni <mama> 285
~zu ni <~naide> 327
zutsu 740

References

English translations are provided in [ ] after the romanized Japanese titles.

Fukada, Atsushi (2010) "The Japanese Causative Controversy: A Pragmatic Perspective" *Japanese Language and Literature* 44 (1): 21-43.

Group Jammassy (2015) *A Handbook of Japanese Grammar Patterns for Teachers and Learners*, Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Hamano, Shoko (2014) *Nihongo no Onomatope—Onshōchō to Kōzō* [Onomatopoeia in Japanese: Sound Symbolism and Structure], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Hinds, John (1987) "Thematization, Assumed Familiarity, Staging, and Syntactic Binding in Japanese" In *Perspectives on Topicalization: The Case of Japanese 'Wa,'* eds. by John Hinds, et al. 83-106, John Benjamins, Amsterdam.

Iori, Isao, Shino Takanashi, Kumiko Nakanishi and Toshihiro Yamada (2000) *Shokyū o Oshieru Hito no Tame no Nihongo-bunpō Handobukku* [A Handbook of Japanese Grammar for Teachers of Beginners], 3A Corporation, Tokyo.

———. (2001) *Chūjōkyū o Oshieru Hito no Tame no Nihongo-bunpō Handobukku* [A Handbook of Japanese Grammar for Teachers of Intermediate and Advanced Learners], 3A Corporation, Tokyo.

Izuhara, Shoji (2007) *Nihongo Ruigi-hyōgen Tsukaiwake-jiten* [A Dictionary of Japanese Synonyms and Their Usage], Kenkyusha, Tokyo.

Kamada, Osamu (2000) *Nihongo no In'yō* [Quotations in Japanese], Hituzi Syobo Publishing, Tokyo.

Kato, Shigeharu (2003) *Nihongo-shūshoku-kōzō no Goyōronteki-kenkyū* [A Pragmatic Study of Modification Structures in Japanese], Hituzi Syobo Publishing, Tokyo.

Kindaichi, Haruhiko (ed.) (1976) *Nihongo-dōshi no Asupekuto* [The Aspect of Japanese Verbs], Mugi Shobo, Tokyo.

Kuno, Susumu (1973) *The Structure of the Japanese Language*, MIT Press, MA: Cambridge.

———. (1978) *Danwa no Bunpō* [Grammar of Discourse], Taishukan Publishing, Tokyo.

———. (1983) *Shin Nihonbunpō Kenkyū* [A New Study of Japanese Grammar], Taishukan Publishing, Tokyo.

Maeda, Naoko (2006) *Meaning and Usage of the 'Youni' Clause in Japanese*, Kasamashoin, Tokyo.

———. (2009) *Nihongo no Fukubun—Jōken-bun to Gen'in・Riyū-bun no Kijutsuteki Kenkyū* [Complex Sentences in Japanese: A Descriptive Study of Conditional Sentences and Cause/Reason Sentences], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Makino, Seiichi (1983) "Speaker/Listener-Orientation and Formality Marking in Japanese" *Gengo Kenkyū—Journal of the Linguistic Society of Japan* 84: 126-145, Taishukan Publishing, Tokyo.

Martin, Samuel (1975) *A Reference Grammar of Japanese*, Yale University Press, CT: New Haven.

Masuoka, Takashi (ed.) (1993) *Nihongo no Jōken-hyōgen* [Conditional Expressions in Japanese], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

McGloin, Naomi H. (1989) *A Students' Guide to Japanese Grammar*, Taishukan Publishing, Tokyo.

McGloin, Naomi H., Mutsuko E. Hudson, Fumiko Nazkian and Tomomi Kakegawa (2014) *Modern Japanese Grammar: A Practical Guide*, Routledge, NY: New York.

Mikami, Akira (1960) *Zō wa Hana ga Nagai—Nihonbunpō Nyūmon* [An Elephant Has a Long Trunk: Introduction to Japanese Grammar], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

———. (1970) *Bunpō Shōron-shū* [Papers on Japanese Grammar], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

———. (1972) *Gendai Gohō Josetsu—Shintakusu no Kokoromi* [An Introduction to Modern Japanese Grammar: Explorations in Syntax], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Miyajima, Tatsuo and Yoshio Nitta (eds.) (1995a) *Nihongo-ruigi-hyōgen no Bunpō (Jō) Tanbun-hen* [The Grammar of Synonymous Expressions in Japanese (vol.1) Simple Sentences], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

———. (eds.) (1995b) *Nihongo-ruigi-hyōgen no Bunpō (Ge) Fukubun/Renbun-hen* [The Grammar of Synonymous Expressions in Japanese (vol.2) Complex and Compound Sentences], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Miyazaki, Kazuto, Taro Adachi, Harumi Noda and Shino Takanashi (2002) *Modariti* [Modality], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Morita, Yoshiyuki (1977) *Kiso Nihongo* [Basic Japanese Words], Kadokawa Shoten Publishing, Tokyo.

———. (1980) *Kiso Nihongo 2* [Basic Japanese Words 2], Kadokawa Shoten Publishing, Tokyo.

———. (1981) *Nihongo no Hassō* [Ideas Expressed through Japanese], Tojusha, Tokyo.

———. (1984) *Kiso Nihongo 3* [Basic Japanese Words 3], Kadokawa Shoten Publishing, Tokyo.

———. (2006) *Nihongo no Ruigi-hyōgen-jiten* [A Dictionary of Japanese Synonyms], Tokyodo Shuppan, Tokyo.

Najima, Yoshinao (2007) *No da no Imi・Kinō—Kanrensei-riron no Kanten kara* [The Meaning and Function of *no da*: From the Perspective of Relevance Theory], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Nishiyama, Yuji (2003) *Nihongo-meishi-ku no Imiron to Goyōron—Shijiteki Meishi-ku to Hi-shijiteki Meishi-ku* [The Semantics and Pragmatics of Japanese Noun: Referential and Non-Referential Noun Phrases], Hituzi Syobo Publishing, Tokyo.

Noda, Hisashi (1996) *"Wa" to "Ga"* ["*Wa*" and "*Ga*"], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Ohno, Susumu, Akihiro Satake and Kingoro Maeda (eds.) (1974) *Iwanami Kogo Jiten* [Iwanami's Dictionary of Classical Japanese], Iwanami Shoten, Publishers, Tokyo.

Okutsu, Keiichiro (1978) *"Boku wa Unagi da" no Bunpō* [The Grammar of "*Boku wa Unagi da* (I am an eel)"], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Okutsu, Keiichiro, Yoshiko Numata and Takeshi Sugimoto (1986) *Iwayuru Nihongo-joshi no Kenkyū* [Studies of So-called Japanese Particles], Bonjinsha, Tokyo.

Oshima, Motoo (2010) *Nihongo-rentai-shūshoku-setsu-kōzō no Kenkyū* [A Study of the Structures of Noun-Modification Clauses in Japanese], Hituzi Syobo Publishing, Tokyo.

Shibatani, Masayoshi (1978) *Nihongo no Bunseki—Seiseibunpō no Hōhō* [An Analysis of Japanese: Methods of Generative Grammar], Taishukan Publishing, Tokyo.

Teramura, Hideo (1982) *Nihongo no Shintakusu to Imi I* [Syntax and Meaning of the Japanese Language I], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

———. (1984) *Nihongo no Shintakusu to Imi II* [Syntax and Meaning of the Japanese Language II], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

———. (1991) *Nihongo no Shintakusu to Imi III* [Syntax and Meaning of the Japanese Language III], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

———. (1992) *Teramura Hideo Ronbun-shū I—Nihongo-bunpō-hen* [Papers by Hideo Teramura I: Japanese Grammar], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

———. (1993) *Teramura Hideo Ronbun-shū II—Gengogaku・Nihongo-kyōikugaku-hen* [Papers by Hideo Teramura II: Linguistics and Japanese Language Pedagogy], Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Tomita, Hideo (2007) *Essentials of Japanese Grammar for Teachers*, Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Tsutsui, Michio (2005) "*Rentai-shūshoku-setsu 'N_1 no N_2' no Imi-kaishaku—Kaku-kaishaku no Shiten kara*" [Semantic Interpretation of Attributive Modifying Clauses "N_1 *no* N_2": From the Perspective of Case Interpretation] In *Gengo-kyōiku no Shin-tenkai* [New Developments in Language Education] eds. by Osamu Kamada, et al., 35-48, Hituzi Syobo Publishing, Tokyo.

———. (2006) "The Japanese Copula Revisited: Is *Da* a Copula?" *Japanese Language and Literature* 40 (1): 59-103.

———. (2024) *Grammar in Depth for Beginning Japanese Learners* (e-book), Kurosio Publishers, Tokyo.

Yamaoka, Masanori, Isao Makihara and Masaki Ono (2010) *Komyunikēshon to Hairyo-hyōgen—Nihongo Goyōron Nyūmon* [Communication and Consideration Expressions: Introduction to Japanese Pragmatics], Meiji Shoin, Tokyo.

Table of Contents

奥付 5
Preface to the Second Edition 6
Preface (First Edition) 7
Table of Contents 8
To the Reader 9
List of Abbreviations 11
List of Symbols 12
Grammatical Terms 13
Characteristics of Japanese Grammar 26
1. Word Order and Basic Sentence Structures 26
2. Topic 32
3. Ellipsis 35
4. Personal Pronouns 40
5. Passive 44
6. Keigo: Extra-polite Expressions 47
7. Sound Symbolisms 59
8. Viewpoint 68
A 74
B 96
D 106
E 142
G 144
H 161
I 182
J 196
K 199
M 268
N 321
O 412
Q 436
R 446
S 470
T 556
U 666
W 670
Y 694
Z 741
Appendixes 744
1. Basic Conjugations 745
2. Semantic Classification of Verbs 751
3. Pairs of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs 753
4. Connection Forms of Important Expressions 756
5. Numerals and Counters 763

6. Ko-so-a-do: Japanese Demonstratives 769
Grammar Index 772
English Index 774
Japanese Index 782
References 789